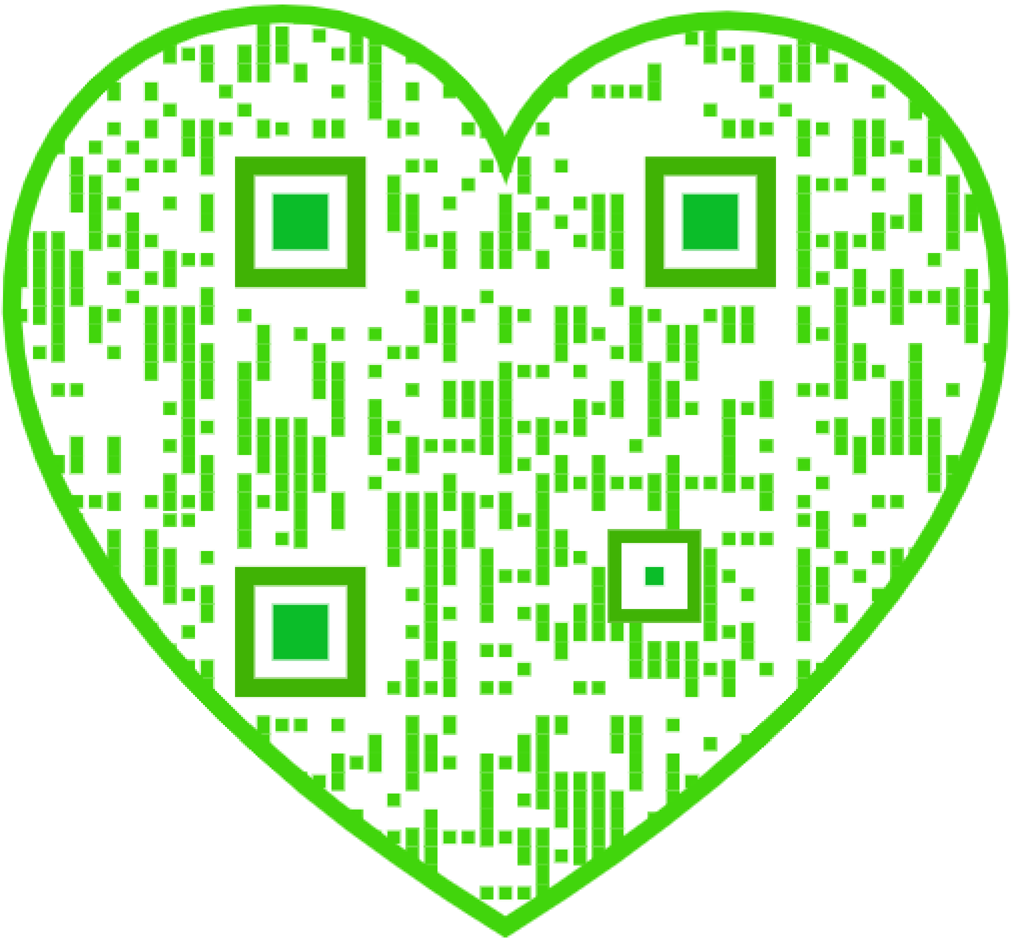
AFRICANDERISMS

A GLOSSARY OF SOUTH AFRICAN COLLOQUIAL WORDS AND PHRASES AND OF PLACE AND OTHER NAMES

CHARLES PETTMAN



BOOKS ON SOUTH AFRICA.

THE RISE OF SOUTH AFRICA: A History of the Origin of South African Colonisation and of its Development towards the East from the Earliest Times to 1857. By GEORGE EDWARD CORY, M.A., King's College, Cambridge, Professor in the Rhodes University College, Grahamstown, South Africa. In 4 vols. 8vo.

Vol. I. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE YEAR 1820. With Map, Plans, and Illustrations. 15s.

Vol. II. *In the Press.*

BLACK AND WHITE IN SOUTH-EAST AFRICA: a Study in Sociology. By MAURICE S. EVANS, C.M.G. With a Preface by Lieut.-Colonel Sir MATTHEW NATHAN, G.C.M.G., late Governor of Natal. With a Map. 8vo, 6s. net.

NATAL: THE STATE AND THE CITIZEN. By P. A. BARNETT, M.A., and G. W. SWEENEY, B.A., LL.B. Crown 8vo, 2s.

THE WHITE MAN'S WORK IN ASIA AND AFRICA: a Discussion of the Main Difficulties of the Colour Question. By LEONARD ALSTON. Crown 8vo, 3s. net.

THE MONKEYFOLK OF SOUTH AFRICA. By F. W. FITZSIMONS, F.Z.S., etc., Director, Port Elizabeth Museum. With Illustrations. Large Crown 8vo, 5s. net.

This is a book dealing with the lives and habits of the monkeyfolk of South Africa. It is written mostly in the form of anecdotes, and the animals are made to tell their own stories.

The pictures in this book, except where otherwise stated, are from direct photographs of the animals in their natural habitats.

THE SNAKES OF SOUTH AFRICA: their Venom and the Treatment of Snake Bite. By F. W. FITZSIMONS, F.Z.S., F.R.M.S., etc., Director, Port Elizabeth Museum. New Edition. Enlarged and Thoroughly Revised. With 1 Coloured Plate and 193 other Illustrations. 8vo, 12s. 6d. net.

SNAKE BITE AND ITS SCIENTIFIC TREATMENT. By F. W. FITZSIMONS, F.Z.S. 8vo, paper covers, 1s. net.

JOCK OF THE BUSHVELD. By Sir PERCY FITZPATRICK, K.C.M.G. With 23 Full-page Illustrations (1 Coloured), and numerous Marginal Illustrations by E. CALDWELL. Large Crown 8vo, 6s. net.

Abridged Edition. With Coloured Frontispiece, 8 Full-page, and numerous Illustrations in the Text. Crown 8vo, 3s.

BOSVELD JOCK. Door Sir PERCY FITZPATRICK, K.C.M.G. Geillustreerd door E. CALDWELL. Verkorte Schooluitgaaf, Vertaald door GUSTAV S. PRELLER, Kl. okt. Schooluitgave, 1s. 9d.; Prijsuitgave, 2s. 6d.

THE MINERAL INDUSTRY OF RHODESIA. By J. P. JOHNSON, Member of Council of Geological Society of South Africa, Certificated Mine Surveyor of the Union. 8vo, 8s. 6d. net.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

THE STONE IMPLEMENTS OF SOUTH AFRICA. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 4to, 10s.

THE PRE-HISTORIC PERIOD IN SOUTH AFRICA. With 8 Plates and 47 other Illustrations. Post 4to, 10s.

GEOLOGICAL AND ARCHÆOLOGICAL NOTES ON ORANGIA. With 45 Illustrations. Post 4to, 10s.

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

LONDON, NEW YORK, BOMBAY AND CALCUTTA.

BOOKS ON SOUTH AFRICAN SUBJECTS.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE GEOLOGY OF CAPE COLONY. By A. W. ROGERS, D.Sc., F.G.S., and A. L. DU TOIT, B.A., F.G.S., of the Geological Survey of Cape Colony. With a Chapter on the Fossil Reptiles of the Karoo Formation by R. BROOM, M.D., B.Sc., C.M.Z.S., of Victoria College, Stellenbosch. With Illustrations and Coloured Map. Crown 8vo, 9s. net.

SOUTH AFRICAN FLOWERING PLANTS. For the Use of Beginners, Students, and Teachers. By the Rev. Prof. G. HENSLOW, M.A., F.L.S., F.G.S., etc. With 112 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 5s.

PLANTS AND THEIR WAYS IN SOUTH AFRICA. By BERTHA STONEMAN, Huguenot College, Wellington, South Africa. With 276 Illustrations, Diagrams, and Map. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY BOTANY. By H. EDMONDS. Adapted for South Africa. By Dr. MARLOTH and J. BRETLAND FARMER, D.Sc., F.R.S., Professor of Botany in the Royal College of Science, London. With 282 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

THE STORY OF THE ZULUS. By J. Y. GIBSON, for Some Years a Magistrate in Zululand. With 11 Illustrations. 8vo, 7s. 6d.

A HISTORY OF CHRISTIAN MISSIONS IN SOUTH AFRICA. By J. DU PLESSIS, B.A. (Cape), B.D. (Edin.). With Map. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

A GRAMMAR OF THE KAFIR LANGUAGE. By J. McLAREN, M.A., Inspector of Schools. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

ZUIDAFRIKAANSE LEKTUUR. Onder Redaktie van Dr. W. J. VILJOEN, Kl. okt.

No. I. DS. W. J. CONRADIE. ONDERVINDINGEN VAN EEN JONGE PREDIKANT IN NAMAKWALAND. Geillustreerd. 9d.

No. II. J. P. BOTHA, B.A. REINAERT, DE JAKHALS. Met 17 platen. 9d.

No. III. DS. W. J. CONRADIE. OP REIS IN HET ZUIDWESTEN: Brieven aan mijn Neef. Met 13 platen. 1s.

No. IV. JUSTUS VAN MAURIK. JAN SMEES. Met inleiding en aantekeningen door K. BONSMA en W. J. VILJOEN. 9d.

No. V. JACOB VAN LENNEP. CHARIËTTO. Met alfabetiese woordelijst en verklaringen, Enz., door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 1s.

No. VI. JACOB VAN LENNEP. DE TWEE ADMIRALEN EN ALWART. Met toelichting en alfabetiese woordelijst met verklarende aantekeningen door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 1s.

No. VII. JACOB VAN LENNEP. HET GODSOORDEEL EN DE TWEE PISTOOLSCHOTEN. Met alfabetiese woordelijst en verklaringen, Enz., door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 9d.

No. VIII. HENDRIK TOLLENS. DRIE GEDICHTEN: De Echtscheiding, de Brand en Hondetrouw, met Inleiding en Woordverklaring, door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 8d.

No. IX. R. HOEKSTRA. LETTERKUNDIGE OPSTELLEN. 1s. 4d.

No. X. BERNARD TER HAAR. KEUR UIT DE GEDICHTEN VAN BERNARD TER HAAR. Met Inleiding, aantekeningen en verklaringen door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 9d.

No. XI. HENDRIK TOLLENS. DE OVERWINTERING OP NOVA ZEMBLA. Met Inleiding, aantekeningen en verklaringen door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 9d.

No. XII. HENDRIK TOLLENS. ZEVEN GEDICHTEN OVER ONDERWERPEN VAN GESCHIEDKUNDIGE AARD. Albrecht Beiling, De Dood van Egmond en Hoorne, Het Turfschip van Breda, enz. Met aantekeningen, verklaringen, enz., door H. H. VAN ROOYEN, Docent aan het Normaal Opleidingskollege te Bloemfontein. 1s.

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

LONDON, NEW YORK, BOMBAY AND CALCUTTA.

AFRICANDERISMS

A GLOSSARY OF SOUTH AFRICAN COLLOQUIAL WORDS AND PHRASES

AFRICANDERISMS

A GLOSSARY OF SOUTH AFRICAN COLLOQUIAL WORDS AND PHRASES AND OF PLACE AND OTHER NAMES

COMPILED BY

THE REV. CHARLES PETTMAN

QUEENSTOWN

SOUTH AFRICA

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

NEW YORK, BOMBAY AND CALCUTTA

1913

PREFACE.

WHEN, by some strange oversight, the great "Oxford Dictionary" not only omits to notice such recognized English words as African and Africanism (Milton, "Of Reformation in England," Book I.), to say nothing of such well-known South African words as Africander, Africanderism, and Africanderdom, there does appear to be an excuse, if not a reason, for the publication of a Glossary of South African Words and Phrases.

A residence of nearly forty years in the sub-continent and an acquaintance, more or less intimate, with every Province and with most of the different peoples of the Union, have afforded opportunities for the pursuit of a study, that could, however, only be indulged in as a relaxation from duties that always had the first claim.

The Glossary was begun on the day of the author's landing in Cape Town in October, 1876, when he jotted down in his notebook a few of the strange words that then fell upon his ear. Needless to say, there was no thought at that time of his collection ever assuming the proportions which it has now attained, but gradually it grew, and as it grew it became of increasing interest to himself and to a few of his friends. It is to the urgings of the latter that it should see the light that he has now yielded.

To the friends who have helped him the author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness; they have been few, but their practical interest has been invaluable: among them Rudolf Marloth, Esq., M.A., Ph.D., and E. E. Galpin, Esq., F.L.S., both recognized

authorities on South African botany; John Muir, Esq., M.D., of Albertinia, who supplied many of the Riversdale District trivial names (and identification) of plants, etc., in use in that District; and the Rev. J. W. W. Owen of Mount Coke for suggestions with reference to Kaffir words and names.

The author is under special obligation to Sir William Bisset Berry, Kt., M.L.A., for permitting him to have access at all times to his splendid library, and to Thomas Muir, Esq., C.M.G., LL.D., F.R.S., Superintendent-General of Education in the Cape Province for his helpful interest in the progress and publication of the work. To Dr. Muir he is also indebted for having awakened the sympathy of the Minister of Education in the venture, and the author has cordially to thank Mr. Malan for showing his appreciation of the value of the work by undertaking to subscribe for a hundred copies.

It has been difficult sometimes to decide what to admit to the Glossary and what to exclude. A few words have been included that could not be termed "Africanderisms," but no word has been admitted that had not some special interest for South Africans.

In all the author has aimed at accuracy; he would be foolish, however, to suppose that there were no mistakes, but trusts that these will not prove so many as to detract from the usefulness of the book.

Queenstown,
South Africa, 1913

FULLER TITLES OF THE MORE IMPORTANT BOOKS REFERRED TO IN THE GLOSSARY.

Alexander, Captain Sir J. E.—Narrative of a Voyage of Observation among the Colonies of Western Africa in the Flag Ship "Thalia," and of a Campaign in Kaffir-Land in 1835. 2 Vols. 8vo. London. 1873.

Anderson, Andrew A.—Twenty-five Years in a Waggon, in the Gold Regions of South Africa. London. 1887.

Andersson, C. J.—The Okavango River, a Narrative of Travel, Exploration, and Adventure. London. 1861.

Andersson, C. J.—Lake Ngami, or Explorations and Discoveries during Four Years' Wanderings in the Wilds of South Western Africa. London. Cr. 8vo. 1856.

Andersson, C. J.—Notes on the Birds of Damara Land, and the adjacent Countries of South-West Africa. London. 8vo. 1872.

Andersson, C. J.—The Lion and the Elephant. London. 8vo. 1873.

Andersson, C. J.—Notes of Travel in South Africa. London. 8vo. 1875.

Appleyard, Rev. J. W.—The Kaffir Language, comprising a Sketch of its History, remarks upon its Nature, and a Grammar. King William's Town. 8vo. 1850.

Appleyard, Rev. J. W.—An Apology for the Kaffir Bible. Mount Coke. 8vo. 1867.

Arbousset, Rev. T., and F. Daumas.—Narrative of an Exploratory Tour to the North-East of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope. Cape Town. Cr. 8vo. 1846.

Aylward, Alfred.—The Transvaal of To-Day. War, Witchcraft, Sport, and Spoils in South Africa. London. 8vo. 1878.

Bachmann, Dr. F.—Süd-Afrika, Reisen, Erlebnisse, und Beobachtungen während eines sechsjährigen Aufenthaltes in der Kapkolonie, Natal und Pondoland. Berlin. 8vo. 1901.

Backhouse, James.—A Narrative of a Visit to the Mauritius and South Africa. London. Cr. 8vo. 1844.

Baden Powell, Colonel R. S.—Matabeleland Campaign, 1896, being a Narrative of the Campaign in suppressing the Native Rising in Matabeleland and Mashonaland. London. 8vo. 1897.

Baines, Thomas, F.R.G.S.—Explorations in South-West Africa. London. 8vo. 1864.

Baines, Thomas, F.R.G.S.—The Gold Regions of South-East Africa. London. 8vo. 1877.

Baldwin, William Charles, F.R.G.S.—African Hunting and Adventures from Natal to the Zambesi. London. 1894.

Balfour, Alice B.—Twelve Hundred Miles in a Waggon. London. 1895.

Barker, Lady.—A Year's Housekeeping in South Africa. London. 1877.

Barrow, John.—An Account of Travels into the interior of Southern Africa in the years 1797 and 1798. 2 Vols. London. 1801, 1804.

Barter, Charles, D.C.L.—The Dorp and the Veld, or Six Months in Natal. London. 1852.

Bent, J. Theodore, F.S.A.—The Ruined Cities of Mashonaland, being a record of Excavation and Exploration in 1891. London. 1893.

Bertrand, Alfred.—The Kingdom of the Barotsi, Upper Zambesia. A Voyage of Exploration in Africa, returning by the Victoria Falls, Matabeleland, the Transvaal, and the Cape. Cape Town. 1899.

Bird, John.—The Annals of Natal. 2 Vols. Pietermaritzburg. 1888.

Bleloch, W.—The New South Africa, its Value and its Development. London. 1901.

Bolus, Harry, F.L.S.—The Orchids of the Cape Peninsula. Cape Town. 1888.

Bolus, Harry, F.L.S.—The Orchids of South Africa. 2 Vols. London. 1910-11.

Boon, Martin James.—The Immortal History of South Africa. 2 Vols. London. 1885.

Boon, Martin James.—The History of the Orange Free State. London. 1886.

Boyce, Rev. William B.—A Grammar of the Kaffir Language, Grahamstown. 1834.

Boyce, Rev. William B.—Notes on South African Affairs from 1834 to 1838. Grahamstown. 1838.

Boyle, Frederick.—To the Cape for Diamonds, a story of digging experiences in South Africa, with comments and criticisms upon the Diamond Fields. London. 1873.

Boyle, Frederick.—The Savage Life. A second series of "Camp Notes". London. 1876.

Boyle, Frederick.—Chronicles of No-Man's Land. A third series of "Camp Notes". London. 1880.

Brigg, Rev. Arthur.—"Sunny Fountains" and "Golden Sands". London. 1888.

Brooks, Henry.—Natal, a History and Description of the Colony. London. 1876.

Brown, William Henry.—On the South African Frontier, the Adventures and Observations of an American in Mashonaland and Matabeleland. London. 1899.

Browning, Fred. G.—Fighting and Farming in South Africa, A Narrative of Personal Experiences in the Colony during the years 1877-8-9. London. 1880.

Brownlee, Hon. Charles.—Gaika Commissioner. Reminiscences of Kaffir Life and History, and other Papers. Lovedale, South Africa. 1896.

Bryce, James.—Impressions of South Africa. London. 1898.

Bryden, H. A.—Kloof and Karoo; Sport, Legend, and Natural History in the Cape Colony, with a notice of the Game Birds and of the present distribution of the Antelopes and Larger Game. London. 1889.

Bryden, H. A.—Gun and Camera in South Africa, a year of wanderings in Bechuanaland, the Kalahari Desert, and the Lake Country, Ngamiland. London. 1893.

Burchell, William J.—Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa. London. Vol. I. 1822. Vol. II. 1824.

Cachet, F. Lion.—De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers, aan het Volk van Nederland verhaald. Amsterdam. 1882.

Calcoen.—A narrative of the Second Voyage of Vasco da Gama to Calicut. 1502. Antwerp. *Circa* 1504.

Callaway, Rev. Canon, M.D.—Nursery Tales, Traditions, and Histories of the Zulus in their own words, with a Translation into English and Notes. Natal. 1868.

Campbell, John.—Travels in South Africa. London. 1815.

Campbell, John.—Travels in South Africa; Narrative of a Second Journey in the Interior of the Country. 2 Vols. London. 1822.

Cape of Good Hope Agricultural Journal. Cape Town.

Cape of Good Hope Literary Gazette. Cape Town. 1830-4.

Cape of Good Hope Department of Agriculture.—Marine Investigations in South Africa. 5 Vols. Cape Town. 1902.

Cape Monthly Magazine.

Carter, George.—A Narrative of the loss of the "Grosvenor," East Indiaman, which was unfortunately wrecked upon the Coast of Caffraria, etc., on the 4th August, 1782. London. 1791.

Casalis, Rev. E.—The Basutos, or Twenty-three Years in South Africa. London. 1861.

Chapman, James, F.R.G.S.—Travels in the Interior of South Africa, comprising Fifteen Years' Hunting and Trading, with Journeys across the Continent from Natal to Walvisch Bay, and visits to Lake Ngami and the Victoria Falls. 2 Vols. London. 1868.

Christopher, J. S.—Natal. Cape of Good Hope. A grazing, agricultural, and cotton-growing country. London. 1850.

Cloete, Hon. Henry, LL.D.—Five Lectures on the Emigration of the Dutch Farmers from the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, and their Settlement in the District of Natal, until their formal Submission to Her Majesty's Authority, in the Year 1843. Cape Town. 1856.

Coillard, Francois.—On the Threshold of Central Africa. A Record of Twenty Years' Pioneering among the Barotsi of the Upper Zambezi. London. 1902.

Cole, Alfred W.—The Cape and the Kaffirs, or Notes of Five Years' Residence in South Africa. London. 1852.

Colenso, J. W., D.D.—Ten Weeks in Natal. Cambridge. 1855.

Colquhoun, Archibald R.—The Africander Land. London. 1906.

Crawford, John, F.R.S.—A Grammar and Dictionary of the Malay Language, with a Preliminary Dissertation. 2 Vols. London. 1852.

Cumming, R. Gordon.—Five Years of a Hunter's Life in South Africa. 2 vols. London. 1850.

Damberger, Christian F.—Travels in the Interior of Africa from the Cape of Good Hope to Morocco, from the Year 1781 to 1797. London. 1801.

Davis, Rev. W. H.—A Dictionary of the Kaffir Language. London. 1872.

Devereux, Roy.—Side Lights on South Africa. London. 1899.

Diesterweg, M.—Aus dem Pioneerleben, während meines 20 Jährigen Aufenthaltes in Süd-Afrika. Burg. 1903.

Distant, W. L.—A Naturalist in the Transvaal. London. 1892.

Döhne, Rev. J. L.—A Zulu-Kaffir Dictionary, Etymologically explained,

with copious illustrations and examples, preceded by an Introduction on the Zulu-Kaffir Language. Cape Town. 1857.

Drayson, Captain A. W.—Sporting Scenes amongst the Kaffirs of South Africa. London. 1858.

Drayson, Captain A. W.—Tales of the Outspan, or Adventures in the Wild Regions of Southern Africa. London. 1862.

Drummond, Henry, F.R.S.E.—Tropical Africa. London. 1888.

Du Chaillu, Paul B.—Explorations and Adventures in Equatorial Africa; with Accounts of the Manners and Customs of the People, and of the chace of the Gorilla, Leopard, Elephant, Hippopotamus, and other animals. London. 1861.

Du Toit and Co.—Patriot Woordeboek.—Afrikaans-Engels. Paarl. 1902.

Edmunds, Henry, B.Sc., and Rudolph Marloth, Ph.D., M.A.—Elementary Botany for South Africa, theoretical and practical. London. 1897.

Edwards, Rev. J.—Reminiscences of the Early Life and Missionary Labours of. Grahamstown. 1883.

Elffers, Hubertus.—The Commercial Dutch Grammar. Cape Town. 1898.

Fitzpatrick, J. P.—The Transvaal from Within. London. 1900.

Fitzpatrick, J. P.—The Outspan. Tales of South Africa. London. 1906.

Fitzpatrick, Sir Percy.—Jock of the Bushveld. 1907.

Fitzsimons, F. W., F.Z.S., F.R.M.S., etc.—The Snakes of South Africa, their Venom and the Treatment of Snake-Bite. Cape Town. 1912.

Fleming, Rev. Francis, M.A., F.R.G.S.—Kaffraria and its Inhabitants. London. 1853.

Fleming, Rev. Francis, M.A., F.R.G.S.—Southern Africa: a Geography and Natural History of the Country, Colonies, and Inhabitants, from the Cape of Good Hope to Angola, etc. London. 1856.

Freeman, J. J.—A Tour in South Africa, with notices of Natal, Mauritius, Madagascar, Ceylon, Egypt, and Palestine. London. 1851.

Friend, Rev. Hilderic.—Flowers and Flower Lore. London. 1886.

Fritzsch, Gustav.—Die Eingeborenen Süd-Afrika. Breslau. 1872.

Galton, Francis.—The Narrative of an Explorer in Tropical South Africa. London. 1853.

Gardiner, Captain Allan F., R.N.—Narrative of a Journey into the Zoolu Country in South Africa, taken in 1835. London. 1836.

Gibbons, A. St. H., F.R.G.S.—Exploration and Hunting in Central Africa, 1895-6. London. 1898.

Gilchrist, J. D. F., M.A.—History of the Local Names of Cape Fish. Trans. S. A. Phil. Soc. Vol. xi. Part 4. Cape Town. 1902.

Gilchrist, J. D. F., M.A.—South African Zoology. Cape Town. 1911.

Gilmore, Parker.—The Hunter's Arcadia. London. 1886.

Gilmore, Parker.—Days and Nights in the Desert. London. 1888.

Glanville, Ernest.—Tales from the Veld. London. 1897. And other Works.

Glanville, T. B.—Cape Government Emigration Commissioner. At Home and Abroad. Port Elizabeth. 1878.

Godlonton, Hon. R.—A Narrative of the Irruption of the Kaffir Hordes into the Eastern Province of the Cape Colony. 1834-5. Grahamstown. 1836.

Godlonton, Hon. R.—The Case of the Colonists. Grahamstown. 1847.

Godlonton, Hon. R., and Edward Irving, J.P.—A Narrative of the Kaffir War of 1850-1-2. Grahamstown. 1852.

Greswell, William, M.A.—Our South African Empire. 2 Vols. London. 1885.

Haagner, Alwin, F.Z.S., and Robert Ivy, F.Z.S.—Sketches of South African Bird-Life. London. 1908.

Haggard, Rider.—Jess. London. 1887. And other Works.

Hamilton, Captain Alex.—A New Account of the East Indies. 2 Vols. London. 1744.

Handbook of the South African Exhibition. 1885.

Harding, Colonel Colin, C.M.G.—In Remotest Barotseland, being an Account of a Journey of over 8000 miles through the wildest and remotest parts of Lewanika's Empire. London. 1905.

Harris, Captain William Cornwallis.—The Wild Sports of Southern Africa: being the Narrative of an expedition from the Cape of Good Hope through the Territories of Chief Moselekatse in the Tropic of Capricorn. London. 1839.

Harvey, William Henry, M.D.—The Genera of South African Plants, arranged according to the Natural System. Cape Town. 1868.

Harvey, William Henry, M.D., and Otto Wilhelm Sonder, Ph.D.—Flora Capensis: being a Systematic Description of the Plants of the Cape Colony, Caffraria, and Port Natal. Dublin. 1859-60. And subsequent Volumes.

Hepburn, Rev. J. D.—Twenty Years in Khama's Country. London. 1895.

Herbert, Sir Thomas.—Some Yeares Travels into Divers Parts of Asia and Afrique; revised and enlarged by the Author. Folio. 1638.

Hobson, Mrs. Carey.—At Home in the Transvaal. 2 Vols. London. 1884.

Holub, Dr. Emil, and Aug. von Pelzeln.—Beiträge zur Ornithologie Süd-Afrikas. Wien. 1882.

Hook, Major.—With Sword and Statute. (On the Cape of Good Hope Frontier.) Cape Town. 1905.

Hudson, M.B.—A Feature in South African Frontier Life, based upon the wandering of a Frontier Family, but embracing a complete record of the Kaffir War of 1850-1. Port Elizabeth. 1852.

Hutchinson, Mrs.—In Tents in the Transvaal. London. 1879.

Jacottet, E.—The Treasury of Basuto Lore, being original Se-Suto Texts, with a literal English Translation and Notes. I. Morija. 1908.

Kay, Stephen.—Travels and Researches in Caffraria. London. 1833.

Kerr, W. Montague, C.E., F.R.G.S.—The Far Interior: a Narrative of Travel and Adventures from the Cape of Good Hope across the Zambezi to the Lake Regions of Central Africa. London. 1886.

King, Captain W. R.—Campaigning in Kaffirland, or Scenes and Adventures in the Kaffir War of 1851-2. London. 1855.

Kolben, Peter.—Beschreibung des Vorgebürges der Guten Hoffnung und derer wohnenden Hottentotten. Frankfurt und Leipzig. 1745.

Krönlein, J. G.—Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin (Namaqua-Hottentotten). Berlin. 1889.

Kropf, Rev. Albert, D.D.—A Kaffir-English Dictionary. Lovedale. 1899.

Latrobe, Rev. C. J.—Journal of a Visit to South Africa in 1815 and 1816. With some Account of the Missionary Settlements of the United Brethren near the Cape of Good Hope. London. 1818.

Layard, Edgar Leopold.—The Birds of South Africa: a Descriptive Catalogue of all the known Species occurring South of the twenty-eighth parallel of South Latitude. Cape Town. 1867.

Leibbrandt, H. C. V., Keeper of the Archives.—Précis of the Archives of the Cape of Good Hope. Cape Town. 1897.

Leslie, David.—Amongst the Zulus and Amatongas, with sketches of the Natives, their Language and Customs, and the Country, Products, Climate, Wild Animals, etc. Edinburgh. 1875.

Le Vaillant, M.—Travels into the Interior Parts of Africa, by the way of the Cape of Good Hope; in the Years 1780, 81, 82, 83, 84, and 85. Translated from the French of M. Le Vaillant. 2nd Ed. 2 Vols. London. 1796.

Le Vaillant, M.—New Travels into the Interior Parts of Africa by the way of the Cape of Good Hope, in the Years 1783, 84, and 85. Translated from the French of M. Le Vaillant. 3 Vols. London. 1796.

Leyland, J.—Adventures in the far Interior of South Africa. London. 1866.

Leyland, R. W., F.R.G.S.—A Holiday in South Africa. London. 1882.

Lichtenstein, Henry.—Travels in Southern Africa in 1803-6. Translated from the original German by Annie Plumptre. London. 1812.

Linschoten, John Hvighen V.—His Discours of Voyages into ye Easte and Weste Indies. Printed at London, by John Wolfe. 1598.

Little, James Stanley.—South Africa. A Sketch Book of Men, Manners, and Facts, etc. London. 1884.

Livingstone, David.—Missionary Travels and Researches in South Africa, including a Seven Years' Residence in the interior of Africa. London. 1857.

Lucas, Thos. J., Late Captain C.M.R.—Camp Life and Sport in South Africa: Experience of Kaffir Warfare with the Cape Mounted Rifles. London. 1878.

Mabille, A.—Se-Suto-English, and English-Se-Suto Vocabulary. With an Elementary Sketch of Se-Suto Grammar by E. Jacottet. Morija. 1893.

Mackenzie, John.—Ten Years north of the Orange River: everyday life and work among the South African tribes, from 1859 to 1869. Edinburgh. 1871.

Mackenzie, John.—Day Dawn in Dark Places: a story of Wanderings and Work in Bechuanaland. London. 1883.

Mackenzie, John.—Austral Africa, losing it or ruling it: being incidents and experiences in Bechuanaland, Cape Colony, and England. 2 Vols. London. 1887.

Mackinnon, Rev. James.—South African Traits. Edinburgh. 1887.

Maclean, Colonel, C.B.—Chief Commissioner in British Kaffraria. A Compendium of Kaffir Laws and Customs. Compiled by direction of. Mount Coke. 1858.

Macnab, Frances.—On Veldt and Farm in Bechuanaland, Cape Colony, The Transvaal, and Natal. London. 1897.

Mann, Robert James, M.D.—The Colony of Natal. An Account of the Characteristics and Capabilities of this British Dependency. London. *Circa* 1859.

Mansvelt, Prof. N.—Proeve van een Kaapsch-Hollandsch Idioticon, met Toelichtingen en Opmerkingen Betreffende Land, Volk, en Taal. Kaapstad. 1884.

Martin, Annie.—Home Life on an Ostrich Farm. London. 1890.

Mason, G. H.—Life with the Zulus of Natal, South Africa. London. 1855.

Merriman, Archdeacon.—The Kaffir, the Hottentot, and the Frontier Farmer. Passages of Missionary Life. London. 1854.

Methuen, Henry H.—Life in the Wilderness, or Wanderings in South Africa. London. 1848.

Meyer, Heinrich, Dr. phil.—Die Sprache der Buren. Göttingen. 1901.

Mitford, Bertram.—Through the Zulu Country, its Battlefields and its People. London. 1883. And other Works.

Moffat, R.—Missionary Scenes and Labours in South Africa. London. 1842.

Moodie, Donald.—Specimens of the Authentic Records of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope, relative to the Aboriginal Tribes. Cape of Good Hope. 1841.

Moodie, Duncan C. F.—The History of Battles and Adventures of the British, the Boers, and the Zulus, etc., in Southern Africa, from the time of Pharaoh Necho to 1880. 2 Vols. Cape Town. 1888.

Moodie, Lieut. J. W. D.—Ten Years in South Africa: including a particular description of the wild sports of the country. 2 Vols. London. 1835.

Murray, James A. H., LL.D.—A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles, founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society. Oxford. 1884. A—.

Napier, Lieut.-Col. E. Elers.—Excursions in Southern Africa, including a History of the Cape Colony, an Account of the Native Tribes, etc. 2 Vols. London. 1849.

Nicholson, George, Jun.—The Cape and its Colonists, with hints to Settlers in 1848. London. 1848.

Nicholson, G.—Fifty Years in the Transvaal. Being some Recollections and Reflections of a Veteran Pioneer. London. 1895.

Nicolls, James, F.R.G.S., and W. Eglinton.—The Sportsman in South Africa, the Haunts, Habits, Description, and the Pursuit of all Game, both Fur and Feather, found south of the Zambezi (including the Cape Colony, Transvaal, Bechuanaland, Natal, and Damaraland) at the present day, with brief notices of the fresh- and salt-water fishes. London. 1892.

Noble, John, Clerk of the House of Assembly.—History, Productions, and Resources of the Cape of Good Hope. Official Handbook. Cape Town. 1886.

Noble, John.—South Africa, Past and Present, a Short History of the European Settlement at the Cape. Cape Town. 1877.

Noble, Prof.—The Cape and its People. By South African Writers. Cape Town. 1869.

Oates, Frank, F.R.G.S.—Matabeleland and the Victoria Falls. A Naturalist's Wanderings in the Interior of South Africa. London. 1881.

Owen, Captain W. F. W.—Narrative of Voyages to explore the shores of Africa, Arabia, and Madagascar; performed in H.M. Ships "Leven" and "Barraconta". 2 Vols. London. 1833.

Pappe, L., M.D.—Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus; or an enumeration of South African Plants used as remedies by the Colonists of the Cape of Good Hope. Cape Town. 1860.

Pappe, L., M.D.—Silva Capensis, or a description of South African Forest Trees, and Arborescent Shrubs, used for technical and economical purposes. London. 1862.

Pappe, L., M.D.—Synopsis of the Edible Fishes at the Cape of Good Hope. Cape Town. 1866.

Paterson, Lieut. William.—A Narrative of Four Journeys into the Country of the Hottentots and Caffraria. In the years one thousand seven hundred and seventy-seven, eight and nine. London. 1789.

Percival, Captain Robert.—An Account of the Cape of Good Hope containing an Historical View of its original Settlement by the Dutch, its Capture by the British in 1795, and the different Policy pursued there by the Dutch and British Governments, etc., etc. London. 1804.

Philip, Rev. John, D.D.—Researches in South Africa, illustrating the Civil, Moral, and Religious Condition of the Native Tribes, including Journals of the Author's Travels into the Interior. 2 Vols. London. 1828.

Plant, Robert.—The Zulu in Three Tenses, being a forecast of the Zulu's Future in the light of his Past and Present. Pietermaritzburg. 1905.

Prichard, Helen M.—Friends and Foes in the Transkei, an Englishwoman's Experiences during the Cape Frontier War of 1877-78. London. 1880.

Pringle, Thomas.—Ephemerides, or occasional Poems, written in Scotland and South Africa. London. 1828.

Pringle, Thomas.—Narrative of a Residence in South Africa. London. 1835.

Reitz, F. W.—Sestig uitgesogte Afrikaanse Gedigte. Amsterdam and Pretoria. 1897.

Reitz, F. W.—A Century of Wrong. London. 1900.

Relation of the Voyage to Siam.—Performed by Six Jesuits, sent by the French King to the Indies and China in the year 1685. London. 1688.

Reunert, Theodore.—Diamonds and Gold in South Africa. Cape Town. 1893.

Robinson, Hon. Sir John, K.C.M.G.—A Life Time in South Africa, being the Recollections of the first Premier of Natal. London. 1900.

Rogers, A. W., M.A.—An Introduction to the Geology of the Cape Colony. London. 1905.

Russell, George.—The History of Old Durban and Reminiscences of an Emigrant of 1850. Natal. 1899.

Russell, Robert.—Natal, the Land and its Story. Pietermaritzburg. 1891.

S.A.A.A.S. Annual Reports.

Sandeman, E. F.—Eight Months in an Ox-Waggon. Reminiscences of Boer Life. London. 1880.

Schiel, Adolf.—23 Jahre Sturm und Sonnenschein in Süd-Afrika. Leipzig. 1902.

Schultz, Auret, M.D., and A. Hammar, C.E.—The New Africa, a Journey up the Chobe and down the Okavanga Rivers, a Record of Exploration and Sport. London. 1877.

Science in South Africa, A Handbook and Review of. Prepared under the auspices of the South African Governments and the South African Association for the Advancement of Science. Cape Town. 1905.

Scientific African.—6 Parts. 1895-96.

Sclater, W. L., M.A.—The Mammals of South Africa. 2 Vols. London. 1900.

Scott Elliot, G. F., M.A.—A Naturalist in Mid-Africa, being an account of a Journey to the Mountains of the Moon and Tanganyika. London. 1896.

Scully, William Charles.—Between Sun and Sand. London. 1898 And other Works.

Selous, F. C., C.M.Z.S.—Travel and Adventure in South-East Africa, being the narrative of the last eleven years spent by the Author on the Zambesi and its Tributaries, with an account of the Colonization of Mashonaland and the progress of the gold industry in that country. London. 1893.

Selous, F. C., C.M.Z.S.—Sunshine and Storm in Rhodesia, being a narrative of events in Matabeleland, both before and during the native insurrection, up to the date of the disbandment of the Buluwayo Field-Force. London. 1896.

Selous, Percy, and H. A. Bryden.—Travel and Big Game. London. 1896.

Shaw, Rev. Barnabas.—Memorials of South Africa. London. 1840.

Sheffield, T.--Story of the Settlement. Grahamstown. 1884.

Shooter, Rev. Joseph.—The Kaffirs of Natal and the Zulu Country. London. 1857.

Sim, Thomas R., F.L.S.—Sketch and Check-List of the Flora of Kaffraria. Cape Town. 1894.

Sim, Thomas R., F.L.S.—The Forests and Forest Flora of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope. Aberdeen. 1907.

Skeat, Walter William, M.A., and Charles Otto Blagden, M.A.—Pagan Races of the Malay Peninsula. 2 Vols. London. 1906.

Smith, Andrew, M.D.—Illustrations of the Zoology of South Africa, consisting chiefly of the Figures and Descriptions of the objects of Natural History, collected during an Expedition into the Interior of South Africa in the years 1834, 1835, and 1836, fitted out by "The Cape of Good Hope Association for exploring Central Africa". London. 1848. In this Work a Volume is devoted to each of the following branches of Zoology: Invertebrates, Reptilia, Pisces, Aves, and Mammalia.

Smith, Andrew, M.A.—Contributions to South African Materia Medica. Lovedale, South Africa. 1888.

Smith, Rev. Thornley.—Sketches of South Africa. Wesleyan Methodist Magazine. London. 1849.

Somerset, Mrs. Colonel.—Adventures of Mrs. Colonel Somerset in Caffraria, during the War. Edited by I. D. Fenton. London. 1858.

South African Native Races Committee.—The Native Races of South Africa. London. 1901.

Sparrman, Andrew, M.A.—A Voyage to the Cape of Good Hope, towards the Antarctic Polar Circle, and round the World, but chiefly into the country of the Hottentots and Caffers, from the year 1772 to 1776. 2 Vols. London. 1785.

Stanley, Henry M.—In Darkest Africa, or the Quest, Rescue, and Retreat of Emin, Governor of Equatoria. 2 Vols. London. 1890.

Stark, A. C., M.B.—The Birds of South Africa. 4 Vols. London. 1900.

Statham, F. Reginald.—Blacks, Boers, and British. A three-cornered Problem. London. 1881.

Stavorinus, John Splinter.—Voyages to the East Indies. Translated from the original Dutch by Samuel Hull Wilcocke, with notes and additions by the Translator. 3 Vols. London. 1798.

Steedman, Andrew.—Wanderings and Adventures in the interior of Southern Africa. 2 Vols. London. 1835.

Sternberg, Adalbert Graf.—Meine Erlebnisse und Erfahrungen im Boorenkriege. Berlin. 1901.

Stockenstrom, Sir Andries, Bart.—The Autobiography of the late Sir

Andries Stockenstrom, Bart., sometime Lieutenant-Governor of the Eastern Province of the Colony of the Cape of Good Hope. 2 Vols. Cape Town. 1887.

Stoneman, Bertha.—Plants and their Ways in South Africa. London. 1906.

Stout, Captain Benjamin.—Cape of Good Hope and its Dependencies. An accurate and truly interesting description of those delightful regions situated five hundred miles north of the Cape. London. 1820.

Stow, George W., F.G.S.—Geological Notes upon Griqualand West. London. 1875.

Stow, George W., F.G.S.—The Native Races of South Africa. A History of the Intrusion of the Hottentots and Bantu into the Hunting Grounds of the Bushmen, the Aborigines of the Country. London. 1905.

Sutherland, Lieut.-Col.—Memoir respecting the Kaffirs, Hottentots, and Bosjesmans of South Africa. 2 Vols. Cape Town. 1845.

Tetzner, Dr. F.—Deutsches Wörterbuch. Leipzig. n.d.

Theal, George McCall.—Chronicles of Cape Commanders, or an Abstract of original Manuscripts in the Archives of the Cape Colony, dating from 1651 to 1691, compared with printed Accounts of the Settlement by various Visitors during that time. Also Four short Papers upon Subjects connected with the East India Company's Government at a later period, reprinted from Colonial Periodicals, and Notes on English, Dutch, and French Books, published before 1796, containing references to South Africa. Cape Town. 1882. And numerous other Works.

Thomas, Thomas Morgan.—Eleven Years in Central South Africa: A Journey into the interior—sketch of recently discovered diamond and gold fields—Umzilikazi, his country and people—a brief history of the Zambesi Missions. London. 1872.

Thomson, George.—Travels and Adventures in Southern Africa; comprising a view of the present state of the Cape Colony, with observations of the progress and prospects of the British Emigrants. London. 1827.

Thunberg, Charles Peter, M.D.—Travels in Europe, Africa and Asia, made between the years 1770 and 1779. 4 Vols. London. 1795.

Thunberg, Charles Peter, M.D.—Flora Capensis sistens Plantas Promontorii Bonæ Spei Africes. Stuttgart. 1823.

Times' History of the War in South Africa.—6 Vols. London. 1900 to 1909.

Tindall, Henry.—A Grammar and Vocabulary of the Namaqua-Hottentot Language. Cape Town. 1857.

Trimen, Roland, F.Z.S.—South African Butterflies: A Monograph of the Extra-Tropical Species. 3 Vols., London. 1889.

Turnbull, A. R. R.—Tales from Natal. London. 1901.

Tyler, Rev. Josiah.—Forty Years among the Zulus. Boston and Chicago. n.d.

Van Twist, Jehan.—Gewesen Overhooft van de Nederlandsche comtooren, Amadabat, Cambaya, Brodera, en Broitchia, Generall Beschrijvinge van Indien, etc. t'Amsterdam. 1648.

Vercoullie, Prof. J.—Etymologisch Woordenboek der Nederlandsche Taal. Gent. 1890.

Wallace, Robert, F.L.S.—Farming Industries of the Cape Colony. London. 1896.

Warren, Lieut.-General Sir Charles.—On the Veldt in the Seventies. London. 1902.

Wilmot, Hon. Alex.—The Life and Times of Sir Richard Southey,

K.C.M.G., etc. Formerly Colonial Secretary of the Cape Colony, and Lieut.-Governor of Griqualand West. London. 1904.

Wilson, David MacKay.—Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal. London. n.d.

Wood, Colonel J. G., M.L.A.—Through Matabeleland. The Record of a Ten Months' Trip in an Ox-Wagon through Mashonaland and Matabeleland. London. 1893.

Woodward, R. B., and J. D. S.—Natal Birds (including the Species belonging to Natal and the Eastern Districts of the Cape Colony). Pietermaritzburg. 1899.

Wylde, A.—My Chief and I, Six Months in Natal after the Langalibalele outbreak. London. 1880.

Yule, Colonel Henry, R.E., and the late Arthur Coke Burnell, Ph.D.—Hobson-Jobson; being a Glossary of Anglo-Indian Colloquial Words and Phrases, and of Kindred Terms; Etymological, Historical, Geographical and Discursive. London. 1886.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Amer.	=	American.
Ar.	=	Arabic.
A.S.	=	Anglo-Saxon.
C.D.	=	Cape Dutch.
D.	=	Dutch.
Eng.	=	English.
F.	=	French.
G.	=	German.
Grk.	=	Greek.
Heb.	=	Hebrew.
Hind.	=	Hindustanee.
Hot.	=	Hottentot.
It.	=	Italian.
K. or Kaf.	=	Kaffir.
L.	=	Latin.
M. or Mal.	=	Malay.
M.E.	=	Middle English.
O.F.	=	Old French.
O.H.G.	=	Old German.
Pers.	=	Persian.
Pl.	=	Plural.
Pol.	=	Polish.
P. or Port.	=	Portuguese.
S. or Ses.	=	Sesuto.
Sech.	=	Sechuana.
Sp.	=	Spanish.
Z.	=	Zulu.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

In a country like South Africa, the various territories of which have, at different periods, been held by so many different peoples, and the intercourse between it and the East and West having been at times so intimate and close, it could scarcely be otherwise than that the languages spoken in the sub-continent should retain traces of that intercourse and evidences of those various occupations. There is little doubt that the aborigines of South Africa were the Bushmen, traces of whose occupation have been found everywhere from the Indian Ocean to the Atlantic and from the Zambezi to the Cape Peninsula, in cave paintings, rock chippings, nomenclature, etc. They have, however, been so ruthlessly hunted down and destroyed by successive intruding races, that now they have almost entirely disappeared from the vast territory which at one time was their exclusive hunting-ground.

The Hottentots, or, as they were pleased to designate themselves, the Khoi-Khoin (men of men), driven before the flooding Bantu tide, which came wave on wave from the northern interior, travelled southward and westward, until they were stopped by the waters of the Atlantic, a few degrees below the equator. Thence they found their way along the coast southward, and eventually spread over pretty well the whole of the sub-continent lying between the Orange River and the Cape of Good Hope, which territory they occupied when the Cape was discovered by Bartholomew Diaz toward the end of the fifteenth century.

The Bantu or Kaffir races were then in possession of the central and eastern territories; just how far south they had at that time pushed their way it would be difficult to say exactly; but that the Bushmen and Hottentots of one tribe or another had occupied the country along the eastern coast as far as the Great Kei River and had continued to occupy it until comparatively recent times, there can be little, if any, doubt; for the names of the rivers up to the Great Kei have

the characteristic clicks of the speech of these peoples, while beyond the Great Kei they have, speaking generally, the open syllables which are characteristic of the Bantu speech.

The Portuguese, who discovered the Cape of Good Hope, made very little *direct* impression either upon the nomenclature or upon the languages of the territory now covered by the British Colonies; for apart from a few names given to islands, bays, and capes (e.g. Santa Cruz, Saldanha Bay, St. Helena and St. Francis Bays, Diaz Point, Capes Agulhas and Recife), and a few words still in current use, there are not many other traces of their visits.

For a century and a half after the discovery of the Cape, it was nothing other than a place of call, and as such was visited by the ships of those countries—Portugal, Holland, and England—engaged in the eastern trade, which, by the discovery of the new route to India by Vasco da Gama in 1497, had passed for ever out of the hands of the Venetian merchants. In 1652, however, a definite settlement was made; the Dutch East India Company, under Charter granted by the States-General of the United Provinces of Holland, took possession of Table Bay Valley, establishing there a provision station for the benefit of their vessels engaged in the Eastern trade, Jan Anthony van Riebeeck being appointed the first Governor.

For some time the operations of the Company were limited to the immediate neighbourhood of Table Bay Valley, the little settlement bartering various commodities with the Hottentots for their cattle and fat-tailed sheep; gradually, however, these operations were extended until they embraced a fairly wide field. Then, as the servants of the Company served their time and obtained their discharge, some of them, electing to remain in the country, were located as Burghers upon Loan Farms, as they were called: others pushed their way northward, westward, and eastward, until by the time the Colony passed into the hands of the British in 1806, the whole of what is now called the Western Province and the Great Fish River District, was more or less under the control of the Company, and was occupied as far as Graaff Reinet (which had been formed into a District in 1786) and Algoa Bay by Dutch Burghers.

The country beyond was still in the hands of the Kaffirs; this has since passed into the possession of the British, who

have continued to push the frontier forward and northward, until the territory, which now acknowledges the sovereignty of the King of Great Britain, reaches to and beyond the Zambezi.

Languages.

So far as the languages are concerned which are spoken in a territory which has changed hands so frequently and so rapidly, and in which the conquerors and the conquered have continued to live side by side, only one result could be expected. Various races, using different languages, cannot occupy the same territory and live in daily contact and intercourse without being mutually affected, each will acquire something from, and in turn give something to, the others. Whether that something is to prove an advantage or otherwise, time alone can determine.

1. The Click Class of Language.

This class consists of the languages of the Bushmen and the Hottentots. These peoples, of whom there are now very few, if any, of pure blood, have, generally speaking, lost their own language, and now speak either Dutch or English or both. Even the Namaquas and Korannas, isolated as they have been in the desert countries which they occupy, have few among them to-day who can speak the language of their fathers, but they have not failed to contribute their proportion to the vocabulary of every-day South African speech, as such words as *baroo*, *buchu*, *dagga*, *gnu*, *kambroo*, *karoo*, *karos*, *kiri*, *quagga*, and such place names as *Sapkamma*, *Tsitsikamma*, *Kraggakamma*, *Keiskama*, *Gamka*, *Dwyka*, *Gamtoos*, *Camdeboo*, *O'okiep*, *Nababeep*, and others, bear ample testimony; a fair number of these being of Bushman origin.

And here it may be said, in passing, that the importance of the study of place names is too often overlooked. In the large majority of cases they are fraught with quite a considerable ethnological, historical, or descriptive interest, which a careful research will serve to elucidate. Not unfrequently an altogether unexpected light has been shed upon obscure ethnological points by the unfolding of the original significance of place names; a light which has settled questions which would otherwise have remained in continual dispute. As South Africans our lot is cast in a country which, compared with the hoary

antiquity of some of the countries of the northern hemisphere, is quite young; geologically it is probably older than they are, but historically it is much their junior. The South African place names have not, on this account, and, speaking generally, become so much disguised by phonetic abrasion as have so many of those in the countries referred to, and their reference, historical or descriptive, is consequently not so difficult to ascertain. This is true in the main of place names of both Kaffir and European origin; there are some, however, that so far have refused to reveal the secret of their birth; possibly they were originally Bushman names, which have been so disfigured as Hottentots or Kaffirs, Dutch or English have maltreated them, that now they give no hint of their original form or meaning.

This, however, is by the way, though it is a well-known fact that nations which were so unlettered as to be quite unable to inscribe their annals on tablets or in books, have, nevertheless, left sufficient information in the names of hills, valleys, mountains, rivers, and other natural features, to enable men, centuries after, to reconstruct the main line of their history. The Bushmen have gone, the Hottentots are rapidly following, but their fleeting breath has established monuments all over South Africa far more enduring than they themselves: their place names fall upon the ear like the echoes of a departing people, reminding us that they once were, and that at one time the land was theirs. Those that we do understand are sufficient and apt, describing the features of nature as they struck these keen-eyed children of the desert, and some of them are highly poetical.

2. **The Alliteral Class of Language.**

This class consists of the various languages of the Bantu peoples. Whether the Kaffirs adopted many Bushmen or Hottentot words into their vocabulary or not is a question upon which authorities differ: although the Rev. J. L. Döhne in the Introduction to his Zulu-Kaffir Dictionary will not allow much in this direction, he is nevertheless compelled to recognize some as from this source: e.g. *u Tixo*, the Divine Being; *Camnca*, to talk a great deal; *i Cwilika*, steel for striking fire; *i Nqaluka*, a pack-saddle, etc. It would seem, however, that the Amaxosa and other Bantu peoples are indebted for the curious clicks which mark their speech to

the Bushmen and Hottentots whose domains they invaded and appropriated. This appears to be indicated first by the fact already mentioned that the names of the rivers and other natural features—such names being endowed the world over with a tenacious vitality—in territory originally held by Bushmen and Hottentots, have these clicks: e.g. *i Nciba*, the Great Kei; *i Nxoba*, the Great Fish River; *i Xeli*, the Keiskamma; *i Qonci*, the Buffalo; etc. (the *c*, *q*, and *x* in each case represent different clicks—dental, palatal, and lateral respectively); while they are unknown to the purely Kaffir names of the rivers beyond; e.g. *Umtata*, *Umzimvubu*, *Umzimkulu*, *Umlaas*, *Umhloti*, etc.

This suggestion as to the origin of the Kaffir clicks would seem to be supported further by the fact that they are entirely absent from the Sechuana dialects, and are pronounced less vigorously by the Zulus than they are by the natives of the Cape Colony, while they gradually disappear as one advances in the direction of what may be regarded as the original home of the Bantu race. Dr. Bleek speaks of "the readiness with which the Kaffirs adopt Hottentot manners and words, and it is certainly remarkable," he continues, "that not one instance has yet been known where Hottentots have in the like manner imitated their Eastern neighbours, except of course such Bushmen [1] as have been living among Kaffir tribes, and who, like true gipsies, have made their language, at least, a *mixtum compositum*, out of all sorts of tongues. . . . The Kaffir . . . clicks . . . I consider to be originally Hottentot and adopted from them by the Kaffirs. . . . The numerous black population of the tropical parts of South Africa pressing upon them (the Hottentots), they were driven from one position to another, their kraals destroyed, their males killed, and their women and girls taken prisoners. That these, who became then the wives of their victors, should not have exerted a powerful influence upon them, and still more upon the rising generation, would be absurd to suppose; nay, we might expect that if they had been admitted to the councils and courts of justice, where principally the

[1] Dr. Bleek does not appear to distinguish with sufficient clearness between the Bushmen and the Hottentots. This is a failing, too, on the part of the writers of the earlier Dutch records, by whom the two terms are often used as if they were synonymous, which has given rise to confusion of ideas and incorrect impressions.

right orthodox language was stamped, their remarkable gift of the tongue would soon have thoroughly Hottentotized the Kaffir language. As it was they introduced their peculiarity of pronunciation, the clicks." (Bleek's "Researches into the Relations between the Hottentots and Kaffirs," "Cape Monthly Magazine," I. pp. 202-3, 1857.)

The Rev. J. L. Döhne, while admitting the possibility of the clicks having been adopted by the Kaffirs from the Hottentots, says that "the Hottentot influence is generally supposed greater than is really the case, because every word which contains a click is not necessarily of Hottentot descent; and it appears to be more certain that the Kaffir nation have in some way or another allowed themselves to be influenced by clicking nations, so as to change other characters for clicks". Further, he says that the Hottentot "clicks differ considerably from the Kaffir, and are in general of a more difficult pronunciation. . . . I am ready to admit," he concludes, "that the Hottentot, etc., clicks are the oldest, and that the Kaffir are a contraction of them." ("Zulu-Kaffir Dictionary," Introduction, pp. xxxvi-xxxvii.)

The Kaffir vocabulary has been, and is being, considerably augmented by words from both Dutch and English, denoting ideas and objects which have been brought within their cognizance either by one or the other. Mr. I. Bud M'belle in his "Kaffir Scholar's Companion" gives a list of 300 words borrowed by the Kaffirs from the Dutch, and another of 225 borrowed from the English, and a further list of 450 native words necessitated by the advent of Europeans: e.g. *i Mesi*, D. *mes*, a knife; *um Bontye*, D. *boontje*, a bean; *i Fenstile*, D. *venster*, a window; *i Kostina*, D. *schoorsteen*, a chimney; *i Baibele*, Eng. the Bible; *i Kabitshi*, Eng. a cabbage; *i Kloko*, Eng. a clock, etc. On the other hand many purely Kaffir words are in frequent use in the daily speech of South Africa: e.g. *Impi*, *Indaba*, *Inkosi*, *Donga*, *Amasi*, *Induna*, *Lobola*, *Mahem*, *Mamba*, and many others.

What influence these Bantu peoples are to have in the future upon the history and language of South Africa is a question of considerable interest. That it is to be a diminishing influence is scarcely likely. The Red Indians are rapidly disappearing in America; the Maories seem to be decreasing in New Zealand; but the strong arm of British authority in South Africa, having put a stop to those intertribal wars,

which ever and again destroyed whole native communities and tribes, has done much not only to preserve these peoples, but to increase their numbers, and, as a consequence, their power to influence the country either for good or bad has been increased also. This is a factor that must enter into the calculation in any effort to forecast the future of South Africa, whether as to its history or language; it can be ignored neither by the Statesman nor by the Student of South African domestic affairs.

3. Oriental Languages.

It was stated in an earlier paragraph that the Portuguese made little *direct* impression either upon the nomenclature or upon the languages of the territory now covered by the Cape Colony and Natal; *indirectly*, however, they must have influenced the Dutch speech of South Africa to an extent that is not always appreciated. How this was accomplished the following quotation from the Introductory remarks (p. xvi) to Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary," will indicate: "The conquests and long occupation of the Portuguese, who, by the year 1540, had established themselves in all the chief ports of India and the East, have, as might have been expected, bequeathed a large number of expressions to the European nations who have followed and in great part superseded them. . . . The natives in contact with the Portuguese learned a bastard variety of the language of the latter, which became the *lingua franca* of intercourse, not only between European and native, but occasionally between Europeans of different nationalities. This Indo-Portuguese dialect continued to serve such purposes down to a late period in the last century, and has in some localities survived down nearly to our own day." A. Hamilton, whose experiences belonged chiefly to the end of the seventeenth century, though his book was not published till 1727, states: "Along the sea-coasts the *Portuguese* have left a *Vestige* of their language, tho' much corrupted, yet it is the language that most Europeans learn first, to qualify them for a general converse with one another, as well as with the different inhabitants of India." ("A New Account of the East Indies," Preface, p. xii.) Lockyer, who published sixteen years before Hamilton, also says: "This they (the Portuguese) may justly boast, they have established a kind of *Lingua Franca* in all the seaports in

India of great use to other *Europeans*, who would find it difficult in many places to be understood without it." ("An Account of the Trade in India, etc.," p. 286, 1711.)

Ever since the discovery of the Cape route to the East the intercourse between the Cape and the Orient has always been more or less close, and there can be little doubt that the words of Portuguese, Indian, and Malay origin, still current in South African Dutch, are remnants of the mixed speech just spoken of, the vocabulary of which was composed chiefly of these elements. These words would find their way into the South African vocabulary, (1) to some slight extent as the result of intercourse with the crews of vessels calling at the Cape on their way to or from the East; (2) to a still further extent as the result of the settlement in South Africa, after lives of adventure in various Dutch East Indian possessions, of many of the European sailors and servants of the Dutch East India Company; (3) but most of all as the result of the introduction into the country of numerous slaves from India, Ceylon, the Malay Archipelago, etc.; for in not a few cases, this *Lingua Franca* would be the only means of communication between masters and slaves, while the need of some common means of intercourse would compel those slaves brought from Madagascar and from the East and West coasts of Africa, to acquire something of it as well.

That this was the actual condition of things at the Cape until well on toward the end of the eighteenth century appears from the following quotation from Thunberg's "Travels" (3rd ed., I. p. 102, 1795); writing of the Cape in 1772 he says: "The domestics here do not consist of Europeans, but of black or tawny slaves from *Malabar*, *Madagascar*, or other parts of *India*. These, in general, speak either broken Portuguese, or else the Malabar, seldom the Dutch language." To the intercourse of this period belong such Portuguese words as *ayah*, *kipper-sol*, *nooi*, *sambreero*, *sambriel*, etc.; such Malay words as *atjar*, *baatje*, *pondok*, *blatcham*, *pierinki*, *lory*, *sambal*, etc., and such words as *tjap* (*chap*), *mebos*, *kabaai*, *sjambok*, and others.

Then later on, after the Cape had become a Dependency of Great Britain, and the officers of "John Company" found their way to South Africa to recruit their health in its salubrious climate, they would bring with them a further instalment of Eastern words, some of which, as *chowrie*, *chutney*,

tiffin, etc., would find a permanent place in the South African vocabulary.

And yet again in quite recent times, the Indian labourers introduced into Natal by the Government of that Colony, many of whom, having served the term for which they were indentured, have made their way into other parts of South Africa, have added their quota in such words as *brinjall*, *dhoby*, *punkah*, *sirdar*, and others, all of which are of frequent use in the Garden Colony among the European colonists.

The still more recent introduction of the Chinese to the Transvaal may result, their speedy repatriation notwithstanding, in a few additions to the South African vocabulary from that source.

4. The Dutch Language.

It goes without saying that a considerable proportion of the words and phrases common in the every-day speech of the South African colonist of other than Dutch descent, are Dutch. It could not be otherwise since the Dutch were the earliest Europeans to settle at the Cape, and since it continued to be a Dutch possession for over a century and a half before it passed into the hands of the British. One can imagine somewhat of the astonishment and curiosity which would possess these earliest settlers in this country as they began to acquaint themselves with the details of their new surroundings; how every feature of nature, every flower and tree, every bird and beast would attract their attention and evoke their surprise, either because of its likeness, or because of its unlikeness, to the features, the flora and fauna, of the land they had left. They would pick up a few names from the natives, such as *buchu*, *dagga*, *gnu*, *quagga*, *kiri*, *karos*, *karoo*, etc., but that would be quite too slow a process for their requirements, and there would be for them no other course than to fall back upon the names of the objects with which they were familiar in their native land and apply them to those new objects, which, for one reason or another, would remind them of objects which they had left behind. This would account for the many names of animals, birds, fish, plants, etc., transferred from Europe and given to South African animals, birds, fish, plants, etc., such as *das* (*sie*), a badger; *eland*, an elk; *kabeljouw*, a cod; *seisje*, a linnet; *spreeuw*, a starling; *meerkat*, a monkey; *snoek*, a pike; *tulp*,

a tulip; *ui* or *ajuin*, an onion; *schoenlapper*, a butterfly—in Holland the name of a variety, in South Africa a generic name—and many others.

It must not be thought, however, that the Dutch of the Cape lost the power of originating when they emigrated hither, and were unable to evolve new names; neither must it be supposed that the new names which they evolved were wanting in pertinence, for whether picturesque or practical, poetic or humorous, they are all of them apt. As examples of the picturesque take *noois-boom*, the young lady's tree, because it grows in shape something like an umbrella or parasol; *mist-kruier*, dung-porter, the beetle that rolls the balls of dung; *galjeon*, the fish whose shape is suggestive of that of the old Spanish galleon; *fiskaal*, the butcher-bird, whose tyrannous dealings with its captives are reminiscent of the rule of the Fiskaal of earlier days. As examples of the practical we have *vel- or veld-schoen*, skin- or field-shoes; *velbroek*, the leather riding-trousers which used to be known among the settlers of 1820 as crackers; *brand-zolder*, the loft above the thick brick or earthen ceiling and under the thatch of the roof, by which the under part of the house was protected should the thatch take fire; *matjesgoed*, reeds used for making mats; and that toothsome confection known as *moss-bolletjes*. Then as examples of the poetic we have *kannidood*, cannot die, the Aloe that flourishes through a long drought; *dageraad*, dawn or daybreak, the fish whose gorgeous colouring resembles the sky at dawn; *naaldkoker*, needle-case, the dragon-fly; *vogelent*, bird-graft, mistletoe; and the expression *schimmel-dag*, describing the dappled appearance which the sky so often has at daybreak. And as examples of the humorous take *wacht-en-bietje*, wait-a-bit, the thorn that detains one in spite of one's self; *roer-mij-niet*, touch me not; the name given to two very different plants, contains a hint as to their disagreeable character; *jantjie-trap-suutjes*, Johnny-tread-lightly, the chameleon; *kalkoeneier*, turkey egg, one with a freckled face; *pampoentjes*, little pumpkins, the mumps; *biscop*, a fish whose large head and peculiar facial features give it a ludicrously grave appearance; *Jakob Evertsen*, another fish whose florid face and protruding eyes were supposed by the early colonists to present a striking resemblance to the facial features of a Dutch captain of that name; and the tasty dish, *Oú-vrouw-onder-de-kombers*, old wife

under the blanket, known to English-speaking folk as "Toad in the hole".

It must be said, however, that some of the anomalies of Cape Dutch nomenclature seem to be as perverse and wanting in reason as one can imagine: e.g. the giraffe is a camel (*kameel*); the leopard is a tiger (*tijger*), a name which the English colonists have adopted; the hyena is a *wolf*; the kori bustard is a peacock (*pauw*); the horse mackerel is a *Marsbanker*, although the bank on which the real Marsbanker is caught is near the Marsdiep in "the rolling Zuyder Zee"; and a whale whose habitat is the Southern Ocean is incongruously enough called a *Noordkaaper*, as though its natural waters were somewhere in the Arctic regions.

5. The German Language.

Many of the surnames borne by old Cape families indicate that a fair number of those who found their way to South Africa in the early days as servants, either civil or military, of the Dutch East India Company, were Germans. Being under no repressive restrictions as to the use of their mother tongue, we are not surprised to find evidences of their influence in the Cape vocabulary. There can be little doubt that it is to these sons of the Fatherland that the Cape Dutch is indebted for such words as *gansegaar*, *lager*, *nixnuts*, *dan en wan*, *piets*, *swaap*, *sens*, *stewel*, etc.

6. The Huguenots and the French Language.

The Huguenots who had succeeded in escaping from their native land and from the bloody persecutions which ensued upon the revocation of the Edict of Nantes, found their way, some 300 of them, men, women, and children, to the Cape of Good Hope. They were settled on lands in the neighbourhood of Stellenbosch and at Fransche Hoek. But permanent and beneficial as their influence has been upon the agriculture of the Colony, and also upon the character of the Dutch section of the colonists with whom they are now so closely identified as only to be distinguished by the names they bear, they seem to have made no corresponding impression upon the colonial vocabulary, only a few words of French origin surviving among the people, such as *andoeli*, *bandiet*, *frikadel*, *gilletjes*, *huspot*, *kaneel*, *kastrol*, *rossignol*, *Seuer*, *tamme-*

lijtjes, and a few others. This paucity of French words in the Cape vocabulary arises to a large extent, there can be little doubt, from the arbitrary treatment—necessary perhaps from the political point of view of the Dutch East India Company—which was meted out to them on their arrival in South Africa, 1688-1690, by the express instructions of the directors of that Company. They ordered that these refugees should be mixed as much as possible with the Dutch of the Colony, that nothing but Dutch should be taught to their children, and ultimately forbade them the use of their own language in official affairs and even in the service of God's House. As was desired, these drastic measures were so successful in the direction contemplated, viz. the loss of their distinctive national character, that in two generations the French language had entirely died out at the Cape.

Mr. H. C. V. Leibbrandt, late Keeper of the Cape Archives, in an article contributed to the "Zuid Afrikaansche Tijdschrift," September, 1886 (a translation of which he also published in the "Cape Times," 13 June, 1905), traversed the current opinion, which is stated by him thus: "that the representatives of the East India Company at the Cape had made every possible effort to let the French language fall into disuse, and in order to gain their object had acted very harshly and unfairly towards the French refugees". He adduces in support of his contention that this statement is incorrect, a large number of extracts from the dispatches which passed between the Lords Directors in Holland and their representatives at the Cape; but certain facts remain disclosed, for the most part, in the very extracts just referred to which appear to make, in their cumulative effect, very strongly *against* the view set forth by Mr. Leibbrandt, and *for* what he terms "the wrong impressions and erroneous traditions" which have been current ever since among the descendants of these same refugees.

(1) There is the expressed anxiety of the Lords Seventeen to "kill" the French language at the Cape. In their reply to Governor W. A. van der Stel's letter (14 March, 1701), in reply to an application made by the Rev. Pierre Simond, French Minister of Drakenstein, for permission to return to Europe (28 September, 1701), they say that one will be appointed as his successor who will understand both the Dutch and the French languages, "not however to preach in the

latter language, but only to be able to minister to the aged colonists who do not know our language, by visitation, exhortations, and consolations, and by that means, in course of time, to kill that language ".

(2) There is the expressed order of the same Lords Seventeen that the French children should be taught at school to speak, read, and write Dutch only: " With that object" (that is, to kill the French language) "the school shall henceforth proceed in no other direction or further than to let the youth learn our language, read and write it".

(3) There is the endorsement by the Lords Seventeen of Governor van der Stel's plan of mixing the French refugees with the Dutch colonists.

(4) There is the sternness with which Simon van der Stel in 1689 opposed the effort on the part of the Huguenots in the Drakenstein Mountains to establish their own church and elect their own vestry. At a Council meeting "after mature deliberation it was unanimously resolved, for the greater advantage of the Company, to restrain their French impertinences and all their plotting and check it in time; and by judicious punishments, to expose their subterfuges to the community at large and to warn them very seriously to do their duty ".

(5) There is the early entire disappearance of the French language at the Cape. The Abbe de la Caille (1767) asserts that "he had seen no one under forty years that could speak French, unless he was a new-comer from France". And M. Le Vaillant, whose travels cover the period 1780 to 1785, writes thus of the descendants of his fellow-countrymen as he found them: "In visiting Fransche Hoek, I did not, as before, regard without interest that race of French refugees, formerly persecuted by their unjust country, stripped, proscribed, dishonoured as so many wretches unworthy to exist. . . . Banished from France, they have even forgotten the language; but they have not forgotten their calamity. Their customs they have borrowed from the Dutch, their original character being totally lost, but they are distinguished for the most part by the darkness of their hair, which forms a striking contrast with the almost white hair of the other inhabitants." ("New Travels in Africa," I. p. 33, 1796.) This is conclusive as to the early disappearance of the national language and characteristics.

(6) There is the meagreness of the remnants of the French language which have found a permanent place in the Cape vocabulary.

(7) And last, there is the vigour and persistency of the tradition of harsh treatment which lingered among the descendants of the French Huguenots until quite recent times.

The facts mentioned in the paragraphs numbered one to four show, clearly enough, the disposition and desire of the authorities to repress and to kill the French language at the Cape. The facts of the remaining three paragraphs would seem to indicate that repressive and even harsh measures were adopted to secure the disappearance of the French language and also of anything and everything of manners and customs that was distinctively French.

But though the vocabulary of the Cape Dutch was, for the reasons given, affected so little by this comparatively large influx of foreigners, the language itself was modified by them in quite another direction, and that to an extent often overlooked. The intermingling of the two peoples—the French with the Dutch—at the Cape, and the compelling of the former to learn the language of the latter, could only have one issue, it would result in the corruption of the language spoken, by the paring down and ultimate disappearance of its inflexions and by the breaking up of its grammar. Compelled to speak a language hitherto unknown to them, we can readily understand how little attention they would be disposed to pay to the grammatical structure of the sentence, and how distinctions of number, gender, case, would be largely unheeded by them. Intermarriage between the French refugees and the Dutch colonists would tend to propagate and to perpetuate these deflexions from the purity of the language and this ignoring of its niceties.

In like manner, and perhaps to as great an extent, the Dutch language would be affected by the Hottentots and slaves, whose broken Dutch and mixed vocabulary in the kitchen, on isolated homesteads, in the veld and elsewhere, would help in the same direction, and the Dutch children constantly hearing it thus degraded, could hardly be expected to maintain it in its purity, and so the tide of corruption would be increased in volume year by year.

These were among the most powerful influences that

wrought to make the Dutch of the Cape, though very expressive, so different a language from the Dutch of Holland.

7. The English Language.

The Dutch and the English living side by side throughout the length and breadth of South Africa, while they have adopted and corrupted Bushman, Hottentot, and Bantu names for natural objects, edible roots, and various other things, have at the same time made free with each other's vocabulary. The English, finding many names to hand among their Dutch neighbours for things at first unfamiliar to them, have been perhaps the greatest misdoers in this direction, though the Dutch have incorporated a good many English words in their daily speech. The following list contains a very small proportion only of the words which have been thus annexed by the English colonist from his Dutch neighbour. They are many of them quite unknown to the great Oxford Dictionary, but the English colonist would find himself sadly hampered every day had he to do without them: *baas*, *banket*, *biltong*, *brak*, *erf*, *hamel*, *hok*, *kloof*, *kranz*, *lager*, *inspan* and *outspan*, *morgen*, *muid*, *nek*, *poort*, *schanz*, *schelm*, *schimmel*, *schut*, *sluit*, *spruit*, *trek*, *trippler*, *veld*, *vlei*, etc.

But capable as the English colonist appears to be in the matter of annexing, there are a few Africanderisms for which he is solely responsible; some of them are self-explanatory, but the new-comer would need to have the special meaning of others explained to him: e.g. a *seventy-four* is a fish so named from its resemblance in shape to the old 74-gun man-of-war, cf. *galjeon; Jack Hanger* and *Butcher bird* will be recognized by those who know the habits of this bird as the eminently appropriate name of *Lanius collaris*, known to the Dutch as the *Fiskal;* in South Africa a *mason* is not one who dresses stone or builds with it, he is simply a bricklayer; a *camp* is part of a farm which is wired or fenced in; a *boy*, if he happens to be a native, may be, and sometimes is, a grey-headed grandfather; *a good-for* is a South African name for what is elsewhere know as an IOU; *lands* in South Africa are not the broad acres of an estate, but just those portions of a farm that can be used for the cultivation of crops; a *canteen* is a low-class drinking place; a *devil* is a somewhat modified variety of whirlwind; a *barber* need not be a "tonsorial artist," it may be a fish; a *spider* has four wheels; and when a South

African river has risen in flood, it is universally spoken of as being *down*, even though its waters may have risen above the banks and flooded the neighbouring country.

There are a few expressions that one often hears from English lips in the Midland Districts of the Cape Colony the loss of which would be a distinct gain: e.g., "*He threw me over the hedge with a rock*" is rather a curious way of saying "He threw a stone over the hedge at me and hit me," but that is what it means; when one is asked "*Are you going with?*" you feel disposed to answer "With what?" or "With whom?" but when you are asked "*Are you going saam?*" the likelihood is that you will be still more mystified; when you are informed that two oxen were "*tramped by the train*," you are disposed to wonder what South African trains are like; when a man tells you that a certain road which you propose to travel is "*growing shut*" it takes you a moment or two to realize that he means the road is so little used that the bush and grass are encroaching upon it; when a mother scolds her offspring for "*rolling on the floor and coming home full of mud*," you will learn in due time that the floor is the ground of the street or garden, and you will be relieved to find that it is not "*full of mud*" that she means, but simply splashed with mud: and when you are informed that the person for whom you are asking is "*by the house*," you will soon get to understand that he or she is actually "*in*" the house. A not uncommon usage too in that same part of the country, among the poorer white people, especially if they wish to be specially deferential and polite, is to use the *third person* in direct address: speaking *to* Mr. Smith they will make a request thus: "If Mr. Smith will lend me half-a-crown, I will pay Mr. Smith back at the end of the week". It is not without interest to know that it was the custom in Suffolk years back, and may be so still, for the lower classes to intimate their deference to the person addressed in exactly the same way. These, and a few other curious ways of putting things, are most of them due, of course, to Dutch idioms, and might not seem at all out of the way from a Dutchman or a German making his first attempts in English; but it gives an Englishman, who loves the sentence that is lucid and logical, a shock to hear his native tongue maltreated by those who are just as English in blood as himself.

8. The Discovery of Diamonds and Gold.

There are one or two other events in South African history to which reference must be made as having affected the vocabulary of the sub-continent. The discovery of diamonds in South Africa in 1867, and, some twenty years later, the discovery of the now famous Sheba Gold Reef, naturally attracted seekers after wealth from all parts of the world. As the diamond and gold industries developed, and towns like Kimberley and Johannesburg sprang into existence, where but a short while before the wild animals of the veld were wont to disport themselves in enormous herds, large contributions were made to the colonial vocabulary, some of which met a very obvious want, others of which, together with the things they signify, the country could dispense with to great advantage: among the former may be mentioned such words as *reef*, *amalgam*, *tailings*, *stamps*, *blue-ground*, *floors*, *stands*, *slimes*, *output*, *yellow-ground*, *claim*, *to peg-off*, *debris*, *banket*, and others; and among the latter *goniv*, *gonivah*, *I.D.B.*, *to jump*, *schlenter*, *snyde diamonds*, and last and perhaps worst of all, *traps*.

The recent war in South Africa, as well as the large amount of war literature—much of it ephemeral enough—dealing directly or indirectly with South African doings and misdoings, which has not yet ceased to flow from the press, have familiarized readers all through the Empire with a good many Africanderisms, but there are very many more, familiar to the South African colonist of any experience, which the ordinary English reader and the new-comer to South Africa would need to have explained to them.

Aangeslaan.—This word is used in Cape Dutch of a tongue that is furred or coated with morbid matter.

Aankappen.—(D. *aan*, on, upon, in; *kappen*, to cut, chop, fell.) A Cape Dutch word used of the chafing or brushing of a horse's fetlock with the shoe or hoof of the fellow foot.

Aanmaning.—(D. *aan*, to, at, near; *manen*, to exhort; *aanmaning*, exhortation, warning, notice.) The name given by farmers to the occurrence of horse-sickness (q.v.) in an animal that was supposed to be immune or salted (q.v.).

"Long ago farmers had the experience, that the so-called salted horses may break down in immunity. They called these relapses or *aanmanings*." ("S. A. Journal of Science," IX. p. 10, No. 2, 1912.)

Aans.—(D. *aanstonds*, presently.) In Cape Dutch this word means just now, perhaps.

Aanstoot.—(D. *aan*, on, upon; *stooten*, to push, thrust.) In Cape Dutch this word is used of a "knock on" at football.

Aapsekost.—(D. *aap*, an ape; *kost*, food, victuals.) *Gardenia Rothmannia*. See Kaarshout.

Aapstert.—(D. *aap*, an ape; *staart*, a tail.) A Sjambok (q.v.), a whip.

Aar.—(D. *ader*, a vein.) An underground stream generally indicated by the greater greenness of the vegetation growing on the surface immediately above it.

"Here in limestone formation they had, even in time of drought, a good water supply, which, by opening up fresh veins (*aars* the Boers call them), they had largely augmented." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 443, 1893.)

"The farmers of the Karoo have long used differences of vegetation as surface indications of dolerite dykes or water *aars*." ("Education Gazette," VI, II. p. 28, 1906.)

Aarbeiplant.—(D. *aardbezie*, C.D. *aarbij*, a strawberry.) *Arbutilon venosa*, a shrub, the flowers of which are thought to be not unlike strawberries. See Bebroeide eiers.

Aarbosje.—(D. *ader*, a vein; *bos*, a tuft, bush.) *Selagolepta stachya*, *E. Mey.*, sometimes called "water-finder" (q.v.); both names refer to the fact that it generally grows above an underground watercourse. See Aar.

Aardappel.—(D. *aard*, earth; *appel*, apple.) The potato.

This name appears to have been applied in Holland in earlier days to a sort of cucumber or gourd; then when the potato was introduced and became known, the already existing name was applied to this new vegetable, perhaps as being still more appropriate. The history of the German word *Erd-apfel* is precisely similar, though in twisting *Kartoffel* into *Erd-apfel* there was a partial reversion to the original meaning, *Kartoffel* standing for *Tartufol.* It. *Tartufola,* from L. *terrae tuber,* earth tuber, truffle.

Aardappelkop.—(D. *kop,* a head.) A blockhead, numskull.

Aardig.—(D. *aardig,* pretty, agreeable, pleasant.) In Cape Dutch this word has acquired the very different meaning of queer, strange (in an unpleasant sense). *Een aardige reuk,* a peculiar, or unpleasant smell. *Ek voel banja aardig,* I feel queer, creepy.

Aardkruipers.—(D. *kruipen,* to creep.) A variety of *Nerita* which is sometimes used as food.

Aardroos.—(D. *roos,* a rose.) Thunberg ("Flora Capensis," p. 2, 1823) applies this name to *Phelipaea sanguinea,* but it is now applied—and much more appropriately as far as colour is concerned—to the thick-stemmed, rosy-red, root parasite, *Hyobanche sanguinea.*

Aardslang.—(D. *aard,* earth; *slang,* a snake.) *Typhlops bibronii.* This snake burrows in the ground and is non-poisonous.

Aardvark.—(D. *varken,* a pig.) The Cape Dutch name of the curious quadruped *Orycteropus afer,* known to English colonists as the Ant-bear (q.v.). This animal possesses teeth of a very curious character, each tooth being composed of a great number of polygonal columns, each of which is traversed by a fine tube, and represents, apparently, a single tooth, so that each grinder is composed of a large number of teeth compressed together. The animal, which is classed by zoologists among the *Edentates,* is rarely seen during the day, but at night may be found burrowing into the mounds raised by the so-called White ants (q.v.). With its whip-like tongue, covered with a sticky fluid, it searches the tunnels which ramify these mounds, and in a very short time will have destroyed the numerous inhabitants.

"The *Aard-varken* or earth-pig, which probably is a species of Manis." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 270, 1785.)

"Two distinct animals are seen in this part of the country,

that alike burrow into the ground, and appear to subsist entirely upon ants and termites. . . . Of these the ant-bear or *Aard-vark* of the colonists is the more common." (Harris's "Wild Sports of South Africa," p. 301, 1839.)

Aardwolf.—*Proteles cristatus, Gray.*, called more frequently the Maanhaar (q.v.). An animal about the size of a fox, occupying an intermediate position between the jackals and the hyenas. This animal, supposed to live on carrion and insects, seems, like the baboon, to have developed quite recently the habit of killing lambs, and for the same purpose, that it may obtain the curdled milk in the lambs' stomachs.

"The genus *Proteles* contains but a single species, the *Aard-wolf* or earth-wolf, so called by the European colonists in the neighbourhood of Algoa Bay in South Africa." ("Penny Cyclopædia," I. p. 4.)

Aasbloem.—(D. *aas*, carrion; *bloem*, a flower.) The flowers of the fetid smelling Stapelias have received this appropriate name in Cape Dutch.

Aasvogel.—(D. *aas*, carrion; *vogel*, a bird.) The great carrion scavenger of South Africa, *Gyps Kolbii.* Disliked because of their repulsive appearance and habits, these vultures, nevertheless, perform a service invaluable to the country.

"*Vultus Fulvus* and *Vultus Auricularis*, white and black *Aasvogel* of the Cape colonist." (Harris's "Wild Sports of South Africa," p. 196 n., 1839.)

"Of the vultures there are four varieties. . . . The *Aasvogel* is the commonest and flocks by thousands through every district of South Africa." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 376, 1852.)

Aasvogel besjes.—(D. *bezie*, a berry.) The fruit of *Cassine maurocenia, Linn.* See Kaffir-cherry and quotation.

"Hottentot cherry (*aasvogels besjes*, or vulture berries as the Boers call it)." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 130, 1889.)

Abakweta.—(Kaf. *um Kweta*, a circumcised lad.) Circumcised boys are so called during the unclean period, while dwelling apart, as required by Kaffir custom.

"In the afternoon we strolled over a plain to a neighbouring hamlet to see the *amaquati* or circumcised." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 75, 1823.)

"The state of initiation is called *ubukweta*, the boys themselves being termed *abakweta*." ("Compendium of Kaffir Laws and Customs," p. 97, 1858.)

Abba.—(Hot. *awa*, "ein Kind auf dem Rücken tragen," Krönlein.) To carry on the back as a mother does her child.

Abiquas geelhout.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *hout*, wood.) *Tamarix articulata.*

"According to Eck. & Zey., the Hottentots call this plant *Daweep* and the Boers *Abiquas geelhout*. The species is found also in North Africa, Arabia, and Persia." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 120, 1859-1860.)

Achteros.—(D. *achter*, after, behind; *os*, ox.) One or other of the last pair in a span of oxen. "De *achteros* kom ook in de kraal" (The hind ox also comes into the kraal). A Cape Dutch proverb meaning "slow and sure," patience will succeed in the end.

Achterossjambok.—See Sjambok.

Achterrijder.—A servant who follows on horseback; generally, if the journey is a long one, leading an extra horse. The English colonists have simply translated the term and speak of their "after rider".

"These *achter-rijders* are servants intended both for outward show and for use, and correspond, in this twofold nature of their duty, to many of our English grooms." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 132, 1824.)

"In the course of the forenoon we were met by a farmer from Beaufort on the Karoo with a Hottentot *achter rijder*." (Harris's "Wild Sports of South Africa," p. 333, 1839.)

"The Hottentot 'after riders' with spare horses went round collecting the slain." (Mitford's "The Weird of Deadly Hollow," p. 78, 1891.)

Achterstel.—The after parts of a wagon connected with the hind wheels.

"Those parts belonging to, and joined with the fore pair of wheels, are denominate the *voor-stel*; and those to the after pair, the *agter-stel*." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 150, 1822.)

Achtertong.—(D. *tong*, tongue.) A wooden fork that passes up from the hind axle to the long-wagon, fastening them together.

Acht uur.—(D. *acht*, eight; *uur*, hour.) Eight o'clock used as synonymous with breakfast-time. See also Twaalfuur.

Acre.—This term is used somewhat loosely in South Africa, due perhaps to the influence of the D. Akker (q.v.). When used as a definite land measurement it is generally spoken of as the "English acre".

"An *acre* is generally taken as 300 strides long by 18 wide—divided into 2 of 9 by 300—but as a rule farmers are not at all particular as to a few yards more or less." (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 227, 1886.)

Adonis.—A nickname, often used of, or to, a baboon.

"Der gute alte Mann . . . haben wollte dass die Zeitung in Pretoria, die 'Volkstem' verboten werden müsse, weil sie sich unterstanden habe, ein Mitglied des Hochweisen Volksrates 'Affe' zu schimpfen! Alles was der arme Redakteur verbrochen hatte, war; er hatte von einem Mitgliede des Volksrates . . . als von dem '*Adonis*' des Volksrates gesprochen. . . . Der alte T. . . . hatte Keine Ahnung von der Bedeutung des Wortes, er wusste nur, dass die Boeren einem zahmen Affen gewohnlich den Namen '*Adonis*' geben." Schiel's "23 Jahre in Süd-Afrika," p. 177, 1902.)

Adam fig.—A large brown variety of fig is thus designated in South Africa.

African chamois.—See Klipspringer.

"Higher up among the precipitous rocks near the summits the *African chamois* (Klipspringer) is always to be found." (Nicholson's "Fifty Years in South Africa," p. 35, 1898.)

African coast fever.—*Piroplasma parvum.* Another of the scourges among cattle with which the South African farmer has to contend. While distinctly different it appears to be allied to Redwater and is transmitted by ticks (q.v.). (*Rhipicephalus appendiculatus* and others.) See East Coast Fever.

"They clearly recognized and described the small and characteristic organisms of *African Coast Fever.*" ("Science in South Africa," p. 339, 1905.)

African cuckoo.—*Cuculus gularis,* the South African cuckoo. This bird comes south from North and Central Africa, but is a rare visitor in Natal and seldom if ever seen in the Cape.

Africander.—This word has been used with a variety of significations: (1) African-born descendants of European parents generally, (2) African-born offspring of Dutch parents only, (3) Coloured people of mixed blood. Often enough the word is used adjectivally with an equal number of similar significations. In recent years an effort has been made to limit its meaning to (1) or (2).

"All those who are born in the Colony speak that language (Dutch) and call themselves *Africaanders,* whether of Dutch,

German, or French origin." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 21, 1822.)

"The number of matches that have taken place between the fair *Africanders* (the general term for natives of European descent . . .) proves that their attractions are appreciated." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," IV. p. 103, 1834.)

"They (the slaves) may be divided into three classes—the Malays . . . the East or West coast negro, and the *Africander*, who is the descendant of an European man and Malay or negro girl." (Martin's "History of South Africa," p. 125, 1836.)

"I carry resting on my right thigh in true *Africander* fashion a double-barrelled smooth bore." (Barter's "Dorp and Veld," p. 108, 1852.)

"*Africander* is, however, a term used to include all of South African birth, whether Dutch, French, English, German, or any other stock." ("Queenstown Free Press," 30 June, 1885.)

The *Africander* Boers with their natural shrewdness and intelligence." ("C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 250, 1886.)

"The term *Afrikander*, which is now extended to all 'country born' whites, was originally coined to designate this very class of Boers who were known, or supposed, to be touched with this (yellow) tar-brush." (Keane's "The Boer States," p. 86, 1900.)

"It is generally recognized that no matter whether he speaks English or Dutch, so long as a man is imbued with the South African spirit, no matter whether we came here 200 or 300 years earlier than he did, he is as good an *Africander* as the next." ("Report of Speech by General Herzog at Caledon," p. 5. "The Bloemfontein Post," 1 April, 1912.)

Africander.—The name given to a particular breed of cattle.

"There are three or four recognized breeds now common in the country; namely the fatherland, . . . the *Africander*, the Zulu, and the bastard Zulu. The *Africander* is a very tall, ponderous, large-horned breed of cattle." ("The D'Urban Observer," 9 January, 1852.)

Africanderdom.—That section of the people of South Africa animated by the Africander spirit and ideals.

Africanderisms.—Dutch words and idioms in use in South African English are thus designated.

"If an English boy learns Dutch he is apt to acquire what are popularly called Dutchisms or *Africanderisms*." ("The State," p. 701, December, 1909.)

Africaner.—The early colonists gave this name to *Gladiolus tristis* and other species of this genus. (Riversdale, *G. recurvus, L.*)

"The gladiolus which is here called *Africaner*, is uncommonly beautiful with its tall, waving spike of striped flowers, and has also a fragrant smell." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 25, 1801.)

African oak.—*Ocotea bullata* is sometimes so called because of the acorn-like appearance of its fruit. See Stinkwood.

African open-bill, The.—*Anastomus lamelligerus.* This stork is abundant along the Zambezi Valley and in the neighbourhood of Lake Ngami—very occasionally south of this. Two features mark this bird off from all other storks: (1) the shape of its bill, the upper and lower mandibles of which are curved outward, with the result that the bill cannot be closed in the middle; (2) the curious character of its breast feathers. See Clapper bills.

African walnut.—*Schotia brachypetala, Sond.* A tree bearing handsome, bright scarlet flowers. The wood is said to be much like walnut, but closer in the grain, and takes a splendid polish.

Afrikaans.—The Dutch spoken in South Africa—Cape Dutch as it is called (q.v.).

"Samesprake in *Afrikaans en Engels.*" ("Deur Oom Willem," 1885.)

"I have always regarded (high) Dutch as my mother tongue and *Africaans* (low Dutch) as a hodge-pot sort of a language." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 20 October, 1908.)

After-clap.—The canvas curtain hanging at the back of the wagon.

"With 'fore-clap' and 'after-clap,' which is the colonial name for two broad canvas curtains that form part and parcel of the sail and hang in front and rear of the wagon, reaching to within a few inches of the ground." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 23, 1850.)

After-tongue.—See Achter tong.

"The *trek-touw* of the other wagon was made fast to the '*after-tongue*,' and all our kaffir servants . . . dragged at it to slow the wagon down." (Lacy's "Pictures of Travel," etc., p. 6, 1899.)

Aftrap.—(D. *af*, off, from; *trappen*, to kick.) The "kick-off" at football.

Agulhas bank.—A shelf of rock and gravel running along the South-east coast from the Bashee to Cape Point; it abounds in a great variety of fish.

"There appears nevertheless one source of gain open to enterprise in the great *bank of Lagullas*, which is equal to that of Newfoundland." (Owen's "Narrative," I. p. 62, 1833.)

Agulhas, Cape.—(Port. *agulhas*, a needle; L. *acucula*, *acicula*.) The southernmost point of the African continent, so called because off this Cape the Portuguese mariners found that the compass needle pointed to the true north.

"And againe in the point of Afrika, a little beyond the point that is called *Cape das Agulias* (in English the Needles) it returneth againe unto the North." (Hakluyt, II, II. p. 100, 1579.)

Ah now! or **Ha now!**—An expression employed by wagon-drivers when stopping their oxen.

"Loud cries of *Juk* (or trek) to start the oxen, '*Ah now*' to stop them." (Barter's "Dorp and Veld," p. 50, 1852.)

Aigretje.—(O.H.G. *heigir*, a heron; F. *aigre*, dim. *aigrette*; this name was in French transferred from the bird to the crest of feathers which adorned its head.) The Western Province name of a wild-flower.

"Among them the crimson gladiolus, the proteas of all kinds, the *Aigrettje* or little *aigrette*." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 10, 1902.)

Air plant.—Various species of epiphytical orchids are so called.

"Here we find . . . several kinds of 'air-plants'." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I, I. p. 24, 1878.)

Akadijs.—(D. *hagedis*; G. *eidechse*, a lizard.) The common name of a small lizard which runs with great rapidity among the bushes. The word is however applied somewhat loosely.

"*Akadijs* or properly *hagedis* is a very vague definition as the name is applied to all species of lizard." ("Scientific African," I. p. 78, 1896.)

Akker.—(D. *akker*, a field.) A plot of cultivated ground without reference to any exact size.

"The *akker* used in ploughing varies on almost every farm and runs from ten to sixteen yards wide as a rule, and from two to three hundred yards long. It is therefore no

guide to say how much manure is used on an *akker*." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," p. 814, 1905.)

Akkertje.—(Dim. of above.) A garden or flower-bed.

Akkewani.—(M. *akar*, root; *wangi*, odorous; "*Akarwangi*. The name of a plant with odorous roots, *Andropogon muricatus*."—Crawford.) *Cymbopogon marginatus, Stapf.* (Synonym. *Andropogon Nardus, var. marginatus*), the many thread-like roots of which have a somewhat peculiar and not unpleasant scent, and, when dried, are placed among woollen articles to preserve them from moth. See Mottekruid, Motworteltjes, and Vrouwhaar. Most of the *Andropogons* have scented roots.

Alamagtig.—(D. *almachtig*, almighty.) A common expletive. *Alamatjes, Alamastig, Alamopsticks*, are forms of the word employed by those who have scruples about using the word *Almagtig*, and salve their consciences by these variations.

"Dutchmen flocked round the unfortunate 'Piper for the day' with as much astonishment as if he had dropped from the clouds, drawling out the constant exclamation *Allamachtig! Allamachtig!*" (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 291, 1855.)

"Never was such a spluttering and splashing, but as the bank was not ten yards off, all got safely ashore, when the *verdoming* and *alamagtiging* was enough to make one's hair stand on end." (Lacy's "Pictures," p. 403, 1899.)

Albacore.—(P. *albacor*, Ar. *albukr*, a young camel, a heifer.) *Seriola lalandii*. This name, sometimes corrupted into albert-koord and half-cord, and at Somerset Strand into half-koot, is applied in South Africa to this species of mackerel; as employed in Hakluyt and Stavorinus and by sea-faring men generally it refers to quite another fish. See also Yellow-tail.

"In the sea the fish which is called *albocore*, as big as a salmon, followeth them with great swiftness to take them." (Hakluyt, II, II. p. 100, 1598.)

"We also took *albacores*, so called by the Portuguese because of their white colour." ("A Voyage to Siam by Six Jesuits," p. 29, 1688.)

"Flying fish . . . are the best bait that can be put to a hook for catching *dorados* and *albicores*." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 14, 1798.)

"*Scomber Capensis, Cuv. and Val. (Half-cord)*. . . . A

large fish measuring from two to three feet." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 480, 1856.)

Albaster.—A marble to play with. Compare the English alley or ally, which appears to be a shortened form of the word alabaster, and is used of a superior sort of marble, said to be made of that material.

Albertinia white heath.—*Erica bowieana, Lodd.* is known in the south-west by this name.

Algoa Bay.—(P. *al Goa*, to Goa). So called as this was the last calling-place on the voyage to India, as Delagoa (from Goa) Bay (q.v.) was the first place of call on the return voyage.

"In February, 1593, we fell in with the eastermost land of Africa at a place called *Baia de Agoa*, some 100 leagues to the north-east of the Cape of Good Hope." (Hakluyt, II, II. p. 108, 1598-1600.)

"*Algoa Bay* has little to recommend it for shipping. Like all the other bays upon the same coast, it is directly open to the south-east winds." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 85, 1804.)

Aliwal Shoal.—A shoal off the coast of Natal, named after the ship "Aliwal," the master of which was the first to report its existence in 1848.

Allah !—(Ar.). The Mohammedan name for the Creator. Alone, and in conjunction with other words, it is in common use in some parts of the Colony as an expression of astonishment, and has been acquired from the Malays.

"'It's the inside that matters, and the white man's head inside here'—Outa tapped his wrinkled forehead—'*Allah!* but it can hold a lot.'" ("The State," p. 82, July, 1912.)

Alligator pear.—A corruption of Avocado pear, the fruit of *Persea gratissima.*

"Guavas, melons . . . *alligator pears* . . . are to be had at almost all seasons." (Whiter's "A Trip to South Africa," p. 15, 1892.)

Alliteral or **Euphonic concord.**—This is the name given to an intricate grammatical principle of Kaffir speech, for the discovery and unravelling of which we are indebted to the Rev. W. B. Boyce, a Wesleyan Missionary, the author also of the first "Kaffir Grammar," published in 1834. This peculiarity of the language is sufficiently described in the following quotation from the first edition of the work.

"The Kaffir language is distinguished by one peculiarity . . . the whole business of declension, conjugation, etc., is

carried on by prefixes and by the changes which take place in the initial letters or syllables of words subject to grammatical government: as the changes, in addition to the precision they communicate to the language, promote its euphony, and cause the frequent repetition of the same letter as initial to many words in the sentence, this peculiarity, upon which the whole grammar of the language depends, has been termed the *Euphonic* or *Alliteral concord.*" (Boyce's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 3, 1834.)

Alpratjes.—(D. *praten,* to talk.) A name, "all talk," given by Dutch prospectors to that most common stumbling-block of the gold-seeker, iron pyrites; *pratjes* being a Cape Dutch corruption of pyrites. Its appearance has so often deceived the inexpert into believing that they had actually found gold, that the humour of the name is apparent.

"Pyrites, *al praatjes,* all talk, as the farmers call it." ("The Scientific African," p. 20, December, 1895.)

Altijd Boschje.—(D. *altijd,* always.) *Staavia radiata, Thun.* So called because the bush may be found in flower well-nigh the year through. A Riversdale district name.

Amaas.—(This word appears to be a corruption of *i Masisi,* the Kaffir form of the Dutch *maselen,* measles.) The natives have given this name to an eruptive disease, which, if it is not smallpox, very closely resembles it. It is also used of that disease.

"It was reported to the Council that the late Trooper . . . was suffering from *Amaas,* in consequence of which . . .'s services were retained by the Council." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 14 November, 1911.)

Amadumbies.—(Z. *ama,* pl. pref.; *i Dumbi,* a tuber grown by the natives something like a small turnip.) The anglicized form of the native name of a plant, probably a variety of *Eddoes.*

"Cash . . . was scarce, consequently the people bartered . . . pumpkins, *amadoombies* (an edible potato-like root)." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 146, 1899.)

Ama-German or **Jeleman.**—Among the Fingoes and other natives of the Transkei the florin was known by this appellation due to the coins coming into circulation on the Frontier at the same time that the German Legion arrived. See also Scotchman.

"They were dubbed '*Germans*' and have been called so

ever since by the natives." ("East London Dispatch," 22 May, 1909.)

Amajoni.—(K. *ama*, pl. pref.; *joni*, Eng. Johnny.) The Natal natives' name for the English soldiers.

"When the *amajoni* are mustered . . . the trumpet is blown." (Mitford's "Romance of the Cape Frontier," p. 252, 1891.)

Amajuba.—(Z. *Juba*, a dove, pigeon.) A flat-topped mountain, 7000 ft. high, situate on the extreme north of Natal. It was made historic during the Boer War of 1881 by the defeat of Sir George Pomeroy Colley, who with many of his men fell before the rifle-fire of the Boers.

"Ingogo Heights, Mount Prospect, *Amajuba* and Laing's Nek, all notable in the war of 1881." (Russell's "Natal," p. 54, 1891.)

Amakafula.—(Z. *i Kafula*, Zuluized form of the word Kaffir, applied by the Zulus proper to the Natal natives.) An opprobrious name for natives resident in Natal.

"For of those youths—those red cattle (soldiers) and the *amakafula* who are aiding them to fight against us—there will soon be not one left alive—not one." (Mitford's "Curse of Clement Waynflate," p. 236, 1894.)

Amalgam.—In the amalgamation process for the recovery of the gold from the ore, the stamps or crushing machines are fitted with bright copper plates; these are covered with a thin film of mercury by which the free gold is attracted, with which it forms a pasty substance which is technically known as *amalgam*.

"The *amalgam* has not been successfully reduced yet. One attempt was made with the result that the retort burst." (Mather's "Golden South Africa," p. 312, 1888.)

"The case against —— for *amalgam* stealing was resumed this morning." ("Cape Argus," Weekly Edition, p. 4, 17 November, 1897.)

Amapakati.—(K. "middle ones".) This is the title borne by the councillors of a tribe, who stand between the chief and the people, to maintain or control the chief's power.

"I requested Tchatchou would assemble his *Amapakati* (council) betimes." (Gardiner's "Journey," p. 6, 1836.)

"The parties concerned have the right however to compromise any civil case, without bringing it before either the *Amapakati* or the chiefs; but they have no right

to compound for criminal cases, as that would be robbing the chief of part of his revenue." ("Compendium of Kaffir Laws and Customs," p. 59, 1858.)

Amasi.—(K. This plural form only is used.) Milk curdled in a skin or calabash (see Calabash milk); a common beverage among the natives of South Africa.

"Their general diet is extremely simple. This ordinarily consists of milk, which . . . they invariably use in a sour, curdled state. It is called *amaas*." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 121, 1833.)

"*Amarsa*, a delicious Caffir beverage of fermented milk." (Mason's "Life with the Zulus," p. 224, 1855.)

Amasoja.—Another name for the English soldiers coined by the Kaffirs, *soja* being the Kaffir pronunciation of "soldier". It is also native slang for a native fop.

Amatungulu.—(Z. *i Tungulu*, the so-called Natal plum.) The brilliant lake-coloured fruit of *Carissa grandiflora, Mey.*, an evergreen shrub of the Periwinkle family which grows on the coast. The fruit is somewhat larger than a damson; when opened it exudes a milky-white, pleasantly acid juice, and contains several small brown seeds. It is called by the colonists the "Natal plum" (q.v.).

"Amongst which were growing in wild profusion the huge cactus, the deep crimson *martingola*, starch and castor oil plants." (Mason's "Life with the Zulus," p. 70, 1855.)

"The native name of this plant is *Amatungulu*, and the botanical name *Arduinia grandiflora*." (Brooks' "Natal," p. 168, 1876.)

American aloe.—*Agave Americana*. The habits of this plant are somewhat similar to those of the Aloe, but it is not an Aloe at all, belonging to the order *Amaryllidaceae*.

"The *American aloe* . . . *Agave Americana* is not a true aloe, but more nearly related to the fibre plant *Fourcroya*, grown in Mauritius, and to New Zealand flax, *Phormium tenax*." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of South Africa," p. 92, 1896.)

Amper.—(M. *ampir*, nearly.) This word, introduced by the Malays, is in common use in Cape Dutch and among English residents in districts where Dutch prevails.

The Cape Dutch proverb, "*Amper is ver van Amsterdam*" (Nearly is a long way from Amsterdam), is quite as good as the English, "A miss is as good as a mile".

"Neem 1 lb. wit suiker, smelt dit in *amper* een bottel kokende water." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 84, 1898.)

Ampertjes.—Diminutive of the above is equally common in the sense of nearly, almost.

Andoeli.—(F. *andouille*, a sausage; L. *inductilis*.) The intestinal skin which contains the minced meat has given its name to the contents. Sausage.

Angels' food.—A favourite Cape fruit-salad composed of sliced bananas, oranges, guavas, and pine-apples.

"We were fortified by luscious coffee and mystic trifle, and *angel's food*, and ambrosia, and spiced stars." ("Bloemfontein Post," p. 16, 7 September, 1912.)

Angler.—*Lophius upsicephalus* is so called at East London. See Devil fish, paddy, and fishing frog.

Angora goats.—Generally spoken of as "Angoras," were imported from Angora in Asia Minor by Col. Henderson, an Indian officer, about the year 1840. (Wallace.)

Anijs wortel.—(D. *anijs*, anise; *wortel*, a root.) Several plants appear to share this name—*Anesorhiza macrocarpa*.

"An umbelliferous plant . . . called by the Hottentots *anijs wortel* (anise root) . . . but it is entirely different from the *anijs wortel* of Zwartland." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 232 n., 1822.)

Anker.—(D. *anker*, a holdfast, support.) The underground shoots of various creeping plants are so named.

Ansjovi.—(D. *ansjovis*, anchovy. Mahn (Webster) traces this word to an "Iberian origin, lit. a dried or pickled fish, from Biscayan *antzua, anchua, anchuva*, dry".) *Engraulis holodon*—the Cape anchovy. The European anchovy is *E. encrasicholus, Rond.* The assimilation in Dutch of the latter part of the word to *visch* (pronounced *vis*) seems in Cape Dutch to have been unconsciously corrected.

Ant-bear.—See Aardvark.

"The *ant-bears*, which are much better furnished with strong claws for penetrating the indurated clay of a dry climate." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 254, 1835.)

Ant-heap.—The earth brought to the surface by the so-called white ants (Termites) is employed, under this designation, to floor rooms, tennis courts, etc. When properly prepared it gives a smooth, hard surface eminently suitable for such purposes.

"Following the custom of the country, I directed a dozen or two of large *ant hillocks* . . . to be broken up and brought into the hut. This material, from having been apparently cemented by the insect architects with some glutinous substance, forms, when pounded and sprinkled with water, a strong, adhesive mortar, which only requires to be well kneaded with trampling feet for a few days in order to become a dry and compact pavement, almost as solid and impenetrable as stone or brick." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 39, 1840.)

"The material of the '*ant-heap*' is somewhat largely employed by settlers in the formation of plaster, mortar, and cement." (Brooks' "Natal," p. 160, 1876.)

Anvil bird.—In the neighbourhood of King William's Town several birds are known by this name—*Barbatula pusilla, Cossypha bicolor, Sycobrotis bicolor*, etc.—which has reference to the striking resemblance which their notes have to the tapping of a hammer on an anvil. See Tinker bird.

Appel-der-liefde.—(F. *pomme d'amour*, love apple ; a corruption of It. *pomi dei Mori*, or Moor's apples, *mala Aethiopica* (Prior).) The fruit of the *Lycopersicum esculentum*. The name is sometimes applied to the Cape gooseberry (q.v.) and also to the Pampelmoose (q.v.); and is often colloquially corrupted into *Appieleepie*.

"Kersen vindt men hier zelden en aalbessen in het geheel niet, doch wel aardbeien, bramen en *appel-de-liefde* (*Physalis Peruviana*)." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 353, 1882.)

"Di blare van *appel-der-liefde* (*pampelmoertji*)." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek and Resepten Boek," p. 155, 1898.)

Appelkoos.—(D. *abrikoos*, apricot.) (1) A corruption of the Dutch name of the apricot in common use among the Dutch of South Africa. A similar corruption exists in Germany, *Aprikosen* being turned into *Appelkosen* in Saxony. (2) The name is also given to the fruit of *Dovyalis*. See Cape cranberry.

"Waarfoor is dit nodig om '*appelkoos*-boom' te ge met di fertaling 'apricot tree,' daar elkeen dit net so goed kan kry deur op alby woorde apart te kyk." ("Patriot Woordebock," Preface, iii, 1902.)

Apple, Kei.—The intensely acid fruit of the *Aberia Caffra*, so called because found in such abundance in the neighbourhood of the Kei River. In Natal the fruit is also known as "Dingaan's apricot" (q.v.).

"This fruit is familiarly known as the *kei apple,* or in some places as Dingaan's apricot." (Brooks' "Natal," p. 185, 1876.)

Apples of Sodom.—The fruit of *Solanum aculeastrum* and *S. sodomaeum* are thus designated.

April fool.—A western province name for several varieties of *Haemanthus.* See Veldschoenblaren.

"The *April fool* merits its name as we think when we find that what we took to be a single flower is really a dense umbel of many flowers surrounded by bright red bracts." (Stoneman's "Plants and Their Ways in South Africa," p. 192, 1906.)

Arabs, or **Arab merchants.**—The Indian merchants and shop-keepers in Natal are locally, but erroneously known by these designations. They are chiefly Mohammedans and are also known as "Bombay merchants" (q.v.).

"The other class, less numerous, but better educated and more intelligent, consists of so-called '*Arabs*'". (Bryce's "Impressions of South Africa," p. 361, 1898.)

"A fight took place at Verulam, Natal, on Saturday night, between several *Arab merchants,* resulting in two being very seriously injured." ("Eastern Province Herald," 5 May, 1902.)

Arend.—(D. *arend,* an eagle; A.S. *earn.*) The Bearded vulture, *Gypaetus meridionalis, Bp.,* is known by this name among the Dutch.

"We are going to lay wait for an *Arend* to-morrow evening. He always sits on one particular yellow-wood tree in the forest." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 2, 1867.)

"Do you know the story of the *Arend* among the Dutch? It is supposed to be the raven let out of the ark, and it is considered unlucky to do it any injury." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 33, 1875-84.)

Arikreukel.—(D. *kreukel,* a fold.) A well-known shell-fish.

Aroena.—A wild fruit.

Arri!—(Hot. *aré,* an interjection expressing astonishment, anger, vexation). This interjection is in frequent use in the Midland Districts.

"Mar een daarvan, 'n bietjie dikker, Maak so'n uitgehaalde flikker. Dat Klaas plaas van sijn bek te hou, Skre *arrie* dit was fluks van jou." (Reitz's "Afrikaanse Gedigte," p. 39, 1888.)

3

"*Arri!* but Oom Jakhals was a slim Kerel! No one ever got the better of him without paying for it." ("The State," p. 639, December, 1911.)

Arrow poison.—See Bushman's poison bush.

Artillery bird.—*Ploceus capensis.* The yellow Kaffir fink, so called on account of its yellow and black colours.

"The *Artillery bird* frequents river sides or marshy places where reeds or long grass abound." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I., Part III. p. 31, 1879.)

Ash cookies or **Askoek.**—(D. *Koek,* a cake.) (1) Dough cakes roasted in the ashes of a wood fire; (2) A ne'er-do-well.

"Another way of making bread is what is called an *Ash cookie.* It is something akin to an Australian 'damper'." (Browning's "Fighting and Farming in South Africa," p. 314, 1880.)

"J— S— who jumped a bag of *askoek* from a transport wagon, was sentenced to a month's hard labour." ("East London Dispatch," 10 July, 1908.)

Asch bosje.—(*D. asch,* ashes; C.D. *bos,* shrub, bush.) In the Riversdale district this name is applied to two plants —*Mesembryanthemum junceum, Harv.* and *Salsola aphylla.* The plants are burned and the ashes are used in soap-making.

Askoekklop or **Askoekslaan.**—(D. *kloppen,* to knock, strike; *slaan,* to beat, to kick.) A dance peculiar to the Hottentots, in which the heels are struck together; the noise produced is thought to resemble that made by the knocking together of askoekies.

Aspres.—(F. *expres,* purposely, with intention.) Used in Cape Dutch with the meaning purposely, on purpose.

Asseblief.—(D. *Als het u belieft,* if you please.) This is the common Cape contraction of the Dutch phrase.

"Ge my *asseblief* 'n paar vóorbeelde, hoe jy di woorde gebruik." (Oom Willem's "Samesprake," p. 7, 1885.)

Assegai.—(According to Dozy this is a native Berber word —*zaghayah,* with the Arabic *az = al* prefixed. This name, adopted by the Moors, was subsequently applied by the Portuguese to the slender javelins used by the natives of Africa generally.) This word, which is unknown in the Kaffir language, is of considerable interest. It would appear to have been taken over by the Boers and British of South Africa from the Portuguese who had brought it to South-East Africa.

The word had a place in the English vocabulary, however, as early as the fourteenth century, for Chaucer uses it in a form, it is true, which makes it appear to be quite a different word, and yet *lancegay* or *launcegay* is the form which the word had assumed in his day from the French *l'archegaie*, as the result of the striving after meaning.

> And so befel up-on a day,
> For sothe, as I yow telle may,
> Sir Thopas wolde out ryde;
> He worth upon his stede gray,
> And in his honde a *launcegay*,
> A long swerd by his syde. (Sir Thopas, ll. 1938-43.)

The use of this weapon was prohibited, Cowel says, by the Statute of 7 Rich. II, cap. 13, which would account for the early entire disappearance of the word from the English vocabulary. Two forms of the weapon are in use among the natives of South Africa. The throwing assegai, which is known to the Kaffirs as *um Konto*, was the older form of the weapon, but since Chaka armed his troops with the short, stabbing assegai, *i Boqo*, the Zulus have given this weapon the preference, and are not nearly so dexterous with the *um Konto* as the natives of the Cape Colony, but as a fighting weapon the *i Boqo* stands them in good stead.

"The male sort from their infancy practise the rude postures of Mars, covering their naked bodies with mastic targets, their right hand brandishing a long but small *Azaguay* or lance of ebony, barbed with iron, kept bright, which by exercise they know how to jaculate as well as any people in the Universe." (Sir T. Herbert's "Travels," p. 23, 1665.)

"Ihre-die Hottentotten—gewöhnlichen Waffen, sind der Stock, Rackum genannt, ein andere Namens Kirii, der Bogen, Pfeile, und die *Hassagayen*." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 26, 1745.)

"The Bushmen retain the ancient arms of the Hottentot race . . . a light javelin or *assagai*." (Pringle's "African Sketches," p. 365, 1834.)

Assegai, To.—To wound or kill with an assegai.

"Another youth, named Jubber, was sent out at Bathurst in search of horses, and when only a few yards from the village over the brow of the hill on its eastern side, he was *assegaied*." (Editor of Grahamstown Journal's "Narrative," p. 185, 1836.)

Assegai wood.—*Curtisia faginea.* The wood of this tree was used by the natives for the shafts of their assegais, but the wood of *Grewia occidentalis* is now more generally employed.

"*Assegai wood* is the most valuable of the wagon woods. . . . It is 'extremely tough and strong, heavy and elastic, close-grained and durable, if exposed to only moderate damp'. The colour is bright red, but it soon fades if exposed to the air." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of Cape Colony," p. 123, 1896.)

Assous.—The name given at Hout Bay to the fish known elsewhere as Spiering (q.v.).

Atjar.—(Crawford gives *Achar*, pickles, as a Persian word used by the Malays.) A Cape name for vegetables pickled in vinegar.

"When green it (the Mango) is made into *Attjar;* for this the kernel is taken out, and the space filled up with ginger, pimento, and other spicy ingredients, after which it is pickled in vinegar." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 237, 1798.)

"Red cabbage pickle (*Atjaar*)." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 63, 1902.)

Aum.—(D. *aam*, a liquid measure equal to about 36 gallons.) A Cape measure of about 32 Imperial gallons. See Measures.

"A cask of Cape brandy, called a *half-aum*, and containing nineteen gallons, may be purchased in any part of the Colony, at from twenty to thirty-six rix-dollars." (Dr. Philip's "Researches," I. p. 354 n., 1828.)

Australian bug.—The name given in South Africa to the insect pest, *Icerya purchasi, Mask.*, which does so much damage to trees.

"The *Australian bug* was introduced into Natal on some young apple-trees. In less than six months it had spread itself throughout the Colony far and wide." ("Queenstown Free Press," 24 July, 1877.)

"The soft, cushiony, white-ribbed scale insect commonly known as the *Australian bug* (the Cottony Cushion Scale of North America) ranks among the most destructive of the insect pests hurtful to trees and shrubs in South Africa, although little more than fifteen years have elapsed since this pest was first observed in the Colony." Ormerod's "Observations on some Injurious Insects of South Africa," p. 70, 1889.)

Australian drabok.—*Lolium italicum* is known by this name in South Africa.

Avond bloemetjes.—(D. *avond*, evening; *bloem*, a flower.) The word is usually shortened to *Aa'ntblom;* it is the Cape Dutch name for several plants—*Hesperantha radiata, Ker.* and other *Irideae*—whose flowers open in the evening, most of them having a very pleasant scent. In the Eastern Province the name is also applied to *Gladiolus recurvus, L.*

"I have met with a remarkable species of *Avond-bloem* (*Hesperanthera*). This genus is very widely dispersed." (Burchall's "Travels," I. p. 273 n., 1824.)

"Another of our favourites was the *aant-blom*, a kind of ixia." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 21, 1890.)

Axe, The War of the.—The Kaffir War of 1846 was so called because the theft of an axe by a Kaffir of Sandili's tribe was the spark which ignited the materials that a mistaken Government policy had allowed to accumulate day by day since the previous war of 1835. The Kaffir was on his way with some other prisoners from Fort Beaufort to Grahamstown for trial for the theft, when he was rescued by some of his countrymen, who at the same time cruelly mutilated and murdered a Hottentot prisoner to whom the Kaffir was handcuffed. The surrender of those implicated in these outrages was demanded by the Government and refused by the chiefs, and war was immediately declared by the Governor.

"The outbreak of 1846 . . . has been termed very absurdly *The War of the Axe*, implying that it alone was the cause of a Frontier War which involved millions in its suppression, to say nothing of the loss of human life. The fact is that the simple act of theft and the brutal murder connected with it was merely the culminating point (the last straw which broke the camel's back) of a ten years' series of outrages, so incessant and atrocious in their details as to surpass belief unless supported by such indubitable evidence as is here furnished." (Godlonton's "Case of the Colonists," Pref. xv, 1879.)

Ayah or **Aja.**—(P. *aia*, a nurse or governess.) This word is in common use in South Africa, especially among the Dutch, for a nursemaid. It was introduced by the Portuguese into India and was thence imported at an early date into the Cape.

"Each child in the better sort of families having its proper slave, called its *aya*, a Malay term borrowed perhaps from the

Portuguese or Italian, signifying nurse or protectress." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 105, 1804.)

"He generally called her *old Ayah*, a title she herself preferred, not only as one of some honour among the people, but as describing the character in which she liked to be known, that of a professional nurse." (Briggs' "Sunny Fountains and Golden Sands," p. 105, 1888.)

Azijnbottel or **Azijnvat.**—(D. *azijn*, vinegar; *vat*, a cask.) A nickname applied to a surly, sour-faced man.

Baaken.—(D. *baak*, a beacon.) In addition to its general sense of "beacon," this word was also applied to the stake which, in the early days of the Colony, was driven into the ground by the applicant for a farm, at the place where he proposed to build his homestead.

"General Van Plettenberg in commemoration of the event caused a stone or *baaken* to be erected there." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 255, 1801.)

"The disputes about these stakes or *baakens* as they call them are endless." (*Ibid.* II. p. 380, 1804.)

Baakhout.—(D. *baak*, a beacon; *hout*, wood.) *Greyia Sutherlandii.* When in flower in the spring its crimson flowers make it a conspicuous object in the Natal uplands.

Baan.—(D. *baan*, way, road; cf. G. *Bahn.*) Cricket pitch. A tennis-court in Cape Dutch is a *tennis-baan.*

Baar.—(M. *baharu*, new, inexperienced.) "The word is employed of both men and animals; in the former case it has the meaning of unskilful, untrained; in the latter case it means unbroken to yoke or harness. The word has come down from the days of the Dutch East India Company; the men who had seen considerable service were called *Oorlammen* (Mal. *orang lami*, old person), while the recruits were called *Baren* (Mal. *orang baru*, new hand). In India and also at the Military Academy at Breda the word seems to be used in the sense of green, inexperienced. In sailor language it also indicates a novice." (Mansvelt's "Idioticon".) The evidence seems to favour this derivation rather than the one suggested in the quotation.

"Those Hottentot slaves who left the Colony and now live in Great Namaqualand call themselves Orlams in distinction from the aborigines, the Namaquas, and by this they mean to say that they are no longer uncivilized. If for instance they give a traveller a man as a servant: 'He is very *orlam*,

he is not *baar'* (he is very handy, he is not stupid)." (Hahn's "Tsuni Goab, the Supreme Being of the Khoi-Khoi," p. 153, 1881.)

"*Bari* is, however, a good Dutch word, which we meet with in the various Teutonic languages; thus English, bare (bare-faced, bare-foot); Anglo-Saxon, *bar*, *boer;* Swedish, Danish, and German, *bar;* Dutch, *baar;* O.H. German, *por;* meaning uncovered, destitute, naked, raw, without anything." (*Ibid.* p. 144.)

Baardman or **Baardmannetje.**—(D. *baard*, a beard.) The Western Province name of the fish *Umbrina capensis.*

"*Baartman* (white-fish, barbel, catfish), a well-known ugly species of the family *Siluridae.*" ("East London Dispatch," 5 December, 1907.)

"Many of the Cape fish are endowed with the quaintest Dutch names. Here are a few of them: *Kabeljouw*, *Baardmannatje* . . . and others." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 449, 1893.)

Baardmannetje.—(D. *baard*, beard, whiskers; *mannetje*, little man.) *Sporopipes squamifrons.* The name refers to its black moustache. This bird is also called the Scaly feathered finch, the white edges of the feathers giving them a scale-like appearance.

Baas.—(D. *baas*, master, foreman.) Used throughout South Africa as the equivalent of "master," "headman," by the coloured and native labourers, and often enough by white employees when speaking of masters or overseers.

"I therefore took leave of the *baas*, an appellation given to all the Christians here, particularly to bailiffs and farmers." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 55, 1785.)

"The officers who do not serve in the regular military force, and called *bas* (or *bas officers*) have a small stipend, generally 240 dollars." (Damberger's "Travels," p. 32, 1801.)

Baatje.—(M. *badjoe*, *baja*, a jacket.) This word was introduced into South Africa either by the Malays or by the sailors of the Dutch East India Company. It has made a permanent place for itself in the vocabulary of the Dutch sailor, *baatje* being the name that he gives to his jacket. In South Africa it is applied to almost every description of short coat, but is perhaps more familiar to English colonists in the compound word *rooi-baatje* (red jacket), by which the British soldier is designated.

"In December, 1839, the *rooi-baatjcs* weighed anchor and had scarcely set sail, when a three-coloured flag was hoisted on the same staff that had lately borne the British ensign." (Delagorgue's "Travels," 1847. In Bird's "Annals of Natal," I. p. 562, 1888.)

"The inhabitants were supposed to be all Boers, dressed in fustian if they were fairly well off, in leather crackers and *batjes* if less well-to-do." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 162, 1896.)

Babiaan or **Baboon**.—(1) *Cynocephalus porcarius*. These animals "are distinguished by a long, dog-like snout, large canine teeth or tusks, capacious cheek pouches, and naked callosities on the buttocks". In some parts of South Africa they are so numerous as to be a nuisance. Their food consists of roots, fruits, lizards, scorpions, etc., but in recent years they seem to have acquired the pernicious habit of killing lambs and kids for the sake of the curdled milk found in their stomachs. The baboons are popularly credited among the Dutch colonists with the kindly offices attributed in Germany to the stork: "De Babiaan het daar en kind gebreng". (2) The word is also frequently used as a term of abuse.

"The *Baboons* were pretty numerous and indeed dangerous to travellers, for sitting undismayed on the tops of the rocks, where they were frequently out of the reach of shot, they would roll and even throw down stones of all sorts and sizes." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 284, 1795.)

"A large kind of monkey with a long, greenish-brown fur (*Cercopithecus ursinus*) called *Baviaan* by the colonists, inhabits this mountain." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 45, 1822.)

"Die rohen Wehmütter bezeichnen ihre Arbeit mit dem Wort dass sie *Paviaanchen fangen wollen*." (Wangemann's "Ein Reisejahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 30, 1868.)

Babiaan bosch.—(D. *bos*, bush, tuft.) A variety of *Protea*. "The *boven jaan bosch* or monkey protea, which is so called because . . . the monkeys tear off the flower balls and chew them until they extract the seed, which they eat." ("Cape Times," p. 8, 3 September, 1904.)

Babiaanbout.—(D. *bout*, leg, shoulder.) The old-fashioned, muzzle-loading musket; the name refers to its shape.

"He was fain to confess that . . . his heart was sore about the guns and until he should become the happy owner of the

Babijaana (baboons), a contraction of *Babiaan's bout* (baboon's thigh), the colonial term for a musket, he could enjoy nothing else." (Baine's "Explorations," p. 280, 1864.)

Babiaan druiven.—(D. *druif*, a grape.) The berries of *Phytolacca* have received this name at Sterkstroom because baboons are said to eat them.

Babiaan kos.—The name given to a wild plant in Namaqualand.

Babiaan oor.—(D. *oor*, ear.) A variety of *Stapelia* is so called in the Graaff Reinet District.

Babiaan stert.—(D. *staart*, tail, end.) *Barbaccnia sp.* is known by this name in the Transvaal where it is common on the kopjes.

Babiaantjes.—*Babiana plicata.* In earlier days this and several other species were known as *Baviaan uyntjes.*

"The baboons of Table Mountain . . . feed also upon the pulpous bulbs of several plants. . . . The *Gladiolus plicatus* appears to be the most favourite plant with those that live near the Cape, for which reason also this plant is known by the name of the *Baboon.*" (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 285, 1795.)

"A few of those are frequent in the Cape gardens, and generally known by the names of *Afrikaanders*, *Bavyantjes*, etc. ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 350, 1857.)

Baboon ropes or **Baviaans' touw.**—The stout rope-like stems of various climbing plants which festoon the trees of the forests: *Vitis capensis* and *V. Thunbergii.* See Monkey ropes.

"The *baboons' ropes*, as they are called, which hung in festoons from the branches." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," II. p. 183, 1835.)

Baby, The.—A sifting machine used at the Vaal River diamond diggings in the process known as "dry-sorting".

"The earliest method was that known as 'dry-sorting,' analagous to the use of the *Baby* at the River diggings, and consisted merely in sifting the excavated ground through hand sieves." (Noble's "Handbook," p. 189, 1886.)

"Third in order came the *Baby*, so called from its inventor, a Mr. Babe, an American." (Matthew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 175, 1887.)

Baby, To.—Ground which had been sifted by the above machine was said to have been "babied".

"The average quantity of maiden ground that one man can excavate in a day is about one and a half loads of rough gravel and sand, which after being 'babied' yield half a load of pebbles to be washed." (Noble's "Handbook," p. 219, 1886.)

Bacchus fish.—(This appears to be a corruption of *bekkies* or *bakkies*; D. *bek*, a beak.) Is this the fish known in Natal as the gar-fish (q.v.)?

"There were a great many little fish like eels with it, they have bills like woodcocks, and are called *Bacchus fish.*" ("South Africa a Century Ago," p. 174, 1901.)

Back chat or **talk.**—A slang term applied to saucy or impertinent replies.

"'That'll do, Sargeant Jones,' I heard one of our colonial officers remark, 'I don't want any more of your *back-chat.*'" ("A Subaltern's Letters to his Wife," p. 108, 1901.)

Backveld.—The country lying at some distance from the towns, where the conditions of life are of a somewhat primitive character.

"In what way will a few visitors from the *back veld* equip the boys and girls for the battle of life." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 8 November, 1911.)

"The purposeless drifting which is all too often the rule on the *backveld* farm." ("The State," p. 580, December, 1911.)

Backvelder.—A term applied to a not very progressive class of farmer.

"Mr. ——'s work will have considerable value as tending . . . to present the rugged *backvelder* in his true colours." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 28 October, 1911.)

Bafaro.—The Cape Peninsula name for *Polyprion prognathus.*

Bagger or **Barger.**—*Galeichthys foliceps.* The appearance of this fish creates a prejudice against it; it is, however, of a delicate eel-like flavour. See also Barber and Catfish.

"On the 14th of August four fishermen came contrary to what they used to do, with Hayes and *Beggers* on board of us." (Kaempfer's "History of Japan," I. p. 84, 1690-2. Reprint.)

"The *bager* a very bad species of fish and supposed to be of a poisonous quality." (Percival's "Account," p. 44, 1804.)

Bag-worm.—The name given to *Isaria Psychidae,* and other members of the same genus. They form in the grub state an exceedingly tough bag of silk into which twigs, small

pebbles, or other foreign materials are woven, in which they suspend themselves from the food plant. In some cases the female is wingless. The sheep-farmers attribute the death of their stock sometimes to the swallowing of these insects. See also Basket worms.

"The doorn-boom is the host of an innumerable lot of pests, being often cleared of foliage by caterpillars of several large moths and by *Bagworms.*" (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 212, 1907.)

Bakbakiri or **Bush Shrike.**—*Laniarius gutturalis.* An onomatopoetic name derived from the clear and varied call of the male bird and the immediate answer of the female; so closely does the female's answer come after the call of the male that the two sound like one call. Its cheery song and rich green plumage make this bird a favourite with all lovers of nature. See also Kook-a-vic.

"A rivulet . . . flows through it with a tinkling murmur that mingles well with the . . . cry of the *backbacery* and the twittering of the graceful sugar-birds." ("C. G. H. Literary Gazette," IV. p. 52, 1834.)

"Pleasant the rest under the orange boughs . . . to listen to the cry of the *back-my-keerie* (whip-poor-will)." (Godlonton and Irving's "Kaffir War, 1851-52," p. 247, 1852.)

Bakleier or **Baasbakleier.**—(M. *barkalahi,* to fight; *kalahi,* a fight, combat.) A fighter, bully.

Bakleislag.—(M. *barkalahi,* to fight; D. *slag,* a blow, battle.) A fighting party, a fight.

Balderja.—(G. *Baldrian*; L. *Valeriana*; Capon's tail.) A plant the root of which is aromatic.

Balstikker.—(D. *bal,* a ball; *stikken,* to stitch.) *Sanseviera languinosa.* The fine threads from the fibre of this plant are used by certain native tribes to make fish nets.

"The emigrant Boers call this plant *ballstikker.*" (Distant's "A Naturalist in the Transvaal," p. 39, 1892.)

Bamboo fish.—*Box salpa.* A fish which lives among the Sea bamboo (q.v.) and large Sargassa. It feeds only upon algæ. See also Stink-fish.

Bamboos.—Formerly deep, cylindrical, wooden vessels cut out of a solid block of wood and used by the Hottentots to hold milk or other liquids. According to Krönlein (Art. * hoës) the name is applied to milk-baskets in Namaqualand which are made of woven rush or willow. The name

has probably been transferred from the gigantic grass, to which it is generally applied, to these domestic utensils, as the result of the intercourse between South Africa and the East; the slaves from the Malay Archipelago and from Malabar were accustomed to use joints of the bamboo for a similar purpose; the transfer of the name to the Hottentot articles would be an easy matter.

"They brought us three *bambooses* for which we gave them some tobacco."

"A *bamboos* is a deep wooden vessel, something in shape like a tea canister but cut out of a block of wood." (Campbell's "Travels," I. p. 46, 1822.)

"A young man had gone into the country to sell *bambouses*, which are a sort of jars made of willow wood." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 565, 1844.)

"One of the present writers has seen (and partaken of) rice cooked in a joint of bamboo, among the Khyens, a hill-people of Arakan." (Yule and Burnell's "Glossary of Anglo-Indian Words," Art. Bamboo, 1886.)

Banana, Wild.—*Strelitzia angusta.* The local name of this plant in Natal, where, along the coast it grows in great profusion, and in its foliage is not unlike the banana. See Bird of Paradise flower.

"Although the *strelitza* is commonly designated as the *wild banana*, it differs considerably from it in two remarkable particulars. The flaps of the banana-leaf are pendulous, whereas these open upwards; the branches of the former spring from all sides of the trunk, these only from opposite sides, forming a sort of fan as they spread upwards." (Gardiner's "Journey," p. 229, 1806.)

Bandiet.—(F. *bandit*; It. *bandito,* p.p. of *bandire,* to proscribe, to ban.) A convicted criminal.

"Towards night water rose so many feet . . . as to . . . go near to drown . . . all the *bandits* in the lower yard." ("South Africa a Century Ago," p. 219, 1901. Letter dated 12 September, 1799.)

Bandom.—(D. *band,* hoop, girdle; *om,* about.) (1) An ox with a white mark round the body; (2) a bullet with a groove round it; (3) the word is also applied to a curiously marked pebble which is striated with a succession of parallel rings. The specific gravity of this stone is almost identical with that of the diamond, so that where this stone is found the diamond is confidently expected.

"I noticed that occasionally the curious *banddoom* stone, so often found in the Vaal River with diamonds, and indeed often considered by diggers as a sure indicator of 'stones,' was to be met with." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 201, 1899.)

"A digger at Lombard's has had a stroke of luck. He ordered his boy to sink a hole for water. At a few feet he struck a layer of *bantoms*. The digger set to work washing these, and in a short while had a 22-carat stone, followed by another of less weight." ("Transvaal Leader," Weekly Ed., p. 17, 8 September, 1906.)

Bang.—(D. *bang*, afraid.) A word in common use in the Midland and Western Districts, meaning fearful, afraid.

"So I started down a opening in the gleaming rows and kept on twisting about, till I got *bang* at the thought that I was lost." ("The Empire," p. 7, 11 February, 1899.)

Bangbroek.—(D. *broek*, trousers.) A coward, a poltroon.

Banja or **Baing.**—(M. *banjak*, many, much, very.) A word in use all over South Africa; sometimes employed adjectively—*en banje kerel*, a fine fellow; and sometimes as an adverb, *baije ver*, very far.

"He offered to bring the water of two neighbouring fountains to water his land, but all his arguments made no impression on the lazy boor, who said it would be *bye* (superfluous) trouble." (Campbell's "Travels," p. 120, 1815.)

"'In zehn Minuten sind wir da' meinte Wuras. 'Dat licht is nog *bye* ver' (sehr fern) meinte Johannes." (Wangemann's "Ein Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 306, 1868.)

Banket.—(D. *banket*, sweetmeat, confection.) The gold-bearing quartz reef is so called because of its fancied resemblance to a certain Dutch confection called *Banketje*, which consists of broken almonds embedded in sugar—almond rock.

"It consists of four or five narrow veins of conglomerate locally called *banket* (emphasis on the second syllable), a name given by the Boers to the stuff on account of its similarity to 'Almond rock,' auriferous pebbles being the almonds, and the sometimes soft and sometimes hard gold-yielding ore in which they lie, being the sticky stuff." (Mather's "Golden South Africa," p. 300, 1888.)

Banketje.—See above. Both words have the same origin as the English word "banquet"; they are derived through the French from the Italian *banchetto*, dim. of *banco*, a table.

Bank Steenbras.—See River Steenbras and Tiger-fish.

Bansela.—(Z. *bansela*, to be kind to, to give to; *ngi bansela*, please give me something.) This word (cf. *basela*) has come to be equivalent to the English word "tip," a gratuity, in Natal.

"Well, let us proceed there and instruct one of the inmates to catch us some fish. They know how to do so for a *bansela* though they never do so on their own account." (Turnbull's "Tales from Natal," p. 23, 1901.)

Bantu.—(K. *aba Ntu*, people.) The name generally given by ethnologists to the Kaffir peoples of South Africa.

"I see that it is the fashion with many eminent ethnologists to call this collection of tribes the *Bantu* tribes. As a Zulu linguist I respectfully object to this *Bantu* or *Abantu*—*Abantu* simply means 'people' in Zulu, and is used in this sense, *Abantu bamhlope*, 'white people,' and *Abantu bamnyama*, 'black people'. (Moodie's "Battles," I. p. 578, 1888.)

Baobab.—*Adansonia digitata.* An African tree of enormous growth and long life, regarded by Humboldt as being "the oldest organic monument of our planet". It is also known as the "Cream of tartar tree" (q.v.).

"In the letter from Mr. Livingstone before quoted, he describes a tree met with by a party on the banks of the Limpopo River, within the tropics, which is probably the famed *baobab* tree of North Africa." (Methuen's "Life in the Wilderness," p. 275, 1848.)

"We spent a night at a *Baobab* which was hollow, and would hold twenty men inside." (Livingstone's "Travels," p. 573, 1857.)

Baraputse.—(S. The people of the father of Putse.) The Amaswazi are known to the Bechuanas by this designation. It was adopted by the early Bechuana missionaries, but has now been superseded by the designation "Swazies" (q.v.).

"There are the Baphiri lying about four hundred miles from the *Baraputse*." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Language," p. 32, 1850.)

Barbadoes gooseberry.—*Rhipsalis barbadensis* is known by this name in South Africa.

Barbel or **Barber.**—(1) The East London name for the fish *Galeichthys feliceps.* See Catfish. (2) A fresh-water fish.

"We were particularly successful among the *barbel.*

This fish (*Glanis silurus*) grows to enormous weight and size in the larger African rivers." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 463, 1893.)

"*Barbel*, or more correctly 'catfish'." ("East London Dispatch," 7 October, 1907.)

Barber.—(D. *barbeel*, barbel.) *Barbus capensis.* A large fresh-water fish, considered by some to be good eating. In appearance it is by no means prepossessing, the long fleshy filaments which hang from the corners of its mouth giving it a rather repelling appearance. See Witte visch.

"A few fish called *barbers*, of a long and eel-like sort, with whiskers or feelers, were caught in the river." (Methuen's "Life in the Wilderness," p. 67, 1848.)

"Here I first learned to eat the *barba*, a prodigy of fishes, and to love it. Do you know the bull-head, the miller's thumb we used to catch at home? . . . Fancy this ugly beast of any size between a half-pound and two hundredweight, give it great teeth more cutting than a pike's, adorn its big mouth with four long beards, and you will have the *barba*." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 207, 1873.)

Barberton daisy.—*Gerbera Jamesoni.*

"When several bracts surround a head of flowers, as in Protea, *Barberton daisy*, and others of their tribe, they form an involucre." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 115, 1906.)

Barger.—See Blue fish.

"Four fishermen came . . . with Hayes and *Beggers* on board of us." (Kaempfer's "History of Japan," p. 84. Reprint, Vol. I., Orig. pub. 1727.)

Bark, To.—A slang term meaning to sit up at night to watch the fire when camping out in the open veld.

"So from henceforth it was necessary that one of us should sit up all night, or as it is called in this country *bark*. The origin of the term is a little story: Two sailors lost in the veld up country heard the lions roar all round them and were greatly frightened. They had no means to light a fire, and they could not boast a dog. So, turn and turn about, the one of them slept and the other circled about him, barking as like a mastiff as he knew how. Hence the expression, Our newcomer volunteered to *bark* first night." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 346, 1873.)

Barker.—One who "barks" as above.

"Uitkyk 10 p.m., and two hours' quiet sleep in the waggon, even for the *barker* of the night." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 348, 1873.)

Baroo.—*Cyphia volubilis.* The Hottentot name of this watery bulb, which is much esteemed by them for the moisture which it contains even in seasons of protracted drought. The Kaffir name is *i Gontsi.*

"The natives of the central and northern districts know very well how to find such underground reservoirs of the precious liquid, e.g. the 'Komaroo' (Fockea) and *Barroe* (Cyphia)." (Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 125, 1897.)

Barracouta.—*Stromateus microchirus* is so called at East London. In the West Indies this is the appellation of a large and voracious fish of the perch family—*Sphyræna barracuda,* while in Australia and New Zealand it is applied to *Thyrsites atun,* the Cape of Good Hope Snoek (q.v.).

"We did not state the *barracouta* was called blue fish in East London, but in Cape Town." ("East London Dispatch," 8 April, 1905.)

Barsje.—The Struis Bay name applied to the Zeverrim (q.v.).

Basela.—(K. *basela,* to kindle the flame of love, gratitude; *ndi basela,* give me some token of love to excite my gratitude.) This and the word *Bansela* (q.v.) are practically synonymous in the expressions given, though this word seems to be more frequently applied to a something thrown in after a purchase has been made.

"We are frequently met by Caffers who come running down the hills . . . calling out *bassella,* which signifies a present." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 240, 1844.)

"The Idutywa correspondent of the 'Transkeian Gazette' says: I don't think a Postmaster's life is any happier than the proverbial policeman's. I happened to enter our local stamp shop the other day just in time to hear a native demanding a *basela* on a penny stamp he had purchased." ("East London Dispatch," 1 April, 1905.)

Basket worms.—See Bag worms.

"The larvæ of these forms (*Psychidæ*) are known as *Basket* or *Bag worms,* as they inhabit a case or bag, which they carry about with them." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 148, 1911.)

Baso.—(K. *i Baso*, a token of love, a present.) A present or bonus.

"If a practice is made by the mines of paying a bonus or *baso* to boys who present themselves in this way, it will seriously hamper local recruiters." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 3 July, 1912.)

Bastaard.—(D. *bastaard*, bastard, base-born.) The designation, neither euphonious nor euphemistic, given to the offspring of mixed white and coloured parents, even though the parents may have been united in holy matrimony. The Griquas as a people were thus designated because of their mixed origin.

"The coachman is generally one of those people known in the Colony by the name of *Bastaards*, being a mixed breed between a Hottentot woman and European man, or a Hottentot woman and a slave." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 49, 1801.)

"Among the Dutch of the Colony they (the Griquas) were long known as *The Bastards*, a descriptive title given with greater regard to fact than to courtesy." (Dower's "Early Annals of Kokstad," p. 5, 1902.)

Bastard galjeon.—Another name for the Parrot fish (q.v.).

Bastard geelhout.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *hout*, wood.) *Podocarpus elongata*—the real Yellow wood being *P. Thunbergii.*

Bastard gemsbok.—(D. *gems*, a chamois.) *Hippotragus leucophæus* is known by this name among the Dutch of South Africa.

"This magnificent and exceedingly scarce antelope—the bastard eland, or *bastard gemsbok* of the Dutch, sometimes also called by them in bygone days the *blaauwbok*—was formerly found within the Colony, but apparently only in the Swellendam division, and in the neighbourhood of the Breede River." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 290, 1889.)

Bastard ironwood.—*Olea foveolata,* a common South African forest tree.

Bastard-maid.—Name given to a fish at Riversdale and Port Elizabeth.

Bastard saffraan.—In Natal *Pleurostylia capensis* is known by this name.

Bastard white ironwood.—*Cyclostemon argutus.* The natives make a drink from the fruit of this tree; the tree

is known by this name in the neighbourhood of Port St. John.

Bast boom.—(D. *bast*, bark; *boom*, a tree.) *Colpooon compressum*, the bark of which is used for tanning.

Basuto.—This is really a plural word (expressed by the syllable Ba). To speak of *a* Basuto is as bad as saying a Zulus, and to add a final s for the plural is a pleonasm. The same applies to several other names of native tribes.

Basuto pony.—These ponies, well known throughout South Africa for their splendid qualities, are the descendants of horses originally brought from Batavia by the Dutch, more than a century ago; and were secured in one way and another by the Basutos from the Boers.

"How far nature and the care of the Basuto people combined had succeeded in producing a *pony* war-horse capable of great physical endurance and marvellous feats of activity, the British troops well knew during the last Basuto War." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of Cape Colony," p. 313, 1896.)

Batatas or **Petaats.**—(P. *batata;* Sp. *patata;* from the original American word.) *Ipomœa batatas.* The tuberous, edible roots of this convolvulaceous plant are well known throughout South Africa; among English-speaking colonists as "Sweet potatoes" (q.v.); among the Dutch the name *batata* is used, often pronounced *pataat* or *petaat.* By English-speaking people the world over, this word, in the form "potato," has been transferred to quite another plant—*Solanum tuberosum.*

"A despatch of the end of this year refers almost exclusively to the improvement of the Colony in the growth of wine, indigo, olives, *pattattas*, etc." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," II. p. 557, 1846.)

"*Batatas* and maize were often planted." (Livingstone's "Journal," I, p. 73, 1866.)

Bataviase or **Baviaanse kweek.**—(D. *kweek*, couch-grass.) A species of quick-grass is so called in the Western Province.

"Bataviase (Baviaanse) kweek, dit groei diip in di grond het dikka wortles." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek, en Resepten Boek," p. 147, 1898.)

Baviaan's ooren.—(D. *oor*, an ear.) *Eriospermum latifolium, Jacq.* The tuber of this plant is used for abrasions and sores. The name refers to the shape of the leaves.

Baviaan spinnekop.—(D. *spinnekop*, a spider.) These

large spiders belong to the genus *Harpactira*. See Tarantula.

"I have seen here a rare spider, called by the natives *Baviaan spinnekop*. It is covered with hair, looks like a crab when running, and when frightened rolls itself up like a ball. It has formidable fangs between the eyes half an inch long." ("Queenstown Free Press," 21 November, 1879.)

"Locally known as *Baviaan spinnekoppen* (Baboon spiders) either because baboons are supposed to be fond of them or on account of the resemblance of the velvet-padded feet to the fingers of a monkey." ("Science in South Africa," p. 178, 1905.)

Baviaan's touw.—(D. *touw*, a rope.) The name given to several climbing plants whose thick, tough stems sometimes hang in such tangled masses of festoons from tree to tree, as to make the bush all but impenetrable, until the axe has opened a path through it. See Baboon ropes. In the Transvaal the name is given to *Canthium Gueninzii, Sond.* = *Plectronia sp.*

"Bushrope, or *Bavianstau*, a species of creeper resembling a rope, grows here in abundance, and nearly envelops some of the loftiest trees, to the destruction of their growth and beauty." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 152, 1818.)

"Among other parasitical plants the *baviaan's touw* (baboon's rope) protruded itself in all directions, in a wild web of tangled vegetation." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 32, 1840.)

Bay, The.—Port Elizabeth, situated in Algoa Bay, is generally so termed by the colonists.

"So devious was the journey that passengers from 'the Bay' did not hope to reach their journey's end before the eighth day." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 46, 1873.)

"At 'the Bay' we found wagons had been sent more than 400 miles to fetch us." (Rev. J. Edward's "Reminiscences," p. 42, 1883.)

Beaker.—(D. *beker*, a cup, bowl.) A mug or tin can.

"Old Piet Koper brought a sheep and two bucks which I bought for five *beakers'* sugar." (Baines' "South-West Africa," p. 61, 1864.)

Beaters.—Heavy wooden instruments employed in the early days of the Diamond Fields to break up the Yellow ground (q.v.).

"The 'yellow ground' only extends to a certain depth; this is friable, and was easily broken up by means of shovels and clubs known as *beaters*." (Matthews' "Incwadi Yami," p. 179, 1887.)

Bebroeide eiers.—(D. *broeien*, to brood, hatch; *ei*, an egg.) The shrub known also as the Aarbeiplant (q.v.). This name has reference to the red veining on the petals, which is thought to resemble that on the yolk of partly hatched eggs.

Bechuana.—" The terms *Bechuana* (a variation of Bachuana) and Sechuana are different forms of the same verbal root, the former referring to people and the latter to language. Their present generic use is generally allowed to be of foreign origin, as it does not appear that the natives themselves have any national epithet of so extensive an application, and has thus been accounted for. It is probable that when first visited by Europeans and asked concerning the people around and beyond them, they would answer, 'Ba-chuana'—they are like; and if their language were inquired of, they would reply, 'Se-chuana,' it is like. The traveller, therefore, constantly hearing these terms in answer to his questions, would naturally suppose them to be national ones, and employ them accordingly. By the Hottentot tribes the Bechuanas are called Briquas, the goat people." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 31, 1850.)

"To the Caffre race belong the *Bichuanas* and the Dammaras, together with the Kosas or Caffres proper, the Tambookies and probably all the tribes on the eastern side of the Continent as far as Delagoa Bay." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 582, 1822.)

Becreep.—(D. *bekruipen*, to creep upon, to take by surprise.) The anglicized form of the term applied by the Cape Dutch to what is known among English hunters as stalking.

"The watchful monster did not charge as we expected, and made off before we had time to *becreep* him." (Alexander's "Expedition," II. p. 8, 1838.)

"What we call stalking the Boers have a much more correct term for—be-kruiping, or *be-creeping*." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 110, 1868.)

Becreeping cap.—This is a literal translation of the Dutch name for the article—*Bekruip-muts*. The quotation describes the method of using it.

"On the head of one man, I noticed an unusually large

fur-cap. It was made of spring-buck skin, of a shape extending far behind the head, and intended to have as much as possible the appearance of that animal's back. This was for the purpose of deceiving the game and of enabling the wearer as he creeps along between the bushes, to approach the animal within reach of his arrows. It is called a *be-creeping cap* (Bekruipmuts) and is only worn when in pursuit of game." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 56, 1824.)

Bee cuckoo.—See Honey bird.

"They had also a most useful ally and assistant in carrying out this work, in the honey-bird—the *Bee cuckoo*, of Sparrman." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 86, 1905.)

Beef-eaters.—The name given in Natal to *Buphaga erythrorhynca* and *B. africana.*

"They are nearly allied to the starlings, and are sometimes called *Beef-eaters.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 65, 1899.)

Beef wood.—The common name of *Casuarina equisetifolia.* The name has reference to the red colour of the wood. (Australian orig.)

Bee moth.—*Acherontia atropos.* See Groot bij.

"Mr. Trimen gave instances of the dread with which it was regarded both by Europeans and the native Africans in the Colony, many of whom stoutly alleged that the *Bee moth* (as they term it) could kill a man with a single sting!" (Trans. S. A. Phil. Society, p. 12, VI., Part II., 1892.)

Bee pirate.—*Palarus latifrons* and *Philanthus diadema,* insects which make great havoc among bees; the former is the better known of the two.

"The *Bee pirate* is, from what I can gather, an old-established enemy of the honey bee in the whole of the Cape Colony." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," p. 129, February, 1909.)

Beerbloem.—The name of a wild-flower.

"There is a flower very like an attenuated geranium, the leaves creep along the ground, and the flower is on a long stalk—local name *beerbloem.*" (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 189, 1902.)

Beer drink.—The natives are in the habit of gathering on frequent occasions for the purpose of drinking "Kaffir beer," (q.v.; see also Tywala); such a gathering is known as a *Beer drink.*

"When the bride reaches her new home the event is celebrated with a big dance and a *beer drink.*" (Brown's "On the South African Frontier," p. 213, 1899.)

Beer, Kaffir.—There are several different native beverages undistinguishable except to the initiated, which pass by the name of *Kaffir beer*; the chief of these is known to the natives themselves as *u Tywala.* In making this beer they have learnt from Europeans how to malt the grain, and the regular process of fermentation goes on. This beer is of a mildly intoxicating character, but when it is fortified, as too often nowadays it is, by the addition of the villainous "Cape smoke" (q.v.), it very speedily maddens the drinker beyond all possibility of self-control.

"I have seen only one *Kaffir* drunk with their own native *beer.*" (Holden's "Past and Future of the Kaffir Races," p. 279, 1866.)

Beest.—(D. *beest*, beast, brute.) As employed in South Africa this word is restricted to bovine animals, a cow, ox, or bull.

Beestegras.—(D. *beest*, beast, animal; C.D., a cow or ox.)

"Many Free State farmers are of opinion that the grass-veld in which cattle contract the disease (lamziekte) principally consists of 'rooigrass,' 'zuurpol,' and *beestegrass.*" ("S. A. Agric. Journal," p. 39, July, 1912.)

Bee-tiger-moth. — *Acherontia atropos* (Death's head moth) is thus designated from its habit of entering hives for the honey; a habit which the bees do not seem to resent.

"It is also called the *Bee-tiger-moth* as it frequents bees' nests and steals the honey." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," XXXVI. No. 4, p. 424.)

Begrafeniskoek.—(D. *begrafenis*, a burial.) A special cake prepared for funerals.

Begrafenisrijst. —(D. *rijst*, rice.) Rice prepared with turmeric. Both this and the preceding word contain a reference to the custom, still in vogue in country districts, of providing a meal for those who had come long distances to be present at the funeral, though now they are used quite apart from funerals.

Bek.—(D. *bek*, a beak, bill, nose.) In Cape Dutch this word is frequently used in the same sense as the English slang word "cheek"—"Hou, uw bek". "Shut up!" "Don't be cheeky!" Sir T. Shepstone's Proclamation of 11 March,

1878, was called by the Boers of the Transvaal the "Hou' uw bek" Act, because it aimed at suppressing discussion of the recent Annexation.

Bekprater.—(D. *bek*, beak, bill; *praten*, to talk, prate.) The term applied in Cape Dutch to a flatterer.

Belhambra.—(Sp. *bel sombra*, referring to the shade which the thick foliage affords.) *Phytolacca dioica, L.* A colonial corruption of the Spanish name of this soft-wooded tree.

"*P. dioica* is a tree, native of South America, and is commonly known as *belhambra* or 'bella-sombra'." (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 110, 1907.)

Bell crane.—*Bugeranus carunculatus.* See Wattled crane.

Bell heath.—See Orange heath.

Bellman.—A Riversdale name for *Umbrina capensis.* See Baardman.

Benauwde borst.—(D. *benauwd*, oppressed; *borst*, breast, chest.) In Cape Dutch asthma is so named. Cf. Dutch *benaauwd op de borst*, asthmatic.

"Most of the patients complained of an oppression at the breast, and an anxiety about the heart (*borst quaal en benaauwde borst*)." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 173, 1785.)

Benauwde ziekte.—(D. *benauwen*, to oppress, distress; *ziekte*, sickness.) The croup is sometimes so called.

"Wurgsiikte, of *Benoude siikte*, of Kroup." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek, en Resepten Boek," p. 155, 1898.)

Berea.—The name given in 1835 by Captain Allen Gardiner, R.N., to the bush-covered hill running at the back of the town of Durban, Natal, now occupied by the fine residences and beautiful gardens of the colonists. (Cf. Acts XVII. 10-11.)

"Decided on naming the Missionary Establishment *Berea*, since notwithstanding ill success with Dingaan, the word has here been gladly received." (Gardiner's "Journey," p. 80, 1836.)

Berg.—(D. *berg*, a mountain.) A mountain or hill.

"As there was no water to be obtained nearer than a mile from the *berg*, we suffered greatly from thirst." (De Wet's "Three Years' War," p. 25, 1903.)

Berg adder.—*Bitis atropos.* So named because generally found on the sides of hills or on high ground.

"The *Berg adder* is as venomous as the Puff adder." (Fitzsimon's "Snakes of South Africa," p. 243, 1912.)

Bergbaroo.—(D. *berg*, a mountain.) In the neighbourhood of Prince Albert *Fockea capensis* is known by this name.

"The plant which is locally known as *bergbarroe*, is not edible, while the tubers of three other species of Fockea, called 'Kambarroe,' are eaten raw by the natives or turned into preserves by the rural housewife." ("The South African Journal of Science," VI. p. 98, 1910.)

Bergbast.—(D. *bast*, bark, rind.) The name given in the Transvaal to the tanning material obtained from the *Colpoon compressum.*

Berg canarie.—*Alario alario.* See Namaqua canarie and Blackhead.

"The 'Pietje' and the *Berg canarie* are not unlike London sparrows in plumage, but they sing with great vigour." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 222, 1870.)

Berg cypress.—*Widdringtonia cupressoides.* A shrub growing on the mountains from Cape Town to Natal.

Berg eend.—(D. *eend*, a duck.) *Casarca Cana. Gm.*

"The *Berg eendt* is readily distinguished by its rufous colour and grey head." (Layard and Sharp's "Birds of South Africa," p. 753, 1875-84.)

Bergenaars.—Native rebels who had strongholds in the mountains and lived principally by thieving.

"A number of disaffected people now began to leave the country to join the *Bergenaars* or Mountaineers (as the disaffected party were called), who were getting from the colonists what the Griquas attached to the Government were unable to obtain." (Philip's "Researches," II. p. 81, 1828.)

Berg gans.—(D. *gans*, a goose.) *Chenalopex Ægypticus.* This fine goose is fairly common, ranging through the whole of South Africa.

"The big *berg gans* (mountain goose) . . . a magnificent fellow whose harsh, noisy 'honk' warns us of his whereabouts." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 93, 1889.)

Berghaan.—(D. *haan*, a cock.) See Dassie vanger.

"Suddenly starting as if from space comes a great black mountain eagle. We know him at once for a *Berghaan* (Cock of the mountain) or Dassie vanger (coney eater)." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 273, 1889.)

Berghaas.—(D. *haas*, a hare.) *Pedetes caffer.* See Springhare.

"In the mountains, between the clefts of the naked rocks, resides a kind of jumping rat (Jerboa capensis), which the farmers considered as a species of hare, and called it *Berghaas* or Springhare." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 182, 1796.)

"It is sometimes, though less frequently, called the *Berghàas* (mountain hare)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 488, 1822.)

Berg kamomille.—(D. *kamomille*, camomile.) The Riversdale name of *Gamolepis pectinata, Less.*, where it abounds on the mountains.

Berg-klapper.—(D. *klappen*, to clap, rattle.) *Montinia acris* is known by this name because of the rattling noise which the seeds make in the dry capsule.

Berg patrijs.—(D. *patrijs*, a partridge.) *Francolinus africanus.* See Greywing.

Berg roos.—(D. *roos*, a rose.) *Protea nana vel rosacea* is so named in the Cape Peninsula.

Berg schildpad.—(D. *schildpad*, a tortoise.) A mountain tortoise.

"See what Outa caught for the baasjes near the Klip Kop this afternoon, a nice little *berg schildpad.*" ("The State," p. 642, December, 1911.)

Berg sijsje.—(D. *sijsje*, a linnet.) *Serinus albigularis.* See Dik-bek sijsje.

Berg slang.—(D. *slang*, a snake.) I have heard this name applied to several different snakes.

"A boy died here a few days ago in consequence of the bite of a small species of viper—Vipera inornata—called in the Colony *Berg slang*, mountain snake." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 167, 1844.)

Berg thee.—(D. *thee*, tea.) (1) *Geranium incanum.* (2) Riversdale District, *Cyclopia Vogelii, Harv.*

"This is the *Berg thee* of the colonists." ("Flora Capensis," I. p. 257, 1859-1860.)

Berg winds.—The name given in the neighbourhood of George to the hot, arid winds which are prevalent there toward the latter part of the winter.

"The effect of *berg winds* cannot under ordinary conditions be considered beneficial to forest vegetation." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 38, 1907.)

Berg zwaluw.—(D. *zwaluw*, a swallow.) The Dutch name for the European Bee eater—*Merops apiaster.*

Bermuda grass.—*Cynodon dactylon*, known also as Kruis grass (q.v.).

Bessing bosch.—A Transkeian corruption of *bezem bosch* (q.v.).

"The usual abundant presence of *Bessing bosch* (*Rhus erosa* and *R. dregeana*)." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 42, 1907.)

Beukenhout.—(D. *beukeboom*, a beech tree; *hout*, wood.) (1) *Myrsine melanophleos.* (2) In Pondoland *Faurea arborea* is so called.

Bewaarplatsen.—(D. *bewaarplats*, a depository, storehouse.) In South Africa this term is applied to certain pieces of land granted under Government licence to be used as dumping places for debris or slimes from the mines. Originally the sites thus granted were not supposed to be auriferous, or not sufficiently so to be profitably worked; as the result, however, of improved methods of gold recovery not a few of these *bewaarplatsen* have now become very valuable. Licences for such *bewaarplatsen* ceased to be issued in 1902.

"The companies which owned these *bewaarplatsen* now contended that they should be allowed to convert them into claims, as, by their enterprise, they had exploited the upper levels and revealed the conditions which made the *bewaarplatsen* valuable." (Fitzpatrick's "The Transvaal from Within," p. 92, 1899.)

Bewertjies.—(D. *beven*, to shake, quiver.) A variety of quaking grass.

Bezem bosch.—(D. *bezem*, a besom, broom.) *Rhus dregeana* and *R. erosa* are so named because their rigid branches are used as brooms. See Bessing bosch.

Bezem grass.—(D. *bezem*, a broom.) *Eragrostis betschuana* is so named in Bechuanaland.

Bezemriet.—(D. *bezem*, a besom, broom; *riet*, reed, rush.) (*Restio dichotomus.* Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 89, 1823.) *Restio triticeus, Rottb.*

Bid.—(D. *bidden*, to say one's prayers, to implore.) Sometimes this word is used euphemistically for curse, swear: *Hij kann goed bid*—he can swear well.

Biessiespol.—(D. *bies*, a rush, reed.) A tussock of sedge or rush.

Biessiespol.—This word is one of several curious terms, e.g. *Doornlat, Mielieblaar*, etc., employed when speaking of a pretty girl. (Has the Malay word *bisai*, handsome, pretty, neat, had any influence here?)

Bietje or (dial.) **Biekie.**—(D. *beetje*, little, some.) (1) A little, a small portion or space. (2) As sometimes used the words seem to be reminiscent, if not an actual survival of the German *bitten*, to request; *ich bitte*, if you please; e.g. *Roep en bietje ver hom.*

Bietouw.—*Haplocarpha lyrata, Harv.*; in the Queenstown District, *Dimorphotheca Ecklonis, D.C.*; and in Bechuanaland, *D. Zeyhere.* With some show of reason these plants are supposed to be poisonous to sheep. According to the "C.G.H. Literary Gazette," p. 224, September, 1831, *Osteospermum* was known as Bidow.

"Possibly the name *Bietouw* may be applied elsewhere to a different plant." (Smith's "Contribution to South Africa Materia Medica," p. 130, 1888.)

Big eyes.—A local name at East London for a small fish.

"I have seen the following fish caught upon it (i.e. ink-fish or squid), sharks, white, black, and river steenbras, *big-eyes*, rock-cod." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 21 November, 1905.)

Big jaw.—*Actinomycosis* of the bony structure of the jaw. See Ray fungus disease, Lumpy jaw, and Wooden tongue.

Bijter.—(D. *bijten*, to bite.) The Cape name of *Blennius cornutus, L.*

Bijvanger or **Bijvreter.**—(D. *bij*, a bee; *vangen*, to catch; *vreten*, to eat, swallow.) *Dicrurus afer* and *D. ludwiggii* are both so called. See also Smoke-bird.

Bijwoner.—(D. *bijwonen*, to assist, be present at.) The appellation by which authorized squatters on another man's farm are known throughout South Africa. Frequently enough, however, professing to farm on shares, they are mere parasites, living at the expense of the wealthier and more industrious farmer. The *bijwoner* system seems to discourage anything like individual enterprise.

"The *beiwoner*—a sort of sub-farmer on the estate of a richer farmer, who is expected to perform certain duties for the privilege of running his stock." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 253, 1889.)

Billet.—The note by which the military assigned quarters

to their men. This word is in common use in the Colony for an appointment or situation.

Billy.—An Australian word meaning a tin utensil used for boiling water or cooking food.

"The sound comes 'B troop roll up for tea,' and every man goes with his patrol-tin or *billy* as it is usually called and gets his tea and his whack of bread." (Browning's "Fighting and Farming in South Africa," p. 103, 1880.)

Biltong.—(D. *bil,* buttock; cf. *bilstuck,* a round of beef; *tong,* tongue.) Strips of lean meat slightly salted and hung up in the open air until they become quite dry and hard; in this form it becomes an invaluable adjunct to the commissariat of the hunter or traveller. It is eaten uncooked, is found to be very nourishing, and is easily assimilated even by invalids.

"He lived almost entirely upon dried mutton and *biltong.*" (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 57, 1815.)

"The merits of *biltong* are not sufficiently known and appreciated. It is admirable provender for a campaign." (Wood's "Through Matabeleland," p. 35, 1893.)

Bimbri kost.—The fruits of both *Vitis capensis* and *V. Thunbergii,* often made into jam, are sometimes so called.

Binnegoed.—(D. *binnen,* within; *goed,* things.) The entrails of an animal.

Binnelanders.—The Bastaards (q.v.) who crossed the Orange River in the early part of last century, and located themselves near where Philipolis now stands, called themselves by this name.

"Amongst themselves they take the designation *Binnelanders*—inhabitants of the interior." (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 10, 1846.)

Bird of paradise acacia.—*Caesalpinia Gilliesii.*

Bird of paradise flower.—The name is given in the Transvaal to *Strelitzia angusta.* See Wild banana.

Bird's brandy.—*Lantana salviae-folia, Jacq.* is known by this name; it is used as a remedy in cases of ophthalmia or "Sore eyes".

Biscop.—(D. *bischop,* a bishop.) A variety of *Chrysophrys.* The name is supposed to have reference to the curiously grave appearance which the large head and peculiar facial features of this fish give to it.

Bitter Almond.—*Pygeum africanum* is so called in Natal

and East Griqualand; it is known also as the Red stinkwood.

Bitter apple.—The fruit of several species of *Solanaceae* are so called. See Snake-berry. This name is also given to *Citrullus vulgaris, Sch.*

"The bush commonly known as snake-berry or *bitter apple.*" ("East London Dispatch," 31 August, 1911.)

Bitter bark.—*Bersama Tysoniana.*

"Another remarkable tree that grows in the coast belt and called *Bitter bark* or Wild quinine tree, is said by Kaffir doctors to be a specific for fevers." (Henkel's "The Native or Transkeian Territories," p. 55, 1903.)

Bitter blaar.—(D. *blad,* a leaf.) *Brachylaena elliptica* is known by this name in the Eastern Province. It is also called Salie (q.v.).

"Of leaf-galls one of the simplest is seen on the *Bitterblar* or isidula." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 4 March, 1910.)

Bitter karoo.—*Chrysocoma tenuifolia, Berg.*, the leaves of which have a bitter taste.

"Plants which not only occupy the surface, but are actively injurious in one or other of several ways. To the latter belongs the *bitter Karoo bosje, Chrysocoma tenuifolia Berg.*, which fortunately is only eaten in times of scarcity, as it produces stomach and biliary disorders." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of Cape Colony," p. 94, 1896.)

Bitter-melon or **Apple.**—*Citrullus vulgaris Sch.* See also Tsama water-melon.

> And the bitter melon for food and drink,
> Is the pilgrim's fare by the salt lake's brink.
> (Pringle's "Afar in the Desert," p. 90, 1828.)

Bitter wortel.—(D. *wortel,* a root, carrot.) *Xysmalobium undulatum, R. Br.* The intensely bitter, carrot-shaped root of this plant is used both by the Zulus and Cape Colony natives as a medicine. The name is also borne by *Gomphocarpus crispus, R. Br.*, the natives using it in the same way, that is, as a tonic.

Black-fish.—(1) *Dipterodon capensis* is so called in the neighbourhood of East London. See Galjeon. (2) In Natal the name is applied to *Dinoperea queketti.*

"Shaped much like the *black-fish* or galjeon." ("East London Dispatch," 8 April, 1905.)

"*Blackfish* (the species with large eyes and mouth, and

white spots) are unknown at the sister port." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 154, 5 December, 1906.)

Black-gallsickness.—A form of sickness among cattle induced by eating Tulp (q.v.).

"A large admixture of mucus and other elements along with the bile causes the latter often to present the appearance and consistency of Stockholm tar, which has given rise to the name of *Black-gallsickness.*" ("Science in South Africa," p. 350, 1905.)

Black haglet.—*Majaqueus aequinoctialis.* One of the somewhat numerous names given by sealers and whalers to this bird. See Stinker and Black night hawk.

Black hawk.—*Lophoætus occipitalis* is known by this name in Natal. See Kuifkop valk.

Blackhead.—(1) In Natal *Pycnonotus layardi* is so named. See Snake-bird and Top-knot or Toppie. (2) In the Eastern Province of the Cape Colony the *Alario alario* is so called. See Berg canarie.

"(*Pycnonotus layardi.*) Boys often call this bird the *Blackhead.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 21, 1899.)

Black ironwood.—*Olea laurifolia.* The fruit of this tree is a favourite food of the wild parrots.

Black ivory.—The name given by the Boers to captured natives: technically such natives were apprenticed, but in some cases they were little, if anything, other than slaves. The quotations indicate a condition of things at the time of which they speak, which, though disguised by other names, was slavery pure and simple. See Inbooking.

"You have already been made aware that loads of *black ivory* (young Kaffirs) are continually hawked about the country and disposed of like so many droves of cattle." (G. W. Steyn's Letter to Sir Philip Wodehouse, 13 March, 1866. See Chesson's "Dutch Republics of South Africa," p. 18, 1871.)

"Some of them carried on an abominable system of trading in children obtained from friendly Kaffir tribes, whom they attacked and plundered for the purpose of obtaining *black ivory* and enriching themselves with cattle." (Moodie's "Battles," II. p. 259, 1888.)

"I have known men who have owned slaves, and who have seen whole waggon-loads of *black ivory,* as they were called, sold for about £15 a piece." (Haggard's "The Last Boer War," p. 39, 1900.)

Black jacks.—*Bidens pilosa, L.* The hooked seeds of this weed are so called because of their colour. They are also known as "Sweethearts," "Weduwenaars" (q.v.). The Kaffirs call them *Umhlaba-'ngubo,* "the blanket stabbers".

"An innocent-looking plant . . . bearing a most aggravating tuft of little black spires which lose no opportunity of sticking to one's petticoat in myriads. They are familiarly known as *Black jacks.*" (Lady Barker's "A Year's Housekeeping in South Africa," p. 130, 1877.)

Black night hawk. — See Black haglet, Stinker, and Stinkpot.

Black pigeon.—The Natal name of *Columba arquatrix.*

"From its dark plumage (it) is popularly known as the *black pigeon.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 130, 1899.)

Black rhinoceros.—*Rhinoceros bicornis.*

"The white is not so fierce or dangerous as the *black species,* but both are moody, eccentric brutes." (Methuen's "Life in the Wilderness," p. 138, 1848.)

Black sea-snake.—*Hydrus platurus.* See Zwart zee slang.

Blacksmith plover.—*Hoplopterus armatus.* The name has reference to its peculiar metallic call.

"The *Blacksmith plover* feeds on worms, insects, snails, and similar animal matter, thus being a practical benefit to the farmer." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 135, 1908.)

Black south-easter.—A violent south wind heavily laden with saline and other matter, prevalent at certain seasons of the year round the South African coast.

Black spot.—*Fusicladium dendrificum.* A disease affecting apples.

Black sun-bird.—*Cynnyris amethystinus.*

Black-tail.—*Sargus rondeletii,* known at East London and Mossel Bay by this name; this fish is called the *Dasje* (q.v.) at Port Elizabeth and Knysna.

"A few friends fishing in the Buffalo River . . . had some excellent sport taking . . . a black fish of about 9 lbs. and *black-tail* of about 2½ lbs." ("East London Dispatch," 29 July, 1905.)

Black tea bush.—*Eugenia Zeyheri* is sometimes so called.

Black vulture.—*Otogyps auricularis* is generally known by this name in Natal. See Koning aasvogel.

" Suddenly a new arrival appeared on the scene, and the others scattered, leaving the new-comer, a solitary *Black vulture*, to its lonely repast." (Haagner and Ivy's " Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 4, 1908.)

Blackwater.—A virulent type of malarial fever.

" Feeling that the clutch of the fell fever-fiend was upon him, he fled to the mountains, but even there could not escape and fell a victim to the dreaded *blackwater* on 30 July, 1897." (Du Plessis' " A Thousand Miles in the Heart of Africa," p. 50, 1905.)

Bladder plums.—An excrescence, produced by fungi, on several varieties of plum tree.

" The fungi which cause the formation of the well-known *Bladder plums* in several species of the prune." (" East London Dispatch," p. 5, 4 March, 1910.)

Blanket-vote.—The collective Kaffir vote is thus designated. The reference is, of course, to the blanket which has gradually but generally superseded the more dignified Karos (q.v.) as an article of apparel among the natives.

" There were a few muttered jeers about 'the niggers' friend,' and getting into the assembly on the strength of *blanket votes*, and so forth." (Mitford's " 'Tween Snow and Fire," p. 230, 1898.)

Blasop.—(D. *opblazen*,to blow or puff up.) (1) *Tetrodon honkenyi*—a species of fish common in South African waters, which distends itself almost to bursting; when thus inflated it lies upon the surface of the water belly upwards and quite helpless. It is also called the " Toad Fish " (q.v.). (2) This name is also given by the Dutch to the male of *Pneumora scutellaris*, and is descriptive of the large inflated bodies of these insects. (3) It is also applied to a frog, because of its habit of blowing itself up when irritated—*Breviceps.*

" *Blaas-op*, sn. poisonous fish." (" Patriot Woordeboek," p. 42, 1902.)

" The *oppblazers* (*pneumora*), a kind of grasshopper, were caught in the evening. . . . Their whole body is, as it were, a bladder, and so empty that these creatures cannot be carried about stuck through with a pin like other creatures." (Thunberg's " Travels," I. p. 150, 1795.)

" The *Pneumora*, or as they are styled by the Dutch, the *Blas-op*, are also common." (Fleming's " Kaffraria," p. 77, 1853.)

"Another very curious frog is the *Blas-op*. . . . The *Blas-op* spends most of his time under ground, coming only to the surface after very wet weather." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 23 October, 1908.)

Blatcham or **Blatjang**.—(M. *bălachăn*, a condiment made of pounded prawns and small fish, pickled.) A relish made with dried apricots, peaches, quinces, raisins, chillies, vinegar, etc. The preparation is unlike the mixture so named among the Malays proper, which consists of various small fish which have been allowed to ferment in a heap and are then mashed together.

"Ik verruilde een woollen kombaars voor twee sakken mielies, en nu had ik toch voor dien tergenden honger mielies en—begreep eens—*blatjang!*" (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 38, 1890.)

"*Blatjang* made this way will keep for a year. I have sent it to England several times, and have had orders for another supply from those who prefer it to chutney." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 69, 1902.)

Blatsack.—(D. *schouder-blad*, shoulder-blade; *zak*, a bag.) A bag worn over the shoulder when hunting in which provisions are carried. In the Midlands a shoulder of mutton is called a "blad".

Blauwbaard.—(D. *blauw*, blue; *baard*, a beard.) A variety of lizard with a blue head. See Blauwkop salamander.

Blauw beestje.—(D. *beest*, beast, brute.) One of the *Chrysomelidae*, *Haltica indigacea*, found on vines. See Ladybird.

Blauw blazjes.—(D. *blauw*, blue; *blazen*, to blow.) *Physalis*. See Portuguese Man o' War.

Blauwblometje.—(D. *bloem*, a flower.) *Felicia sp.* A well-known karoo bush, a composite having blue-rayed flowers.

"A cineraria . . . of a beautiful deep blue, on which the Dutch have bestowed the euphonious name of *blauwblometje* (little blue flower). Several irises . . . are among our prettiest flowers." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 49, 1890.)

Blauw blometje.—Stories, tittle-tattle, nonsense.

"'But,' said Triegardt, 'they told me such a lot of nonsense (*blauwe blommetjes*) which meant nothing, that I did not believe them'." ("The State," p. 554, April, 1911.)

Blauwbok.—See Bastard gemsbok.

"The *Blauwbok* (*Hippotragus leucophæus*), an antelope resembling the Roan, but somewhat smaller and without the black face markings." ("Science in Africa," p. 122, 1905.)

Blauwbok.—*Cephalopus monticola*, the smallest of the South African bucks. See also Ipiti and Blue-buck.

"The woods also abound with . . . an elegant little antelope, not more than a foot in height, called the *blaawe bock* or blue buck." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," II. p. 139, 1835.)

Blauwboontjes.—(D. *boon*, a bean.) Bullets are sometimes so designated. Cf. the German, *Blaue Bohnen zu regnen*, to rain bullets. (Grimm's "Märchen," 18th Ed., p. 399, 1882.)

Blauw bosch.—(D. *blauw*, blue; *bos*, a bush.) *Royena pallens.* When ripe the fruit of this tree is edible; the seeds are sometimes roasted and used as coffee.

Blauw katakuro.—The Knysna name of the Cuckoo shrike, *Grauculus caesius*, a bird of very shy habit, found in the coast bush from Knysna to Zululand.

Blauwkop salamander or **Koggelmannetje.**—A lizard—fam. *Humivagae*—of somewhat striking colours, the head and back being a bright blue and the throat of an exquisitely delicate rose colour. See Koggelmander.

"The Boers call it the *Blaauw kop salamander* (blue-headed salamander), and look upon it with feelings of awe and horror. They will tell you solemnly, and they verily believe it, that this reptile is deadly poisonous, and that from it all the snakes obtain and renew their poison." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 278, 1889.)

Blauw schimmel.—(D. *schimmel*, a grey horse.) A blue-grey horse as distinguished from Rooi schimmel (q.v.).

"A *blauw-schimmel* paard is a dappled grey, and others are distinguished as red or brown, according to their colour." (Baine's "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 66, 1877.)

Blauwtong.—(1) Horse. There are two varieties of this deadly disease known all over South Africa as "the Horse-sickness," Dutch, *paarde ziekte*; (*a*) The common form which affects the lungs chiefly, and (*b*) the form called "dikkop" (q.v.), thick head. The prominent symptom of this latter is a swelling of the subcutaneous tissue of the head; sometimes

the swelling is confined to the tongue and gives rise to that form of the sickness known as *blauwtong* or blue-tongue.

(2) Sheep. A form of influenza affecting sheep, which is thought to be nearly allied to the "Horse-sickness" (q.v.), if not identical with that form of it which affects the head and tongue more particularly. In bad cases the tongue becomes purple and much enlarged. (See Wallace's "Farming Industries of South Africa.")

Blauw valk.—(D. *valk*, hawk, falcon.) The name sometimes given to *Elanus cœruleus;* see Witte Sperwel; but more frequently perhaps to *Melierax canorus*, the chanting goshawk.

Blauw vischvanger.—(D. *vangen*, to catch.) *Alcedo semitorquata.* A pretty little kingfisher found all over South Africa.

Blauw zaad gras.—(D. *zaad*, seed, spawn.) *Eragrostis lehmanniana, Nees.* See Eastern Province Vlei grass.

Blesbok.—(D. *bles*, blaze, a white mark.) *Damaliscus albifrons*, extinct in the Cape Colony except in one or two localities where it is preserved.

"The *Blesbok* is so called from having a white mark on its forehead, similar to that which in horses is termed in Dutch a *bles*, and by English horsemen a star or blaze." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 335 n., 1824.)

Bles hoender.—(D. *bles*, blaze, a white mark; C.D. *hoender*, fowl.) A water-fowl with a *bles* or white spot on the head; it is often found on *vleis*.

Blesmol.—*Georychus capensis.* The name refers to the white mark which this animal has on the front of its head. See Cape mole.

"The second, called the Blaze-fronted mole (*Bles moll, Marmota capensis*), is smaller, and white with brown spots." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 263, 1795.)

"There is another kind of mole-rat much resembling this in colour and nature, but in size not exceeding the common mole of Europe, it is also peculiar to this country, and is known by the name of *Bles moll* (white-faced mole)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 57, 1822.)

Blik.—(D. *blik*, tin, dustpan; G. *blech*, tin.) Small tin cans, used by labourers to carry tea or coffee in, are known as *bliks*.

Blikhuis.—(D. *huis*, a house.) A house built of galvanized iron, common enough in most of our colonial towns.

Blikoor.—(D. *oor*, an ear.) One of several nicknames given to the Transvaalers by the Dutch of the Cape Colony, and subsequently applied by the Transvaalers to their brethren of the Orange Free State.

"Their Transvaal brethren do not hesitate to admit that the *Blikoors* (nickname of Free Staters) are the best body of men round Ladysmith." ("Cape Times," p. 7, 24 November, 1899.)

Blinde mol.—(D. *blind*, blind; *mol*, a mole.) (1) An insect-eating mole that is said to be blind. (2) The game of blind man's buff.

Blinder.—A huge, curling wave, such as used to occur at Durban and East London on the bars previous to the deepening of the channel by dredging.

"A wave properly called a *blinder* would curl up." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 84, 1899.)

Blinde vlieg.—(D. *blind*, blind; *vlieg*, a fly.) A large gnat which draws blood.

Blind River.—A river whose waters only flow into the sea in times of flood, but which at ordinary times is without a mouth.

"The Kleinemonde over yonder were a *blind river* same as now, with a stretch of beach of about 200 yards wide 'tween its lip and the sea foam." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 275, 1897.)

Blind snake.—*Typhlops schegellii.*

"Several examples of the huge *Blind snake, Typhlops schegellii* were found together in Rhodesia in the heart of a termite-mound." ("Science in South Africa," p. 158, 1905.)

Blind South-easter.—See South-easter and Black South-easter.

"During a *blind south-easter* the top of Table Mountain is devoid of any cloud, but the mountains to the north of Table Bay are usually covered with fog or mist." ("Addresses Joint B. and S.A.A.A.S.," I. p. 287, 1905.)

Blink.—(D. *blinken*, to shine, glitter.) To shine, applied to cattle when in good condition—*blink-fet.*

Blinkblaar.—(D. *blinken*, to shine, glitter; *blad*, a leaf.) *Rhamnus prinoides*, a shrub with glossy, shining leaves.

Blink-blad Wacht-en-bietje.—(D. *blinken*, to shine, glitter; *blad*, a leaf; *wachten*, to wait, stay; *beetje*, a little,

little bit.) *Zizyphus mucronata* is known by this name in the Transvaal.

Blinkwater.—(D. *blinken*, to shine, glitter.) The Cape Dutch name for the Will-o'-the-wisp, and also for marine phosphorescence.

Blistering bush.—*Bubon Galbanum, L.* See Wild celery.

"The other day a friend of mine had a more than usual dose of blistering. . . . The awkward feature of this danger is that one does not notice any effect on the hand until about thirty or forty hours after one has touched the plant. Its name is Bubon, or if any one prefers the colonial name 'Wild celery'." ("Mountain Club Annual, Cape Town," p. 24, 1903.)

Blits.—(G. *Blitz*, lightning.) This word was probably introduced into Cape Dutch by German servants of the Dutch E. I. Company.

Blockhouse.—(G. *Blockhaus*, a small fort blocking the entrance to a besieged town.) The round towers built in the early days of the settlement in the neighbourhood of Cape Town to protect the inhabitants.

Bloed pens.—(D. *bloed*, blood; *pens*, paunch, stomach.) (1) Dysentery. (2) A disease also to which lambs are subject.

"They are doing badly owing to the prevalence of . . . *bloed pens*." ("Queenstown Representative," 5 September, 1911.)

Bloemetjes.—(D. *bloem*, a flower). Small flowers generally.

"There was that wonderful valley of the lake with the *bloemetjes* and the scent-laden *avond bloem*." (Argus' "Christmas Annual," p. 12, 1904.)

Blood fink.—(D. *vink*, a finch.) *Pyromelana oryx* is so called in Natal.

"Mr. Tyrrel says that it is popularly known as the *Blood fink* and that the male bird has several little brown females." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 70, 1899.)

Blood flowers.—The Natal name of *Hæmanthus Natalensis.* Percival refers to a flower that I have not been able to identify.

"The *blood-flower* takes its name from an opinion that it stops the bleeding on being applied to the wounded part." (Percival's "Account," p. 146, 1804.)

"Durban again conjured up a vision of the glorious

scarlet cockades of a plant—*Hæmanthus Natalensis*—the *blood-flower*." (" Methodist Churchman," 19 June, 1906.)

Blood louse.—*Schizoneura lanigera*, known also as the Woolly-aphis, is sometimes so called because when crushed it gives a red stain.

Blood spoor.—The blood marks by which a wounded animal is traced.

"A native man . . . came somewhat suddenly upon the two wolves. He . . . shot both. The *blood spoor* was traced a considerable distance." (" Queenstown Free Press," 16 September, 1862.)

Bloodwood.—The Transvaal name of *Pterocarpus angolensis*.

Blow out.—A large mass of detached auriferous quartz as distinct from the reef, is known to the miners by this name.

"There is some doubt as to whether the quartz now being worked is a legitimate reef, or is not rather a *blow-out*." (Churchill's " Men, Mines, and Animals," p. 306, 1905.)

Bluebacks. — The notes of the Transvaal Government issued in 1865. The impecunious condition of the Transvaal at the time made these notes very much less than their face value. Cf. the American term " Greenbacks ".

"Dit voorbeeld werd in Transvaal gevolgd, en *blue-backs* in omloop gebracht tot een bedrag van £60,000." (Cachet's " De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 437, 1882.)

"They were not at all anxious to return to the time of *blue-backs*. (Martin's " At Home in the Transvaal," p. 501, 1884.)

"There was no money in the country except a little English gold, and everything was by barter until 1865 when paper money was issued called *Blue-backs* to the extent of £1000." (Anderson's " Twenty-five Years in a Waggon," II. p. 58, 1887.)

Blue bell.—The beautiful lilac-coloured *Gladiolus spathaceus* (and other species) is known by this name in the Caledon and Riversdale Districts.

Blue-berry.—*Vaccinium exul, Bolus*, is so called in the Transvaal.

Blue-bird.— (1) *Phoebetria fuginilosa.* This bird is also known as the " Sooty albatross ". (2) In Natal this name is given to *Lamprocolius phoenicopterus* and *L. melanogaster*.

"The Black albatross, or *Blue-bird* as the sailors call

it, is common along our southern coast." (Layard and Sharp's. "Birds of South Africa," p. 773, 1875-84.)

"This and the following species are popularly known as *Blue-birds.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 63, 1899.)

Blue buck.—*Cephalopus monticola.* The smallest of the South African bucks. See also Ipiti.

"An elegant little antelope not more than a foot in height, called the *blaawe bock* or *blue buck.*" (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," II. p. 139, 1835.)

Blue crane.—*Anthropoides paradisea.* This elegant bird, which is confined to South Africa, is of a uniform light blue colour, with a white head.

Blue disa.—*Disa graminifolia,* Ker.

Blue fish.—(1) In the neighbourhood of Cape Town this name is given to *Stromateus microchirus.* See Barracouta and Pompelmoosje. (2) At East London the name is applied to another fish—*Pimelepterus fuscus.* Known lower down the coast as Barger and in Natal as the Butter-bream. See Fat-fish.

"The *blue fish* is partly herbivorous, partly carnivorous in its feeding, and so far as I know is only caught with ascidian (rock bait) upon our part of the coast." ("East London Dispatch," 7 August, 1905.)

Blue ground.—The name given at Kimberley to the dark, greyish-blue soil which forms the matrix in which the diamonds are found. It is also called "blue-clay" or simply "the blue".

"It was soon found, however, that the *blue ground* (as it was called) also pulverized after short exposure to the atmosphere, and that far from being barren of diamonds it yielded even better returns than the upper layers of 'yellow ground'." (Noble's "Handbook," p. 193, 1886.)

Blue jay.—*Coracias garrulus,* the European roller, a rather uncommon bird in South Africa.

"The Rollers or *Blue jays,* as they are generally called by the colonists, are very conspicuous birds in the more tropical portions of South Africa, such as the northern part of the Transvaal and Rhodesia." ("Science in South Africa," p. 140, 1905.)

Blue skin.—The Natal name of the fish *Dentex Natalensis.*

Blue water-lily.—*Nymphæa stellata.* The Lotus flower.

Bluff, The.—The termination of a ridge of lofty hills,

forming an abrupt promontory some 200 feet high on the western side of the Bay of Natal. It serves as a magnificent landmark and is known to seamen as "the Bluff of Natal," or simply "the Bluff". A fine lighthouse has been built upon the top of it.

"In the far distant horizon an object like a thin dark line . . . extending into the Indian Ocean. . . . That thin line enlarges and becomes better defined the nearer you approach; it is *the Bluff of Natal.*" (Holden's "History of Natal," p. 5, 1855.)

Boart or **Bort.**—The name given on the Diamond Fields to a coarse, dark-coloured variety of diamond; it is useless for the jeweller's purpose, but is employed in polishing and cutting other stones. Though in frequent use in South Africa, this word is not an Africanderism.

"A piece of *bort* weighing 281 carats has been found this week at the Pan." ("Queenstown Free Press," 7 November, 1873.)

"One might easily find month after month inferior stones, splints, and *boart*, which would hardly pay for working the claims." (Ellis' "South African Sketches," p. 50, 1887.)

"They would make the weights in their books tally by taking out the *bort* (a cheap kind of carbon) and substituting the purchased good stones for it." (Cohen's "Reminiscences of Kimberley," p. 142, 1911.)

Bobbetjes.—This word appears to be a South African adaptation of the Cabob of the Anglo-Indian household, a dish prepared in much the same way. Small pieces of mutton and bacon are skewered on a stick and broiled. They are sometimes called "Cats' meat," for a sufficiently obvious reason. See Sassatjes.

"All the writing in the world will not induce Cape Colonials to forgo . . . their carbonaatjes, *boebootis*, and sassatjes." ("Graaff Reinet Budget," 23 July, 1900.)

Bobooti.—(This word is probably of Malay origin; cf. Malay *bubur*, pulpy matter, soup, pottage.) Finely cut meat prepared with curry powder.

"'*Babooti*' and 'frikadel' and 'potato-pie' are great improvements upon the minced meats of England." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 224, 1870.)

Boer.—(D. *boer*, a peasant, countryman; G. *Bauer*; Eng. *boor.*) The rural descendants of the early Dutch settlers are

generally known as Boers throughout South Africa. The word is not so exactly defined in meaning now as in earlier days, and is often employed of others than farmers or country folk.

"I am just returned . . . after having had occasion to visit several African 'boors,' so they here call a set of hearty, honest fellows, who, though they do not indeed differ in rank from our Swedish peasants . . . are yet for the most part extremely wealthy." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 50, 1785.)

Boer biscuit.—Small loaves fermented with raisins are first baked altogether then separated and dried in a very slow oven.

"The provisions consist of meat cut in strips, salted, peppered, and dried, or else of sausages and *Boer biscuits*." (De Wet's "Three Years' War," p. 9, 1903.)

Boer boon.—(D. *boon*, a bean.) *Scotia speciosa* and *S. latifolia* are so called.

"The *Boerboontjes* (*Schotia speciosa*) a leguminous shrub with beautiful scarlet flowers growing in clusters out of the old wood." ("Bunbury's Journal," p. 101, 1848.)

Boerboontjes.—In the Midlands a variety of broad bean is so named. See also Platte Peters (q.v.).

Boer brandy or **Boers.**—See Cape smoke, Dop.

"For instance the price of a glass of *Boers* or whisky is sixpence, though the former costs the hotel keeper considerably less than half the price of the latter." ("Queenstown Free Press," 22 June, 1884.)

Boer goats.—The ordinary goat is thus distinguished from the Angora goat.

"The *Boer goat* . . . is a strong, coarse, hardy, energetic animal, strongly resembling the English goat." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 323, 1896.)

Boer handelaar.—(D. *handel*, trade; *handelaar*, merchant, trader.) Merchants trading with Dutch farmers, in earlier days bartering goods for produce.

"We do not say, nor do we think, that none of the *Boer Handelaars* at the Bay are fair dealing, honourable men." ("Queenstown Free Press," 7 February, 1865.)

Boer meal.—Coarsely ground wheaten flour, largely used throughout South Africa for bread, porridge, etc.

"Bread we could not get, only the *Boer's meal*, i.e. the flour of the country." (Roche's "On Trek in the Transvaal," p. 110, 1878.)

"Then I found a little tea and Jackson some *Boer meal* (coarse flour); of the latter we made a really very good porridge, and had a few spoonsful round and a sip of tea." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," p. 399, 1896.)

Boer met de varkens.—(D. *varken*, hog, pig.) Lit. "Farmer with the pigs". A school of porpoises is so designated along the coast.

Boer tobacco.—"The common plant grown in the country, by the name of 'Boer' or 'Transvaal' tobacco, is a coarse bastard variety from Sumatra." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 477, 1906.)

"No satisfactory tenders having been received for the supply of *boer tobacco* . . . fresh tenders . . . will be received." ("Queenstown Free Press," 30 June, 1863.)

Boer verneuker.—(C.D. *verneuk*, to cheat, deceive.) Itinerant traders who make it their business to barter nearly worthless articles to Boer farmers for produce worth very much more than the Boer receives.

"The *boer verneukers* buy up as rashly and indiscriminately as ever." ("Queenstown Free Press," 24 February, 1863.)

"The Natal traders and *Boer verneukers* (literally swindlers of the Boers) began to perceive that if they did not take a decisive step, their trade with the Transvaal would soon be lost." (Atcherley's "Trip to Boerland," p. 85, 1879.)

Boetebossi or **Boeteklis.**—(D. *boete*, penalty, fine; *bos*, bush; *klis*, bur, tangled knot.) *Xanthium spinosum*, so called from the fact that a fine is the penalty for failing to keep one's land free from this pest.

"Consider what destruction is made by a few, as for instance 'dodder,' 'steekgras,' *boeteklis*." ("C. G. H. Agric. Journal," p. 159, February, 1909.)

Boeti.—(D. *broeder*, brother. This is a nursery contraction of *broedertje*, *broertje*, little brother.) A pet name often given to the eldest or favourite son.

"Na den strijd moet Moshesh den Gouverneur habben toegeroepen: '*Boetie* (Broèr) wees maar niet boos. Wij zijn beiden kinderen der koningin, en wij hebben maar gespeeld.' Een bloedig spel met jammerlijken afloop." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 288 n., 1882.)

"There's a lot of things you don't know, *bootie*." (Glanville's "The Diamond Seekers," p. 270, 1903.)

Bogwood.—*Nuxia congesta,* an indigenous evergreen. See Witte salie.

Bok or **Buck.**—(D. *bok,* a goat.) This word is used throughout South Africa to designate goats and antelopes alike, male and female; e.g. boer-, spring-, bles-, gems-bok, etc.

"Dit w. wordt voor beide geslachten gebruikt; van daar dat men van *bokkemelk* hoort spreken." (Changuion's "Proeve van Kaapsch Taaleigen," p. 9, 1844.)

The following quotation is a gem, the writer is speaking of the springbok:—

"Look at the photograph and you will see a queer white streak on the back of the animal. This is really a fold in his skin and he can open and shut it like a book—*bok,* do you see? but he only does this when he is startled." ("Zoo-Keepers and their Pets," "Boys' Own Paper," p. 109, December, 1910.)

Bokbaard.—(D. *baard,* a beard.) (1) A chin beard like that of a goat. (2) In some parts of Griqualand East *Festuca caprina* is known by this name.

"*Festuca caprina.* Nees, locally known as *bokbaard,* a grass remaining green through the severe winter, yields excellent herbage on the mountain slopes." ("Report S.A.A.A. Science," p. 209, 1908.)

Bokhal.—(D. *bokaal,* a beaker; G. *Pokal,* a drinking cup; Gr. *Βαύκἄλις,* a vessel to cool water or wine in.) A tankard, mug.

"One of the principal guests arises holding in his hand a *bokhal* filled to the brim." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 45, 1870.)

"One hour later we were in the old voorhuis together drinking *bokals* and making the rafters ring with song and tale and laughter." ("Cape Times Christmas Number," p. 15, 1904.)

Bokhoorntjes.—(D. *hoorn* or *horen,* horn.) Applied indiscriminately to the follicles of various *Asclepiadaceæ* in the Riversdale District.

Bokkum.—(D. *bokking,* G. *Bücking, Bückling,* smoked herring, probably derived from G. *pökeln,* to pickle in salt.) In South Africa this word is applied to various small fish preserved whole.

"They (springers) make good table fare, but are more

frequently salted or smoke-dried (*Bokkums*) like the herring." (Pappe's "Edible Fishes of the Cape," 2nd ed., p. 19, 1866.)

Bokman.—A labourer who levels the ground turned over by the diggers.

Bokooi.—(D. *bok*, a goat, antelope; *ooi*, a ewe.) In Cape Dutch a she-goat.

Bokveld.—The name given to the Karoo Districts, which at one time were the habitat of countless herds of almost every species of gregarious antelope.

There is also a curious colloquial use of the word; a person who is dead is said to have gone to the *Bokveld*—*Hij is Bokveld toe.* The sun having set is spoken of in like manner.

"Mr. Mong, the boode, had informed me that proper oxen might be obtained in the *Bokkeveld.*" (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 134, 1822.)

Bolderwagen.—(D. "(a kind of) covered stage-coach, covered wagon". Calisch. The etymology seems to be unknown.) A stage-coach.

"European carriages are used only in Cape Town and its vicinity, nor is there any public conveyance except the *Bolderwagen* (stage wagon) to Stellenbosch." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 76, 1822.)

Bolletjes, Moss.—(D. *most*, must, new wine; *bolletje*, a little ball.) A sort of cake in the preparation of which the freshly fermented juice of grapes (must) is used.

"*Moss bolletje.*—So called from 'moss,' juice of the grape in its first stages of fermentation, and 'bolletje,' a bun." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 143, 1904.)

Bologna-sausage tree.—See Sausage tree.

Bombay merchants.—See Arabs.

Bond, Africander.—(Cf. G. *Bund*, a league, union.) A political organization formed in 1882, which sought to unite the various Dutch elements of South Africa into a homogeneous whole. It worked vigorously and successfully for thirty years, and on the consummation of union was merged in the Nationalist party.

Bongolo.—(Kaf. *im Bongolo*, a mule.) A mule.

"Mr. . . . has been appointed one of the official Judges of the South African Judges Association, his specialty being mules, and none knows a *bongolo* better than . . . says the Umtata paper." ("Queenstown Weekly Review," 25 November, 1911.)

Bon kresan.—(F. *Bon Chrêtien*; as applied to a variety of pear this name was evolved by French gardeners from the Greek *Παυχρεστος*, universal good.) The name given to a well-known variety of pear.

Bonnet.—A slang name for a man employed in the gambling hells in the early days of the Diamond Fields to induce others to stake their money freely; a decoy.

"Upon entering we encountered an individual (technically called a *bonnet*) whose hateful duty it was to tempt men to play by the lavish way in which he staked money which to all appearance was his own, and to seduce the unwary into the meshes of his employer's net." (Matthew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 119, 1887.)

Bont.—(D. *bont*, parti-coloured.) Variegated, motley.

Bontebok.—*Damaliscus pygargus*. This beautiful animal which existed at one time in enormous herds in the Cape Colony, has almost, if not entirely, disappeared.

"The *buntebuck*, something less, but more corpulent in proportion than the hartebeest, is the antilope scripta of Pallas, and the guib of buffon." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 129, 1785.)

"Its colour is so beautiful, and its markings so distinct, as to give rise to the name *Bontebok* or Painted goat." (Leyland's "Adventures," p. 81, 1866.)

Bontebok Flats.—An extent of country lying at the foot of the Amatola Mountains, at one time the haunt of this buck.

Bonte canariebijter.—(D. *bijten*, to bite.) *Dryoscopus ferrugineus*. See Zwart canariebijter.

Bonte elsje.—(D. *els*, an awl.) *Recurvirostra avocetta*. The name refers to the peculiar shape of the bird's bill, which is curved upwards.

"The *Bonte elsje*, lit. 'pied cobbler's awl,' occurs periodically in small flocks in the Colony." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 673, 1875-84.)

Bonte haai.—(D. *bont*, parti-coloured; *haai*, a shark.) See Lui haai and Tiger shark.

Bonte kraai.—(D. *kraai*, a crow.) *Corvus scapulatus*.

"The *bonte kraai* (pied crow) of the Dutch (*Corvus scapulatus*) is also pretty often seen." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 15, 1889.)

Bontrok.—(D. *rok*, a coat.) The Mossel Bay name of a species of *Dentex* referring probably to its varied colouring.

Bontrokje.—*Pratincola torquata*, a species of Stone-chat.

"The name *Bontrok* . . . is perhaps derived from some supposed resemblance to the *Bontrokje*, a species of stone-chat." (Gilchrist's "History of the Local Names of Cape Fish," p. 221, 1900.)

Bont slang.—(D. *bont*, parti-coloured; *slang*, a snake.) *Homalosoma variegatum*.

Bont span.—(1) A span of oxen of different colours. (2) The name is also applied to the alternate pieces of flesh and fat spitted on a stick for roasting.

"A skilful man would so arrange the meat on his spit as to have alternate pieces of fat and lean and thus get what we used to call a *bont span*." (De Wet's "Three Years' War," p. 11, 1903.)

Bont tick.—*Amblyomma hebræum*, the tick which is now known to communicate heartwater from a diseased animal to a susceptible one.

"The large *Bonte tick* that destroys the teats of cows and produces terrible sores on all animals." (Douglas' "Ostrich Farming," p. 17, 1881.)

Bontveld.—A flat open country with low-growing shrubs, grasses, etc. See Eland-veld.

"The intervening country, if not the usual *bonte-veld* or Eland-veld, consists of a succession of sandy bults or ridges." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 16, 1868.)

Boode.—(D. *bode;* G. *Bote*, a messenger.) The official messenger of a law-court.

"Mr. Mong, the *boode*, had informed me that proper oxen might be obtained in the Bokkeveld." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 134, 1822.)

Booked.—See Inbooking.

"The children of the natives killed on the commando were *booked* for a number of years until they had reached a certain age, but they were seldom relieved when they reached that period." (Moodie's "Battles of South Africa," II. p. 255, 1888.)

Boom.—(D. *boom*, a tree, pole.) In one or other of its significations—tree or pole—this word appears in frequent combinations: e.g. Kafir-boom, Dissel-boom, etc. Cf. English Jib-boom.

Boom.—In the language of the share market a "boom"

is a rapid advance in the price of shares, produced by active speculation, resulting from an increased output, large finds, or the expectation of such things. The word is of American origin.

"The materials for building other houses were already on the ground, and the usual symptoms of a *boom* were discernible." (Boyce's "Impressions," p. 292, 1898.)

Boom dassie.—(D. *das*, a badger.) *Procavia arborea*, called also *Bosch dassie*. Moodie says that it inhabits hollow trees and runs along the branches with great rapidity.

"The *tree dassie* which lives in trees and feeds upon the leaves. Colonists know this dassie as the *boom* or *bosch dassie*." ("Eastern Province Herald," 18 November, 1908.)

Boomgift.—(D. *gift*, poison.) The juice of a species of *Euphorbia* used by the Bushmen of Namaqualand in the preparation of their arrow poison.

"The poison for their arrows is obtained from different substances, snake poison is used . . . they use also the milky juice taken from a species of cactus called *boom-gift* in Dutch—or *Euphorbia*—which grows in the Langeberg." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 25 July, 1912.)

Boomplaats.—(D. *plaats*, a place.) The locality of a battle fought in 1848 between the Dutch under Andries Pretorius and the British under Sir Harry Smith, in which the Dutch suffered defeat. The place was so named because it had a few trees growing upon it, the surrounding country being bare.

"Sir Harry Smith came up in person with a strong force which met the Boer commando at *Boomplaats* and defeated it after a short but sharp encounter, whereby British authority became once more established in the Orange River Sovereignty." (Moodie's "Battles of South Africa," II. p. 249, 1888.)

Boom singertje. — The name given sometimes to the *Cicada*, and sometimes to a species of tree cricket.

Boom slang.—(D. *slang*, a snake.) *Dispholidus typus*, Smith. A tree snake at one time considered to be non-poisonous, but recently proved to be very poisonous, though its poison is slow in working. It is found from six to ten feet in length, and varies in colour from a vivid green to a near approach to black.

"The natives of South Africa regard the *Boom slange* as

poisonous, but in their opinion we cannot concur, as we have not been able to discover the existence of any glands manifestly organized for the secretion of poison." (Smith's "Zoology of South Africa: Reptilia," 1848.)

Boom, To.—The noise made by the cock ostrich during the breeding season. See Brooming.

"In the characteristic 'bromming' or *booming* of the cock during the pairing season, the neck becomes greatly inflated by the filling of the food pipe with air." ("S.A. Agric. Journal," p. 24, January, 1912.)

Boom, To.—To work up a keen general interest in some particular shares, candidate, or undertaking.

Boord.—(D. *boomgaard*, an orchard.) An orchard. In Cape Dutch the word has been contracted into this form.

Booted eagle.—*Eutolmætus pinnatus.*

"The *booted eagle*—a handsome bird, which shows light, crescent-shaped markings in its outstretched wings—may often be seen hereabouts." ("Cape Times," p. 9, 14 September, 1912.)

Bootlace fern.—*Vittaria lineata, Sw.* This single Cape species is thus popularly known on account of its bootlace-like appearance.

"The *bootlace fern* usually found on mossy stumps in the forest and looking more like a hank of green bootlaces than anything else." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 17 February, 1911.)

Border, The.—The Districts of King Williamstown and East London are often spoken of as "The Border" or "The Frontier," because they are situated between the Colony proper and the native territories.

"King Williamstown, or 'King' as it is sometimes shortly termed . . . has also the chief command of the native trade, extending beyond *the Border* and north to Basutoland." (Noble's "Handbook," p. 102, 1886.)

Borer.—A small beetle which bores its way into wood, and by its depredations renders it sooner or later quite useless.

"Coffee enterprise seemed dying out fast, no planting going on, the trees suffering from an insect, the *borer*, and from the leaf disease (*Hemiteia Vastratrix*), which has played such havoc in Ceylon." (Matthews' "Incwadi Yami," p. 323, 1887.)

"The native woods of the country are attacked by a small beetle, commonly known as the *Borer*, which is brown in

colour and about a quarter of an inch in length." (Brown's "On the South African Frontier," p. 316, 1899.)

"An insect called the *borer* drills holes into your house's beams and rafters and uprights." (Du Plessis' "In the Heart of Africa," p. 55, 1905.)

Borri.—Turmeric, used to colour rice for the table.

"In such cases the man is rubbed with *borri* or turmeric." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," II. p. 136, 1798.)

Borstrok.—(D. *borst*, the breast; *rok*, a coat.) In Holland this name is given to what is known among the fishermen of the south-east coast of England as a "Guernsey". In the Colony it is applied to a lady's corset or stays.

Bosch dassie.—See Boom dassie.

Bosch druif.—(D. *bosch*, wood, forest; *druif*, a grape.) *Vitis capensis* is known by this name in the Western Province.

Bosch duif.—(D. *duif*, a pigeon, dove.) *Columba phæonota.*

Bosch guarri.—(Kaf. *um Gwali.*) *Euclea lanceolata*, a common shrub all through the Colony and Natal.

Bosch lory.—("The word lory is a corruption of the Malay *nuri*, a parrot."—Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary".) *Hapaloderma narina*, one of the *Trogonidæ* whose habitat is the dense bush. Curiously enough Arbousset ("Narrative," p. 222, 1846) gives the name "fiscal" to this bird.

Bosch luis.—(D. *luis*, a louse.) A variety of the "Tick" family.

"A noxious little insect annoying both to man and beast, the *acarus sanguisugus*, which Dr. Clarke supposes to be the kind of louse which of old plagued the Egyptians. The Dutch colonists of the Cape call it the *bosch luis*, or wood-louse." (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 68, 1846.)

"Dat *bosluizen* de oorzaak zyn van meer dan een bekende veeziekte, is'n feit dat geen verstandige boer meer zal ontkennen." ("Mossel Baai Advertiser," 30 July, 1912.)

Bosch musikant.—*Ploceus bicolor* is so called on account of the many sweet notes in its somewhat weird song.

"It is called the Bush musician, or *Bos musikant* in the English or Dutch vernacular." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 66, 1908.)

Bosch peper.—*Piper capense, L.* "A kind of pepper

which partakes of the qualities peculiar to the genus." Pappe.

Bosch taaibosch.—(D. *taai*, tough.) *Rhus lævigata*, used by the natives for making pipes.

Bosch vaal-bosch.—(D. *vaal*, sallow, tawny.) *Terminalia sericea, Burch.* The Transvaal name of this tree.

Bosch vark.—(D. *varken*, a hog, pig.) *Potamochœrus choeropotamus*, a nocturnal, forest haunting animal.

" Two species of wild hog are met with in Southern Africa —Sus larvatus, the *Bosch vark*, bush pig, which is about two and a half feet high and five feet long, and has a tubercular excrescence covered with coarse hair on the face." (Backhouse's " Narrative," p. 213, 1844.)

"This boar was what is generally known in colonial parlance as the *Bosch vaark*; without the offal it weighed upwards of 130 lbs." (" The Queenstown Free Press," 5 September, 1860.)

Bosch veld.—See Bush veld.

" Het Transvaal-gebied wordt verder onderscheiden in: Hoogveld, *Bosch veld* en Gebroken veld." (" De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 332, 1882.)

Bosch vogel.—(D. *vogel*, a bird; cf. Eng. fowl.) *Andropadus importunus.* Le Vaillant states that it builds on branches of large trees and lays four or five eggs marked with olive colour. It has a clear, shrill, single piping note, and it will readily come to anyone who knows its call and can imitate it. See Pilawit.

" The *Boschvogel* as it is called is not very rare in the neighbourhood of Cape Town." (Layard and Sharpe's " Birds of South Africa," p. 214, 1875-84.)

Bosjesman's doorn.—(D. *doorn*, a thorn, prickle.) *Sarcocaulon Burmanni, D.C.*, is known by this name in Namaqualand.

Bosjesman's thee.—*Catha edulis, Forsk.* See Bushman's tea. An infusion of its leaves is used for coughs, asthma, etc. A rare shrub in South Africa known only from the Queenstown and Cathcart districts. *Stachys rugosa, Ait.*, is also known as " Bushman's tea" in the Cradock District.

" *Methyscophyllum.* . . . This is the *Bosjesman's thee* of the colonists. The leaves chewed to excess by the Bosjesmen have intoxicating effects: a moderate infusion is said to

be as good as *tea*, and also as a remedy for asthma." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 463, 1859-60.)

Bosjestroop.—(D. *stroop*, syrup, treacle.) This syrup, which is used for the relief and cure of coughs, is made by boiling the mixed honey and dew taken in the early morning from the calyx of *Protea mellifera.*

Bosmannetje.—(C.D. *mannetje*, dim. of man.) *Cercopithecus lalandii*, tree monkeys numerous in the wooded parts of Knysna and Pondoland, are so called by the Dutch.

"1654, 24 April. This morning there was found in the mountain a dead *bosmannaken*, called in Batavia ourang-outangh." (Van Riebeeck's "Journal," Moodie's "Records," p. 50, 1841.)

Boss up!—A corruption of the Cape Dutch *Pas op!*—Take care! look out! Cf. G. *Passen Sie auf!*

"Wherefore extra precautions should be observed, or as the Dutch hunters say *boss up.*" (Nicolls and Eglinton's "The Sportsman in South Africa," p. 81, 1892.)

Boter bloem.—(D. *boter*, butter; *bloem*, a flower.) *Gazania pinnata var. integrifolia.* The flower is yellow, and an infusion of the whole plant is used as a preventative of miscarriage.

Boterboom.—(D. *boom*, a tree.) *Cotyledon fascicularis*, *Ait.* Sometimes it is called "Boter-bosch".

"The Cotyledons have thick, succulent leaves, and stout, soft stems; some of them are arborescent shrubs about eight feet high; they are called in the Colony *Boter-booms*, Butter trees." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 113, 1844.)

Bottle-brush.—*Calistemon speciosum*, *C. regulosum*, and *C. rigidum.* The name has reference to the shape of the flowers, which is like that of the brush used for cleaning bottles.

"Calistemon, the *bottle-brush* of Cape Gardens . . . are natives of New Holland." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 88, 1857.)

Bottle licence.—A licence to sell liquor in quantities of not less than a bottle.

Bottle store.—A store or shop at which liquor is sold under a "bottle licence".

"The houses generally, if they are not *bottle stores* (i.e. public-houses) are either dry goods stores or mining syndicate offices." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," p. 25, 1897.)

Bougys.—(F. *bouge*; "*coquillage servant de monnais aux Indes*," Boiste.) A species of cowry.

"Cowrys and *bougys* for which they are eager." ("Memo. of Van Riebeeck's, 1672," Moodie's "Records," p. 247, 1841.)

Bovenland.—(D. *boven*, above, over, up.) Applied in Cape Dutch to the country in the neighbourhood of Cape Town. See Onderveld.

"Over the whole colony the words *boven* (upper) and *bovenland* are used to signify those parts of it which are nearer to Cape Town, and often Cape Town itself; while *onder* (under) and *onderveld* are the terms applied in contradistinction." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 88, 1822.)

Boys.—Coloured labourers, whether Hottentot, Bastard, or Kaffir, and whatever their age, are invariably termed "boys" throughout the whole of South Africa.

"The boisterous singing of a lame Irish cobbler who was 'keeping it up' with two Hottentot *boys* neither of whom was under fifty years of age." (Harris' "Wild Sports," p. 15, 1839.)

Braaking.—(D. *braak*, fallow; cf. G. *brach.*) The term applied to the ploughing of virgin soil.

"Ploughing of virgin soil or *braaking* is done in September after rains." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 468, 1896.)

Braakland.—Land which has been ploughed for the first time, or which has been lying fallow for several years.

Braambosch.—(D. *braambosch*, bramble.) *Rubus pinnatus*, the Cape bramble.

"The roots are astringent, and used as a decoction for chronic diarrhœa, etc. The fruit of this species of *bramble* or *Blackberry-bush* (*Braambosch*) is equal in flavour and taste to that of Europe." (Pappe's "Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," p. 12, 1868.)

Braiding.—(D. *bereiden*, to prepare.) The rubbing process by which skins are rendered soft and fit for use. See Breying.

"A process commonly termed *braiding* which they perform by constantly rubbing it in their hands, greasing it, and thumping it with large sticks or stones, till it becomes soft and pliable." (Methuen's "Life in the Wilderness," p. 259, 1848.)

Brak.—(D. *brak*, saltish.) The term is applied to soil or

water in which there is an excess of soda or salts. This excess in the soil seems to be due to the combined action of capillary attraction and free evaporation from the surface. A curious phenomenon about the "brak" springs, which occur very frequently in South Africa, is that they often run strongly in time of drought and are weakest after heavy thunder rains: a phenomenon still awaiting satisfactory explanation.

"Though water is struck almost everywhere round the house, much of it is *brak* or salt." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 170, 1873.)

"Like some of our Boers in *brack* districts, when they first get a draught of pure water complain of its being tasteless and mawkish." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 47, 1875.)

"The ground must be *brack*, a peculiar kind of soil, which, though loose and friable, is not porous." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 82, 1890.)

Brak bosjes.—(D. *bos*, bush, tuft.) Plants of several varieties are thus designated: (1) In the Karoo it is applied to a species of *Mesembyranthemum*, the leaves of which are employed in dressing skins. (2) In the quotations it is applied to *Atriplex halimus, L.* (3) *Salicornia fruticosa* is so called at Riversdale.

"The part where we now halted was covered principally with such shrubs and plants as afford alkali: these were the Kanna-bush and another whose name of *Brak-boschjes* (brackish bushes) indicates that their nature has been well observed by the inhabitants."

"A shrubby species of atriplex, probably the *A. candicans*. Yet the name of *brak-boschjes* does not belong exclusively to this plant." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 21, 1824.)

"When first our oxen were under the necessity of eating *brak-bushes* we felt a little dismayed." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 502, 1844.)

Brakje.—(D. *brak*, a setter; G. *Bracke*, a bloodhound, setter.) As employed in the Cape Colony this word is almost exactly equivalent to the English words, mongrel, cur.

"Paulus Kruger brought his fist down heavily on the table, while he roared 'Allermachtig! are my brothers to have no liberty of action? Must they walk down the hills while the Rooibaatjes march up and make mince-meat of them? Have these *brakjes* not bayonets to plunge into us and turn our

insides out?'" (Nesbitt's "For Right and England," p. 159, 1900.)

"Thus all they had to depend on was these small *brakkies* (mongrel dogs) and their own kerries." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 12 April, 1906.)

Brakveld.—(D. *brak*, saltish.) Veld largely composed of saltish shrubs.

"Cattle grazing on *brakveld* show but little craving for bones." ("S.A. Agric. Journal," p. 37, July, 1912.)

Brakvij.—(D. *vijg*, a fig.) The fruit of a species of *Mesembryanthemum.*

Brand.—(D. *brand*, fire, conflagration, fuel.) An area of veld from which the grass and small herbage has been burnt.

"A similar statement is made of *brands* where the young grass withers as the result of dry weather." ("S.A. Agric. Journal," p. 38, July, 1912.)

Brandblaren. — (D. *branden*, to burn; *blad*, a leaf.) *Anemone vesicatoria Prantl.* The leaves when bruised are very effective for blistering purposes.

"This genus is exclusively South African. The species are extremely acrid and the commonest (*K. vesicatoria* and *K. rigida*) are popular colonial remedies for rheumatism, etc. The bruised leaves applied to the skin raise an effective blister. Popular name *Brand-blaren.*" ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 4, 1859-60.)

Brandbosjes. — (D. *bos*, bush, tuft.) *Mohria Thurifraga, Sw.* The leaves of this fern are pulverized, made into an ointment with fat, which is very serviceable in burns and scalds.

Branddam.—An open tank or reservoir in which water is kept for the purpose of extinguishing fires.

"It (the water) is distributed to *Brandtdams* at different parts of the town by means of open furrows." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 16 September, 1900.)

Brandewijn bosch.—(D. *brandewijn*, brandy.) *Grewia flava.*

"An attempt at distilling a spirit from the berries of what they therefore call the *Brandewijn bosch* (brandy bush) had succeeded." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 364, 1822.)

Brandwacht.—(G. *Brandwache*, a fire watch, a guardship.) An old term which was revived during the Boer War of 1899-1902. It had reference to the old custom of giving

alarm by means of beacon fires, but it was applied by the Boers to the system of outposts adopted by them during the war.

"It would have been impossible for the prisoner to have escaped us as he did not know the positions of the *brand-wacht*." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 25 September, 1901.)

Brandziekte.—(D. *ziekte*, sickness, disease.) This disease is also known as "Scab". It is "the result of an abnormal and unhealthy condition of skin due to irritation caused by myriads of microscopic, mite-like insects or acari". (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony".)

"They are subject also to a cutaneous disease that works great havoc among the bovine tribe. It is called by the farmers *brandt-siekte*, or burning disease." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 263, 1801.)

"*Brandt-siekte*, a disease which immediately seizes such animals (goats) when placed on sour grass farms." (Boyce's "Notes on South Africa," p. 138, 1838.)

Brandzolder.—(D. *zolder*, a loft, garret; Lat. *solarium*, a flat roof, a balcony exposed to the sun.) A loft immediately under the thatch of a building, with a thick mud or brick floor, to protect the under part of the building should the thatch catch fire. The *Brand-zolder* is usually used for the storage of farm produce. It is of interest to know that in Tusser's "Fiue Hundred Pointes of Good Husbandrie" (Ed. Eng. Dial. Soc. 57/5) the word *soller* is used for a loft or garret in which garden or farm produce was husbanded:—

> Maides, mustard seede gather, for being too ripe,
> And weather it well, er ye giue it a stripe:
> Then dresse it and laie it in *soller* vp sweete,
> Least foistines make it for table vnmete.

Palsgrave has "*soller*, a lofte, *garnier*"; and the Prompt. Parv. gives "Garytte, hay *solere*".

"The house having been built with what the Dutch call a *brandt-solder*, the fire, after having destroyed the whole of the pitched roof, had burnt itself out, without actually descending as far as the supporting beams." ("At Home in the Transvaal," p. 455, 1884.)

Breadfruit.—*Encephalartos caffer*, *Lehm.* The name sometimes given in the Eastern Province to this and other members of the *Cycadaceæ* family.

"Our local cycads are commonly called 'Kaffirbread,'

Breadfruit tree." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 24 December, 1908.)

Bread, Kaffir or **Hottentot.**—This is made from the stems of several species of *Cycadaceæ.* The mode of preparation is somewhat peculiar; the stems are first of all buried for some time, after which the mucilaginous centre is taken out, dried, then pounded and made into cakes. See Breadfruit.

"It (*Encephalartos cycadifolius*) is the smallest of all our South African *Kaffirbreads.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 24 December, 1908.)

Bread-palm.—Another Eastern Province name for the *Cycadaceæ.* See Broodboom.

"Our local cycads are commonly called . . . *Bread-palm.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 24 December, 1908.)

Bredi.—A dish of meat and vegetables served up in a sort of mush.

"*Breedi* signifies in the Madagascar tongue spinage; the word is brought hither by the slaves; and at present throughout the whole Colony, every sort of vegetable, which like cabbage, spinage, or sorrel, is cut to pieces and dressed with cayenne pepper, is included under the general term *breedi.*" (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 82, 1815.)

Breying.—(D. *bereiden*, to prepare.) This is an Anglicized form of the Cape Dutch word *breien*, to prepare skins. See Braiding.

"The trunk of a tree is fixed up near the hut, for the purpose of preparing (or as they call it *breyen*) leathern riems." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 351, 1822.)

Breypaal.—(D. *paal*, a pole.) A pole upon which riems are prepared.

"Such an apparatus is called by them, and by the colonists, who also make use of it, a *brey-paal.*" (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 351, 1822.)

"The native was sentenced to be pegged out to a *braypaal* and receive twenty-five lashes with a stirrup leather." ("Queenstown Free Press," 3 March, 1863.)

Bridal wreath.—The name given on the Border to *Clematis brachiata;* but more commonly to *Deutzia crenata.*

"We have the white feathery plumes of the Clematis or *Bridal wreath* as we call it in these parts." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 23 July, 1909.)

Briefje.—(D. *brief*, a letter.) A note or letter; sometimes

it is used of the "Pass" which a native must have when passing from one part of the country to another with stock.

"I desire to send a letter to one of my friends at Selukwe, so I take advantage of the travelling post-office—that is, I stop one of a party of boys and give him a *briefje*, as it is called in Kaffir pigeon-English (and in Flemish)." (Tangye's "New South Africa," p. 184, 1896.)

Brilling.—(D. *brullen*, to roar; G. *brüllen*, to roar, bellow.) A colonial corruption of the Dutch word; it is employed to denote the peculiar growling noise which cattle and other animals make when enraged or in pain, a noise very different from either a roar or a bellow.

"Ragman ran and was barking, when out came two lionesses *brilling* savagely, at which the Kaffirs all fled at the top of their speed." (Baldwin's "African Hunting," p. 111, 1894.)

Brillzand.—(D. *brullen*, to roar; *zand*, sand.) A small area of fine white sand on the western side of the Asbestos Mountains in Griqualand West, which emits a curious sound when men or animals pass over it.

"The sound which the sand produces if people or animals walk over it is not like that of the so-called 'musical sand,' but a kind of roaring noise, on account of which it is called *Brillzand.*" ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc." p. lxx, VIII. Pt. I. 1893.)

Brinjelas.—The fruit of the egg-plant, *Solanum melongena, L.*, known in Natal as brinjals. In these forms the word is from the Portuguese; its history is well worth study as showing the extraordinary modifications a word can undergo without change of meaning. (See Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary".)

"The nopal or prickly pear . . . is in abundance; as also *bringalls* and different kinds of cole and cabbage." ("Percival's Account," p. 143, 1804.)

"Sometimes they bring a few fresh beans or bunches of cabbages, or *Berinjelas*, the fruit of the egg-plant and most delicious when cut in slices and fried in oil." (Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay," p. 54, 1891.)

"Less well-known species are the Egg-plant or *Brinjal.*" (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 90, 1907.)

Briquas.—(Hot. Goat men.) The name given by the Hottentots to a tribe of the Bechuanas known as the Bacha-

pins. The name appears in Sparrman's map but too near the west coast.

"By barter for beads and tobacco they annually obtain from the Bachapins (called *Briquas* or Goat men in the Hottentot language) a number of oxen." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 364, 1822.)

British Kaffraria.—The country lying between the Keiskama and the Kei Rivers. This territory was first annexed to the Cape by Sir Benjamin D'Urban in 1835, when it formed a part of what was then called "The Province of Adelaide". The following year it was restored to the Kaffirs under the humane but mistaken policy of the then Secretary of State for the Colonies—Lord Glenelg. In 1847 British Sovereignty was again proclaimed over the territory, when it received the name of "British Kaffraria". It remained a separate dependency of the British Crown until it was incorporated with the Cape Colony in 1865.

"There is little doubt that the Resident Agent at Block Drift now sees the uselessness of endeavouring to carry out the late arrangements of the Government with regard to *British Kaffraria.*" (Ward's "Five Years in Kaffirland," II. p. 129, 1848.)

"The country from the Keis kamma to the Kei has been also annexed to the British Crown, under the title of *British Kaffraria.*" (Smith's "Sketches of South Africa," "Wes. Meth. Magazine," p. 58, 1849.)

Brittle wood.—*Nuxia tomentosa Sond.* is known by this name in the Transvaal.

Broek band.—(D. *broek*, trousers.) The waist-band of a pair of trousers.

"Blocks three feet square were got out at *Broek band,* i.e. 'waist-deep'." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 113, 1877.)

Broek-en-baatje.—(C.D. trousers and jacket.) A wild flower which is supposed to bear some resemblance to these articles of apparel.

Broeks.—(D. *broek*, trousers.). The common form of the word among the English colonists of the Eastern Province of the Cape Colony; a pair of trousers.

"Socks of course he wore none, and the tanned *broeks* had slightly contracted in their washing." ("Queenstown Free Press," 4 December, 1861.)

Broer.—(D. *broeder*, a brother.) This word is frequently employed in folk-lore tales and ordinary conversation as Uncle Remus—Mr. Chandler Harris' friend—uses the word "Brer". Instead of BrerFox, Brer Rabbit, etc., we have Broer Jakhals, Broer Wolf, etc.

Bromgras.—(D. *bron*, a spring; *gras*, grass.) (1) *Bromus mollis*, the "goose grass" of the rye grass fields of Great Britain. (2) Water-cress is also known by this name.

Bromkos.—(D. *bron*, a spring; *kost*, food.) A water-plant used as a salad.

"'n Koppi sop van *bronkors*, 'n Koppi tesuiker en 'n Koppi asyn saam tot'n stroop gekook en by telepeltjies inge." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 126, 1898.)

Brom vogel.—(D. *brommen*, to mutter, grumble; *vogel*, a bird.) *Bucorax cafer*—the Turkey Buzzard. The name has reference to its monotonously repeated call—"boom-boom".

"The *brom vogel* is a very dark-plumaged vulture, like a turkey-cock, with red wattles and a bare brown neck; they go in pairs only and generally accompany a flock of common vultures." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 245, 1855.)

Bronze bream.—The Natal name of *Cantharus Aeneus.*

Broodboom.—(D. *brood*, bread ; *boom*, a tree.) *Zamia caffra, Thunb.* ("Flora Capensis," p. 429, 1823) = *Encephalartos Caffer, Lehm.* See Bread palm.

Brooks.—(D. *broek*, trousers.) A common South African corruption of the Dutch name for a pair of trousers.

Brooming.—(D. *brommen*, to mutter, grumble.) This word is used of the noise made by the ostrich. See Booming.

"After a good rain ostriches soon begin to make nests; the males become very savage and their note of defiance—*brooming* as it is called by the Dutch—is heard in all directions." (Martin's "At Home on an Ostrich Farm," p. 110, 1890.)

"In the characteristic *bromming* or *booming* of the cock during the pairing season, the neck becomes greatly inflated by the filling of the foodpipe with air." ("S.A. Agric. Journal," p. 24, January, 1912.)

Brown, The.—"Into the brown," a sporting phrase referring to the brown stripe on the side of the springbuck and other antelopes, into which the sportsman strives to place his bullet. It also is used of the moving mass of bucks.

"These people (the Boer hunters) never can resist the temptation of pumping a stream of lead 'into *the brown*' of any troop of game within sight." (Nicholson's "Fifty Years in South Africa," p. 210, 1898.)

Brown Afrikander, Large.—*Gladiolus Grandis, Thunb.*

Brown canary.—*Chrysomitris totta.* See Pietje canary.

Brown kingfisher. — *Halcyon albiventris.* See Bush kingfisher.

Bruin kapell.—(D. *bruin*, brown; C.D. *kapell* (cobra di) capello.) Naia flava. See Geel slang.

Bruin kommetje-gat kat. — (D. *bruin*, brown; C.D. *kommetje*, a small basin.) *Herpestes pulverulentus.* See Zwart muishond.

Brul padda.—(D. *brullen*, to roar; *pad*, a toad; G. *Padde*, a frog. So also Mid. Eng., see Skeat.) *Rana adspersa*, the largest of our South African frogs, with a voice nearly as deep and powerful as that of a calf. The strength and hoarseness of the sound it emits have won for it its name, which English-speaking colonists more often render "Bull-podder".

"Den *brul-padda*, wiens geluid doet denken aan een brullenden os, hoort men dikwijls." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 346 n., 1882.)

"The enormous frog (*Pycicephalus adspersus*, Dr. Smith) called the *brul-pad* or bellowing toad, from the noise it makes resembling the bellowing of a bull." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 59, 1905.)

Brul vogel.—(D. *brullen*, to roar; *vogel*, a bird.) *Botaurus Stellaris, L.* The bittern is thus designated, because of the peculiar hoarseness of its cry.

Brummer fly.—*Cynomyia pictifacies, Bigot.* An insect somewhat like the common house-fly, but considerably larger. It is useful in the destruction of locusts; its larva, deposited on the thorax of the locust, speedily finds its way through the soft skin under the neck, it then lives upon the fatty part of the insect, which it ultimately destroys.

Brusher.—The Natal name for a large species of *Sargus.*

Brying.—(D. *braden*, to roast, broil.) To toast meat on a fork, or to roast it in the ashes.

"These remained by the fire *brying* bones on the coals." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 166, 1891.)

Buchu.—(Hot.). *Barosma betulina, B. crenulata, B. crenata, B. serratifolia.* These plants, which were in con-

stant use among the Hottentots in their uncivilized condition, are still prized by many colonists for their valuable medicinal qualities.

"Men and women powder themselves all over with *Buchu.*" (Medley's "Kolben," I. p. 150, 1731.)

"Careb, eine Art Kraut (Quecke) worans *Buchu,* wohlriechenden Streupulver bereitet wird." (Krönlein's "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin," p. 17, 1889.)

Buchu azijn.—(D. *azijn,* vinegar.) A domestic medicine prepared by macerating buchu leaves in vinegar.

Buchu brandy.—Brandy in which buchu leaves have been steeped; it is taken internally for stomachic disorders and applied externally for rheumatism.

"We found the larger species of bukku one of the most aromatic, medicinal plants in the country, and justly esteemed for its healing properties. Its leaves steeped in brandy or vinegar, and the bottle placed in the heat of the sun, emit an unctuous juice by which the fluid is rendered as thick as honey, and applied particularly for the healing of contusions, sores, and all external complaints. The Hottentots also use it for inward hurts." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 160, 1818.)

"A coarse kind of spirit termed '*Bucca brandy,*' made I believe from the seeds of a bush of that name growing in the veld." (Lucas' "Camp Life and Sports in South Africa," p. 136, 1878.)

Buchu, To.—The fragrant leaves of the Buchu plants were dried and pulverized by the Hottentots, who then sprinkled it plentifully over their cattle and over their own persons.

"I was therefore greased and *boghoued* for the first time in my life." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," II. p. 304, 1796.)

Buck.—(D. *bok,* a goat.) The South African name, without reference to sex, for goats and antelopes generally. See Bok.

"Often on the march we saw large herds of *buck* and 'wilde beests'." (Fenn's "How I Volunteered for the Cape," p. 177, 1879.)

Buck, of a wagon.—The side-rails of the wagon, which help to give compactness to the load, are known as the "buck" of the wagon.

"The damage done to the wagon was serious . . . the *buck,* or overlapping grating, was broken off and the dissel-

boom was split in two." (Atcherley's "A Trip to Boerland," p. 83, 1879.)

Buck doctor. — The name by which the Government veterinary surgeon is known among the rural population of the Midlands, because the earliest efforts of these "Vets" were directed to the stamping out of contagious lung disease among goats.

Buck fat.—The common Cape name for goat lard, an article in great request in country homes for a variety of purposes, medicinal and culinary.

"For hoarseness in children. Blue-gum leaves fried in *buck-fat* or goat-lard with a little turpentine to soften it, rubbed into the chest, or applied on a linen rag as a plaister is excellent." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 282, 1902.)

Buck fever.—An excitably nervous condition into which young sportsmen sometimes work themselves to the detriment of their shooting.

"When shooting on foot in thick bush, whether the animals be dangerous or not, a thorough recovery from a very common disease, usually known as *buck fever*, and which is peculiar to the young and uninitiated hunter, is the first essential." (Nicolls and Eglinton's "Sportsman in South Africa," p. 73, 1892.)

Buckload.—A buck-wagon load.

"Queenstown Market. Firewood (*buckload*) 38s." ("Queenstown Free Press," 9 May, 1860.)

Buck sail.—The "sail" or canvas covering of a buck-wagon.

"A *buck-sail* stretched over the tilt of two wagons gave a shady room between, in which we sheltered from the mid-day heat." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," p. 436, 1897.)

Buck, To.—(D. *bokken maken*, to cut capers.) What is known in Australia as "buck-jumping" is spoken of throughout South Africa simply as "bucking". The action consists in springing from the ground, bringing the four feet together, and, while in the air, arching the back so suddenly and acutely, that none but riders of considerable experience can retain their seats in the saddle.

"First, never mount a *bucking* horse if you know it; secondly, the moment your horse begins *to buck* throw yourself off." (Barter's "Dorp and Veld," p. 37, 1852.)

"The horses possess fair opportunities of putting their *bucking* propensities into play." (Mann's "Natal," p. 135, 1859.)

Buck-wagon.—The large wagon employed throughout South Africa for transport purposes; clumsy in appearance it is admirably adapted to the needs of the country and to the state of the roads.

"Enormous *buck-wagons* are now made for the diamond fields. They require twenty oxen, and contain a sitting, a bed-room, and a kitchen, and a huge canvas covers the whole, and spreads out into side tents for servants and horses." (Anderson's "Twenty-five Years in a Waggon," I. p. 57, 1887.)

Buffalo.—*Bos Caffer.*

"There are some wild *buffaloes* about this place, of which we saw several, but they were so very shy that we could not approach them." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 9, 1789.)

Buffalo grass.—The Natal name for the large-leafed grass. *Setaria sulcata, Raddi.*

"The *Buffalo grass* has a large, broad, corrugated leaf and is greedily eaten by horses and cattle." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 457, 1868.)

Buffalo's friend.—*Buphaga africana.* See also Beefeater.

"Hunters call this bird the *Buffalo's friend*, and no doubt, besides ridding the animals of ticks, it helps the game in another way, by raising an alarm cry when danger is near." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 66, 1899.)

Buffelsbal.—*Gardenia Thunbergia*, a favourite garden tree because of its strongly scented, white flowers.

Buffels doorn.—(D. *buffel*, a buffalo; *doorn*, a horn.) *Ziziphus mucronata* is so called.

"Some species of trees, easily distinguishable from afar, are also peculiar to moist situations . . . such as . . . the *Buffalo thorn* (*Zizyphus bubalinus*)." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 29, 1824.)

"*B. Capensis* (*Buffels doorn*), the only species, is a tree 12 to 14 feet high." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 263, 1906.)

Buffel vogel.—(D. *vogel*, a bird.) *Buphaga africana.* See also Buffalo's friend.

"In any case the stalk required caution, and with those watchful *buffel vogels* about extreme care was essential." (Bryden's "Travel and Big Game," p. 187, 1897.)

Buggy.—(C.D. Bokkie.) In South Africa this term is applied to a two-seated Cape cart with a folding hood.

Buig-mij-niet.—(D. *buigen*, to bend.) *Buxus Macowani Oliv.* The Cape box—the name refers to the brittle character of the wood.

Buik plank (of a wagon).—(D. *buik*, belly.) The flooring of the body of the wagon is so called.

"The planks of the bottom (*buik plank*) were two inches thick." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 140, 1822.)

"The enraged brute struck his powerful horn into the *buik plank* (the bottom boards) with such force as to push the wagon several paces forward." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 27, 1857.)

Bull eye.—*Brama raii*, the name given to this fish in the neighbourhood of Cape Town.

"I think *Brama raii* may be the correct name for the Cape Town *Bull eye* . . . but if it is, then I think it is fairly certain that the *Bull eye* and our well-known 'Bully' are not identical." ("East London Dispatch," 14 August, 1905.)

Bull grunter.—*Pristipoma multimaculata.* The Natal name of a fish similar in size and habits to the common grunter but spotted more thickly, and with a spotted, blunt head.

"I should like to know if anyone has recently taken a *bull grunter* in the bay." ("Natal Pictorial Mercury," p. 668, 1906.)

Bull head.—*Felis caffra.* See Wilde kat.

Bull Klip-fish.—*Clinus taurus.* The name has reference to the fierce aspect of this fish.

"Mingling with *C. superciliosus* and its sub-species . . . is the *Bull klip* (*C. taurus*)." ("The South African Journal of Science," VII. p. 217, 1911.)

Bull podder.—See Brull padda.

Bully.—(1) The East London name of a small fish—*Gobius nudiceps*—found in almost every rock-pool along the coast. (2) The name is also given to a bird—*Serinus sulphuratus.* See also Geel-seisje and Glass eye.

"I think that our *bully* is one of the blennies, or of the gadoidei which much resemble them." ("East London Dispatch," 14 August, 1905.)

"The Geel-seisje of the Boers and *Bully* of the Colonial

boys." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 84, 1908.)

Bult.—(D. *bult*, a hump, hunch.) A ridge or hillock.

"A succession of sandy *bults* or ridges." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 16, 1868.)

"De ligging op een platten, langen heuvel of *bult*, 4800 voet boven de zee, is niets schilderachtig maar zeer gezond." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 370, 1882.)

"Though hidden from view by a slight *bult* he was then ascending, he could tell it was approaching him." (Turnbull's "Tales from Natal," p. 149, 1901.)

"Most of the vines are big and strong, especially on the *bultjes*, where they are simply splendid, and bear very heavily." ("S. A. Agric. Journal," p. 236, August, 1912.)

Bunga.—(K. *uku Bungana*, to consult in secret council.) The Transkeian designation of the Transkei General Council, partly representative and partly nominated by Government, which meets to consider and arrange for native education, upkeep of roads, breeding of cattle, and native interests generally in the district over which it has jurisdiction.

"*Bunga*, the representative council for certain native districts." ("East and West Magazine," p. 425, 1906.)

"The *Bunga* has jurisdiction over an area fifty per cent larger than Basutoland and containing three times as many inhabitants." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 2 May, 1912.)

Burg.—In Cape Dutch this word is applied to a gelded pig. The Patriot Woordeboek says that a Burg is an "ostracized pig"!

Burgher.—(D. *burger*, a citizen of a burg or fortified town.) One who enjoys the rights of citizenship and is under obligation to render military service when required by the Government to do so.

"The services of the *Burgher* Cavalry are not likely to be for ever again demanded." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 217, 1804.)

"Two leading *burghers*, Paul Kruger and Dr. Jorissen, went to England and protested against the annexation." (Russell's "Natal," p. 241, 1891.)

Bush, The.—(D. *bosch*, wood, forest.) Large areas covered with trees, which might reasonably be called forests, e.g. the Pirie Bush at the foot of the Amatolas.

"The soil . . . having been covered to a large extent by

a thick forest of trees (usually termed *bush*) for many years, is in parts richly charged with decayed vegetable matter." ("The Castle Line Guide to South Africa," p. 69, 1888.)

Bush-baby.—*Galago maholi.* This pretty little animal is scarcely larger than a rat; it has exquisitely soft fur, large dark-brown eyes, and round erect ears. It makes an engaging pet. See Nacht apie.

"The thunder of the surf upon the shore near by, and the occasional cry of a *bush-baby*, alone broke the awful stillness." (Turnbull's "Tales from Natal," p. 81, 1901.)

Bush-buck.—*Tragelaphus scripta sylvaticus.* Cape Colony.

"There are several other small antelopes, as for example, the steenbok, rhebok, and *bush-buck*, which are holding their own and rather tending to increase since a close time has been instituted." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 246, 1896.)

Bush country.—Country that is well wooded.

Bush dassie.—See Bosch dassie and Boom dassie.

"*Bush dassie* flesh was the staple food for the Hottentots. This little creature makes its home in a hollow tree. He feeds and gets about his business at night." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 20 December, 1911.)

Bush fig.—*Ficus capensis* is so called.

Bush flea.—A variety of *Pulex* is so called in Natal.

"The *Bushflea* is quite content to share your camp blanket, if you do not resent his liberty of action." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 503, 1899.)

Bush goat.—*Camaroptera olivacea.* In Natal this bird has received this name from the striking similarity of its note to the bleating of a lost kid.

"This warbler is called the *Bush goat* on account of the plaintive goat-like call to which the bird gives utterance." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Birds," p. 79, 1908.)

Bush kingfisher.—*Halcyon albiventris.* This bird feeds largely on insects and crabs as well as fish. See Brown kingfisher.

Bush lory.—See Lory.

"Who does not know the raucous call of the *bush lourie!*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 4 December, 1908.)

Bushman bells.—Hollow spheres made of skin with small stones inside; large ones were fastened by the Bushmen to the upper arm and shoulders, while smaller ones were fastened on the belt and worn round their waists at dances. The noise they make is like that of peas in a bladder.

"The last instruments we shall notice were those which have been termed *Bushman bells.*" (Stowe's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 110, 1905.)

Bushman drawings or **paintings.**—These drawings are to be found in caves all over South Africa; various animals are delineated with force and spirit, and with such accuracy of outline and detail as to evoke admiration. The materials employed appear to be charcoal and various ochres, the colours even after the lapse of a number of years are sometimes exceedingly vivid. For some good reproductions see Bent's "Ruined Cities of Mashonaland," 1893.

"In the course of travelling I had frequently heard the peasantry mention the drawings made by the Bosjesmen, but I took it for granted they were caricatures only . . . and it was no disagreeable disappointment to find them very much the reverse." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 200, 1801.)

"At Tygerpoort . . . a very fine assortment of *Bushmen drawings* may be seen . . . one easily recognized the outlines of a bushman, baboon, horse, eland, koodoo." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 17, 1896.)

"The writer has in his possession a copy of the first chromolithograph ever printed in South Africa. . . . It was not only the first chromolithograph, but one of the earliest reproductions of *Bushman paintings* in this country." ("The State," p. 761, December, 1909.)

Bushman grass or **"Dwa grass".**—*Aristida brevifolia,* "on which all stock thrive and grow quickly". (Noble.)

Bushman rice.—The larvæ of several species of termites are sometimes so called, because in appearance they are not unlike rice grains and were a favourite article of food with the Bushmen. See Rijst mieren.

"The ordinary food of these people consisted of roots, berries, wild plants, locusts, larvæ of ants—now commonly called '*Bushman rice*' by European colonists." (Theal's "Portuguese in South Africa," p. 12, 1896.)

"Kert went into a transport of joy at finding some '*Bushman's rice,*' a species of ant . . . looking like gentles with

feet." (Farinis, "Through the Kalahari Desert," p. 107, 1886.)

Bushman's candle.—*Sarcocaulon Burmanni* and *S. Patersoni*. See also Candle-bush and Kers-bosje.

"Two Sarcocaulons (*Geraneacea*) whose thick cuticle . . . is rich in hydrocarbons and burns with a yellow, smoky flame; it is commonly known as the *Bushman's candle*." (The "Gardener's Chronicle," p. 401, 11 December, 1909.)

Bushman's or **Hottentot's poison bush.**—*Acocanthera venenata*. This plant was used by the Bushmen in making poison for their arrows. The Kaffirs use it for the cure of snake-bites, and in Lower Albany cattle are given water to drink in which the leaves have been steeped to prevent the effects of change from sour to sweet veld.

"The Bushmen take the wood of the plant and pound it to a rough powder, which they put into a clay pot and boil for some time, keeping the lid on as the fumes are noxious, but stirring the liquid occasionally. They then take out the wood and simmer the remainder till it is reduced to a cupful of a glutinous fluid. They then take it to a Euphorbia tree and shed in the fresh juice, and when they are mixed the poison is ready. It is a brownish substance such as you see in a bee-hive." (Andrew Smith's "Contribution to South African Materia Medica," p. 33, 1888.)

"This is the *Bushman's poison bush* (*Acocanthera venenata*)." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 10 November, 1911.)

Bushman's tea.—*Catha edulis, Forsk*. The leaves of this plant when chewed to excess are intoxicating. See Harvey's "Genera of South African Plants". See Bosjesman's thee.

Bushmen.—(C.D. *bosjesman*, bush dweller.) A race of yellowish-brown, hollow-backed, woolly-headed pigmies, supposed to have been the original inhabitants of South Africa. They live by the chase and upon various wild plants, insects, and honey. Their weapons of offence are the bow and arrow; the heads of the arrow are coated with a poison so deadly that the slightest wound made by them is almost certain death. They are now almost extinct in South Africa.

"There is another kind of Hottentots who have got the name of *boshiesmen* from dwelling in woody or mountainous places." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 197, 1785.)

"With each of the companies a few *Bosjesmen* might be

intermixed if they will take service." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," I. p. 4, 1845.)

"The wandering tribes called *Bushmen*. . . . By the Bechuanas they are called Baroa . . . and by the Kaffirs Abatwa." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 15, 1850.)

Bush musician.—See Bos-musikant.

Bush partridge.—The name given in the Transvaal to *Francolinus subtorquatus.* See Swempi.

"My companions called it (Coquifrancolin) the *bush partridge.*" ("South African Field," p. 141, 30 July, 1909.)

Bush quail.—*Turnix lepurana,* a somewhat uncommon bird found in Great Namaqualand and the North-Western districts. See Button quail.

"I shot another violet-winged courser, and Dove a brace of tiny *bush quail* (*Turnix lepurana*), dainty creatures, scarcely bigger than sparrows, which fly very fast, and lie more closely, I think, than any of the close-lying African game birds." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera," p. 158, 1893.)

Bush tea.—The leaves of several shrubs are gathered, dried, and used as a substitute for tea under this name. The common *Bush tea* of the Western Province is *Cyclopia Vogelii, Harv.*

"In most of these Colonial stores *bush tea* can be bought. It costs sixpence a pound, looks like the clippings of a privet hedge, including the twigs, and is said to be a tonic." ("Everyday Life in Cape Colony," by X. C., p. 122, 1902.)

Bush-tick berry.—The fruit of *Osteospermum moniliferum, Linn.* ("Flora Capensis," Vol. III. p. 436 n.)

Bush veld.—(1) Veld composed largely of bush. (2) The Low Country, as it is also called, in the Transvaal.

"Minstens de helft van Transvaal wordt ingenomen door het *Boschveld,* de met mimosa's, acacia's, euphorbiën en dergelijke geboomten dicht bezette streek, die zich van Magaliesberg tot aan den Limpopo, in Noordelijke en Noordoostelijke richting uitstrekt." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 333, 1882.)

"Their farm is of about 5000 acres in extent, on the border of *Bush veldt,* where there are scattered bushes, with spots of good earth here and there." (Indicus, "Labour, etc., in South Africa," p. 19, 1903.)

"Between the goldfields and the nearest port lay the

Bushveld, and game enough for all to live on." (Fitzpatrick's "Jock of the Bushveld," p. 14, 1907.)

Bush willow.—Both *Combretum erythrophyllum* and *C. salicifolium* are known by this name.

Bushy or **Broad-tailed meerkat.**—*Cynictis penicillata.* See Geel Meerkat, Rooi Meerkat, and Meerkat.

Butcher bird.—*Lanius collaris.* The appropriate popular name of one of the most voracious of the smaller South African birds. An old English name for the shrike or butcher-bird was *wariangle*; G. *Würgengel,* the worrying or destroying angel. In Germany it is also known as the *Neuntödter,* the nine-killer. Other South-African names are Jack Hanger, Laksman, Kanariebijter, and Fiscal, all indicating its murderous propensities.

"A kestrel was frequently met with, and also the common *Butcher bird* or shrike." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 502, 1822.)

"I observed many of the thorn trees covered with dead insects . . . all beautifully spitted on the long mimosa thorns. I knew at once that it was the larder of the little cruel *Butcher bird.*" (Anderson's "Twenty-five Years in a Waggon," I. p. 145, 1887.)

"Another of our feathered eccentricities, the *butcher bird,* called by the colonists Jack Hanger, likes to eat his game high." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 252, 1890.)

Butter bream.—The fish known at East London as the "Blue fish" (q.v.) is known by this name in Natal.

"I noticed last week an unusual number of *butter-bream* at the market. . . . It is not a bream at all, but of quite another tribe, with a smaller mouth." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 767, 1906.)

Butter bush.—A variety of *Euphorbia.* See also Boterboom.

"All along these stony hillocks . . . there grow very curious euphorbia bushes called the *butter bush.* If you break off a twig a thick juice escapes, very sticky, and exactly like newly churned butter." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 335, 1871.)

Butter vogeltje.—(D. *vogel,* a bird, fowl.) *Parisoma subcæruleum,* a small bird which is often burdened with the upbringing of the deserted offspring of the Golden cuckoo (q.v.).

Button quail.—*Turnix lepurana.* See Bush quail.

"This diminutive little game bird is known in Bechuanaland and the Transvaal as the *Button quail,* and scarcely exceeds four inches in length." (Distant's "A Naturalist in the Transvaal," p. 107, 1892.)

By.—(D. *bij,* by, with, in.) In localities where Dutch is prevalent this word is often used by English-speaking colonists in the Dutch sense, e.g. to the question, "Where is your father?" the answer will be, "He is by the house," the meaning being, "He is in the house"—"He is at home". Cf. G. *Er ist bei mir*—"He is at my house".

By and by.—The name by which cannon are known to the natives of Natal. It is said that inquiring in the early days what these cannon were, they were informed that they would learn *by and by,* hence the name, which seems to the native to represent the noise of the explosion—a primitive striving after meaning.

"They (the Zulus) are not acquainted with these mighty engines from experience, but have heard of the artillery practice at Pietermaritzburg, and hold them in mortal dread; they believe that the fearful *bye and bye* eats up everything." (Shooter's "Natal," p. 112, 1857.)

"We laugh at their *bai-nbai;* what are guns, big or small, against the broad shield and devouring spears of the ever-conquering Amazulu?" (Mitford's "The Gun-runner," p. 212, 1893.)

Cabbage tree.—The name given in Natal to *Cussonia Thyrsifolia.* See Noois boom. *C. spicata* and *C. umbellifera* are also so called. In the Transvaal the latter is known as Cabbage wood.

"The *cabbage tree* here grows very tall, without branches, except a bunch at the top; the thick, soft stalk when boiled resembles our cabbage in taste." (Percival's "Account," p. 143, 1804.)

"One of the most remarkable of the Natal trees is our only representative of the Ivy family, and is known as the *Cabbage tree,* and to the Dutch as the Noje's boom." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 447, 1868.)

Cadjang.—(M. *kachang,* beans; a name applied to leguminous plants generally.) *Dolichos sinensis,* a leguminous shrub which bears a small round pea.

"The *cadjangh* having fairly sprung up is perished."

(Riebeeck's "Journal," 29 January, 1653; Liebrandt's "Precis Archives C. G. Hope," Part I. p. 64, 1897.)

Calabash.—(The word is probably of Persian origin. See New English Dictionary, *in loc.*) The fruit of a cucurbitaceous plant, the shell of which, when thoroughly dried, is used for holding liquids.

"I also obtained a *calabash*, a few pounds of powder." (Damberger's "Travels," p. 43, 1801.)

"It (the Kaffir snuff-box) usually consists of a small round *calabash*." (Shooter's "Kaffirs of Natal," p. 8, 1857.)

Calabash pear.—So named from its shape.

"The large *calabash pear*, baked in the oven and served with sugar and cream, was delicious." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 15, 1902.)

Calabash pipe.—A pipe the bowl of which is made from the shell of a peculiarly shaped calabash.

Calabash milk.—Sour milk which has been prepared in a calabash. See Amasi.

"This (stamped mealies) with *calabash milk* forms the staple Kaffir food." (Lownde's "Everyday Life in South Africa," p. 87, 1900.)

Calander.—(F. *calandre*, a weevil; M. Lat. *calandrus*, "gryllus, cicada, circulio," Du Cange. The name was not unknown in England two hundred years ago; *vide* Bradley's "Family Dictionary," II.—"Preserving corn, mites, weevils, *calanders*".) *Phlyctimes callosus*, a small beetle which does great damage to the vines. See Kalander.

"Vom Korn-Wurme. Die Holländer nennen sie *Klandres*, sowohl auf dem Vorgebirge als in Ost-Indien." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 358, 1745.)

"The insect pest of the vineyard known by the name of the *calander*, Phlyctimes callosus, has been successfully checked at Groot Constantia by the application of a moderate dressing of lime to the soil." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 148, 1896.)

"Sparrman the naturalist mentions the little weevils (*colandra*) which are still so troublesome amongst the vines" (Trotter's "Old Cape Colony," p. 62, 1903.)

Camdeboo.—(Hot. *gam*, green; *ckabisip*, height, elevation. Tindall's "Vocabulary of the Namaqua-Hottentot Language," pp. 96 and 101.) The hilly country immediately beneath the Sneeuwbergen, forming part of the Graaff Reinet District.

"The division called *Camdeboo*, a Hottentot name signifying green elevations, applying to the projecting buttresses which support the Snowy Mountains and which are mostly covered with verdure." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 115, 1801.)

Camdeboo stinkwood.—*Celtis Kraussiana*, a useful timber tree. See Cannibal stinkwood.

Camel.—The Anglicized Dutch name for the Giraffe (*kameel*) generally employed by South African hunters. Sometimes this grand animal is spoken of as Cameleopard, an erroneous rendering of Camelopard, the animal, that is, which was supposed to be part camel and part pard. One old writer describes it as a "beaste not very often seene, yet very tame and of a strange composition, mixed up of a libarde, harte, buffe, and camele". See Kameel and Giraffe.

"In an hour or two we were on fresh spoor of *camel*." (Dryden's "Tales of South Africa," p. 201, 1896.)

"The Boers as soon as they became acquainted with the tall giraffe, forthwith dubbed it in their quaint way, 'kameel' —*the camel*; and as the camel the giraffe is still known throughout the length and breadth of the South African hunting veldt." (Selous and Bryden's "Travel and Big Game," p. 170, 1897.)

Camel tree or **thorn.**—*Acacia hirtella* and *A. giraffæ*. See Kameel doorn.

"Here the new and interesting forms of some scattered trees of *Camel-thorn* or *Mokaala* gave a most picturesque and remarkable character to the landscape." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 292, 1824.)

"We were lying unconcerned in the shadow of the great *camel tree*, when Commandant De Villiers got the report that some burghers were hemmed in at Colenso." (Kestell's "Through Shot and Flame," p. 26, 1903.)

Camp.—(1) A locality occupied by the tents and wagons of gold or diamond diggers. (2) Enclosed portions of a farm.

"Pniel, by official designation, is a *camp*. Just a camp it is indeed, and one very disorderly." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 78, 1873.)

"The *camp* with its troubles, its stifling heat, its fever and its odours, all left behind, and ahead the delight of the open plain and meandering river." ("Queenstown Free Press," 12 February, 1884.)

Camphor hout.—(D. *hout*, wood.) *Tarchonanthus cam-*

phoratus ; sometimes, on account of the light colour of its foliage, called Vaalbosch and Wild sage.

Camp, Ostrich.—One indirect benefit conferred upon South Africa by the ostrich feather industry, was the necessity which it involved of fencing in those parts of the farms on which the ostriches were to run ; these fenced enclosures were called *Ostrich camps.*

"He purchased three birds to establish a *camp* at Somerset East in 1853, but one was killed and the other two driven away by dogs." ("Queenstown Free Press," 25 September, 1877.)

"Ostriches of which great numbers stalked solemnly about in their *camps.*" (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 221, 1889).

"Sometimes three or four large pieces will be divided off for the convenience of keeping cattle or ostriches separate; these are not called fields, a term never heard in this part, but *camps.* (Lowndes' "Everyday Life in South Africa," p. 90, 1900.)

Camp off a farm, To.—To make enclosures as above.

Canaan.—See Nijlstroom.

Cancer bush.—*Sutherlandia frutescens, R. Br.* This plant was supposed by the Dutch to be a remedy for cancer.

Candelabra cactus.—*Euphorbia grandiflora.*

Candelabra flowers.—The popular name of several species of *Brunsvigia.*

"Plants with large bulbs, popularly *Candelabra flowers.*" (Harvey's "Genera of South African Plants," p. 382, 1868.)

"Brunsvigia or *candelabra flower*—pinkish red, on long pedicels, and not too many of them." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 27 May, 1910.)

Candle bush.—See Kers-bosje and Bushman's candle.

"No matter how bright the fire of *candle bushes,* the scherm was lonely at night." (Scully's "Between Sun and Sand," p. 115, 1898.)

Cane-rat.—*Thryonomys swinderenianus,* an animal belonging to the rodents, very destructive to the sugar-cane in the Natal plantations. It is also called Ground pig and riet muis (q.v.).

"The *cane-rat* or ground-rat that feeds upon the sugarcanes is properly more of a porcupine than a rat. It is a species of Aulacodus." (Brook's "Natal," p. 116, 1876.)

"There are also jackals, wild or hunting-dogs . . . *cane-rats*, hares, rabbits, rock-rabbits, and field and house rats and mice." (Russell's "Natal," p. 34, 1891.)

Cango.—(1) Originally the name of the district. (2) The best kind of Cape brandy, produced in the Oudtshoorn District, is locally known by this name.

"Two fellows had been drinking pretty freely (principally *Cango* and 'Cape smoke') and became very quarrelsome." (Browning's "Fighting and Farming in South Africa," p. 119, 1880.)

"*Cango*, I may explain, is the best kind of colonial made brandy." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 84, 1889.)

Cango caves.—Beautiful and extensive caves of world-wide fame discovered in 1780. They are situated in the Zwaartberg range, twenty miles from Oudtshoorn; the largest is 600 feet long, 100 feet broad, and 70 feet high. From the roof depend splendid stalactites which are met from below by equally fine stalagmites, like the whitest marble. The caves extend for more than a mile into the mountain.

"Calling in Mr. Poleman he gave me an entertaining account of a journey he had made some time ago to a remarkable *cave in Kango*, a part of the District of Zwellendam, from whence he had brought some very singular stalactites." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 61, 1818.)

Cannibalism.—There appears to be no doubt that under the stress of necessity this disgusting practice has been adopted by one or two scattered remnants of native tribes in South Africa, and perhaps persisted in when the necessity had ceased; but it has never prevailed to any great extent.

"*Cannibalism* in connexion with any of the South African tribes appears to have been first observed by the Rev. T. L. Hodgson during one of his journeys in the Bechuana country. See his Journal under date 4 August, 1823, as contained in his memoirs of Mrs. Hodgson." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 41, 1850.)

Cannibal stinkwood.—*Celtis Kraussiana.* The first part of this name appears to be a corruption of Camdeboo (q.v.); it is applied to a variety of stinkwood, the wood of which is woolly, porous, and useless to the cabinet-maker.

"There is a variety of this wood known under the name of the *Cannibal stinkwood.*" (Mann's "Natal," p. 156, 1859.)

"What rhyme or reason, what sense of satisfaction can there

be in such a name as *Cannibal stinkwood* applied to a graceful, handsome tree, whose bark gives out an aromatic though pungent perfume?" (Barker's "A Year's Housekeeping in South Africa," p. 325, 1877.)

"*Celtis rhamnifolia, Prest. Camdeboo stinkwood.*" (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 132, 1896.)

Canteen.—(F. *cantine ;* It. *cantina*, a cellar, cave.) This word is applied very generally throughout South Africa to public-houses; it was probably introduced in the first place by the military.

"So long as the coloured population are . . . demoralized in large towns in the neighbourhood of *canteens*, we cannot expect much improvement in the mass." (Boyce's "Notes on South Africa," p. 134, 1838.)

"But the inns sadly need reformation—they are in fact little better than *canteens.*" (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 9, 1852.)

Canteen-keeper.—The proprietor of a drinking saloon.

"We would call for certificates of character from every *canteen-keeper.*" ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," p. 243, 1 February, 1832.)

"The *canteen-keeper* sent for his boys to turn him out." (Haggard's "Jess," p. 19, 1887.)

Cape, The.—Originally used of Cape Town and the neighbourhood only, the term was soon employed to designate the Cape Colony as a whole and indeed South Africa generally.

"Cape Town is termed *The Cape* by colonists." (Philip's "Researches," I. p. 19 n., 1828.)

"The road from Port Elizabeth is a fair sample of those generally travelled over at *The Cape.*" (Nicholson's "The Cape and its Colonists," p. 21, 1848.)

Cape badger.—*Mellivora ratel.* See Ratel. The name is sometimes given to the Dassie. See Klip-das.

"The ratel (*Cape badger*) will attack and kill porcupines in their earths." ("East London Dispatch," 16 August, 1907.)

Cape boys.—This designation has various significations. (1) As employed at first it meant the men of the so-called "bastard" class, descended from a variety of races and living chiefly in the Western Province. (2) As employed during the Matabele Campaign and often since, it refers to natives of the Cape and Natal Colonies without distinction, including Ama-Xosa and Ama-Zulu.

"Cape carts driven by Malays and *Cape boys* rattled up and down the streets in numbers." (Couper's "Mixed Humanity," p. 20, n.d.)

"This force was, however, augmented by about 150 *Cape boys*, chiefly Amaxosa Kaffirs and Zulus." (Selous' "Sunshine and Storm," p. 59, 1896.)

"Bastarde aus Sklaven . . . und Hottentottinnen sind die sog. *Cape boys*." (Meyer's "Sprache die Buren," p. 6, 1901.)

Cape canary.—*Serinus canicollis, Swain.* A pretty little songster found in large numbers in favourite haunts.

"The *Cape canary* is a greenish bird, with a very pretty soft note, quite different from the piercing screech of his terrible yellow brother in English homes." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 18, 1881.)

Cape cart.—A strongly built, two-wheeled vehicle, having a hood, and a pole instead of shafts. It is drawn by two or more horses, and is splendidly adapted to the country and roads.

"Do you know what a *Cape cart* is? It is a peculiar but pleasant institution, something like what was once in England called a 'white-chapel,' on a pair of high wheels, with a cosy leather or canvas hood, and drawn by a pair of horses. It can hold four people easily, and can be made to hold six." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers, and British," p. 52, 1890.)

Cape chestnut.—*Calodendron capense.* A beautiful indigenous tree.

"The *Wild chestnut* of the Cape colonists is not a common tree in Natal, but is occasionally met with, and unquestionably is one of the finest, well deserving its name for its exquisitely pencilled, delicate pink flowers." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 450, 1868.)

"It is very seldom that the *Cape chestnut* and the Wild fig become altogether devoid of leaves." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 12 April, 1912.)

Cape cobra.—*Naia flava.* See Spuug kapell and Glee slang.

Cape cormorant.—*Graculus capensis, Gray.* See Duiker and Trek duiker.

Cape cranberry.—*Dovyalis rhamnoides* and *D. rotundifolia.* The fruit of a plant nearly allied to the Kei apple (q.v.).

"Besides the names given . . . *Cranberry* is applied to

both." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 132, 1907.)

Cape doctor, The.—A common name for the strong South-easters (q.v.) which at one season of the year are very boisterous round the South-African coast. In the earlier days of the Colony when the Cape was used by Anglo-Indians as a sanatorium, they were wont to term these winds the *Cape doctor* and they still retain the name.

"For it is here that the celebrated South Easter . . . blows its strongest, and the *Cape doctor's* strongest is no joke." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers, and British," p. 54, 1881.)

"That rough but benevolent South-east wind, owing to its kindly property of sweeping away the germs of disease, is called the *Cape doctor.*" (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 15, 1890.)

Cape Dutch.—"The Taal" (D. *taal*, language), as it is called by the Dutch of South Africa, has for various reasons diverged very considerably from the language which was its main source, both in vocabulary and in grammar. Great efforts have been made in recent years, and not without some success, to eliminate what are deemed foreign elements and so to restore to it some of its lost purity. See Afrikaans.

"The Dutch language as generally spoken by the bastard Hottentots and emancipated slaves in the Colony, and by the Bastaards and the Griquas beyond, as well as by the Dutch themselves in the country districts, is very different from the Dutch as used in Holland. The difference partly consists in corrupt forms of words, in the adoption of foreign words and misappropriation of their own, and partly in barbarous modes of expression by which they bid defiance to all rules of grammar, or, in other words, set all reputable usage at nought. Professor Changuion of Cape Town has lately published a Grammar at the close of which will be found 'Proeve van Kaapsch Taaleigen,' where the peculiarities of *Cape Dutch* usage are exposed." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 10 n., 1850.)

Cape ebony.—Both *Euclea pseudebenus* and *Heywoodia lucens* are so named.

Cape edelweiss.—*Lanaria plumosa.* So called because of the dense coating of soft white hairs which covers its branches and flowers.

Cape Flats.—A stretch of flat, sandy country lying between

Cape Town and Somerset West, which has the appearance of having been, at no very distant period, covered by the sea.

"The Dutch denominate one part Kaapsche Duinen (Cape Downs) and another Kaapsche Vlakte (*Cape Flats*)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 58, 1822.)

Cape gannet.—*Sula capensis.* See Malagas.

Cape gooseberry.—*Physalis peruviana.* The fruit, which is in great request in most South African homes, is contained in an inflated capsule. The plant, though not indigenous, grows wild in most parts of the country. See Pampelmoose.

"The *physalis* (*Cape gooseberry* or winter cherry) is here a most delicious fruit." (Owen's "Voyages," II. p. 238, 1833.)

"The *Cape gooseberry*, which is perhaps the most delicious fruit for canning and preserves that the whole world has to show." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 172, 1896.)

Cape grasses.—See quotation.

"Several species of *Restiaceæ* are gathered and exported as so-called *Cape grasses*, i.e. *Elegia, Thamnochortus, Hypodiscus, Cannamois.*" (Edwards and Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 182, 1897.)

Cape hen.—The sailor's name for *Majaqueus æquinoctialis.*

"The *Cape hen* is a constant resident in Table Bay." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 766, 1875-84.)

Cape hemp.—*Leonotus leonurus.* See Dagga.

Cape honeysuckle.—*Tecomara capensis, Spach.* See Orange creeper.

"In the flower beds English violets peep out beneath the . . . flaming scarlet of the *Cape honeysuckle.*" (Devereux's "Side Lights on South Africa," p. 10, 1899.)

Cape jessamine.—*Jasminum angulare, Vahl.*, and *J. glaucum, Ait.*

"The *Gardenia Thunbergia* or the wild *Cape jessamine* being in the height of its blossom, gave out so powerful a scent, that, in the evening, it could be felt at the distance of several miles." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 81, 1804.)

Cape lark.—*Macronix capensis.* See Cut-throat lark and Kalkoentje.

Cape lilac.—*Melia Azedarach.* See Seringa.

"*Melia Azedarach, Linn.* ... Bead-tree, *Cape lilac*, Indian lilac," etc. ("Report S.A.A.A. Science," p. 274, 1904.)

"In Cassia and *Cape lilac* they (lenticels) extend across the stem." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 31, 1906.)

Cape lobster.—*Palinurus* (*Jasus*) *lalandii.* The Crayfish so common in Table Bay. See Kreef.

"The *Cape lobster* (Cancer arctos) has no large claws and is craggy all over." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 240, 1795.)

"'Crayfish' or 'Kreeft' is also plentiful all through the summer. We also call it *Cape lobster.*" (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 47, 1912.)

Cape mahogany.—*Trichilia emetica.* The flowers of this tree which open in November are strongly scented.

Cape mole.—This name seems to have been applied to two different animals, both of which are peculiar to South Africa: they differ in several important features from the real mole, and appear to be a connecting link between the mole and the rat. They resemble the former in its subterranean habits, but belong to the Order *Rodentiæ.* (1) The Sand-mole, *Bathyergus maritimus*, is as large as a half-grown rabbit, it burrows in the sand of the Cape Flats and similar localities, and makes riding on the Flats a somewhat exciting pastime. Its food consists of bulbs and roots. (2) The Bles-mole, *Georychus capensis*, closely resembles *Bathyergus* but is much smaller, and is a great nuisance in gardens. The popular name refers to the white face of the animal.

"The animal is a very large kind of mole-rat and nearly as big as a rabbit. It is peculiar to this Colony and is called *Zand moll* (sand mole)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 56, 1822.)

"Some parts of the road were so full of the burrows of the *Cape mole, Bathyergus maritimus*, as to make riding very unpleasant." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 132, 1844.)

"There is another kind of mole-rat peculiar to this country ... known by the name of the *Bles moll* (*white-faced mole*)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 57, 1822.)

"The *Cape mole* (*Bathyergus capensis*) is very common in gardens here, and very mischievous ... devouring great quantities of bulbs and roots." (Bunbury's "Journal," p. 203, 1848.)

Cape mulberry.—The mulberry grown in the Cape is an imported tree.

"I both sent and took home specimens of the *Cape* or wild *mulberry*, and every other variety grown in the Colony; and by careful comparison and investigation, those who had been in Japan and China at once fixed upon the *Cape mulberry* as identical with the tree most prized in Japan for producing the highest quality of silk." ("Queenstown Free Press," 2 January, 1871.)

Cape nightingale.—A humorous name for the frogs which are so vociferous on a stormy summer evening.

"The very smell of the water and the din of the huge frogs, *Cape nightingales*, as we call them, revived them." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," 1889.)

Cape of Good Hope.—When first discovered by Bartholomew Diaz, he named this Cape *Cabo Tormentosa*, because, baffled by storms, he was unable to weather it; subsequently he doubled it without being aware of it. King John of Portugal, seeing in the doubling of the Cape the promise of a new route to the wealthy orient changed the name to *Cabo de Bona Esperanza*—*Cape of Good Hope.*

"The name of the Cape itself reveals the spirit of hopeful enterprise which enabled the Portuguese to achieve so much." (Taylor's "Words and Places," p. 23, 1878.)

Cape parson.—*Œstrelata macroptera.* The dark plumage of this bird has suggested this name to the sailors.

Cape partridge.—*Francolinus Africanus, Steph.* South Africa possesses neither a true partridge nor a true pheasant among its birds.

"In the Cape Colony the two best-known species are the Cape redwing (*Francolinus levaillanti*) and the greywing or *Cape partridge* (*F. Africanus*)." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Birds," p. 125, 1908.)

Cape Peninsula.—That part of South Africa connected with the mainland by the sandy flats which run from Table Bay to False Bay—the Cape of Good Hope proper.

Cape people.—The coloured people of mixed blood in the Western Province of the Cape Colony are thus designated.

"*Cape people* . . . who look like negroes, but are a mixture of Dutch, Hottentots, and Bushmen." (Ralph's "Towards Pretoria," p. 58, 1900.)

Cape pheasant.—The two birds most commonly so called

are *Pternistes Swainsoni* and *P. nudicollis.* The name is sometimes given to other birds.

"There are two genera of Francolins . . . *Francolinus, Pternistes.* To the former belong the 'partridges' and to the latter the 'pheasants'." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 125, 1908.)

Cape pigeons.—*Daption capensis.* The name which this bird bears in the neighbourhood of Cape Town.

"On the 19th of May we saw for the first time the birds called *Cape pigeons.*" (Stavorinus' "Voyages," II. p. 30, 1798.)

"The merry little *Cape pigeon* now visits the ship in large flocks, and crowds astern in hopes of finding food." (Drayton's "Tales of the Outspan," p. 31, 1862.)

Cape plane.—*Ochna atropurpurea,* known in the Eastern Province as the Silverbark (q.v.). Dutch name *Roodehout* (q.v.); also *Ochna arborea.*

Cape robin.—*Cossypha caffra,* a bird that resembles the English robin somewhat, but is without the red breast.

"The so-called *Cape robin*—*Bessonorius phœnicurus,* one could almost reckon upon finding about the gardens or in the thickets by the river, and its song at eventide was an acceptable echo of the popular home bird." ("Scientific African," p. 87, 1896.)

Cape saffron.—*Sutera atropurpurea, Hiern.* The flowers are used to make a yellow dye. See Geelbloemetjes.

"*L. crocea* is called *Cape saffron.*" (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 260, 1906.)

Cape salmon.—(1) At the Cape this name is applied to *Otolithus æquidens, Cuv.* See Geelbek. (2) On the east coast—Port Elizabeth, East London, etc., *Elops saurus* is thus designated. (3) In Natal and by deep-sea fishermen *Sciæna aquila* is so called. See Kabeljauw.

"Under this name the 'Geelbek' has been eulogized. Dr. Pappe says, 'the flesh is dry, but fit for salting, it forms food for the poor and lazy'. Why call it the *Cape salmon?*" ("Science Gossip," p. 64, 1865.)

"Our *Cape salmon* (*Elops saurus*) must not be confounded with the geelbek or yellow-mouth (*Otolithus æquidens*)." ("East London Dispatch," 14 August, 1905.)

"The Kabeljauw (*Sciæna aquila*) is sometimes called *Cape salmon* by the deep-sea fishermen." (*Ibid.*)

Cape sheep.—A parti-coloured, lop-eared animal, with a large proportion of rough, wiry, brown hair among its wool; the broad flat tail, which consists almost entirely of pure, sweet fat, weighs ordinarily from 6 to 15 lb., but frequently even the latter weight is considerably exceeded. It has been suggested that this breed is a modified or crossed variety of the Siberian goat or " Mouflon " of Asia.

" The sheep which the savages breed in the Eastern parts are of a species known under the name of the *Cape sheep.* They have acquired considerable reputation from the size of their tails; but this has been greatly exaggerated, their ordinary weight is not above 4 or 5 lb." (Le Vaillant's " Travels," II. p. 80, 1796.)

" The native sheep is in high favour with the butcher, who will buy a mixed flock of *Cape sheep* . . . and merinos when he would not look at a flock of the latter by themselves." (Wallace's " Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 331, 1896.)

Cape sheep.—*Diomedia exulans.* The name given by sailors to the Great albatross.

" Another sea bird found round the coast of Africa is the splendid wandering Albatross, sometimes called the Great albatross, and more familiarly known to sailors by the curious designation of the *Cape sheep.*" (Bryden's " Animals of Africa," p. 119, 1900.)

Cape smoke.—A brandy manufactured in nearly all the vine-growing districts of the Colony.

" Already in imagination were they revelling in the luxuries of *Cape smoke* or brandy and sheep-tail fat." (Methuen's " Life in the Wilderness," p. 250, 1848.)

" White brandy which is sold under the name of *Cape smoke.* This abomination . . . is a poison calculated to burn the inside of a rhinoceros." (Hutchinson's " In Tents in the Transvaal," p. 169, 1879.)

Cape sumach.—See Bergbast and Pruimbast.

" The experiments in the propagation of *Cape sumach* have been continued, not, I regret to say, with much success." (Sim's " Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 304, 1907.)

Cape teak.—*Strychnos Atherstonei.*

Cape tulip.—*Homeria collina* is known by this name in the Western Province.

" I introduce this plant, the *Moræa Collina, Thbg.* (which

is known to almost every child in the Colony as the *Cape tulip*)." (Pappe's "Florae Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," p. 37, 1868.)

Cape trumpet flowers.—*Tecomara capensis, Spach.* The name refers to the shape of the blossoms. See Cape honeysuckle.

"Here I first saw in blossom that beautiful scarlet-flowered climber the *Cape trumpet flower* (*Tecoma capensis*) which is very abundant in bushy places in Caffraria." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 251, 1844.)

"Here also is a beautiful climber bearing scarlet flowers, called the *Cape trumpet flower* (*Tecoma capensis*)." (T. Smith, "Wes. Meth. Magazine," p. 61, 1849.)

Cape Willow.—*Salix capensis,* growing upon the banks of rivers and streams in all parts of the Colony.

Carbonatje.—(Sp. *carbonado ;* D. *karbonade,* flesh roasted on the coals.) Thin slices of meat roasted on a pointed stick or a fork, and, as prepared by the Dutch housewife, a dish for an epicure.

"Our Hottentot cooks having some broiled mutton *carbonaadtjes* (chops or steaks) it was not long before supper was finished." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 229, 1822.)

Cardinal pecker.—*Dendropicus cardinalis.*

"The *Cardinal woodpecker* (*Dendropicus cardinalis*) is the commonest and most widely distributed of the South African woodpeckers." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 34, 1908.)

Carpenter.—This word seems to be a corruption of Kaapenaar ; *Dentex argyroxona* is so called in East London. See Kaapenaar and Silver fish.

Carpenter bees.— *Xylocopa sicheli* drills long galleries into dry wood which it divides into cells.

Carrion flowers.—The flowers of the genus *Stapelia* are so called because of the fetid odour which some of them exhale ; so much does it resemble that of carrion that carrion-loving insects often deposit their eggs upon them.

Carrot fern.—*Asplenium rutæfolium, Kze.*

Cartel.—See Katel.

Catawba grape.—An American name given in Natal to a variety of grape having a peculiar strawberry-like flavour.

"Several species of American grape vine are in cultivation, one of them known here as the *Catawba* is really the

'Isabella,' of which there are many varieties." (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 33, 1907.)

Caterpillar catchers.—*Campophaga hartlaubi* is so named in Natal, caterpillars being its favourite food.

"This family of birds is sometimes called *Caterpillar catchers.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 10, 1899.)

Catfish.—(1) In the neighbourhood of the Cape *Octopus vulgaris* is thus designated. (2) *Clarais Gariepinus,* a mud-loving, fresh-water fish of the *Siluridæ* family is also so called. This latter is also known as the Plattekop, Devil fish, etc. (3) At East London the name is given to *Galeichthys feliceps.* See Barbel.

"The gentlemen of our party lighted upon a most horrible creature called a *catfish,* but which ought more properly to have been named 'a sea devil' if there be such a thing—as it was all arms and legs, and huge goggle-eyed head." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 135, 1871.)

"There is another strange, mud-loving fish which swarms in many of the larger South African rivers. I mean the *Catfish,* one of a class of fish known to naturalists as *Siluroids.*" (Bryden's "Animals of South Africa," p. 196, 1900.)

"Ayres found a two-pound *Catfish* (*Clarias*) in the stomach of one individual." (Stark and Slater's "Birds of South Africa," IV. p. 57, 1906.)

Cat's eye.—A curiously marked stone found in large numbers at the Vaal River diggings. The valuable stone found in Ceylon, and named by the Portuguese *Olho de gato,* of which *Cat's eye* is a translation, was so named because of its glowing internal reflections and greenish grey colour; the Vaal River stone seems to have been so called because of the peculiar circular markings which characterize it.

"This substance (Crocidolite) has been by some mineralogists considered as allied to that which is called *Cat's eye.*" (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 334 n., 1822.) (Burchell refers to the Ceylon stone.)

"Chrysoberyl is quite abundant for so rare a stone. The prevailing variety is yellow, but the opalescent (precious) *cat's eye* . . . also occurs." ("Report S.A.A.A. Science," p. 291, 1907.)

Cat's meat.—See Bobbetjes.

Cat's thorn.—See Kat doorn.

"A species of creeper called *cat's thorn.*" (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 101, 1818.)

C.C.—These letters stand for Cape Colony and also for Civil Commissioner.

> The C.C. of Caledon sent to disperse
> This horde of banditti, a small Burgher force.

(Hudson's "Features in South African Frontier Life," p. 96, 1852.)

Cedarboom.—*Callitris arborea, Schrad.* These trees are practically confined in South Africa to the mountains of the Clanwilliam District, known in consequence as the Cedarberg; the name is, however, incorrectly applied, the true cedars, of which there are three species, belonging to the genus *Cedrus.*

Ceded territory.—Immediately after the attack of the Amaxosa Kaffirs upon Grahamstown in 1819, a large force of British troops entered Kaffir territory to punish this daring inroad into the Colony. Having defeated the Kaffirs, the country from the Keiskamma to the Great Fish River was made a neutral zone, between the Kaffirs and the Colony. This tract of country was then, and for some years after, known as the *Ceded territory.*

"It has sometimes been designated 'neutral,' at other times *ceded territory*, and by the Acting Governor (Sir Rufane Shaw Donkin) 'newly acquired territôry'." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 494, 1833.)

"Of this tract a considerable portion, extending from the Fish River to the Keiskamma, and formerly known by the name of the *Ceded territory*, has by proclamation by the Governor, Sir Harry Smith, been recently annexed to the Colony." (T. Smith's "Sketches," "Wes. Meth. Magazine," p. 58, 1849.)

Cess or **Ciss.**—(C.D. *sis* or *sies.*) An expression of disgust in common use, occasionally elaborated into "pooh-ga-ciss".

"I have lost more cattle from the attacks of hyenas than I have from lions or leopards, and as to sheep, *cess*, I've had nearly a whole flock worried by them." (Drayson's "Tales of the Outspan," p. 67, 1862.)

Ceylon pumpkin.—A large, oval-shaped pumpkin with orange-coloured flesh. The Kaffir name, *u Solontsi*, is a corruption of Ceylon.

Ceylon rose.—*Nerium Oleander.* The Natal name of this pretty flowering shrub.

"The streets (of Graaff Reinet) are spacious, intersecting at right angles. Many of them are planted on each side with lemon trees interspersed with acacia and oleander or the *Ceylon rose.*" (Iron's "Settler's Guide to the Cape of Good Hope and Natal," p. 96, 1858.)

"I find that the *Ceylon rose* is, as I suspected, the other poison with which the Damaras tip their arrows in war." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 15, 1868.)

Chad or **Shad.**—The East London name of *Temnodon saltator.* See Elft.

Chains, The.—That portion of Simmonds Street, Johannesburg, which is closed to vehicular traffic, and reserved for the operations of stock and mining speculations.

Chaka.—A merciless savage of great ability, under whom the originally small Zulu tribe became a dreaded power. At the height of his power he had an army of 100,000 warriors. He was murdered at Dukuza in 1828 by Dingaan and Mahlangana his brothers. No more sanguinary monster has stained the page of history.

"So fell *Tshaka* . . . in sanguinary executions and in refined cruelties, he outstripped all who have gone before him in any country in the world. He was a monster, a compound of vice and ferocity, without one virtue, except that of valour, to redeem his name from the infamy to which history has assigned it." (Moodie's "Battles of Southern Africa," I. p. 406, 1888.)

Chamsgeslacht.—(D. *Cham,* Biblical pr. name, Ham; *geslacht,* race, generation.) An opprobrious term applied to Malays and coloured people.

Chandelier lily.—*Brunsvigia gigantea, Heist.*

"We noticed here a gigantic species of a plant from its singular form . . . called the *Chandelier.* . . . Its root is a bulb." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 165, 1818.)

"A grand family of plants—the *Amaryllidaceæ*—of which our *Chandelier lily* (*Brunsvigia Josephinæ*) is an example." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 122, 1871.)

Chandelier plant.—A species of *Euphorbia.*

"We . . . crossed a tract of land covered with aloes, called likewise the *chandelier plant.*" ("Scenes, etc., in Albany and Cafferland," p. 4, 1827.)

Chap.—See Tjap.

Charm sticks.—Part of the equipment of the Kaffir witch doctor. See also Dolossi.

"Umlangeni's flight was . . . so precipitate that many of his *charm sticks* had been left behind." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War," 1850-1851, p. 356, 1852.)

China spider.—I have not been able to identify this spider.

"The gaily painted *China spider* (?), as it is commonly called in South Africa, is another example of deceptive colour." ("Trans. S. A. Philosophical Soc., I. ii. p. 41, 1879.)

Chinkering ching. — *Ornithogalum thyrsoides.* The popular name of this plant in the Western Province. The name is supposed to represent a somewhat peculiar sound produced by rubbing two flower-stalks lightly one upon the other. See Viooltjes. The plant is now known to be poisonous to horses.

"*Tinterinties* is a name given to a species of *Ornithogalum*, with a white flower, from the sound it produced when two stalks of it were rubbed together." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 153, 1795.)

"The *Chinkerinchee, Chincher-and-ching,* 'Viooltjes,' as that beautiful white flowering bulb, the *Ornithogalum thyrsoides,* is variously called in South Africa, occurs over a wide area. The flower heads are now known to be a deadly poison when eaten by horses." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," p. 6, July, 1904.)

Chok.—*Aquila rapax,* also called the Coo vogel (q.v.).

Chook.—The name given in the neighbourhood of King William's Town to several varieties of weaver-bird; e.g. *Hyphantornis olivaceous,* etc.

Chor-chor.—*Pristipona bennettii.* The name is onomatopoetic and refers to the curious noise which the fish makes when taken from the water. It is also known by several other names: Grunter, Varkje, Oortje, and in Natal as the Rock grunter.

Chowrie.—(Hind. *chauhrī.*) The tuft of hair at the end of the tail of an ox, fastened to a handle and used as a fly-flapper.

"These tails sell very high and are used mounted on silver handles for *chowras* or brushes, to chace away the flies." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," III. p. 179 n., 1798.)

"It was necessary to wave a *chowrie* in front of one's face to keep the swarms of flies at a distance." (Brigg's "Sunny Fountains and Golden Sands," p. 214, 1888.)

Christ-thorn.—The popular name of *Euphorbia splendens*, an exceedingly thorny plant, the bright red flowers of which are supposed to resemble drops of blood. It is an introduced plant.

Christmas bee or **beetle.**—The various *Cicadæ*, which fill the air with deafening shrillness about Christmas time, are so called in some localities.

"The *Christmas bee* or cicada is another familiar insect of which only the male has the power of 'song'; and it must be confessed he is exceedingly persistent in the exhibition of his accomplishment, for a noisier insect it would be hard to find." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 16 February, 1912.)

Christmas bush.—*Pavetta caffra* is known by this name.

Christmas rose.—*Helleborus niger.*

"In the *Christmas rose* leaves and leaflets take the place of ovaries and ovules." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 117, 1906.)

Christmas tree.—*Pavetta lanceolata, Eck.* (1) This shrub blooms in pure white about Christmas time. (2) The name is also given in the Eastern Province to a plant of the order *Sapindaceæ Aitonia capensis*, its various coloured, lantern-like fruits and narrow evergreen leaves suggesting the name.

Chutney.—(Hind. *chatnī.*) A strong, hot relish, originally brought from India.

Cinnamon dove.—*Harplopelia larvata.* See Lemon dove.

"The *Cinnamon dove* . . . is an inhabitant of the forests of the Cape ranging from Knysna to Natal, and the Transvaal." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 114, 1908.)

City of the Saints.—A nickname given in early days to Grahamstown.

"I hope we may find more catholicity of sentiment prevailing than what I have been led to expect in that so-called *City of the Saints.*" ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 88, 1871.)

Civet kat.—*Viverra civetta.*

"As to . . . the African *civet cat,* I much doubt if it be

to be found at the Cape of Good Hope." (Sparmann's "Voyage," I. p. 151, 1785.)

Claim.—At Kimberley a "claim" was a piece of diamondiferous ground measuring thirty feet each way "claimed" by those who "pegged it off".

"Thirty feet square was and is the measure of a *claim*, and not more than two *claims* could be held by one person." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 87, 1873.)

Clap.—(D. *klap*, a slap, snap.) The term applied to the noise made by a whip, or by a bullet when it hits the mark.

"As the drivers *clap* their long whips and the teams . . . move briskly over the way, all eyes are upon them." (Silver's "Handbook to South Africa," p. 225, 1876.)

"The bullet *clapped* loudly, and I saw her stagger, but recovering immediately she went on." (Selous' "Wanderings," p. 232, 1895.)

Clapart leeuwerk or **Bartailed lark.**—(D. *leeuwerik*, a lark; cf. Scotch *laverock* and Chaucer's *laverokkes*, "Romaunt of the Rose," l. 662.) *Mirafra apiata.*

Clapper.—(D. *klapper*, a coconut; M. *Kĕlapa, Klapa.*) The fruit of *Strychnos pungens* and *S. spinosa*, called also Wooden orange (q.v.).

"We had a capital lunch from some wild fruit about three times the size of an orange, called a *clapper*. It has a hard shell outside, which one must batter against a tree to crack or break." (Baldwin's "African Hunting," p. 187, 1890.)

Clapper.—The name given to *Crotalaria Burkeana* in the neighbourhood of Graaff Reinet, the seed-pods of which make a rattling sound when shaken by the wind. See Stiefziekte bosje.

Clapper bill.—*Anastomus lamelligerus.* See the African Open-bill.

"Now flit past a number of those very remarkable birds aptly termed *clapper bills* (*Anastomus lamelligerus*)." (Schilling's "With Flashlight and Rifle," I. p. 75, 1906.)

Click beetle.—Various species of the *Elateridæ* are so named because of the curious click which they make when jumping.

"The giants of these *click beetles* range from Abyssinia to Port St. John in the Cape Colony." ("Science in Africa," p. 167, 1905.)

Clicks, Kaffir.—These curious sounds do not appear to

have belonged to the Kaffir language originally, but to have been acquired from the Hottentot tribes with whom the Kaffirs had intercourse. Among the Kaffirs the clicks employed are three in number: viz. (1) The C or dental click. (2) The Q or palatal click. (3) The X or lateral click. Krönlein, in his "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin," says that the Namaqua Hottentots have a fourth click, which he calls the cerebral, being produced far back in the throat.

"One peculiarity of their language is so singular that it has not failed to attract the attention of all travellers. Most of their (the Hottentots) words are pronounced with a *smack* or *clucking sound*, produced by the quick retraction of the tongue from the teeth of the upper jaw, or from the palate against which it had been pressed. Words of more than one syllable are accompanied or divided and rendered special and emphatic in their application by two *clucks*, and these accents, if we may so term them, are sounded in three different ways as the word or subject requires, by striking the point of the tongue more or less backward against the palate." (Philip's "Researches," I. p. 15, 1828.)

"The dialect now spoken by the frontier Kaffirs partakes, to a certain extent, of the Hottentot *cluck*, a peculiarity not to be found among the tribes further back." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 93, 1840.)

Clingstone.—A term applied to peaches, etc., when the flesh of the fruit is closely attached to the stone. See Taaipit.

Clompje.—See Klompje.

"His neighbours, however, were continually losing small and large *clompjes* of sheep." ("Queenstown Free Press," 19 February, 1884.)

Clover, Boer.—*Medicago nigra*, called also Dutch or Cape clover; it has a single flower.

Clover bur.—*Medicago denticulata.* The *bur* adheres to the wool of sheep and detracts considerably from its value.

Clover, Stink.—*Melilotus officinalis* has a spray of flowers and a purplish stripe up the centre of the leaf.

Cluster pine.—*Pinus pinaster*, an exotic tree which has become naturalized on the Cape Peninsula.

C.M.R.—See F.A.M.P.

Coach.—The vehicle, sufficiently described in the quotation, by which travellers who were in a hurry found their way to the diamond fields in the early days.

"Packed up our kits and in the afternoon embarked . . . in the *coach* for Bulawayo. The coach is a regular Buffalo Bill, Wild West, Deadwood affair, hung by huge leather springs on a heavy, strong-built under-carriage, drawn by ten mules. Our baggage and three soldier servants on the roof; two coloured drivers (one to the reins, the other to the whip). Inside are four transverse seats, each to hold three, thus making twelve 'insides'." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," 1896, p. 12, 1897.)

Coal.—The word is commonly used in the Colony in the Bible sense; "having a live coal in his hand," Is. VI. 6. A glowing wood cinder; a meaning which has become archaic in the English of the homeland.

"The coffee is the most delicious you ever tasted in your life, the roostekoeks too that have been roasting on the *coals*." (Hick's "The Cape as I Found It," p. 170, 1900.)

Coalwood.—*Lachnostylis capensis.*

Coast pheasant or **partridge.**—*Francolinus natalensis* is so called in Natal. See Namaqua pheasant.

"*Francolinus natalensis* is the *Coast partridge* of Natal or 'Namaqua pheasant' of the Transvaal." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 255, 1911.)

Cob or **Mealie cob.**—The rachis on which the mealies grow and from which they have to be "stripped".

"Two odoriferous Fingoes sat . . . round a heap of *cobs*, hammering away at it with kerries." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 202, 1855.)

"A man wishing to have some mealies for seed, applied to his neighbour who had obtained a supply just before, but found he had planted the whole without knocking it off the *cobs*." (Dugmore's "Reminiscences," p. 16, 1872.)

Cockscomb.—A fine mountain of the Winterhoek range in the District of Uitenhage; rising to a height of 5400 feet, it is sighted by mariners from the East a long way at sea. At one time it was known as the 'Grenadier's Cap' (q.v.).

"The sailors call it the *Cockscomb* mountain, a name which gives a good idea of its outline." (Bunbury's "Journal," p. 127, 1848.)

"The *Cock's Comb*, seen on the road to Hankey, is about 6000 or 7000 feet high, and is one of the highest points in the range." (Freeman's "Tour," p. 52, 1851.)

Coffee blight.—*Hamelia vastatrix.* This blight destroyed

the whole of the coffee plantations in Natal and effectually ruined a most promising industry.

"Coffee was grown successfully for a time near Durban. The cause of the breakdown of the industry was twofold. First the appearance of the *blight* known as *Hamelia vastatrix*. Second the impetus given to tea growing." (McNab's "On Veldt and Farm," p. 305, 1897.)

Coffee palm.—*Phœnix reclinata, Jacq.* So called because the Settlers (q.v.) roasted and ground the seeds and used it as coffee.

"*Phœnix reclinata, Jacq.*, locally known as the Wild palm or Wild coffee." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 341, 1907.)

Colley.—This name, which in England (Somerset) is given to the blackbird, is occasionally used in South Africa of the Muis-vogel (q.v.).

"We got here plenty of birds . . . as *colleys* with bluish plumage, crests, and long tails." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 182, 1838.)

"It is not unlike a gigantic *Coly;* it also climbs and flies like the colies, which it strongly resembles in its general habits." (Anderson's "Birds of Damaraland," p. 204, 1872.)

Colonial.—A word often used in South Africa for "colonist".

"There are said to have been 70,000 Europeans and *Colonials* in Natal, mostly the former." (Indicus' "Labour, etc., in South Africa," p. 52, 1903.)

Colour, To find or get.—To find at the bottom of the pan in which soil, supposed to be gold bearing, has been washed, a slight streak of the precious metal.

"*Finding the colour* in several places, but . . . unable to prosecute any researches to a successful issue." (Baine's "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 124, 1877.)

"When a miner sees this yellow streak, he exclaims that he has *got colour.*" ("Adventures in Mashonaland," p. 168, 1893.)

Coloured people.—The people of mixed African and European blood, chiefly resident in the Western Province, are thus designated. They are most of them descendants of the old slaves.

"The hunters and wagon-drivers . . . generally half-breeds,

who are known by the distinctive title of *coloured people*, in differentiation from the natives up country." (Schulz and Hammond's "New Africa," p. 15, 1897.)

Colour span.—A span of oxen the individuals of which are of the same colour or markings.

"Many farmers possess *colour spans*, but in that district there was not such a perfectly marked and symmetrical *colour span* as Gert Potgieters." (Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 20, 1906.)

Comb duck.—*Sarcidromis melanonota.* See Knobbilled duck.

Comberse.—(D. *kombaars*, a coverlet, rug; the word has the same derivation as the English word "Compress".) A blanket, rug. The sun is sometimes spoken of as "*De arm mens sij combers*"—the poor man's blanket.

"The bed's . . . clothing consisted of . . . a felt *comberse* or quilt sewn up in a sheet of cotton print and apparently never washed." (Lucas' "Life and Sport in South Africa," p. 137, 1878.)

Come and I'll kiss you.—A name occasionally given in Natal to the well-known Wacht en bietje thorn (q.v.). It appears to be the literal rendering of the Zulu name.

"Then there was the cachis with spikes three inches in length, and the *Come and I'll kiss you*, a bush armed with almost equally formidable thorns." (Kingston's "Hendricks the Hunter," p. 5, 1894.)

"The natives sometimes call a thorn bush which Europeans name 'Wait-a-bit,' by the expressive name, "*Come and I'll kiss you.*" (Kidd's "The Essential Kaffir," p. 37, 1904.)

Comitje.—(D. *kom*, a bowl, basin.) A small basin.

"The meal usually consisted of kid's flesh . . . little *commitjies*, or bowls of milk, being placed by the side of each person." (Lucas' "Life and Sport in South Africa," p. 136, 1871.)

Comitjes.—(D. *kom*, a bowl, basin.) The basin-like depressions in the veld, which in some places are very numerous. This seems to be the origin of the names Committees Drift and Committees Flats.

"Colonel Smith's force was distributed into three divisions . . . the left under Colonel England at *Commatty's Drift*." (Alexander's "Western Africa," II. p. 8, 1840.)

"Passing the Debe Nek we came upon a plain full of

strange holes like large basins, hence this plain is called Commatje Flats." (*Ibid.* p. 74.)

"The road crosses the *Commitje* (Anglicè, bason) Flat, so called from being dotted in every part by little circular hollows varying from 1 foot to 4 feet in diameter and from a few inches to 2 feet in depth." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1851," p. 97, 1852.)

Commandant.—(D. *kommandant*, commander.) As usually employed in South Africa, the *Commandant* is the leader of a Commando (q.v.), or the military governor of a town or district.

"*Commandant* Opperman reports on the insubordination of the inhabitants." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," I. p. 68, 1845.)

Commandeer, To.—(C.D.) To compel men to military service; to seize for military purposes such articles as may be required, with or without compensation.

"The night previously the Boers had *commandeered* the natives and compelled them to fight." ("The Times," 1 February, 1881.)

"The offices of one of the gold-mining companies were similarly *commandeered* and assigned to us as offices." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," 1896, p. 26, 1897.)

Commando.—An armed force raised by levying upon the men available in a given district, for the repression of native raidings, the recovery of stolen property, the pursuit and punishment of marauders. The word is now used with a considerable degree of laxity.

"The master himself was at this time absent on *Commando*, or militia service against the Caffers in the Zuurveld." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 111, 1824.)

Commando Tax.—A tax established in the Cape Colony by Government Proclamation, 4 December, 1812, "for the maintenance of a corps for the defence of the frontier".

"The pay of the military body, an expense which the whole Colony had to meet in the shape of a *Commando Tax*, without any return whatever." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," III. p. 181, 1833.)

Commando vogel.—*Œdicnœmus capensis*, or Stone plover, more commonly known as the Dikkop (q.v.). Why it is called the *Commando vogel* I have been unable to ascertain.

Compass Berg.—The highest mountain in the Cape Colony, being 7800 feet high. It is situated in the Graaff Reinet Division and forms part of the Sneeuwberg range. It is still often spoken of in the neighbourhood by its earlier name, " Spitzkop ".

"The *Compass Mountain* which Governor Plettenberg ascended in 1778. The name by which it is known at present was then given because with the assistance of the map the whole country may be reconnoitred from it." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 18, 1814.)

" This is called by the colonists Spitzkop (the Peak) . . . it has been in latter years very unnecessarily re-named *Compasberg.*" (Burchell's " Travels," II. p. 124, 1824.)

Compound.—(Yule and Burnell—"Anglo-Indian Glossary" —make out a strong case for the Malay origin of this word: *kampong, kampung,* rendered by Crawford " an enclosure, a space fenced in, a village, a quarter or a subdivision of a town ".) In South Africa this term is applied to enclosures within which the labourers in the diamond mines at Kimberley are confined; they are arranged in the form of a square, a row of wooden huts running along each side, with a large open space in the middle. The whole is covered over with fine wire netting to prevent the " boys " employed within throwing diamonds over to friends outside.

" Most of them dwell in the southern and western suburbs which are called the Chinese *campon.*" (Stavarinus' "Voyages," I. p. 263, 1798.)

" The men sign articles to remain in these *compounds* for a certain period, usually six months, and are not allowed to leave for any cause till the time has expired." (Cook's " Mission Tour," p. 25, 1893.)

Compound system.—The requirements of the labourers confined in the compounds are met within the compound, provisions being made for the supply of all necessaries, even to hospital and church accommodation; no intoxicating liquors are allowed, and the result is that many of the labourers have very substantial sums of money to receive at the expiration of their articles. The system works advantageously both for employers and employed.

" The *Compound system* saved the mines from the clutches of the illicit diamond buyers." (" The Empire," 11 December, 1897.)

Concertina fish.—A fish belonging to the genus *Drepane* is so named in Natal on account of its curiously telescopic lips.

"The fish portrayed this week is locally known as the *Concertina fish.* ("Natal Pictorial Mercury," p. 141, 1905.)

"I think it likely 'John Dory' has discovered a fish new to science in the *Concertina fish.*" ("East London Dispatch," 26 June, 1906.)

Congella.—(Z. *um Kangela*, a place for beholding.) This name, which refers to the view obtained from this point across the Bay, is given to a suburb of Durban, Natal. It was the site of the Boer camp when, under Andries Pretorius, they opposed the occupation of Natal by British troops under Captain Smith in 1842.

"We passed through a small village belonging to the Dutch called *Kongela*, but there seemed to be very few inhabitants in it, as they were all out in the country." (Letter signed Joseph Brown, Bugler Twenty-seventh Regiment, given in Chase's "Reprint of Natal Papers," II. pp. 207-212. The letter bears date 12 May, 1842.)

Cookies.—(D. *koek*, a cake, gingerbread.) A common name applied to comestibles as varied as the lightest and sweetest production of the professional pastry-cook and the dough cake roasted on the coals of a wood fire at the wayside outspan. In Scotland this word is applied to a sort of fine bread.

"*Cookies* or unleavened cakes of coarse meal, baked on the grid-iron." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 107, 1852.)

"I sat down to his simple fare after raking the *cookie* from the fire-place, whence it came baking hot, with wood cinders embedded in its steaming crust." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 51, 1897.)

Coolie.—As used in Cape Dutch this word is applied to coloured porters and labourers and not to Hindu or Chinese labourers exclusively.

"'Wat is hier te doen?' vraag hy an een van die *koelies* wat daar staan kyk." ("Catharina die Dogter van die Advokat deur Klaas Waarsegger, Jr.," I, Cap.)

Coolie Christmas.—The curious designation given in Natal to the ceremonies observed by the Indian immigrants, known in India as the "Mohurrum".

"The *Coolie Christmas* celebration at Umgeni (Natal)

last Monday ended in a serious riot." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 2 May, 1902.)

"The festivities in connexion with the Hindoo's festival Mohurrum, known locally as the *Coolie Christmas*, commences to-night"—Durban telegram. ("East London Dispatch," 18 March, 1905.)

Coolieing, To go.—To hawk vegetables, etc.

Coo vogel.—*Aquila rapax.* The Tawny eagle.

"The Senegal eagle, *coo vogel* of the Boers (*Aquila senegalla*), was another familiar eagle with us." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 150, 1889.)

Copper fish.—At East London *Cantharus emarginatus* is so named.

"The much rarer *copper fish* is of a coppery colour . . . and has a bright blue iris round the pupil of the eye." ("East London Dispatch," 7 August, 1905.)

Coral creeper.—The name given in the neighbourhood of Port Elizabeth to *Microloma tenuifolium.*

Coral snake.—*Aspidelaps lubricus*, a beautiful red and black banded snake.

Coringa.—An inferior cigar at one time imported largely from India into Natal. It probably derives its name from the seaport so named.

Corkwood or **Cork-tree.**— *Commiphora Harveyi* and *C. carycæfolia* are both known by this name, which refers to the lightness of the wood of these two trees. In Natal *Erythrina tomentosa, R. Br.*, a handsome tree, with large woolly leaves, is known by this name.

"The Kaffir-boom and the *Cork-tree* (*Commiphora*) are the most conspicuous of our deciduous trees." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 12 April, 1912.)

Corn boer.—An insect of the locust tribe which is common in the corn lands is thus designated by the Hottentot farm labourers.

"During the time of supper a large reptile (!) of the locust kind was creeping up the inside of the tent; it is called by farmers and Hottentots the *corn boer* because it is most frequently seen among corn at the time of harvest." (Campbell's "Travels," I. p. 14, 1822.)

Cornland crow.—The Natal name of *Heterocorax capensis.*

"As this bird is very partial to cultivated ground it is

often called the *Cornland crow*." (Woodward's "Birds of Natal," p. 1, 1899.)

Corn pit.—A deep hole (isisele) is often made by the Kaffirs in the middle of their cattle kraals, somewhat in the shape of a large jar, having a narrow neck and a small opening. Into this, for safe keeping, they put their mealies and corn; the top is then secured against the intrusion of damp, and the whole is hidden by the accumulations of the kraal.

"At this time not a beast was to be seen in the deserted kraals. In the *corn pits* were also to be seen scores of human skulls. The author of this state of things we afterwards learnt to be Moselekatse." (Rev. J. Edwards' "Reminiscences," p. 56, 1883.)

Cotton plant.—See Wild cotton.

Crab eaters.—*Halcyon albiventris* has received this name in Natal. See Brown kingfisher and Bush kingfisher.

"This bird . . . is very fond of crabs, from which it, as well as its congeners, are called *crab eaters*." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 93, 1899.)

Crab's eyes.—*Abrus precatorius, L.* A creeper growing in the Zoutpansberg with small red and black seeds.

Crackers.—Trousers of prepared sheep-skin, largely used in the early days by the settlers, and so named because of the cracking noise which they made at every move of the wearer.

"Old *Crackers alias* leather breeches." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," p. 238, 2 September, 1833.)

"You, General Juana . . . would laugh to see our motley group, with every costume of a mean kind which can be imagined . . . the 72nd's men with *crackers*, their pipe-clayed belts left behind." ("Autobiography of Sir Harry Smith," II. p. 348. Letter dated 5 April, 1845.)

Cradle.—An instrument devised in the early days of the diamond industry for washing and sorting the stones.

"To dig them up, to carry them in buckets to the river and there wash them in *cradles* of varied ingenuity is the rough work of 'wet diamond digging'." (Boyle's "The Savage Life," p. 13, 1876.)

Cradock bricks.—A not uncomplimentary nickname applied to the men of the town and district of Cradock.

"The welcome apparition of the *Cradock bricks* suddenly

dashing to their aid . . . turned despondency into triumph." (Dugmore's "Reminiscences," p. 44, 1871.)

Crape-flowers.—An Eastern Province name for the beautiful Nerines—Ord. *Amaryllidaceæ.*

"The beautiful pink Nerines or Crape-flowers that are such a treat to look upon when the rays of the setting sun get amongst them." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Crassula.—In Cape Town this name is very commonly but erroneously applied to *Rochea coccinea, D.C.*, a beautiful crimson flowered crassulaceous plant found on the top of Table Mountain.

Crayfish.—See Cape lobster.

"A species of *bray fish* (? crayfish) and different sorts of crabs are plentiful and tolerably good." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 31, 1801.)

Cream of tartar tree.—*Adansonia digitata.* This tree is sometimes called the "Monkey bread tree" and the "Calabash baobab tree". The fruit has a grateful acid flavour. See Baobab.

"The tree is also called the *Cream of tartar tree.*" (Anderson's "Twenty-five Years in a Wagon," I. p. 230, 1887.)

"We measured a tree called *Cream of tartar* 61 feet round the bole; but there are many very much larger." (Baldwin's "African Hunting," p. 295, 1894.)

Crethi en Plethi.—(Heb. כְּרֵתִי (*Krethi*), from כָּרַת (*Karath*), to cut down, to exterminate; and פְּלֵתִי (*Plethi*), from פָּלַת (*Palath*) to fly, be swift. The Crethi and Plethi were the king's body-guard, literally the executioners and couriers. (See 1 Kings I. 38-44.) The phrase is occasionally employed in ordinary speech by the Dutch of South Africa, as it is employed in Germany, with the meaning of *οἱ πολλοι*, *Jan en zijn Maat*, the tag-rag and bob-tail.

"*Kreti und Pleti* nennt sie die übrigen Einwohner, sie sollte doch auch bedenken, was sie selbst früher gewesen ist." (Konig's "Eine Miethkaserne," p. 28.)

Crocidolite.—(Grk. *κροκίς*, the nap on woollen cloth; *λίθος*, a stone.) There are two varieties of this stone found in South Africa, the one bluish in colour, sometimes called "blue asbestos" (see Doeksteen); the other and more common, a golden brown. The latter is often used for pur-

poses of ornament. In the quotation from Burchell the stone is accurately described by this great naturalist, though not mentioned by this name.

"A beautiful kind of stone is found sometimes of a blue and sometimes of a silky golden colour. . . . It is a species of asbestos in a less mature and flaxen state, with compact fibres of a flinty hardness, either transverse or oblique, straight or wavy. . . . When cut and polished this stone exhibits a very beautiful appearance." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 334, 1822.)

"A cross made of South African gold mounted in *crocidolite* and ivory." ("The Catholic Press," 7 April, 1888.)

Crocodile.—*Crocodilus niloticus.* These animals are of frequent occurrence in the rivers of Natal; they seem to differ from the alligator in the formation of the mouth. The canine teeth in the jaw of the true crocodile pass into a notch in the upper jaw, while those of the alligator have no such arrangement.

Crombec.—(D. *krom*, crooked, curved; Early Eng. *crumb*, crooked; *bek*, beak, bill.) Le Vaillant's name for *Sylvietta rufescens,* which has a long curved bill.

"The *Crombec* (*Sylvietta rufescens*), known to the Boers as the Stomp-stertje (stump-tail)." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 80, 1908.)

Cross snake.—I have not been able to ascertain what snake this is.

"The Rev. G. H. R. Fisk exhibited a snake caught near the Black River, probably a young specimen of the *Cross snake*." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," Vol. V. Part II. p. vi, 1893.)

Crownberry.—The East London name for the fruit of *Dovyalis rhamnoides.* See Cape cranberry.

"Besides the names given . . . *Crownberry* is in use at East London and may have originated in the crown-like calyx of D. *rhamnoides*." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 132, 1907.)

Crown duiker.—*Graculus africanus, Gray.* See Long-tailed cormorant.

Crowned crane.—See Kaffir crane and Mahem.

Crow, To.—(Hot. *gora,* to dig.) A corruption of the Hottentot word. It refers to the mode of digging holes employed by the Damaras. They take a pointed stick in their right hand, pierce the ground with it, clearing away the

broken soil with their left hand, and having to "crow" holes for house-building, for water, roots, etc., in this primitive fashion, they become very expert at it.

"This method of digging is called in the Dutch patois *crowing* the ground ; thus *crow water* means water that you have to *crow* for, and not an open well or spring. (Galton's "Tropical South Africa," p. 79, 1853.)

"The Damara wife costs her husband nothing for her keep, because she *crows* her own ground nuts." (Wood's "Uncivilized Races," I. p. 313, 1878.)

"She takes . . . a sharp pointed stick, garnished at the top with a piece of soft stone, with this last implement she can the more easily *crow* up their dinner." (Bryden's "Tales of South Africa," p. 47, 1896.)

Crow water.—Apparently a corruption of gora water (q.v.). See quotation above.

Curfew bell.—In not a few South African towns a bell is rung at 9 o'clock at night, after which no native is allowed about the streets unless provided with a proper "pass". This bell is generally known as the *Curfew bell.*

"The *Curfew bell* was not brought into operation until . . . a year or two later." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 495, 1899.)

Curly curly.—Another name for the Jig-a-jig (q.v.).

Cut one's stick, To.—A slang expression meaning to run away, to sneak off.

"I seed the sun shine on the curve of his body as he turned to come down, and I *cut my stick.*" (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 278, 1897.)

Cut-throat lark.—*Macronix capensis.* (1) The throat of this bird is a bright, orange red, which contrasts somewhat strikingly with the other colours of the bird—hence the name which it bears amongst the English colonists. By the Dutch the bird is known as the Kalkoentje (q.v.). See also Cape lark. (2) In Natal *Macronix croceus* is thus designated.

"This handsome pipit which is called the *Cut-throat lark* by the English colonists, 'Kalkoentje' by the Dutch, is common throughout all the open country of the Colony." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 530, 1875-84.)

Cut-worm.—Caterpillars of a species of *Agrotis* (*Noctuæ*), so called because of their habit of cutting off young plants at the surface of the ground. See Mest-wurm.

"The *cut-worm* or grub is often very troublesome to cabbage and tobacco plants, biting them off just above the ground." ("Queenstown Daily Representative," p. 6, 22 October, 1908.)

Daba grass.—(Kaf. *i Dobo,* general term for long coarse grass.) In the native territories the tough, flag-like grass used by the natives as thatch for their huts is so called.

"Talking of graves, what about those brave fellows who fell at Gwadana and the one at Fort Bowker? They have lain there for the last quarter of a century friendless and uncared for with the rank *daba grass* flourishing over them." ("East London Dispatch," 23 August, 1904.)

"When the sun went down there doubtless rang out the familiar call that brought the family once more together to sleep, perhaps, amongst the rustling *dobbo grass*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Dabby bushes.—("*Daba-heis,* the dabee tree." Tindall's "Namaqua-Hottentot Grammar and Vocabulary"; "*Daweb,* subst. *Dawebusch cypressenart, schlechtes Holz, liebt salzigen Boden.*" Krönlein's "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin".) *Tamarix articulata.*

"We arrived at the water at *Dubbie* Knabies, the place of *dubbie* or tamarisk trees." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 202, 1838.)

"Bushes (*Dabby bushes* I have always heard them called) not unlike fennel but from 8 to 13 feet high, grow plentifully." (Galton's "Tropical South Africa," p. 17, 1853.)

"According to Eck. and Zey., the Hottentots call this plant *Daweep* and the Boers 'Abiquas-geelhout'." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 120, 1859-60.)

Dagbreker.—(D. *dag,* day; *breken,* to break.) *Emarginata sinuata.* This name is also given in some districts to *Saxicola familiaris.* See Spekvreter.

"This bird is called the *dagbreker* by the Boers (meaning daybreaker), a name which is, however, also applied to the Familiar chat in some districts." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 20, 1908.)

Dageraad.—(D. *dageraad,* dawn, daybreak.) *Pagrus laticeps.* The striking colours exhibited by this fish seem to have evoked a flash of poetic imagination that contrasts strikingly with the matter-of-fact character of most of the names

given to South African fish. This word is sometimes corrupted into Daggerhead, Daggerheart, etc.

"Pagrus laniarius, Cuv. and Val. (*Dageraad*). Front higher than in Chrysophrys." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 477, 1856.)

Dagga.—(Hot. *dachab*, wild hemp.) *Cannabis sativa*, or Egyptian hasheesh. A powerful narcotic, "the leaves, flowers, and young seeds of which are used by the slaves and Hottentots as a succedaneum for tobacco," Barrow. This name seems to have been applied by the Hottentots to plants also totally different from the common hemp. Red or wild dagga, *Leonotis leonurus*, is used by them and by the Fingoes and other natives as a remedy for snake-bite, and is so called both because the leaves resemble those of hemp, and because when smoked they are so powerful as to produce intoxication. Klip dagga, *Leonotis ovala*, is another species of the same genus and also used as a remedy for snake-bite.

"Am gewissesten, weiss ich dass der *Dacha* sich berauschet, und zuweilen, wie toll und rasend macht." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 139, 1745.)

"Bucku (diosma) and wild *dacka* (*Phlomis leonurus*) which are known both by the colonists and the Hottentots to be as efficacious as they are common." (Sparrman's "Voyages," I. p. 145, 1785.)

"The people wished for tobacco and *dacca* (the leaves of hemp)." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," III. p. 267, 1796.)

"It (*Cinnyris chalybeus*) is specially attracted by the *red dagga* or 'Mfincafincane' of the Kaffirs, with whose scarlet flowers its own breast exactly corresponds." ("East London Dispatch," p. 9, 28 June, 1912.)

Dagga sack.—(D. *zak*, a bag, pocket.) A bag or skin-pouch in which dagga is carried.

"A shot from a lurking Kaffir passed through his *dacha sack* at the saddle-bow." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," p. 306, 1852.)

Daggerhead or **Daggerheart.**—See Dageraad.

"I think this fish was probably what is known as *daggerhead* (*Pagrus laniarius*)." ("East London Dispatch," 3 July, 1906.)

Dagher.—(Kaf. *u Daka*, mud, mortar.) Mud often mixed with blood and cow-dung and worked up into a sort of mortar; it is largely used for flooring, plastering, bricklaying, etc.

"Kaffir women smear the walls and floors with *dargha* (dried manure)." (Prichard's "Friends and Foes in the Transkei," p. 282, 1880.)

"The houses were built of *dagga* (mud), brick, and corrugated iron." (Brown's "South African Frontier," p. 63, 1899.)

Dagher, To.—To apply dagher to floors or walls.

"We had heard at Kimberley that *daghering* and 'smearing' would be essential parts of our work." ("Adventures in Mashonaland by Two Nurses," p. 32, 1893.)

Dak.—(D. *dak*, a roof; C.D. a thatched roof. Cf. Eng. thatch.) In Cape Dutch this word approximates in meaning to the English word "thatch". A dakhuis is a thatched house, a dakdekker is a thatcher or tiler.

Dam.—An artificial reservoir; the water accumulated in a banked-up depression is called a "dam," the word being used of the depression and its contents rather than of the bank of earth which dams it (which in South Africa is known as a "wal" or "dam-wal"). Most South African farms are largely dependent upon such dams for watering the stock and irrigating lands.

"The remedy for this is not the excavation of *dams*, the digging of wells, or the formation of tanks, but the construction of a railway." ("The Queenstown Free Press," 1 June, 1859.)

"The *dam* I shall often have need to mention, it is the most indispensable feature of a farm." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 21, 1873.)

"Its long, thatched dwelling house looked homely and comfortable, with its adjacent orchard, its corn-fields, and its large *dam* or pond, lively with waterfowl, near at hand." (Robinson's "Life Time in South Africa," p. 173, 1900.)

"*Dam* and dam which in Holland and England are embankments, here denote a pool or reservoir, and 'wal' takes the place of the Dutch 'dam'." ("Northern News," 30 August, 1912.)

Damara.—The people of the Bantu race occupying the territory on the south-west coast of Africa to the North of Great Namaqualand. They are a purely pastoral people, though before contact with Europeans they had developed some skill in extracting and working the copper from the rich ore with which their country abounds, working it into

rings and beads for purposes of barter with neighbouring tribes.

"*Damara* is not the native national epithet of the people who bear that name, but one which has been borrowed from the Namaquas. It properly signifies 'two Damara women,' and appears therefore to have been adopted in some incidental manner, when the object of the travellers' inquiries happened to be two women. *Damap* is the Namaqua term for a male Damara, of which *Damaka* is the dual masculine, *Damara* the dual feminine, *Damaku* the plural masculine, and *Damana* the plural common." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 29 n., 1850.)

Damba.—The fish known at East London and elsewhere as the Galjeon (q.v.) is known on the Transkei coast by this name.

"The fish, with the exception of a nice black-tail or two, were all *dambas*." ("East London Dispatch," 6 February, 1906.)

Dammetjes.—Small banks made across a road at a slight angle, to turn storm water into the veld.

Dam-wal.—(D. *dam*, a dam, bank; *wal*, a wall, bank.) See Dam.

Dance, Kaffir.—Dances among the Kaffirs are of frequent occurrence, they generally take place at or near the full moon, and are often prolonged to a late hour. The dancing is not of a character to commend itself to Europeans—"the perfection of the art or science consists in their being able to put every part of their body in motion at the same time. . . . Some motions are odd, others repulsive, and others pleasing," Holden. Only the men dance, the women sing and clap their hands, this being the only music on such occasions. There is a women's dance known as *um Rululu*, which is best left undescribed.

"The *Kaffir dance* bears little resemblance to that of the English amusement of that name. The motion of the feet is altogether different." (Shooter's "Kaffirs of Natal," p. 234, 1857.)

Dane.—In Natal the fish *Chrysophrys dentatus* is so named.

"While their catches include no very large fish, they got a fine variety. Among other sorts I noticed . . . *Danes*, Daggerheads." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 719, 1906.)

Danebol or **Dennebol.**—(D. *den*, a fir tree; Cf. G. *Tannen*, D. *bol*, ball, crown, bulb.) A fir cone.

"She sat down upon the bank and began to break up a *dennebol* between two stones." ("The State," II. p. 768, 1909.)

Daneboom or **Denneboom.**—The fir tree.

Dan en wan.—(G. *dann und wann*, now and then.) This expression as used in the Colony has the exact German sense, and was most likely introduced by the German servants of the Dutch East India Company.

Danger Point.—The scene—a little to the east of Cape Hangklip, False Bay—of the loss of the "Birkenhead" on 26 February, 1852.

Danki.—(D. *dank je* or *dank u*, thank you.) This word is used in declining an offer, as "Asseblief" (q.v.) is employed when accepting.

"In the Dutch language *danken* signifies a direct refusal, but not being aware of this, I interpreted it in the very reverse sense, as meaning 'If you please'. As often, therefore, as I repeated the ominous word so often had I the mortification of seeing the smoking dishes pass by me." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 264, 1857.)

Dan's cabbage.—The Natal name for the Ragwort, *Senecio latifolia* (q.v.).

"The plant commonly known as the ragwort (or, in Natal, as *Dan's cabbage*) *Senecio latifolia.*" ("S. A. Agric. Journal," p. 3, July, 1912.)

Darter.—*Anhinga rufa.* See Snake bird.

"Layard and Dr. Stark found the *Darter* (as this bird is also called) breeding on the Berg River in the Cape Colony." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 143, 1908.)

Das adder.—(D. *das*, a badger.) *Varanus albigularis, Wand.* Not very common in the Colony. See Legavaan.

"It is in all probability the animal which is called the *das adder* by the colonists, and which is so much dreaded under an idea of its being extremely poisonous." (Smith's "Reptiles," Plate 2, 1849.)

Dasje.—*Sargus cervinus.* See Zebra and Wilde-paard.

"The biggest I caught on these rocks was a fine *dasje* (black-tail) weighing 7½ lbs." ("East London Dispatch," 6 March, 1906.)

Dassen Island.—(C.D. *dassie*, the rock-rabbit.) An island on the west coast of Cape Colony.

Dassie.—(D. *das*, a badger.) *Procavia capensis.* There are three species of this family—*Hyracoidea*—in South Africa, of which this is the most numerous. These animals are near relations of the "conies" of the Old Testament Scriptures. Cuvier says: "that excepting the horns, they are little else than rhinoceroses in miniature".

"Great numbers of those little animals which are described by M. Pallas by the name of *Cavia capensis*, and by the colonists are called *dassies* or badgers." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 305, 1785.)

"We got a shot at a curious little animal, with a pointed nose, called by the Boers *das*, and supposed to be the coney of Scripture." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 95, 1852.)

Dassiespis.—The unpoetical name given by the Dutch to a substance common near the haunts of the dassie and supposed to be the urine of that animal. Dr. Pappe's note, which I quote in extenso, is interesting: "I subjoin to the above enumeration of medical plants a remedy derived from the animal kingdom, one which, if tried properly, will in all probability become an article of commerce. I allude to the *Hyraceum*, much valued by many farmers and well known amongst them by the rather harsh name of Dassiespis. Thunberg and other travellers mistook it for a kind of bitumen; but it is in fact the secretion of a quadruped which is common throughout the Colony, and that lives gregariously on the rocky summits of mountains, viz. the Klip das or *Hyrax capensis.* It is worthy of note that this production has baffled the researches of eminent zoologists, who have failed, from even minute dissection, in discovering any specific secretory organs, from which the matter could be derived. It may be asserted, however, that the *Hyraceum* is produced by the uropoietical system of the animal just named, and in order to explain this seeming anomaly it must be observed that the Hyrax drinks very seldom, if ever. Its urine, like that of the hare, is not thin and limpid as in other quadrupeds, but thick and of a glutinous nature. From a peculiar instinct these animals are in the habit of secreting the urine always at one spot, where its watery parts evaporate in the sun, while its more tenacious portions stick to the rock and

harden in the air. The fresh urine of the Hyrax is of a reddish tint, and this has given rise to the opinion of those who took this for a kind of menstrual secretion. . . . Amongst the farmers a solution of this substance is highly spoken of as an antispasmodic in hysterics, epilepsy, convulsions of children, St. Vitus' dance, in short in spasmodic affections of every kind." ("Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," L. Pappe, M.D., 3rd ed., pp. 46-7, 1868.)

"Here they showed me a kind of bitumen which the country people were pleased to call *dasses-p——;* supposing it to be the inspissated urine of the great mountain rat (*cavia capensis*) that is found there. I was informed that this bitumen was to be found in great abundance in the cracks and crevices of the mountain, especially at one large projecting krants or summit. The bitumen was very impure, and known to the country people on account of its great use in fractures." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 166, 1795.)

"Der officinell bekannte (*hyrax capensis*) Klippendachs liefert sein Präparat für die Apotheke, und Gulo Mellivorus (Honingdachs) sein schönes Fell fur den Kürschner." (Kranz's "Süd-Afrika," p. 183, 1880.)

Dassie vanger.—(D. *vangen,* to catch.) *Helotarsus ecaudatus.* This fine black eagle is also known as the Berghaan (q.v.).

"Suddenly starting as if from space, comes soaring above us a great black mountain eagle. We know him at once for a Berghaan (cock of the mountain) or *Dassie vanger* (coney eater)." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 273, 1889.)

Davidjes.—*Cissampelos capensis, Thun.* A decoction of the roots of this plant is used by Kaffir herb-doctors and also by the Dutch as an emetic and purgative in cases of snake-bite, while a paste of the leaves is applied to the wound.

Davidjes wortel.—(D. *wortel,* a root, carrot.) *Zehneria scabra, Sond.* The resinous root of this plant is an old Hottentot remedy for skin diseases, etc.

"Persi.—*Dawetjes wortels* op brandewyn getrek." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 133, 1898.)

Debris.—The mining term for the refuse from which the gold or diamonds have been extracted. See Tailings.

"The heaps of *debris* (that is the tailings), which generated the light, grey dust that rose in clouds upon the slightest breeze." (Couper's "Mixed Humanity," p. 254, n.d.)

Delagoa Bay.—(P. *De la Goa.*) See Algoa Bay.

" The white town of which Aaron had heard, must be a Portuguese settlement near the mouth of some river on the Mozambique coast, or at *De la Goa Bay.*" (Campbell's " Travels," II. p. 359, 1822.)

Dengue fever.—(According to Dr. Christie, " Glasgow Medical Journal," September, 1881—*Dengue* is a Swaheli word, the full name of the disease in Zanzibar being *Ka dinga pepo ; Ka,* partitive article, " a kind of " ; *dinga, dyenga, denga,* " sudden cramp-like seizure " ; *pepo,* " evil spirit, plague ". On its introduction into the West Indies in 1827, the name was, in Cuba, popularly identified with the Spanish word *dengue,* " fastidiousness, prudery ". In this form it passed to the United States, and subsequently into general English use.) An infectious, eruptive fever prevalent at certain seasons in Natal and on the Indian Ocean coasts generally.

" A description of low fever, known as the *dengue* is sometimes prevalent in the summer season." (Atcherley's " Trip to Boerland," p. 17, 1879.)

" Three epidemics of *dengue* are reported as having occurred within the eastern hemisphere, the first during the years 1779-84, the second 1823-29, and the third from 1870 to 1875." (Dr. Christie, " Glasgow Medical Journal," September, 1881.)

Dennebol.—See Danebol.

Devil.—The lesser whirlwinds accompanied by sand and dust, with which the traveller in the karoo or veld is certain sooner or later to make acquaintance, are so termed. They generally cover but a small area, yet within " the sphere of their influence " they are at times very destructive.

" Stand to the tent ! A *Devil* with its roaring pillar of dust and leaves comes tearing by." (Baden Powell's " Campaigning in Matabeleland," 1896, p. 284, 1897.)

" Every now and then there is a whirlwind, which is called here a *devil ;* it meanders about and gathers up all within its reach—tents and even tin houses." (Warren's " On the Veldt in the Seventies," p. 367, 1902.)

Devil-fish.—(1) *Octopus vulgaris.* (2) *Lophius upsicephalus.* (3) A species of enormous ray—*Myliobatidæ*—occasionally caught off the coast.

" Judging from the abundance of their remains . . . the

devil-fish or octopus must be plentiful off the coast." (Russell's "Natal," p. 37, 1891.)

"The Fishing-frog or Angler of European seas is represented in South African waters by a closely allied form (*Lophius upsicephalus*) and is known in several places in the Colony as the Paddy, and in others as the *Devil-fish*." (Gilchrist's "History of the Local Names of Cape Fishes," "Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," p. 219, 1902.)

"It is said by the fishermen that this fish has been in the vicinity where it was captured for the last five years, and it is believed to be of great age. . . . Authorities state its nomenclature as the eagle-ray, or sea-devil, and it is sometimes called the *devil-fish*." ("East London Dispatch," 29 July, 1907.)

Devil's Peak.—A mountain to the left of Cape Town, connected with Table Mountain by what is known as the Saddle. This designation is a literal rendering of the Dutch Duivel's Kop. By the English it was called at first Charles Mountain; the older Dutch name, however, prevailed. I can find no support for Scully's assertion—see quotation. See also Wind berg.

"Der Wind—oder *Teufels-Berg*, ist von dem Löwen-Berge durch eine Abhänge unterschieden." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 210.)

"He crossed the high neck which connects the eminence known as 'the *Devil's Peak*' with Table Mountain. This name used then to cause great scandal to the Dutch colonists—the term being an unconscious perversion by the English of the original name of 'Duiven's' or 'Dove's Peak'." (Scully's "A Vendetta of the Desert," p. 92, 1898.)

Devil's snuff-box.—A fungus growing to the size of a cricket-ball, when old it is full of powder. See Ou' meid's snuif.

Dhoby.—(Hind. *dhobi*, a washerman.) This Hindoo word is often used in Natal of the Hindoo washer- and laundry-man.

Diamond fields.—The locality which has since proved so rich in diamonds and which is now known as Kimberley.

"Hintza was also with Sir Harry Smith, a sort of prisoner at large, and in the particular charge of Captain Southey (now Lieut.-Governor of the *Diamond Fields*)." (Bisset's "Sport and War in Africa," p. 23, 1875.)

Didric.—*Cuculus cupreus.* An onomatopoetic name for this bird, which is also known as the Golden cuckoo (q.v.).

"The green golden cuckoo of the Cape . . . perched on the top of large trees, it continually repeats and with a varied modulation, these syllables di-di-didric, as distinctly as I have written them, for this reason I have named it the *didric.*" (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 328, 1796.)

Dikbekje.—(D. *dik*, thick; *bek*, a beak, bill.) A species of *Gobius*. See Dikkopje.

Dik-bek seisje.—(D. *dik*, thick; *bek*, beak, bill; *sijsje*, a linnet.) *Serinus albigularis*. See Berg seisje.

Dik-dik.—*Madoqua damarensis*. A variety of buck little known, found in German South-West Africa.

"Later on I shot a *dik-dik*, a pretty little buck but little bigger than a hare. There were thousands of these diminutive animals to be seen amongst the lava-rocks a little way from the banks of the Guaso. They appear to have habits somewhat akin to those of the klipspringer, and have a very similar 'hedgehog' coat." ("The State," p. 30, July, 1912.)

Dikkop.—(D. *dik*, thick; *kop*, head.) *Ædicnemus capensis*. A Dutch name for the Stone plover, a fine bird about 15 inches long, with a span of wing of nearly 2 feet.

"One or two of the bustard tribe are also found here and are called the *diccop*, coran, and pouw." (Drayson's "Sporting Scenes," p. 17, 1858.)

"The *Dikkop* (a Dutch name meaning 'thickhead') is a small kind of bustard." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 32, 1890.)

Dikkop.—A form of horse-sickness. See Blauwtong.

"One of whose horses was standing apart, suffering from the *Dikkop* form of horse-sickness." (Baine's "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 75, 1877.)

Dikkop.—A term of reproach meaning numskull, blockhead.

Dikkopje.—A species of *Gobius*. See Dikbekje.

Dikkop knorhaan.—(D. *dik*, thick; *kop*, a head; *knorren*, to scold; *haan*, a cock.) *Otis vigarsi*.

Dikkop, To play.—To try to deceive as the plovers do by feigning to have a broken wing, when one approaches their eggs or young.

"They're playing *dikkop* . . . the dikkop drops his wing and shams hurt to lead you off." (Glanville's "The Diamond Seekers," p. 116, 1903.)

Dingaan.—(Kaf. *i Dinga*, promise; dim. *Dingana*.) A

brother and one of the murderers of the Zulu King Chaka (q.v.), succeeding him as King. He was the author of the Boer massacres at Weenen and Moord Spruit in 1838.

"After a long conversation in the open air in which it was recommended that I should remain until their sovereign *Dingarn* had been apprised of my arrival, we were shown to our huts, which were larger and neater than any I had yet seen." (Gardiner's "Journey," p. 27, 1836.)

Dingaan apricot.—A Natal name for the Kei apple (q.v.).

"The Kei apple or *Dingaan's apricot*, invaluable for forming thorny fences and yielding a pleasant fruit." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 449, 1868.)

"The *Dingaan apricot* or Kaw apple, is the fruit of a species of ebony tree." (Russell's "Natal," p. 31, 1891.)

Dingaan's Day.—The 16th of December, the day on which Andries Pretorius and his brave farmers avenged the treachery and broke the power of this blood-thirsty tyrant. Observed annually by the Dutch ever since, the day has now been proclaimed a public holiday throughout the South African Union.

"It was owing to that defeat of the Zulus on *Dingaan's Day* that Natal only became colonizable." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers, and British," p. 106, 1881.)

Dinges.—(D. *ding*, a thing.) Thing, almost universal in its application, things animate and inanimate in Dutch-speaking districts are all of them *dinges* if the speaker fails to recall their names.

"Lord! you don't say so? Where d'ye find the animile?" "Animal, Mr. Pike?" "The *dingus*—the gentleman who lumbers round in space." "Oh! a citizen of the world?" (Fossicker's "Kloof Yarns," "The Empire," 27 August, 1898.)

Dip, To.—Sheep and Angora goats are dipped in various solutions to cleanse them from certain parasites which destroy the fleece. Oxen are dipped to free them from ticks.

"Sheep have to be *dipped* three times a year. Now a special Scab Act makes dipping compulsory, and special officers under Government must travel about to see it is done." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 5, 1902.)

Dispens or **Spens.**—(L. *dispendere*, to distribute.) The cupboard or pantry in which the household stores are kept and from which they are dispensed. The word is in common

10

use in Cape Dutch. Compare Chaucer's "All vinolent as botel in the *spence*" (Somner's Tale).

Disselboom.—(D. *dissel*, a pole, shaft; *boom*, tree, pole.) The pole of a wagon or other vehicle, by which it is hauled.

"Hottentots rushing to and fro urging them (the oxen) with unearthly shouts, leaping on and off the *disselboom*, or pole, with frantic energy." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 50, 1852.)

Divers.—The cormorant is so called in Natal. See Duiker.

"I notice a number of those ugly, useless, and predaceous birds known as *divers* in the Bay." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 703, 1906.)

Divide.—A term adopted from America meaning a watershed.

"The high plateau or ridge which runs north-east roughly from Buluwayo to Manicaland, forming a great *divide* or watershed." (Tangye's "New South Africa," p. 174, 1896.)

Doctor, The.—See Cape doctor and South-easter.

"The South-easter, from blowing all pestilent vapours and effluvia out to sea, and purifying the streets and avenues by their overpowering currents of air, has obtained the local epithet of *the Doctor*." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 62, 1856.)

Doctor, Kaffir.—Sometimes called "Witch doctor". The men so designated by Europeans are of two classes: (1) doctors of medicine, and (2) doctors of divination. The former (*i Nyanga* (Zulu)—*yokwe lapa*, (Xosa)—*yamayeza*) simply practise, after a very primitive fashion, the healing art; the latter (*i Nyanga yokubula*), who ranks higher than the former, having passed through that stage, professes to perform dark and mysterious functions. The practices of both alike are based more upon the superstition and fearfulness of the people than upon skill in medicine (though some have a wonderful knowledge of herbs and roots) or ability as diviners.

"*Doctors* are not entitled to fees, except a cure is performed, or the patient relieved." ("Compendium of Kaffir Laws and Customs," p. 123, 1858.)

Doctor, To.—To prepare the warriors, by certain "medicines" and incantations, for war; the process being supposed to render the warrior invincible and invulnerable.

"Here also the finest medicines are concocted, and the

King is *doctored* by the war doctor." (Wood's "Through Matabeleland," p. 45, 1893.)

"He promises that any warrior, *doctored* by his charm, is proof against the British bullets, which on his hide will turn to water." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," 1896, p. 135, 1897.)

Doek.—(D. *doek*, a cloth; cf. G. *Tuch.*) A dish-clout; a handkerchief worn on the head.

"Gaily dressed in startling cottons, with gaudy *douks* or bandanas on their woolly heads." (King's "Campaigning in Africa," p. 19, 1855.)

Doeksteen.—(D. *doek*, a cloth; *steen*, a stone.) The by no means inappropriate Dutch name for the Blue crocidolite.

"We had a little boy named *Dookstens* (or Asbestos) travelling with us." (Campbell's "Travels," p. 272, 1815.)

"The *Doekstcen* is a kind of asbestos of a blue colour." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 333, 1822.)

"The blue asbestos mountains (*Doeksteen* of the Hottentots) just opposite Prieska." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 17 May, 1912.)

Doelpaal.—(D. *doel*, aim, motive; *paal*, a pole.) The winning post, goal.

Dog.—(Kaf. *in Ja*, a dog.) A term of contempt applied by the Kaffirs to all who may be subject to them, but especially to the Fingoes.

"As the former race (Kaffirs) look upon the latter (Fingoes) as *dogs* and hold them in contempt." (Wood's "Through Matabeleland," p. 56, 1893.)

Dog plum.—The fleshy berry of *Ekebergia capensis* has received this name.

Dogrose. — In Natal *Oncoba Kraussiana, Planch.*, a small tree with large white flowers which resemble those of the dog-rose, is known by this name.

Dok-doks.—A game in which a smaller stone must be knocked off a large flat one by stones hurled from a given mark.

Dokkies.—A game of marbles in which the penalty for missing a shot is to put the closed fist upon the ground that it may be shot at by the other player or players.

Dolland.—(C.D. *dolwe*, a particular method of deep trenching.) Land deeply trenched.

Dollar.—(G. *Thaler*, i.e. *Joachimthaler*, a coin made from

the silver of Joachimsthal in Bohemia at the beginning of the sixteenth century.) A term often used in South Africa for one shilling and sixpence. The rix-dollar of the old Dutch regime was originally worth about four shillings sterling, but when British silver money was proclaimed a legal tender in the Colony, June, 1825, the Cape paper rix-dollar was valued for purposes of exchange at one shilling and sixpence sterling. Within the memory of men by no means old, produce was sold on the markets of towns in the Cape Colony by Dutch currency, stuivers, schillings, and rix-dollars.

Dolloss.—(C.D. *dol-os*; the first syllable appears to be a corruption of *dobbel*, a game with dice. See the second quotation.) The metatarsal and metacarpal bones of sheep, goats, pigs, etc., which the Kaffir witch doctors use in pursuing their investigations. The Kaffir name for these bones is *in Dawula.*

"A Kaffir doctor gave a lecture to an admiring audience. . . . The subject of the lecture was, apparently, on the merits of two *dol ossen*, two shank bones of a sheep and sundry paraphernalia which lay spread out before him." ("Queenstown Free Press," 9 September, 1873.)

"Gij hebt zeker gehoord van hun *dobbelos gooijen*. Die *dobbelosjes*, beentjes van dieren zijn hunne dobbelsteenen, doch zij tellen geen oogjes, maar geven aan hunne ligging eene beteekenis, waardoor zij zichzelven, en anderen leiden." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 21, 1890.)

"No reference to Kaffir lore would be complete without an allusion to the *doll-oss* or fetish used by the witch doctors in the practice of divination. Throwing the *doll-oss* is the Kaffir equivalent to consulting the cards." (Wilson's "Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal," p. 85, 1901.)

"We found nothing but Kaffir medicines and the many childish trifles these heathen carry, and among them was the *doll-oss*, or bones with which they read fortunes, find lost cattle, and tell the future." (Blackburn's "A Burgher Quixote," p. 78, 1902.)

Dollossi.—A game played by children with the small sheep or goat bones above mentioned. It is sometimes called Klipsalade, Moertje-en-kinders, and Hand-op-klip.

"Out of his bag he took his *doll-oxen* as the bones are called that the children play with." (Hick's "The Cape as I found it," p. 152, 1900.)

Dolly.—A primitive form of stamp for crushing gold-bear-

ing quartz. The instrument and the name came from Australia, although the latter is not given by Morris ("Austral English").

"The *dolly* is a most primitive appliance for working with, and will soon be superseded by better machinery, for no doubt a large percentage is lost at present." ("Queenstown Free Press," 10 June, 1884.)

Domine.—Occasionally this word is used in Cape Dutch for clergyman, minister, but most commonly he is now spoken of as the "Predikant," and in direct address, "Mijnheer".

"Domine noemt men aan de Kaap den voorlezer, terwijl de leeraar der gemeente altijd, met *Eerwaarde* wordt aangesproken. De Kaapstad maakt op dit spraakgebruik uitzondering: daar heet de Voorlezer *Voorlezer*, en de leraar, *Predikant*, en beide worden met *Mijnheer* aangesproken, terwijl *Domine*, als oude munt, geheel buiten circulatie geraakt is." (Changuion's "Proeve van Kaapsche Taaleigen," xi. 1844.)

"Sacrament was performed to the sick of the ship Bull by the *domine*." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," ii. p. 62, 1846.)

"On the seat sat the jolly, self-complacent *Domine* a hero in his own estimation." (Hofmeyr's "Story of My Captivity," p. 82, 1900.)

Donderkop.—A term of abuse equivalent to "blockhead".

"What do they whistle for . . . tell me that?" . . . "They whistle for the rain, you *donder-kop*." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 120, 1897.)

Donder padde.—(D. *donder*, thunder; *pad*, a toad.) (1) The Dutch name for the Bull-podder (q.v.), which all animals seem to dread. (2) The expression is also applied to a passionate man, a bully, a boaster.

Donga.—(*Z. u Donga*, the bank of a river, the side of a ravine; Kaf. the wall of a house.) Usually applied to a deep gully worn in the soil by the action of rain—the application being transferred from the banks which enclose to the space enclosed.

"Nests were found built on the banks of streams, or dry *dongas*." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 547, 1875-84.)

"But ere long the *dongas* which debouched into the creek became so deeply cut in the earth that, in order to avoid the repeated difficulties we encountered in crossing them, we had

to shape our course higher up on the brow of the hill." (Atcherley's "Trip to Boerland," p. 134, 1879.)

Doodgooi.—(D. *dood*, dead; *gooien*, to throw, fling.) A jocular name for a dumpling. It has been taken over by the Kaffirs in the form *i Dodroyi*, the r being guttural.

Doodmaak.—(D. *dood*, dead; *maken*, to make.) (1) To kill; e.g. *Bangmaak is nog niet doodmaak.* (2) To blow out, to extinguish (as a fire, candle).

Dood-vogel.—(D. *dood*, dead; *vogel*, a bird, a fowl. Compare G. *Todten-vogel*, *Leich-Huhn*; Eng. *liche-owl*, i.e. corpse owl, a screech owl.) A superstitious name given by the Dutch to *Strix flammea*, the barn owl.

"It is known to the Boers as the *Dood-vogel*, from a popular belief that if one of these birds screeches on the roof of a house one of the inmates is sure to die." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 39, 1908.)

Do one a shot, To.—To get the advantage of another, to outwit. The expression is sometimes still further elaborated into "To do one a shot in the eye".

"It is considered rather clever and smart *to do a shot* on the guileless and unsuspecting new chum." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 268, 1890.)

Doormekaar.—(C.D. mixed, confused, topsy-turvy.) In common use.

"Klop dan di eiers, geel en wit apart, roer eers di geel goed *deurmakaar* met di meel en dan di wit van di eiers." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek, en Resepten Book," p. 49, 1898.)

"I shall then have a day of reckoning with Jass, Pen, and Mess, if not before, for leaving us in this *door-makar* strait." (Turnbull's "Tales from Natal," p. 121, 1901.)

Doornboom.—(D. *doorn*, a thorn; *boom*, a tree.) *Acacia horrida.* A widely distributed tree, covered with large white thorns, growing in large numbers along the banks of Karoo rivers, as well as in the open veld. Though generally spoken of as a mimosa, it is not a true mimosa.

"The banks were skirted by a thicket of the *doorn-bush* or thorn-tree." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 18, 1802.)

Doorn peer.—(D. *doorn*, a thorn; *peer*, a pear.) *Scolopia Zeyheri.* See Hoenderspoor.

Doornthee.—(D. *thee*, tea.) *Cliffortia ilicifolia, L.* A decoction of the leaves of this plant is used by the Dutch in the Uitenhage District to relieve coughs.

Doorslagt.—(D. *doorslaan*, to percolate.) A term applied to a mudhole in a road, and also to land which has been rendered boggy by continual rain or flooding.

"I wonder how long we shall be stuck here, the Bushmen declare that the country ahead is one continuous *doorslagt.*" (Anderson's "Notes of Travel in South Africa," p. 206, 1875.)

"Daarbij is een deel van het terrein, in den zomer, wanneer het eenigszins aanhoudend regent, *doorslachtig*, een moeras gelijk." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 359, 1882.)

Dop.—(D. *dop*, a shell, husk.) Brandy which is distilled from the skins of the grapes after the juice has been expressed for wine, is known throughout South Africa as *Dop*. The skins of the grapes are called *dops.*

"We had sufficient *dop* (Dutch brandy) to give every man a tot in which to drink the Queen's health." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 347, 1897.)

"It is a fair assumption that *Dops* are at present responsible for an output of from 500,000 to 600,000 gallons per annum." (Report of Controller of Excise, "East London Dispatch," p. 5, 18 May, 1909.)

Doppers.—(Etymology uncertain.) A religious sect (Gereformeerde Kerk van Zuid Afrika) among the Cape Dutch, the members of which are distinguished from their compatriots by their peculiarities of dress and custom. Their tenets are rigidly Calvinistic.

"Very great dissatisfaction is prevailing here . . . (the *Doppers* would not be satisfied with an angel from heaven)." ("Queenstown Free Press," 4 May, 1859.)

"Patriarchal Boers, almost aboriginal *Doppers*, complained with rueful faces." (Baine's "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 72, 1877.)

"Het woord *dopper* is waarschijnlijk eene verbastering van *domper* en als zoodanig, evenals in Holland, een aanduiding van bekrompenheid in godsdienstige overtuiging." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 382 n., 1882.)

"The opposing forces of Boers were commanded the one by Paul Kruger, the *Dopper* prince, and the other by Commandant Schoeman of Pretoria. Mr. Kruger and his *Doppers* were sticklers for the old-fashioned belief." (Moodie's "Battles in South Africa," II. p. 139, 1888.)

Dorbank.—A hard pan lying beneath the soil, which renders it eminently suitable for the growth of tobacco, as is seen in the neighbourhood of Oudtshoorn.

Dorp.—(D. *dorp*, a village; cf. Eng. thorp.) A village, hamlet.

"Maritzburg . . . an English town rising out of the ruins of a Dutch *dorp* or village." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 26, 1852.)

Dorre vijgen.—(D. *dorren*, to wither, fade; *vijg*, a fig.) *Mesembryanthemum spinosum.* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 420, 1823.)

Dorst-veld or **-land.**—(D. *dorst*, thirst.) The name given by the Boers to the almost waterless country north-west of Shoshong in British Bechuanaland.

"The Nusa Bushmen live in the *Dorst-veld* which lies to the east of Great Namaqualand." (Noble's "The Cape and its People," p. 269, 1869.)

"I have had some baddish journeys in the *doorst-land* on the way to the great lake, but this was, if possible, worse." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 177, 1889.)

Down.—A river is said to be "down" when the waters, increased by a heavy fall of rain higher up, rise in their channel.

"The rivers in this neighbourhood have been frequently *down* during the last month." ("Queenstown Free Press," 18 January, 1867.)

"The Fish River was *down*. It generally was *down* in the sense of being low, but colonial rivers run by contraries, when they are *down* they are up." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 88, 1897.)

Draaibosch.—(D. *draaien*, to turn, twist, wind.) A Riversdale name for *Aster filifolius, D.C.*

"Diplopappus, the *draai-bosje*, takes its place on thin stony ridges or hill-sides, and grows best on a southern exposure." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of Cape Colony," p. 86, 1896.)

Draai jackal.—(D. *draaien*, to turn, twist, wind.) *Vulpes chama* is so called by the Dutch.

"The name *Draai* (turn) *jackal* refers to its quick turning movements when pursued by a dog." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 288, 1911.)

Drabok.—(D. *dravig*; Mid. Eng. *drawk*, a kind of grass

growing among corn as a weed.) *Lolium temulentum*, known in England as "Darnel" or "Perennial rye grass," is known by this name in South Africa, as are also several other grasses of the same species *L. perenne*, *L. italicum*. This latter is also known as "Australian drabok" (q.v.).

"With the revival of wheat-growing in these parts we hear again complaints about the damage done by grasses which are generally known as *drabok*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 7 March, 1907.)

Drakensberg.—(D. *draak*, a dragon; *berg*, a mountain.) The native name for this mountain range is Kahlamba, i.e. "tossed down in jagged peaks". It is part of the great South African chain which runs generally parallel with the coast from the mouth of the Orange River on the west to the mouth of the Limpopo on the east.

"The loneliness and desolation of this mountain region so impressed the imaginations of the Dutch pioneers that they named it the *Drakensberg*, or the habitation of dragons." (Russell's "Natal," p. 60, 1891.)

Draverkies.—(D. *draven*, to trot.) The Dutch name for several varieties of birds of the sub-family *Cursoriinæ*, the Coursers.

Dries.—(D. *driesch*, a derivative of *drie*, three; arising from a custom of allowing a third of a field to lie fallow every three years.) Land ploughed for the first time.

Drift.—(C.D., cf. G. *Trift*, *treiben*; Eng. *drift*, *drive*.) A passage through a river, a ford, is so termed throughout South Africa.

"In the afternoon we arrived at Zondags-rivier's *drift*." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 20, 1785.)

"Where the road crosses a river, what is called a *drift* is made . . . by clearing the bed of the river of large stones, and cutting a sloping roadway through the banks on either side." (Flemming's "Kaffraria," p. 46, 1854.)

Drift-sand.—Sand driven, as it is in some localities, into enormous banks by the wind.

Drill-visch.—(D. *trillen*, to tremble, shiver; *visch*, a fish.) *Astrape capensis*, sometimes called the Electric fish; both names have reference to the power which this fish possesses of giving an electric or benumbing shock when touched. See Tril visch.

"The raja torpedo too (called here *Trill visch*) was

sometimes caught in the harbour, but not brought to table." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 295, 1795.)

Drip disa.—The popular name of *Disa longicornu, Linn. fil.* The quotation explains the popular name.

"Hab. Amongst moss or grass in clefts of steep rocks (krantzes) on the sides turned from the sun, where the water drips in early summer, on Table Mountain." (Bolus' "Orchids of the Cape Peninsula, p. 145, 1888.)

Droedas kruiden.—(D. *kruid*, herb, grass.) *Pharnaceum lineare, Thunb.* Used for colds.

Dronk besje.—(D. *dronken*, drunk; *bes*, a berry.) The red, pulpy berries of *Chymococca racemosa.*

"The fruit of this is called *Dronk besjes*, and differs from the others in being succulent." (Henslow's "South African Flowering Plants," p. 226, 1903.)

Dronkgras.—(1) *Melica decumbens, Thunb.* Thus named because of the intoxicating or semi-paralysing effects which it produces in the cattle which feed upon it, from which they do not recover unless speedily attended to. (2) *Equisetum ramosissimum* is also thus designated, and one or two other plants.

"Another curious sickness which attacks cattle is the dronk-ziekte. It is caused by eating a kind of grass called *dronk-gras*." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 159, 1896.)

Dronkziekte. — (D. *ziekte*, sickness.) A sickness supposed to be produced by eating Dronk-gras. It is similar to that produced by eating the seeds of *Lolium temulatum, L.* known in the north of England as "drunk".

Droogte.—(D. *droogte*, dryness, drought.) An arid stretch of country.

"He faced about to the *droogte*, the land of bleached bones where there was often no rain for a space of five years at a stretch." (Glanville's "The Diamond Seekers," p. 270, 1903.)

Drossers or **Drosters.**—(D. *drossen*, to run away.) In the old slave days such slaves or Hottentots as were found wandering about the country without a "Pass" (q.v.), or unable to give a good account of themselves.

"They are commonly called by the colonial term of *drossers* or gedrost Hottentotten (runaways)." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 158, 1824.)

Drost.—(Cf. G. *Drost*, a bailiff.) A shortened form of the more common Landdrost (q.v.).

"Officers are appointed in the interior parts of the Colony, called *drosts* or sheriffs, who arrest criminals, but have no power of trying or judging them." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 571, 1798.)

"The *Drost* gave us a good reception." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 222, 1785.)

Drostdy.—(Cf. G. *Drostei*, the jurisdiction of a bailiff.) (1) The town or district over which the Landdrost has jurisdiction. (2) The office at which the Landdrost transacts his business, or his residence.

"The Landdrost should have held a meeting of the inhabitants to administer to them the oath of allegiance to His Majesty . . . and settle some other necessary business, at the *Drosdy*." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 112, 1801.)

"She had come from the *drostdy* or district-town of Uitenhage." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 6, 1840.)

Dry diggings.—To distinguish from "River diggings". At the latter the diamondiferous material is "washed" in the search for diamonds; at the "dry diggings" it is disintegrated by exposure to the atmosphere and sun.

"There are accounted four *dry diggings*. New Rush . . . Old De Beers, Dutoitspan, and Bultfontein." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 123, 1873.)

"The *dry diggings* are thirty miles to the south-east of Pniel, they are so called because the gems are not found in river-wash, but in dry tufa, which has apparently never been in contact with water." (Lacy's "Pictures of Travel," etc., p. 173, 1899.)

Dry-my-throat bush.—*Scutia Commersoni, Brogn.* This is a literal rendering of the Dutch name *Droog-mij-keel bosje*. The name conveys an idea of the peculiar effect produced upon the throat and tongue by the berries (*droogjes*) of this bush.

"I got under a thick *dry-my-throat bush*, where I hid." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 136, 1897.)

"'Come all of you down here,' and he marched off to a clump of *drag-mij-kell* bush about a hundred yards off." (Glanville's "Kloof Yarns," "The Empire," 8 October, 1898.)

Dry-rot.—According to Dr. Prior this is a corruption of

tree-rot. The term is usually applied to a disease of timber occasioned by the fungus *Merulius lachrymans*—but at Knysna it appears to be used of the dark stains in timber occasioned by the entrance of moisture.

"Those insects that live, or whose larvæ live, in decomposed *standing* timber, are no less pernicious indirectly than those who live in the tree itself, because, first, they are much more numerous, and secondly, that they occasion a rapid disintegration of the fibre, enable the water to percolate, and cause often that black stain called *dry-rot* in Knysna so noticeable . . . in the Outeniqua yellow-wood—*Podocarpus elongatus*." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," IV. Part i. p. 19, 1887.)

Dry smoke, A.—When without tobacco an inveterate smoker will sometimes pull at an empty pipe—this is known as a "dry smoke".

"In his mouth was stuck a short pipe, out of which he was taking, in colonial parlance, *a dry smoke*—that is, it was alike destitute of fire or tobacco." (Gilmore's "Days and Nights by the Desert," p. 205, 1888.)

Dry sorting.—The earliest and most primitive method of searching for diamonds adopted at the Diamond Fields. It consisted in passing the diamondiferous ground through a succession of hand-sieves, and then passing the residuum over a sorting table.

Ds.—The D-shaped metal attachments to saddles by which a rug or coat is secured.

"Tied to the saddle *Ds* with strong strips of untanned leather called reimpys." (Mann's "Natal," p. 199, 1859.)

"Hens . . . decoyed by their appetites within reach . . . are caught by the leg and decapitated and tied up to the *Ds* of the saddles of the army." ("A Subaltern's Letters to his Wife," p. 33, 1901.)

Dubbeltje.—(D. *dubbeltje*, twopence; the old Cape Dutch *dubbeltje* was worth three-farthings.) The Dutch name for a penny; the word is, however, sometimes used for money generally. This word is corrupted by the Natal native into "Deeblish".

"There is indeed a large quantity of the old English penny pieces coined by Mr. Boullon now in circulation under the name of *doublegees*, or twopence, for which they pass current." (Fisher's "Importance of the Cape of Good Hope," p. 52, 1816.)

"At last he scarcely had *dubbeljees* (pence) sufficient to carry him back to the Colony." (Kay's "Kaffrarian Researches," p. 283, 1833.)

"One individual sent a note . . . enclosing what he called his *dubbeltje* (penny) which proved, when the note was opened, to be a sovereign." (Smith's "South Africa Delineated," p. 161, 1850.)

Dubbeltje or **Dubbeltje doorn.**—(1) *Emex australis, Steinh.* This plant produces an angular bur, with short, strong spines at each angle, which, when hard and dry, are most troublesome to the bare feet of Kaffirs and also to those of small stock. (2) The name is also applied to the somewhat similar seeds of *Tribulus terrestris* and *T. Zeyheri.* See Duiveltje.

"Great complaints were made of the seed-vessels of the *rumex spinosus* (*dubelties*) which grow very common here, as the sharp prickles of them cut the feet of all the slaves and others who walked bare-footed." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 148, 1795.)

"The dogs were soon disabled by a prickly seed which gets into their feet—and is called a *dubbeltje.*" ("Scenes in Albany," p. 100, 1827.)

"May I be permitted to draw the attention of the municipal authorities to the ever-increasing spread of the *Dubbeltje doorn* weed, which is not only a menace but a positive danger to children, who find their playgrounds, etc., infested with them." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 13 September, 1912.

Dubbeltje leeuwerk.—(D. *dubbel*, double ; *leeuwerk*, a lark, cf. Scotch laverock.) *Callendula crasserostris.*

"On our way we noticed a handsome umber-brown lark —*dubbelde leeuwirk* the Boers call it." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 278, 1889.)

Dug out.—A hole in the ground covered with stones and sand, and ventilated by drain-pipes, in which the inhabitants of towns besieged during the late war, sought protection from the Boer shells.

Duiker.—(D. *duiker*, a diver.) *Cephalophus grimmi.* A buck so named from the peculiar manner in which it seems to dive into the bush.

"Six small species of antelope hitherto unnoticed in these pages; viz. the klipspringer, rheebuck, rooi-rhebuck or nagor,

ourebi, steenbuck, and *duiker*." (Harris' "Wild Sports of South Africa," p. 224, 1839.)

Duiker.—*Graculus carbo, Lay.* and *G. capensis, Gray.* These two cormorants, which abound in Table Bay and round the coast westward, are both so called. See Divers.

"1652, 13 September. The yacht returned from Robbin Island bringing about an hundred black birds called *duikers* (cormorants) of a good flavour." (Riebeeck's "Journal," Moodie's "Records," p. 13, 1841.)

"The way in which the *duikers* (cormorants and shags) obtain their food is not uninteresting." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 16, 1856.)

Duikers horen.—(D. *horen,* horn.) *Stapelia incarnata* is known by this name in the neighbourhood of Saldanha Bay. (Thunberg's, "Flora Capensis," p. 240, 1823. = *Caralluma incarnata, N.E. Br.*)

Duinen thee.—(D. *duin,* a sandy mound, cf. Eng. dune.) *Helichrysum imbricatum.* The leaves of this plant—which grows plentifully on the Cape Downs, hence the name—are used for coughs.

Duineveld.—(D. *duin,* a sandy mound, a dune.) An extent of country covered by low sandy hills.

"In the Riversdale District it is stated that the disease (lamziekte) only occurs in the sour parts of the *duineveld.*" ("S.A. Agric. Journal," p. 35, July, 1912.)

Duin mol.—*Bathyergus suillus* (*maritimus,* of Sclater). See Cape mole and Sand mole.

"The giant among these burrowing mole-like animals is known as the sand mole or 'zand mol'. It is also called the *duin mol.*" ("The State," p. 231, September, 1912.)

Duin pauw.—(D. *pauw,* a peacock.) The name sometimes given to the great African bustard. See Pauw.

"Eine andere Art Trappe, der sog. *duinpouw* (Dünen-Pfau) ist ein fast mannshoher Vogel, einer der grossten existierenden Vogelarten . . . er erreicht oft ein Gewicht bis zu 70 Pfund. Die Spannweite seiner Flügel misst 8 bis 10 Fuss." (Bachmann's "Süd-Afrika," p. 98, 1901.)

Duin rat.—*Gerbillus afer.* See Nacht muis.

Duivel.—(D. *duivel,* devil.) Used of a man who is clever or expert at something. One may even hear the curious expression: "Hij is n'duivel om te bid"; he is a devil (a rare one) to pray.

Duivel doorn.—The expanded capsule of *Harpagophytum procumbens*, which is armed in every direction with strong, hooked thorns, and is not unlike a huge spider. See Haakdoorn.

Duiveltje.—(D. *duivel*, devil.) See Dubbletje of which this is a corruption.

"The little nuts of *Tribulus terrestris* and *T. Zeyheri* are armed with strong, sharp spines. . . . The fruitlets of *Emex centropodium* are quite similar, both having deserved thereby the Dutch designation of *duiveltjes*." (Dr. Marloth's Address, "S.A. Phil. Soc.," p. 9, 29 August, 1894.)

Duive pauw.—(D. *duif*, a dove, pigeon; *pauw*, a peacock.) *Otis kori* is so named in the neighbourhood of Saldanha Bay.

"This bustard is called at Saldanha Bay *Duive pauw.*" (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 632, 1875-84.)

Duizend poot.—(D. *duizend*, thousand; *poot*, a foot.) Millipede, centipede.

Dung rollers.—This name is given to several beetles of the *Scarabæidæ* Family. The nidus in which they deposit their egg is formed of dung, which they shape into a round ball; they roll this with great labour to a suitable locality and cover with loose soil.

"The supply of dung fuel was very materially interfered with by millions of black beetles called *dung rollers*, a kind of Scarabæus, which swarmed day after day in every part of the plain." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 303, 1855.)

Dunnebesjes.—(D. *duin*, a down; *bezie*, a berry.) Another name for the berries known as Skelpadbesjes (q.v.). "This shrub is very common in the Downs." Pappe.

Dutchisms.—See Africanderism.

Dutchman.—The name given by the diamond sorters to pieces of quartz, which somewhat resemble uncut diamonds.

Dwa dwa.—*Leucosidea sericea, E. and Z.* This plant is used by the natives as an astringent medicine. "The woody branches are very inflammable, and eagerly sought after by the Kaffir women for lighting their fires." Mrs. F. W. Barber.

"*P. sericea* is a densely leafy shrub, the *Dwa dwa* of the natives, who use it as an astringent medicine." (Harvey's "Genera of South African Plants," p. 95, 1868.)

Dwa- or Twa-grass.—*Aristida Lichtensteinii*, a valuable grass indigenous to South Africa.

"Many grasses indigenous to South Africa share in the formation of the rich pasturage of the Northern and Eastern regions; e.g., *Dwa-grass* or *Toa-grass* (*Aristida Lichtensteinii*)." (Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 185, 1897.)

Dwarf goose.—*Nettopus auritus*. A very small member of the Order *Anseres*, it is a handsome little bird.

Dwarstrekken.—(D. *dwaars*, across, athwart; *trekken*, to pull, draw; cf. D. *dwarsdrijven*, to cross, thwart, contradict.) To work or pull contrary. To thwart, cross, quarrel.

Earth star.—The name given in the Western Province to a variety of puff-ball—*Geaster*.

"The *earth star* is a pretty little puff-ball, which looks like a star, and grows close on the earth in the spring." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 173, 1906.)

East coast fever.—See African coast fever.

"*East coast fever* being a piroplasma disease, led investigators to believe that it must be carried by ticks. All evidence about its originating and spreading pointed to tick infection. Mr. Lounsbury, the Cape Entomologist, was the first to prove that a certain species of tick communicated the disease. This tick is what is now commonly called the brown tick (*Rhipicephalus appendiculatus*)." (Dr. Theiler, "Report S.A.A.A.S.," p. 211, 1904.)

Eastern Province Vlei Grass.—*Eragrostis lehmanniana, Nees*. See Blauw zaad gras.

Eastern tree fern.—*Cyathea Dregei, Kunze*. A magnificent South African tree fern with a stem sometimes 7 feet high surmounted by a crown of fronds a yard long and a foot wide. It is found in Kaffraria and Natal.

Eat up, To.—(The literal rendering of an idiomatic use of the Kaffir *uku Dla*, to eat, devour.) (1) This is the native idea of a process which the expression describes with tolerable accuracy. Among the Zulus, the evil-doer, his wives and children, were all massacred, his property confiscated, and his name blotted out; he was said to be "eaten up". Among the Cape Kaffirs the man's property was seized and he was driven out to wander as an outcast and outlaw from his tribe. (2) The expression is also used to describe the re-

sult to the vanquished of a pitched battle of tribe against tribe.

"To *eat* one another *up*, this is theft." (Boyce's "Notes on South Africa," p. 41, 1838.)

"Wheresoever there was blackmail to be levied, or an independent clan to be *eaten up* . . . the disciplined forces of Chaka sooner or later appeared." (Mann's "Natal," p. 14, 1859.)

Ebb and flow, The.—That point in the course of a river where the ebb and flow of the tide begins to make itself apparent.

Eel-worms.—*Anguillulidæ.* The plant disease known as Vrotpootjes (q.v.) is due to the ravages of a minute worm which is known in the Transvaal as the eel-worm, and in the Cape Colony as the root gall worm. There are several varieties of these worms, some of which attack roots, others the stem and leaves of cultivated plants.

"*Eel-worms* or Nematodes, are very small organisms, too small to be observed with the naked eye, which infest the roots of a great number of plants and cause swellings and knots upon them." ("South African Gardening and Agriculture," p, 384, September, 1912.)

Eendjes.—(D. *eend,* a duck.) The name given by the Grahamstown boys to the pods of *Sutherlandia frutescens, R. Br.*, which they break off and float in water. See Kanker boschje and Keurtje.

Egg-eater.—A snake of the *Dasypeltidæ* family—*D. scabra.* This snake is furnished with a saw-like row of vertebral teeth in the gullet, by which the shells of eggs, which are almost its sole food, are pierced; the contents swallowed, the shell is ejected.

"The *Egg-eater* lives almost entirely on eggs, which it eats in a curious fashion." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 1 September, 1911.)

Eierkokertje.—(D. *ei,* an egg; *koken,* to boil, cook.) The sand-glass used to time the cooking of an egg.

Eier slang.—(D. *ei,* an egg; *slang,* a snake.) See Egg-eater.

"I caught a rainbow trout (cock fish) in the Lourens River here, about 13½ inches in length, in the stomach of which was a partially digested body of a snake, pronounced by those who have seen it to be an egg-eating snake (*Eier slang*)." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 18 October, 1912.)

Ei in de hoed.—(D. *ei*, an egg; *hoed*, a hat.) A school game in which hats are placed in a row upon the ground, the player who is most expert at pitching a stone or ball into one from a certain distance is the winner.

Eland.—(D. *eland*, an elk.) *Taurotragus oryx.* The largest of the South African antelopes. It was known to the Hottentots as the Kanna, with an initial cerebral click.

"*Elands* from the Zambezi Valley and Mozambique are distinguished by having white transverse markings, and may be considered as a sub-species (*T. oryx livingstonii*) of the typical form." ("Science in South Africa," p. 131, 1905.)

Elandsboontjes.—(D. *boon*, a bean.) The name given to the fleshy roots of the *Elephantorhiza Burchellii, Benth.*

"Glabrous undershrubs, with large fleshy roots (*Elandsboontjes*)." (Harvey's "Genera of South African Plants," p. 92, 1868.)

"'Have you seen any *Elandsboontje?*' Hartley went on, well knowing that the plant was very rare in that region." (Green's "Richard Hartley, Prospector," p. 229, 1905.)

Eland veld.—See Bont veld and quotation.

Electric fish.—See Drill-visch.

Elephant fish.—*Callorhyncus antarcticus*, is so called because of the proboscis-like process which it bears on the front of the head. See Joseph and Rabbit fish.

"Two boats were sent to survey while others were engaged fishing off Pelican Point, but they produced only a boat-load of young ground-sharks, *elephant fish*, and white bass." (Owen's "Narrative," II. p. 228, 1833.)

Elephant fruit tree.—The reference of the quotation appears to be to the plant known as Elephants' food (q.v.).

"A tree pointed out to me this morning, the *elephant fruit tree.* Elephants are said to be very fond of this tree, from whence comes its name." (Churchill's "Men, Mines, and Manners," p. 147, 1895.)

Elephant rock.—A stratum comprised principally of dolomite limestone, when exposed to the weather it is worn into irregular corrugations, which are not unlike the wrinkles on the hide of an elephant—hence the name, which is a literal rendering of the Dutch "Olifants Klip".

"The rock is known as 'Olifants Klip' by the Boers, on account of the general resemblance of the weathered surface

of the limestone to the hide of an elephant." ("Science in South Africa," p. 283, 1905.)

Elephant's ear.—In Queenstown the boys give this name to *Eriospermum Bellindi, Sweet,* a liliaceous plant bearing a single cordate ovate leaf, resembling an ear.

Elephants' food.—*Portulacaria Afra, Jacq.* An Eastern Province name for the plant known more generally as the Spek boom (q.v.). It is a valuable food plant for stock.

" The elephant was said to live upon it, hence it has likewise been styled in Africa *Elephants' food.*" (Flemming's " Southern Africa," p. 125, 1856.)

Elephant's foot.—*Testudinaria elephantipes.* The popular name of this curious member of the Yam family. It has a hard, woody protuberance, sometimes of enormous size, partly embedded in the earth, which bears some slight resemblance to an elephant's foot. See Hottentot bread.

" I there found many curious plants among which was one called *Elephant's foot.*" (Paterson's " Narrative," p. 72, 1789.)

" That singular plant the *trimus elephantiopus,* so called from a protuberance thrown out from the root, resembling the foot of an elephant." (Barrow's " Travels," I. p. 189, 1801.)

Elephant shrew.—*Macroscelides typicus, Smith.* The name has reference to the proboscis-like snout, which is not unlike a diminutive elephant's trunk.

" The *elephant shrews* (*Macroscelides*) are met with mostly among the rocky kopjes, and on the dry open karroo." (" Science in South Africa," p. 135, 1905.)

Elephant's trunk.—*Pachypodium Namaquanum.* A singular plant found in Namaqualand, having a thick, fleshy trunk some 5 or 6 feet high, not unlike an elephant's trunk in shape.

" Isaac . . . noticed a plant of the cactus or euphorbia tribe, known by the name of *elephant's trunk.*" (Chapman's " Travels," II. p. 325, 1868.)

Elephant's wood.—*Bolusanthus speciosus, Harms.,* is so called in the Transvaal.

Elft.—(D. *elft,* a shad.) *Temnodon saltator, Cuv.,* is so called by the fishermen of the Cape. In Natal it is known as the Shad (q.v.), and at East London as the Chad.

" In the Table Bay and Bay Falzo is caught a sort of fish

the Dutch call *Elft*. The *Elft* is three-quarters of a yard long or more, and is scaled much like a herring." (Kolben's "Present State of the Cape of Good Hope," II. p. 190, 1731.)

Emerald cuckoo.—*Chrysococcyx smaragdineus.* The Natal name of this beautifully plumaged bird. In the Cape Colony it shares with *C. Klaasi* and *C. Cupreus* the name of "Golden cuckoo" (q.v.).

"The *emerald cuckoo* resplendent in green and gold." (Russell's "Natal," p. 36, 1891.)

Emmer.—(D. *emmer*, a pail, bucket.) In the early days of the Colony the bucket was often found to be a convenient measure when bartering.

"I purchased eight *emirs* or measures of wheat from one of the Griquas." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 161, 1850.)

Englishman.—*Chrysophrys Anglicus* is so named in Natal.

Enkelde leeuwerk.—(D. *enkel*, single, alone; *leeuwerik*, a lark; Cf. Scotch laverock.) *Anthus pyrrhonotus* is so named by the Dutch. See Koeskoetje.

"I feel convinced that this (*Megalophonus Pyrrhonothus*) is identical with *Anthus Leucophrys, Vieil.*, which goes by the name of *Enkelde Leeuwerk* among the colonists." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 211, 1867.)

Ennà or **Ijná.**—(Hot. * *ē*! Interj. of pain; * *nā*! Interj. of astonishment—each word has an initial click, the former the dental, the latter the lateral.) An exclamation of pain common in the Midlands.

Epiti.—(Z *i Pwiti*, the smallest South African antelope.) *Cephalopus monticola.* See Bluebuck and Ipiti.

"A turban made of the skin of the *ipiete*, a species of antelope." (Martin's "History of South Africa," p. 138, 1836.)

"I shot a few small buck known as *impeti* . . . not much larger than a hare." (Atcherley's "Trip to Boerland," p. 26, 1879.)

Erf.—(D. *erf*, inheritance; cf. G. *Erbe.*) A piece of ground marked off in a village or town for garden or building purposes. These erven may be either water- or dry-erven, as they carry the right to water for irrigation or not.

"His industry put him in possession of this *erf*, a name

given to a small lot of ground, not being a complete farm." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 262, 1818.)

Ertjes.—(D. *erwt*, a pea.) Peas generally.

"The mild sweet-pea or *eertje* which grows on trees 7 or 8 feet high and has such lovely colours." ("Cape Times," 3 September, 1904.)

Eschenhout.—(D. *esch*, ash.) (1) In the Cape Colony *Ekebergia capensis* is known by this name. The South African Ash. (2) In Pondoland the name is applied to *Trichilia emetica*. See Cape mahogany.

"A tree very useful in making wagons, which the Dutch call *essen* or ash." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 80, 1789.)

"*Harpephyllum caffrum, Bernh.* . . . The tree is called by the inhabitants *Eschenhout;* the edible fruit 'Zuurbesjes'." ("Flora Capensis," vol. I. p. 525, 1859-60.)

"For cabinet-making of a high class, some Cape woods might be exported with advantage. Hard pear . . . *Essenhout*, Red and White els are specially worthy of notice." (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 146, 1886.)

Euphonic concord.—See Alliteral concord.

Evening primrose.—The popular name of a species of *Œnothera.*

"The best-known genera (of the Order *Onagrarieæ*) are *Epilobium*, popularly called the 'Willow-herb,' and *Œnothera*, the *Evening primrose*." (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 51, 1907.)

Everlastings.—The flowers of *Helichrysum vestitum*, which form so important an article of commerce, are thus designated. See Seven years flowers.

"While the English name *everlastings* and the French immortelles, refer to the imperishable nature of their beauty, we Germans are pleased to call them paper-flowers or straw-flowers to designate in truly prosaic terms the dryness which prevents their fading." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 121, 1814.)

Eve's needle.—A plant of the aloe family, having narrow, sharply pointed leaves, has received this appellation in the Midlands.

Ewa trewa.—*Satyrium coriifolium, Swarz.*—The popular name of one of the commonest of the orchids of the Cape Peninsula, its bright orange colour favours the suggestion of Dr. Bolus ("Orchids of the Cape Peninsula," p. 125, 1888),

that the former part of the name is a corruption of the Dutch geele (yellow); "Geele trewa," according to Thunberg was the name given to an orchid, in his time, in the Western Province. Or is it a corruption of the "Goude travers" of the quotation? I have heard them called "Trevers" quite recently.

"Of the terrestrial Orchideæ, so very numerous and beautiful in South Africa, there is . . . one species . . . known by the name of *Goude travers*, formerly very plentiful on the Cape Flats." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 350, 1857.)

Excuse.—This word is often used in Dutch-speaking districts with the meaning "Pardon me," "Do not take it amiss".

"Oh *excuse*, I asked if you would have coffee and I thought you said 'No'."—(Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 17, 1906.)

Eye, of a fountain.—(D. *oog*, eye, is used of that point in a spring at which the water finds exit from the earth; *fontein*, a spring.) A translation of the Dutch expression.

"The water continually bubbled up from two or three *eyes*." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 159, 1838.)

"We flattered ourselves that we had found the *eye* of a spring; but the next instant all our hopes vanished." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 404, 1856.)

"Schoonspruit heeft drie *oogen;* twee komen in eene mooije vallei bij elkander, waarop er eene menigte eendvogels, waterhoenders en wilde ganzen, met nog eene soort van vogels, die ik niet ken, zwemmen." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 64, 1890.)

F.A.M.P.—These initials stand for the old Frontier Armed and Mounted Police corps which in 1878 was changed to the C.M.R.—Cape Mounted Rifles.

"Nine more men of the *F.A.M.P.* have been tried at Komgha for refusal of duty as C.M.R." ("Queenstown Free Press," 15 November, 1878.)

Fat-fish.—See Blue-fish, for which this is another East London name.

"When opened the stomach usually contains large lobes of fat—hence the name *fat-fish*". ("East London Dispatch," 7 August, 1905.)

Fatherland.—The designation given to a particular breed of cattle in the early days.

"The *Fatherland* as the name betokens, is the pure European breed, without cross or admixture. They are a large sized, small headed, light-necked, and well-made breed noted as furnishing the best milch cows in the Colony." ("Durban Observer," 9 January, 1852.)

Fat, Sheep's tail.—The fat obtained from the enormous tails of the Cape sheep (q.v.) is used for a variety of purposes, culinary and otherwise, in the households and on the farms of South Africa.

"It fell to my lot to pluck the bird, and Mr. Immelmann undertook to dress it, and indeed he showed himself a perfect master in the art, stewing it in a quantum sufficit of water and a little *sheep's tail fat.*" (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 298, 1785.)

Fat-tailed sheep. — Another designation of the Cape sheep (q.v.). This was the sheep found in possession of the natives by the European discoverers of South Africa. The sheep Calcoen speaks of he saw at Quiloa, a little to the north-east of the Cape, but a rather liberal allowance should be made for his powers of imagination.

"Daer syn oec scapen met grote staerten dair gheen been in eñ is die start is beter dan half t scaep." (There are also sheep with great tails, there is no bone in them, the tail is better than half the sheep.) Calcoen, 1502.

"But the farmers generally were very slow to appreciate the advantages of the wool over the old hairy *fat-tailed sheep* of the country. The *fat-tails* held their own for many years." ("The Castle Line Guide to South Africa," p. 55, 1888.)

Feathers, Ostrich.—These feathers vary in value according to the sex of the bird and the part of the body from which they are plucked; they are also named accordingly:—

Prime bloods.—The first quality of wild feathers.

Whites.—The long, pure white wing feathers of the male.

Feminas.—The corresponding plumage of the female.

Byocks.—(Said to be a corruption of a foreign word for black and white); parti-coloured feathers from the wing of the male.

Spadonas.—First year's plucking from young birds.

Boos.—Stumpy tail feathers of both male and female.

Blacks.—Long feathers from the wing of the male at its junction with the body.

Drabs.—Corresponding growth from the female.

Floss.—Soft feathers from under the wing coverts of both sexes.

Fed off.—" The veld is fed off." A phrase applied to veld that has been so closely cropped by stock that little or nothing nourishing remains.

Fed up.—A slang phrase meaning to have had enough of anything.

Fenkel wortel.—(D. *venkel*, fennel; *wortel*, a root, carrot.) The fleshy, aromatic roots of *Carum Capense, Sond.*

Fetcani.—(Kaf. *im Fecane*, marauders, lawless tribes.) The Amangwane, a tribe of Zulus; during the wars caused by Chaka they fled southward, conquering as they advanced, ultimately threatening the natives on the colonial border. They were defeated and dispersed by a Burgher force under Colonel Somerset at Umtata in 1828.

" Fecane is the root of *imfecane*, the Kaffir word for desolator or marauder. It must not be mistaken, therefore, for a tribal name, being simply a descriptive term, by which the Kaffirs designate an unknown and foreign invader. The tribal name of Matuwana's people is Amangwana." (Appleyard's " Kaffir Grammar," p. 42, 1850.)

" The name they gave the Amangwane was that of *Fetcani* the Kaffir word for 'desolators,' 'marauders,' and they described them as fiends in human shape. It is as *Fetcani* they are known in colonial history." (Ayliff and Whiteside's " History of the Abambo (Fingos)," p. 16, 1912.)

Fever trees.—(1) This name is applied " up country " to a species of mimosa (*Acacia xanthophlœa*), because the trees are supposed to indicate that the locality in which they grow is unhealthy for Europeans. (2) The Australian " blue gums " are so designated but for quite another reason: viz. because of their anti-febrile qualities.

" The *fever trees* are a species of mimosa, with pallid boles and livid green foliage, and the experienced explorer always avoids their neighbourhood." (" Adventures in Mashonaland," by Two Nurses, p. 99, 1893.)

" Millions of the Australian 'blue-gum' or *fever tree*, *Eucalyptus globulus, Labell.*, have been planted within a few miles of Johannesburg." (Wallace's " Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 24, 1896.)

Fiddle-fish.—The fiddle-fish of the Cape is *Rhinobatus annulatus*, belonging to the *Rajides*—the European Fiddle-

fish is *Squatina vulgaris, Risso,* and belongs to the *Squalides.*

Field cornet.—An official with authority to inquire into and report to the magistrate, any crime committed within his jurisdiction.

"They are extremely averse to the Commando service, and from their known aversion and frequent refusals to comply with the requisitions of the *Field cornets,*" etc. (Boyce's "Notes on South African Affairs," p. vii., Introduction, 1838.)

Field cornetcy.—The area over which a field cornet has jurisdiction.

Fields, The.—Shortened form of "the Diamond Fields" and at one time in general use throughout South Africa.

"He was squandering right and left and certainly not working very steadily, for he had placed no stones in the bank since Graham had been on *the Fields.*" (Hobson's "At Home in the Transvaal," p. 182, 1884.)

Fifty-dollars bird.—An onomatopœtic name for a bird in the Knysna District.

"The woods are mute except for the singular and dolorous bird which distinctly and continuously breaks the dull monotony with his loud cry of 'fifty-dollars,' and is hence called *the fifty-dollars bird.*" (Andersson's "Okavango River," p. 339, 1861.)

Fighting port, The.—The Port of East London is so designated because of the ready disposition of its people to show fight either to defend or to secure their rights.

"With General Brabant and Sir Gordon Sprigg as its representatives in the Cape House of Assembly, one feels well disposed towards *the fighting port,* and wishes it a better climate." (Stuart's "Pictures of War," p. 254, 1901.)

Fikey.—(D. *vaatje,* a small barrel.) A small keg for water, generally forming part of the furniture of a transport wagon. The word—usually so pronounced in the Midland Districts—is a corruption of the Dutch name.

"One of the three rose up . . . took a final pull at the water *fikey* and stretched himself on the bare ground." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 166, 1891.)

File snake.—*Simocephalus capensis.*—A non-poisonous snake. The name refers to its three-cornered appearance due to its peculiar backbone scales.

Filmy ferns.—The various species of *Hymenophyllum*

and *Trichomanes* are thus designated on account of their fragile beauty and diaphanous fronds.

"From the eighty-foot tree fern to the tiny *Filmy ferns*, which are so small as to be frequently mistaken for mosses." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 17 February, 1911.)

Finger-poll.—See Vinger-poll.

"Another of our many eccentric looking plants, the *finger-poll* is also used in very dry seasons to feed cattle." (Martin's "At Home on an Ostrich Farm," p. 58, 1890.)

Fingos.—(Kaf. *ama Mfengu*, those who wander in search of service.) This word is a corruption of the designation given by the Kaffirs to certain tribes who at one time occupied the country to the west and north-east of Durban, Natal. During the wars which raged in Chaka's time they were "eaten up" and scattered. The remnants of this people fell in their wanderings into the hands of the Kaffirs, by whom they were treated as slaves, and subjected to every oppression until Sir Benjamin D'Urban set them free. Ultimately they were declared British subjects and have remained loyal to the Crown ever since. As a people they call themselves Aba-Mbo. Their tribal names, which they still retain, are: ama-Tetyeni, -Hlubi, -Zizi, -Bele, -Shwawa, -Gobizembe, -Sekunene, -Ntozakwe, -Relidwane, -Radebe, and -Dlangamandla.

"Fortunately for the missionary and those with him, the *Fingoes* residing on the missionary station, displayed at this crisis considerable firmness and courage, expressing their determination not to abandon their teacher, and that if he were slain he should die behind their shields." (Editor, "Grahamstown Journal," narrative, p. 109, 1836.)

"The term *Amafengu* is a conventional national epithet first applied to the *Fingoes* by the Kaffirs, but now in general use amongst themselves. The root from which it is derived is *fenguza*, and signifies 'to seek service,' implying at the same time the total destitution of the person who uses it. The word *Amafengu* will accordingly mean 'destitute people in search of service,' and correctly characterizes their condition when 'they arrived amongst the Kaffirs'." (Appleyard's "Kaffir Grammar," p. 41 n., 1850.)

"When the fugitives entered lower Kaffirland they were asked, 'Who are you? What do you want?' They replied, 'Siyam Fenguza,' which means 'We seek service'. 'We are destitute.' The word *Amamfengu* therefore means 'hungry

people in search of work'. This correctly describes their condition when they first arrived among the Ama-Xosa. Colonists use European names instead of native ones, and they changed the word *Amafengu* to *Fingos*, a name by which they have ever since been known to the inhabitants of Cape Colony." (Ayliff and Whiteside's "History of the Abambo (Fingos)," pp. 15-16, 1912.)

Fink.—(D. *fink*, a finch.) Various birds of the Order *Ploceidae.*

"A flock of long-tailed mouse birds, called *finks* (?) would dash past to settle in a rooi-hout tree." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 2, 1896.)

Fire lily.—*Cyrtanthus angustifolius, Ait.*, is so named in Natal. The brilliant flame colour of its flowers is rendered more conspicuous by the blackness of the hills after the annual grass burning, hence the name.

"The leading glory of the pastures at this time is a plant known to the Dutch under the expressive and most apt name of the *fire lily.* The pastures are frequently literally ablaze with its broadly spread carpet of scarlet." (Brook's "Natal," p. 169, 1876.)

Fiscal.—(D. *fiscaal*, the chief officer of the Treasury.) The Procureur-General under the Dutch East India Company was thus designated. His office was an important and responsible one.

"Er setzte den ersten Land-Drost oder Richter ein, von beiden Kolonien, Stellenbosch und Drachenstein, ertheilte ihm eben die Macht so der independente *Fiscal* hatte." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 236, 1745.)

"The office of *Fiscal* is one of the most important in the Colony . . . public accuser . . . Solicitor-General, to the Crown . . . Chief Magistrate of the Police." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 422, 1804.)

Fiscal.—*Lanius collaris.* It has been suggested that this bird has received its popular name (see also Butcher bird) because it is as much feared among the smaller birds and animals, which it ruthlessly kills and impales, as the Fiscal of the old Dutch East India Company was by the earlier colonists.

Arbousset ("Narrative," p. 222, 1846) gives this name to "*Apaloderma narina* the Bush lory or Bosch lory".

"The shrikes supplied me with the *Fiscal* which was common." ("Scientific African," p. 87, 1896.)

"The white-throated, black-headed, hook-billed *fiscal* made soft notes in imitation of the red-speckled breasted wrens, finishing up with a harsh screech which completely gave him away." (Glanville's "Kloof Yarns," "Empire," 30 July, 1898.)

Fishing frog.—*Lophius upsicephalus.* See Paddy, Angler, and Devil-fish.

Fish moth.—*Lepisma saccharina.* This destructive insect abounds in Natal and elsewhere in South Africa. In Delagoa Bay it is known as the "Fish-tail moth". Its scales are a well-known microscopic object. See Silver moth.

"It is one of nature's beneficent compensations that the *fish moth* is devoid of wings." (Mann's "Natal," p. 171, 1859.)

"Some people call them *fish-tail moths*—why 'moths' it would be difficult to discover, but I believe they belong to the order *Thysanura* or bristle-tails." (Rose Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay, its Natives and Natural History," p. 129, 1891.)

Five-fingers.—(1) *Sargus cervinus*, a silvery fish slightly shorter than the "Moon-fish," but of the same family. This name refers to several well-defined stripes running across the body. See Wilde paard and Zebra fish. (2) In Natal the name is given to *Chorinemus sancti-petri, C. and V.*

"*Sargus cervinus* . . . also called 'wilde paard,' 'striped dasje,' and '*five-fingers*'." ("East London Dispatch," 26 June, 1906.)

Flamboyant.—(F. *flamber*, to blaze; *flamboyant*, flaming.) *Poinciana regia.* The brilliant scarlet and orange-coloured flowers of this tree, which is a native of Madagascar, render the name very appropriate. It is planted largely in Durban, Natal, and during the flowering season is quite a feature of the place.

"The *Flamboyant* not in flower now, but when in flower lives up to its name we are told." (Mark Twain's "More Tramps Abroad," p. 445, 1897.)

Flame.—The popular name of *Antholyza Merianella, Linn.* These plants are closely allied to *Gladiolus* and are not unlike it.

Flat-crown.—*Albizzia fastigiata, Oliv.* An indigenous Natal tree so named because of its very flat top, looking as though it had been recently and carefully trimmed. The

wood is valuable, being used chiefly for constructing the naves of wheels.

"The umbrella-like *Flat-crown* common in the Berea-bush near D'Urban." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 451, 1868.)

"The *Flat-crowns* (should be 'flat-roofs'), half a dozen naked branches, slant upward like artificial supports and fling a roof of delicate foliage out in a horizontal platform as flat as a floor, and you look up through this thin floor, as through a green cobweb or veil." (Mark Twain's "More Tramps Abroad," p. 444, 1897.)

Flats.—A term applied to the extensive plains of the upper African plateau.

"Those large elevated plains here called *flats* which extend to an almost unknown distance towards the tropics." (Nicholson's "The Cape and its Colonists," p. 75, 1848.)

Flauw.—(D. *flauw*, faint, weak.) Used of men and animals when exhausted by vigorous or long-sustained effort.

"One of our oxen fell down from exhaustion, being what the Dutch call *flauw*, faint." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 513, 1841.)

Floating reef.—The diggers at the Diamond Fields gave this appellation to the peculiar shaped masses of rock which contain no diamonds, but which are found—sometimes two or three acres in extent—in the mine itself.

"The bulk of this inside shale (termed *floating reef* by the miners) has been removed." (Noble's "Official Handbook," p. 203, 1886.)

Floors.—The areas on which the "Blue ground" (q.v.) or diamondiferous rock is deposited, that it may be disintegrated by the action of the sun and atmosphere.

"Excavating, hauling, and depositing on the Company's *floors* 134,701 loads of blue ground." (Noble's "Official Handbook," p. 203, 1886.)

Floor, The.—(D. *vloer*, floor; cf. G. *der Flur*, the floor; *die Flur*, field, level ground.) This word is frequently used in the Midlands as if it were synonymous with "ground," being applied to the ground outside a house as well as to the layer of stone or boards inside.

Flop, The.—*Urobrachya axillaris* is so-called in Natal. The spring plumage of the male bird is very brilliant, the

general colour being a velvety black, with scarlet and orange epaulets; the female is insignificant in appearance.

"The boys call it *flop*, no doubt from the way in which it suddenly stops in its flight and alights on the grass." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 69, 1899.)

Flous, To.—(G. *Flause*, pretence, deceit.) To deceive, cheat; one of a pair of horses that shirks his proper share of the pulling, and thus throws extra work upon his fellow, is said to "*flous*".

Flowering grasses.—An exquisitely graceful member of the *Iris* family (*Dierama pendula*), with pretty pink and lavender flowers, is known by this name in Natal.

"Before the buds open out the spikes of grey, scaly bracts look exactly like the fructifications of a grass, and when the gay corollas open out from these, it is as if some pendulous wood-grass like the Melica, had suddenly burst into bright flowers at the end of its spikes. These elegant plants on this account are not inaptly termed *flowering grasses*, by the colonists not versed in the mysteries of botanical lore." (Brook's "Natal," p. 170, 1876.)

Flower spider.—Several varities of hunting spiders which are adapted in colour to the flowers among which they have their haunts.

"The *Flower spider* also assumes deceptive colours as it hides beneath the petals of a flower, ready to spring forth upon its prey." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I, II. p. 40, 1879.)

Fluitje.—(D. *fluit*, a flute.) The Dutch name for a mouth organ.

Fluitjesriet.—(D. *fluit*, a flute; *riet*, a reed.) *Phragmites communis* (?) The reeds used by the natives of Bechuanaland, etc., to make the flutes or whistles used at the Reed dances (q.v.).

"Er zijn ook nog zeekoeijen; doch daar de meeste pannen digt begroeid zijn met *fluitjesriet*, is het bijna onmogelijk ze in hand te krijgen." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 131, 1890.)

Fluks.—(D. *fluksch*, brisk, quick, ready.) As used in Cape Dutch this word means clever, lively, e.g. "*'n fluksche man*," a good sort of fellow.

Flutter.—A speculation on a small scale in gold or other scrip.

"The opportunities of the share market were open to the humblest operator. Men and women, youths and maidens, all could have a *flutter*." (Robinson's "A Life Time in South Africa," p. 366, 1900.)

Fly, The.—*Glossina morsitans.* The native name of this insect is the Tse Tse (q.v.). Its bite is fatal to horses, oxen, and indeed to most domestic animals, including even the donkey and goat, animals which at one time were thought to enjoy immunity from the fatal effects of its bite, which are due to the incidental communication of *Trypanosoma Brucei*, a blood parasite. The body of "the fly" is of a "dull, greyish colour, with bars of a pink tinge across the body". It is not much larger than the common house-fly.

"They had all lost their oxen by *the fly*, and are now scattered all over the country." (Baine's "South-West Africa," p. (424), 1864.)

"Keeping a sharp look-out upon our own and each others' horses to see that no *fly* settled on them." (Baine's "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 57, 1877.)

Fly-catcher.—A member of the Order *Asclepidaceæ* is thus appropriately designated, for it is no uncommon thing to see nearly every blossom of this plant holding prisoner a moth which has been caught by its feet between the edges of two stamens.

Fly-catcher bush.—*Staavia glutinosa* and *Roridula sp.* are both so called.

Fly country, or **The fly.**—Localities infested by the Tse Tse. See Tse Tse country.

"At night as the moon rose we started to get through *the fly*, but on entering it our wagon stuck against a large tree." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 163, 1868.)

"The favourite spot for hunters, who usually left their impedimenta there, before going down into what is called the *Fly country* (referring to the Tsetse fly) to look for big game." (Kerr's "Far Interior," I. p. 84, 1886.)

Fly-stuck.—Animals that have been bitten by the Tse Tse are said to have been *fly-stuck* or *stuck*.

"If it is uncertain whether the horse has been bitten or not the truth can be ascertained by pouring a few buckets of water over him, when, if he has been *stuck* (as the hunters call it) his coat will all stand on end." (Selous' "Wanderings," p. 131, 1895.)

"We thought that all our oxen and the two oxen we had left at the wagon were *fly-stuck*." (*Ibid.*, p. 349.)

Foei-toch.—(D. *foei*, for shame! *toch*, why, to be sure.) A common interjection all through South Africa, employed to convey sympathy, surprise, affection, compassion, etc.

"I am, etc., *Foei-toch.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 27 November, 1911.)

"The rheumatism—*foei!* it can pinch!" ("The State," p. 84, July, 1912.)

Fontein.—(D. *fontein*, a fountain, spring.) Used throughout South Africa for a spring.

"In dry countries any circumstance relating to water is of sufficient importance to distinguish that place. Thus it is that the Dutch word *fontein* is made such liberal use of in every part of the Colony." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 259, 1822.)

Footsack.—See Voetsak.

"A violent barking of dogs was going on at some little distance, and cries of *foot-sek* with the slashing of a whip and the yelping of a defeated cur." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 332, 1871.)

Forage.—This term is applied to oat-hay all through South Africa; green oats, barley, etc., are termed "Green forage".

"Two crops of *forage* are generally grown in the year." (Mann's "Natal," p. 131, 1859.)

Fore-clap.—See After-clap.

Fore-looper.—See Voor-looper.

"Some society would probably be established for providing a dress for the *fore-louper* and some species of comfortable leggings for the wagon-oxen." (Ward's "Five Years in Kaffirland," I. p. 135, 1848.)

Fore-loop, To.—(D. *voorlooper*, fore-runner.) The Dutch word anglicized. (1) To go before. (2) To lead a span of oxen when trekking, by means of a short riem attached to the horns of the front pair.

"It is the duty of the Fingoe to hold a line which is made fast to the heads of the leading oxen, and then to guide them on the road they should go, this duty is called *fore-looping*." (Drayson's "Tales of the Outspan," p. 19, 1862.)

Forest Vaal-bosch.—(D. *vaal*, sallow, tawny.) *Brachylaena discolor, D. C.*, has received this name in the Transvaal.

Fore-touw.—(D. *touw*, a rope, string.) The riem by which the *fore-looper* leads the oxen.

"The leader has made up his *fore-touw*, which is a long, spare rheim, attached round the horns of each of the front or fore oxen, by which he leads the team." (Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 30, 1850.)

Forfarin.—The name given to a fish at Kalk Bay.

Fossick, To.—(Probably from an English dialect, but introduced into South Africa from Australia.) To dig or seek for gold in the earth deposited between the strata of gold-bearing rocks.

"The slightest difference was enough to urge them to seek, *fossick*, or prospect for diamonds, that is to say, scratch or dig up the surface, sieve and sort it, and sink small trial shafts, when, if diamonds or good indications were not discovered at a moderate depth, the place was abandoned, and the prospector tried or *fossicked* elsewhere." (Matthew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 142, 1887.)

"I've dug and *fossicked* in every likely place, and unlikely one too." (Mitford's "Renshaw Fanning's Quest," p. 7, 1894.)

Fossicker.—One who fossicks.

Steady old *fossickers* often get more
Than the first who opens ground.

(Roger's "New Rush," II. p. 32, 1864.)

Fountain.—This word, influenced by the Dutch *Fontein* (q.v.) is often used of a spring of water; farmers speak of opening up a "fountain".

"He offered to bring the water of two neighbouring *fountains* to water his land, but all his arguments made no impression on the lazy boor." (Campbell's "Travels," p. 120, 1815.)

Foutje or **Fooitje.**—(D. *fooi*, a tip, fee.) A tip, gratuity.

Fox.—*Canis mesomelas* is sometimes called the Fox. See Silver jackal and Vos.

"No one has discovered an effective means of dealing with the wily *fox*. He is quite too knowing to fall into any trap that may be laid for him, and as to poisoning this pest, he is generally more than a match for the astute, long-suffering farmer." ("Queenstown Weekly Review," 31 August, 1912.)

Fransch madam.—This curious appellation is given to the fish *Pagrus holubi*.

Free State coal.—A euphemism for the dried Mist (q.v.) which is largely used for fuel on up-country homesteads.

"Busied himself collecting *Free State coal*, as the dried cow-dung is euphoniously called." (R. Jameson's "Rough Notes of a Trip to the Transvaal Gold-fields," p. 1, 1886.)

French.—The name by which Cognac is generally spoken of in South Africa; it is the shortened form of "French brandy".

"Every Africander knows real Cognac as *French* in contradistinction to Boer brandy." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 84, 1889.)

Freying.—(D. *vrijen*, to woo, court.) A colonial corruption of the Dutch word.

"They are very great at making love or *freying* as they call it, and have their recognized forms for the operation." (Mackinnon's "South African Traits," p. 118, 1887.)

Frikadels or **Frikadeletjes.**—(F. *fricandeau*, thin slices of veal stewed or fried and served with sauce.) Balls of minced meat and vegetables either fried or baked.

"'Babooti' and *frikadel* and 'potato-pie' are great improvements upon the minced meats of England." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 224, 1870.)

Fris.—(D. *frisch*, healthy, well.) This is the usual form of the word in Cape Dutch, it is equivalent to the English well, hearty.

"It was too much to expect that my whole forenoon should be consumed in answering such questions as this: If I was not afraid to travel alone: If the Governor was *versch* (pronounced fresh) or in good health." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 65, 1838.)

Froetangs.—The fruits of several small plants—*Romulea minutiflora, Klatt*, etc.

"Trichonema. Perianth-tube short with a funnel-shaped, spreading, regular limb. Stigmas linear, two-parted. Fruits eaten by children; *Frutang*." (Edwards and Marloth's "Elementary Botany," p. 176, 1897.)

"In the grass before sun-set he crawled about searching for *fritongs*, or small roots dear to the 'grey-wing' and the 'red'." ("Argus Christmas Annual," p. 13, 1904.)

Frog spittle.—The name sometimes given to the green scum found on the water of stagnant pools. It consists principally of minute algæ.

Fugitives' Drift.—A ford of the Buffalo River, Natal, five miles from Isandhlwana, the scene of the disaster to the British troops in Zululand in 1879. The few fugitives from that disaster sought to escape across this drift, which has since been known by this name.

"Near the river are a few trees, opposite a slope covered with grass, leading to what is now known as *Fugitives' Drift.* At the bottom of this Melville and Coghil fell, and there lie buried under a stone monument cut and put up to their memory by their comrades." (Montague's "Campaigning in South Africa," p. 89, 1880.)

Full of.—In frequent use in various parts of South Africa in the sense of "covered with": e.g. "The child is full of mud" means "The child is covered with mud". It is an imitation of the Dutch idiom; cf. Ger. *Die Stiefeln sind voll Schmutz*—the boots are covered with mud.

Funa join.—(Kaf. *uku Funa,* to seek after.) The native's method of intimating to the labour agent his desire to obtain work at the gold mines. Such natives are now commonly spoken of on the Border and in the Native Territories as *Funa joins.*

"Needless to say the local *Funa joins* were in attendance . . . what a centre this is for *Funa joins,* for during the past week quite twenty . . . have had accommodation." ("East London Dispatch," p. 10, 29 June, 1912.)

Funk sticks.—A slang phrase applied to those who, in times of danger, are overcome of fright or fear: a coward.

"A nervous man is forty times worse than a frightened woman, as is the case here, he has any number of drink-fuddled *funk-sticks* to echo his alarm." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign—1896," p. 438, 1897.)

Furrow, or **Water-furrow.**—The narrow open channel by which water for purposes of irrigation is brought ("led out") from rivers or springs into "lands" (q.v.) or gardens is known by this name throughout South Africa, while the leadings from the main "furrow" are termed "sluits".

"A shallow ditch is dug called a *furrow* into which the water is turned. Other furrows branch from the principal one, which can be opened or closed by a shovelful of earth." (Lowndes' "Every-day Life in South Africa," p. 86, 1900.)

Fur-seal, Cape.—*Otaria pusilla.* See Sea-lion, Cape.

"Three young examples of the *Cape* sea-lion or *fur-seal*

(*Otaria pusilla*)." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 7 September, 1911.)

Ga.—(Hot. "*χa*, interj. *des Abscheues* (bei Rauch und Gestank)". Krönlein's "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin".) An interjection common throughout South Africa expressive of disgust; the G is guttural.

Gage or **Gasie.**—(F. *gager*, to hire, to pay.) In Cape Dutch this word is applied to wages paid for a small service.

Galjeon.—(Sp. *galeon*, Lat. *galea*, a galley.) *Dipterodon capensis.* The name probably refers to the shape of this fish, which is not unlike that of the three-deckers of the Armada.

"The *galjeon* also can readily be supposed to have derived its name from its resemblance in shape to the high built three-decker of the fifteenth and sixteenth century called by the Spanish *galeon* (Latin *galea*), and by the Dutch *galjeon* or *galleon*." (Gilchrist's "Local Names of Cape Fish," p. 221, "Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," 1900.)

Gal-lamziekte.—(D. *gal*, gall, bile, spleen; *lam*, lame, paralysed; *ziekte*, sickness.) A disease which has recently caused great loss to the farmers of Bechuanaland and the neighbouring districts of the Transvaal and Orange Free State. It differs somewhat from typical Lamziekte (q.v.) in that there would appear to be a touch of Anthrax (splenic fever) as well: but the experts have not been able as yet to trace it to its source.

"In discussing *gal-lamziekte* many farmers have expressed the opinion that the disease is caused by some poisonous plant." ("Agric. Journ. of the Union of South Africa," p. 58, January, 1912.)

Gall sickness.—The South African designation of almost every form of derangement of the liver in cattle, sheep and goats.

"The number of deaths in Cape Colony from *gall-sickness* as the term is commonly understood, amounts to over a quarter of a million cattle, sheep and goats annually." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 288, 1896.)

Gal ziekte.—See Gall sickness.

Gal-ziekte bosch.—The name sometimes given in Bechuanaland to *Chenopodium anthelminticum, Linn.*; it is so called because it is supposed to be a remedy for Gall sickness.

"A strong smelling weed, often sent to us under the name

galziekte bosch, and considered by many farmers to be a cure for galziekte." ("S.A. Agric. Journ." p. 177, August, 1912.)

Gamka River.—(Hot. "*χami*, subst. *der Löwe; χamxa*, adj. *löwenreich*," Krönlein.) One of the principal tributaries of the Gouritz (q.v.).

Ganna bosch.—See Kannabosch.

"Di *ganna* as *bos* groei op byna elke plaas in Fraserburg, Sutherland, Williston, Carnarvon, Victoria West, Beaufort West, Hope Town, Graaff Reinet en andere distrikte. Dis diselfde plant wat di boers brand om as van te kry, waarmee hulle boerseep kook, en wat hulle loog noem." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepte Boek," p. 172, 1898.)

Gansegaar.—(G. *ganz und gar*, quite, totally.) Even, indeed.

Garden Colony, The.—This designation has been given to Natal on account of the variety and beauty of its flora.

"The *Garden Colony* deserves its name, so universal in Durban are its lawns of smooth turf, and its banks of blossom and foliage." (Devereaux's "Side Lights on South Africa," p. 158, 1899.)

Garenboom.—(D. *garen*, yarn, thread; *boom*, a tree.) The name given in the Riversdale district to *Agave americana*.

Garenklip.—(D. *garen*, yarn, thread; *klip*, a rock.) An appropriate name applied to asbestos.

Garfish.—The Natal name of a fish—*Belone acus* (?)—similar in appearance to the fish so named in Kent.

"It may be as well to say that the proper name of this fish is '*Belone*'. It belongs to the pike family and is sometimes called 'garpike'. It differs from the 'hair-tail,' in having a forked instead of a thin whip-tail, and in the fact that the 'hair-tail' has one fin extending along the whole back, while the *garfish* has only one short dorsal fin near the tail." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 783, 1906.)

Gariep.—(Hot. **Garib*, with an initial cerebral click.) Nu Gariep, the Hottentot name of the Orange River, signifying the Great River. See Vaal, The.

"It has been supposed that Ethiopia is the great cradle of locusts, but those which infest the Colony are probably bred in the deserts of the interior, beyond the *Gariep* or Great Orange River." (Revd. T. Smith's "Sketches of South Africa," "Wesleyan Methodist Magazine," p. 1223, 1848.)

Garoupe.—A species of rock-cod—*Epinephelus gigas*—

is so named at Delagoa Bay. See Koning Klip-visch and Rock cod.

"These fish are known as . . . *Garoupe* at Delagoa Bay." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 1 December, 1908.)

Garrick.—The fish known in the Cape Colony as the Leer-visch (q.v.). *Lichia amia*, is known in Natal and at Port St. John as the *Garrick*.

"Manage to get one *garrick* weighing 5 lbs." ("East London Dispatch," 3 April, 1906.)

Garter snake.—*Aspidelaps lubricus* and *Homorelaps lacteus* are known as the larger and smaller garter snakes respectively. They are conspicuously marked by alternate rings of black and red.

"The *Garter snakes* and the Vipers are the only snakes of South Africa which permit themselves generally to be closely approached without evincing much concern." ("East London Dispatch," 10 June, 1910.)

Gates, St. John's.—The bold rocky headlands at the entrance to the St. John or Umzimvubu River.

"The river runs towards the sea through two high hills called the *Gates of St. John's*." (Ex C.M.R.'s, "With the Cape Mounted Rifles," p. 197, 1881.)

"Inside of the *Gates* the river partakes more of the character of a lake or lagoon than a stream." (Henkel's "The Native or Transkeian Territories," p. 36, 1903.)

Gatrij.—(D. *gaan*, to go; *rijden*, to ride, drive.) This word is the Cape Dutch equivalent of the English "Shank's mare," to go on foot.

Gebroken veld.—(D. *gebroken*, broken.) Veld in which there is a mixture of sour and sweet grass, or of grass and Karoo herbage.

"Het Transvaal-gebied wordt verder onderscheiden in: Hoogveld, Boschveld en *Gebroken veld*." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 332, 1882.)

"Half and half (*gebroken*) *veldt*, occupying an intermediate position in the way of quality." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 81, 1896.)

Geelbek.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *bek*, a beak, bill.) *Anas flavirostris*. This duck is widely distributed in South Africa; its bill is a bright yellow (with the tip and centre of the upper mandible black), hence the name.

"The *Geelbec* is our commonest duck, being abundant all

over the Colony and South Africa generally." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 755, 1875-84.)

"This is a light-brown duck, and is easily identified by the bright yellow bill from which it takes its Boer name—*geelbec.*" (Bryden's "Gun and Camera," p. 404, 1893.)

Geelbek.—(1) *Otolithus equidens, Cuv.* A large, rather coarse fish common round the Cape. See Cape salmon. (2) The term is also applied abusively to a coloured person.

"The name Cape Salmon . . . is now appropriated almost exclusively by the *Geelbek*, a fish which, seen fresh from its native element, certainly does call to mind the brilliance and majestic proportions of its European namesake." (Gilchrist's "History of Local Names of Cape Fish," p. 216, "Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," 1900.)

Geelbek wouw.—(D. *wouw*, a kite.) *Milvus aegyptius.* See Kuikendief.

Geelbloemetjes.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *bloem*, a flower.) *Sutera atropurpurea, Hiern*, and *S. brunnea.* See Cape saffron.

"The flowers of L. crocea are called *Cape saffron* (Geele bloemetjes)." (Edwards and Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 162, 1897.)

Geelbloemetjes Thee.—The leaves of *Leyssera gnaphaloides, L.* are infused and used under this name for coughs and colds.

Geel-dikkop.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *dik*, thick, fat; *kop*, head.) A disease affecting sheep and goats, prevalent chiefly in the Karoo districts.

"There is another complaint which is very deadly among sheep, called *Gheel dikop.* It commences with large swellings about the head and the animal generally dies at last of suffocation." (Macnab's "On Veldt and Farm," p. 231, 1897.)

Geele patrijs. — (D. *patrijs*, a partridge.) *Pterocles variegatus.* Described by Burchell as a Bechuanaland bird. (II. p. 345.)

"The Variegated sandgrouse (*Pterocles variegatus*), called the *Geele patrijs* (yellow partridge) by the Boers." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 123, 1908.)

Geele pisang.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *pisang*, a banana.) *Strelitzia regina.* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 216, 1823.)

Geelgat.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *gat*, opening, posterior.) *Pycnonotus capensis.* See Kuifkop.

"Mr. Atmore writes that 'the eggs are white, and usually deposited in the nest of the *Geelgat* (*Pycnonotus capensis*)'." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 160, 1875-84.)

Geelhout.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *hout*, wood.) (1) In the Transvaal this name is given to *Podocarpus elongata.* (2) In the Cape Province it is usually applied to *P. Thunbergii, Hook.* (3) But at Sterkstroom the name has been given to *Leucosidea sericea.*

Geel meerkat.—(D. *geel*, yellow.) *Cynictis penicillata.* See Rooi meerkat and Meerkat.

Geel-lip slang.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *slang*, a snake.) *Lamprophis fuscus*—found in the Western Province of Cape Colony.

Geelpens.—(D. *pens*, paunch.) An abusive epithet applied to persons of mixed European and Hottentot blood.

Geel sijsje.—(D. *sijsje*, a linnet; cf. Ger. *Zeisig*, a green finch.) *Serinus sulphuratus.*

"The large Yellow seedeater (*Serinus sulphuratus*), the *Geel seisje* of the Boers, and 'Bully' of the colonial boys." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 84, 1908.)

Geel slang.—(D. *slang*, a snake.) *Naia flava.* The Cape cobra, found all over South Africa.

"Several times while out hunting we saw a large yellow snake, that was rapid in its movements, disappearing into a katteah or meercat's hole, before we could get near enough to dispatch it . . . they called it a *Jill slange*, or yellow-snake." (Farini's "Through the Kalahari Desert," p. 451, 1886.)

Geel staart.—(D. *staart*, a tail.) See Albacore and Yellow-tail.

"The yellow-tail, known also as the albicore, *geelstaart*, etc., is probably the amberjack of American waters." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 767, 1906.)

Geelvoorlijf.—(D. *voor*, before; *lijf*, the body, belly; *voorljf*, the fore part of the body.) A supposed variety of lion. See Zwart-voorlijf.

"A prevailing opinion among the Boers that there are two distinct varieties of lion, which they distinguish by the respective names of 'Schwart-fore-life' and *Ghiel-fore-life.*" (Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 195, 1850.)

Geel zee slang.—(D. *geel*, yellow; *zee*, sea; *slang*, a snake.) *Hydrus platurus*. See Black sea snake. These snakes are exceedingly poisonous.

Geilziekte.—(D. *geheel*, full; *ziekte*, sickness, disease.) A disease affecting sheep principally, the first stomach being distended by gas.

"We understand that a great many sheep are dying from '*geel-ziekte*' owing to the luxuriance of the grass." ("Queenstown Free Press," 16 January, 1861.)

"Several opinions are entertained with respect to the nature and cause of *Geilziekte*, but the one most generally accepted is that it is due to the direct action of a chemical poison which is produced in certain succulent plants by the action of the scorching heat of the sun." ("Science in Africa," p. 358, 1905.)

Geitje.—(Hot. *geip*, a lizard; the word has an initial click.) *Phyllodactylus porphyreus*. A small lizard erroneously credited by the natives with being exceedingly poisonous. It has viscous lobes on the digits by which it is enabled to walk up very smooth surfaces without difficulty. The present form of the name appears to be a corruption of the Hottentot name due to a striving after meaning. (Cf. D. *geit*, a goat.)

"Aloven Smidt . . . had caught a dreadfully venomous lizard, called *t'geitje*." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 331, 1785.)

(*N.B.*—The initial *t* of the word represents the Hottentot click.)

"One species of lizard called the *geitje* . . . is considered very venomous." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 53, 1840.)

"Scant mercy is extended to the harmless *gaetye*, because of their imaginary venomous character." (Noble's "South Africa," p. 80, 1877.)

Geld.—(D. *geld*, money, cash.) This word often takes the place in ordinary South African conversation of the word "money".

"Return to the time of 'Blue-backs,' which, without the Englishman's '*geld*,' they knew they must do in a year or two at the farthest." ("At Home in the Transvaal," p. 501, 1884.)

"You must get more *gelt* man. It's easy." (Green's "Richard Hartley, Prospector," p. 125, 1905.)

Geluk!—(D. *geluk*, happiness, prosperity; cf. G. *Glück.*) As employed in South Africa it is the equivalent of "I wish you prosperity, success"; also a birthday congratulation.

Gem of the Desert or Karoo.—The somewhat flattering designation given to the garden town of Graaff Reinet, situate in the Karoo.

"Vineyards, gardens, orchards . . . these give the town a very pleasant appearance, and its marked contrast with the surrounding arid Karoo plains, obtained for it long ago the appropriate title of the 'Gem of the Desert'." (Noble's "Official Handbook," p. 103, 1886.)

Gemsbok.—(D. *gems*, the chamois.) *Oryx gazella.* The only animal of the antelope family that will dare to battle with the lion. Burchell objects to the colonial name because it belongs properly to the chamois of the Alps.

"A herd of antelopes of the species known among the boors by the misapplied name of *Gemsbok*, was observed at a distance." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 23, 1824.)

Genesblaren.—(D. *genezen*, to cure, heal; *blad*, a leaf.) *Solanum giganteum, Jacq.*, and other members of the same order.

"The leaves of this *Solanum* are smooth on the upper surface and woolly on the lower. The application of the latter to foul ulcers cleanses them, and a cure is afterwards effected by applying the upper surface. Hence the Dutch name *geenesblaren*." (Pappe's "Florae Capensis Medicae Prodromus," p. 30, 1860.)

George lily.—*Vallota purpurea, Herb.* So named because it is chiefly found near the town of George on the Post Berg. See Knysna lily, another name for the same flower.

Gezondheid.—(D. *gezondheid*, health.) Used as an equivalent of "I wish you good health".

"Pulled 'a young man's companion' from a sort of satchel which hung at his side, and the rising sun was greeted by a *gezondheid* from several lips as we quaffed the morning soupie." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 30, 1875.)

"Well, here's success to the Tapinyani concession! *Santeit!* and another thousand a year to us all." (Bryden's "Tales of South Africa," p. 183, 1896.)

Ghab.—(Hot. "**qhoub*, frischer, noch nasser mist". Krönlein under *carub*—the *q* and *c* represent initial clicks, the former palatal, the latter dental.) *Stapelia pilifera* (as well

as others of these Carrion-flowers as they are called), is known by this name in the Karoo.

"Here we find stunted Mesembryanthemums, numerous kinds of Euphorbias, the peculiar *Ghap* (Stapelia) in at least a half dozen varieties." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I, I. p. 24, 1878.)

Ghoen.—(Hot. " * *gon*, verb, etwas auf die erde legen oder werfen ". Krönlein. The word has an initial cerebral click.) The stone with which hop-scotch is played; the marble with which a boy shoots.

Ghokum.—(Hot.* *gaukum.*) The fruit of *Mesembryanthemum edule.* See Hottentot fig. The name is given to other species also.

"The leaves of *ghokum* or 'Hottentot fig' bruised and strained are excellent as a gargle." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 283, 1902.)

Giant protea.—*Protea cynaroides,* found on Table Mountain, not often flowering.

Gift blaar.—(D. *gift,* poison; *blad,* a leaf.) *Dichapetalum cymosum.* A plant found in the Transvaal which causes the death of a large number of cattle. See Mak gauw.

"The following report on analysis and physiological tests of *Chailletia* or *Gift-blaar* (*Dichapetalum cymosum,* here also called *Chailletia cymosa*) . . . has been received from the Director of the Imperial Institute," p. 626. ("Transvaal Agric. Journal," July, 1910.)

Giftbol. — (D. *gift,* poison; *bol,* bulb, bulbous root.) *Buphane disticha.* Used by the Bushmen in making poison for their arrows.

"Plants of Amaryllis toxicana were in many places very abundant. . . . This plant is well known to the Bushmen on account of the virulent poison contained in its bulb. It is also known to the colonists and Hottentots by the name of *Gift-bol* (poison bulb)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 539, 1822.)

Gift boom.—(D. *gift,* poison; *boom,* a tree.) *Acokanthera venenata.* (*Cestrum venenatum,* Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 193, 1823.)

"With its attractive flowers, foliage and berries, it is perhaps the most dangerous poison our forests contain." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 270, 1907.)

Gilletjes.—(F. *gile,* a clown.) Nods and winks. *Hij verkoop gilletjes.* He is up to all sorts of tricks.

Gillies or **Gilliminkies.**—These names are applied in the Eastern Province to one or two varieties of small, fresh-water fish.

"Anglers returning home somewhat crestfallen at having caught no fish—not even a *gilleyminkie.*" ("East London Dispatch," 3 August, 1907.)

"These anglers must often catch some of the carp indigenous to our fresh-water streams, generally known as *gillies.*" ("East London Dispatch," 3 December, 1907.)

Gim.—The name given up country to the particles of gold collected by the natives, enclosed in quills, and used by them for purposes of barter.

"I was impressed as early as 1853 with a floating idea that the greater part of what is now the Chartered Company's Territory was more or less auriferous, and indeed obtained from the natives several vultures' quills full of *gim,* more or less rounded grains of gold. Evidently the produce of what I believe the Cornish miners call streaming." (Nicholson's "Fifty Years in South Africa," p. 208, 1898.)

Ginger-bread tree.—The name was given originally to the famous Doum palm—*Hyphaene thebaica,* but has been transferred to the South African species, and *Hyphaene crinita, Gärtn.* is thus designated up country because the rind of the fruit, like that of the former, has the flavour of gingerbread.

"They are miniature cocoa-nuts. . . . The rind is esteemed very good eating, resembling somewhat in flavour ginger-nuts, hence it is known as the *ginger-bread tree.*" (Chapman's "Travels," II. p.73, 1868.)

Giraffe.—(Ar. *zarāfa,* a camelopard.) *Camelopardalis giraffa.* This beautiful animal has entirely disappeared from South Africa, and is only to be obtained by the big game hunters who find their way to the wooded plains of Central Africa.

"The presence of the *giraffe* . . . is always a certain indication of water being within a distance of seven or eight miles." (Livingstone's "Travels," III. p. 56, 1857.)

Glas oogie.—(D. *oog,* an eye.) *Zosterops capensis* has a variety of names among the Dutch. See Karre-oogie, Witte-oogie, and Kersoogie.

Glass eye.—*Camaroptera olivacea.* The name by which this bird is known in Natal. See Bush-goat.

"It is sometimes called the *Glass eye* from the ring of buff feathers round its eye." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 28, 1899.)

Glass eye.—Another East London name for the fish known also as the Bully (q.v.).

"Bully, *Glass eye* (East London)." ("East London Dispatch," 14 August, 1905.)

Glass nose.—*Engraulis vitricostris.* The Natalians have thus designated this fish.

Gli.—(Hot. ?). *Glia gummifera.* From the roots of this plant the Hottentots prepare an intoxicating drink.

Globe fish.—*Diodon hystrix.* The name given to this fish at East London. See Zee vark.

Gloxinia.—The flowers of *Streptocarpus rexii* are sometimes so called in the Eastern Province. See Twin sisters.

Glutton bird.—The sailors' name for *Ossifraga gigantea.* See Leopard bird.

Gnaarboom.—(The first part of this word appears to be of Hottentot origin, having an initial click; the Kaffir name for this tree is *um Hlonhlo.*) *Euphorbia tetragona.* See Naboom.

To whom two nests I should have shewn
In *gnaarboom's* green to you unknown.

("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 12, 1875.)

"De plaats ontleent haren naam aan een grooten *'Ngha-boom* die er staat, een fraaije boom van de Cactus soort, zoo als ik meen, zeer hoog. Er staan regt velen bij het opperhoofd Matlata en op verscheidene andere plaatsen." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 88, 1890.)

Gnap.—The boys in Grahamstown collect the latex from *Euphorbia polygona, Haw.*, chew it and thus obtain a crude rubber, which they call "gnap" or "nap"—boiled up and mixed with resin and fat it makes a bird lime. In Queenstown, where the name is sometimes corrupted into "map," the latex of *Euphorbia pulvinata, Marloth* (the Pincushion cactus, q.v.), is used for the same purpose, but is prepared by rubbing in the hands and not by chewing.

Gnu.—(Kaf. *in Nqu.*) *Connochaetes gnu.* This animal is more frequently spoken of as the Wildebeest (q.v.), and is now only found on a few farms, where it is carefully preserved, in the Orange River Colony.

"Game of all sorts were in the greatest abundance; but

the chief object was the *gnoo*, or wild beast, as it is called by the Dutch." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 259, 1801.)

Goat's foot.—A Bechuanaland name for a species of *Bauhinia* the reference being to the shape of the leaves.

Goedkoop.—(D. *goedkoop*, cheap.) Cheap, cheaply; cf. Chaucer's "good chep" in "Troylus and Creseyde" (II. 641):—

She thoughte, as good chep may I dwellen here.

Goga or **gogatje.**—(Hot. *χόχόn*, collect. "für alle kleine kriechende und schleichende Thierchen, Spuk". Krönlein· to which the Dutch diminutive termination has been affixed.) A term applied to an insect of any sort throughout South Africa. The *g* in each case is guttural.

"This country ought to be called *Gogoland;* it simply swarms with insects." (Du Plessis' "A Thousand Miles in the Heart of Africa," p. 54, 1905.)

"We have heard South Africa described as a land of *goggas*, and though in certain portions of the tropics a greater number of insects may be found, our country does undoubtedly contain a very considerable quantity." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 8 January, 1909.)

"Another old, well-grown tree of the same species and it likewise is infested with those abominable *gogotjes* which have already done considerable damage to it." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 27 November, 1911.)

Golden cuckoo.—*Chrysococcyx Klaasi, C. cupreus,* and *C. smaragdineus,* are each known by this name. See Didric.

"The *Green-and-gold cuckoo* was found in abundance." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 502, 1822.)

"I shot one specimen of the *Golden cuckoo* and a number of the Bronze cuckoo." (Leyland's "Adventures in South Africa," p. 7, 1866.)

Golden mole.—*Chrysochloris aurea.* This animal is like the ordinary mole in its habits, but quite unlike it structurally.

"The *golden mole* is tailless, whereas the blesmol, mole rat and sand mole have short tails. In the *golden mole* the fur has a metallic sheen." ("The State," p. 229, September, 1912.)

Golden rain.—The King William's Town name for the Cape honeysuckle (q.v.), *Tecomara capensis.*

Gold stripes.—*Sargus cervinus.* This is its East London

name; in Natal it is known as the Karanteen (q.v.). See also Wilde paard and Zebra.

Gom bosch.—(D. *gom*, gum.) *Sutherlandia frutescens, R. Br.* is so named in the neighbourhood of Grahamstown. I am disposed to regard the first part of this name as a corruption of the Hottentot **num*. See Num bosch. This is regarded as a valuable stock feeding plant in the Karoo, but in the grass-veld the stock seldom eat it.

Gom pauw.—(D. *gom*, gum; *pauw*, a peacock.) *Otis kori.* The large, crested pauw..

"Here a *gum pauw*, or bustard, which subsists partly on gum, was shot." (Alexander's "Expedition," II. p. 199, 1838.)

"The Bustards (*Otidae*) are represented by no less than twelve species, ranging from the large *Gom pauw* (*Otis kori*), the male of which sometimes weighs as much as 40 lbs. to the smaller Knorhaan (*Otis afra*) about the same size as a partridge." ("Science in Africa," p. 143, 1905.)

Gona.—This appears to be a corruption of Kanna (q.v.). I have heard the bush referred to spoken of by the same individual by both names almost in the same breath. The *g* is guttural.

"The '*gona* or soap-bush' from the ash of which . . . the ley for soap-boiling is made." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 375, 1868.)

Goniv or **Gonoph.**—(Heb. גַּנָּב, *gannav*, a thief, Exodus XXII. 1.) A Jewish word at one time in common use on the Diamond Fields for an I.D.B. (q.v.). As used in Holland it means a rascal, and in this sense it is applied by Dickens in "Bleak House," ch. XIX. (*gonoph*). The "Slang Dictionary, 1873," gives the word "Gonnof" which, it says, is very old, and refers to the song of the insurgents during Kett's rebellion in Norfolk in the reign of Edward VI, in support of the statement:—

The country *gnoffes*, Hob, Dick, and Hick,
With clubbes and clouted shoon,
Shall fill up Dussyn dale
With slaughter'd bodies soone.

It refers the two words "Gonnof" and "Gnof" to the Hebrew *ganāv*, a thief. Gnof is used by Chaucer for a churl. (Milleres "Tale," 3187-3189 *A*):—

> Whylom ther was dwellinge at Oxenford
> A rich *gnof* that gestes heeld to bord,
> And of his craft he was a Carpenter.

In his note on this word Skeat ("The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer," 1894) also connects it with the same Hebrew word.

But the word "gnof" and the word "gonoph," used by Dickens of Jo ("Bleak House," XIX.), appear to be two quite different words. The "Oxford Dictionary," as suggestive of the origin of the word "gnof," refers to the E. Frisian words *knufe*, lump, and *gnuffig*, thick, rough, coarse, ill-mannered; while the word "Gonoph" is the form which the Hebrew word *gannav* has assumed in Yiddish and in thieves' slang. It appears to have been brought to England from the continent about a century ago, as it was brought to the South African Diamond Fields about forty years ago, by German Jews. It has been suggested the word "gun" in the expression "son of a gun" is a contraction of "gonoph"—this, however, is doubtful.

"Thieves are prigs, cracksmen, mouchers, *gonophs*, go-alongs." (Sala's "Looking at Life," p. 37, n.d.)

"'Whoa you *gonof*,' cried Simon to the pony as the animal threw up his head." (Cohen's "Reminiscences of Kimberley," p. 294, 1911.)

Gonivah.—(Heb. גְּנֵבָה, *genavah*, a theft, the thing stolen; Exodus XXII. 3.) A slang name, in use among the I.D.B. fraternity on the Diamond Fields, for a diamond known to have been stolen or come by illicitly.

"The imperence to fancy that a respectable man like him would buy a *goniva*." (Matthews' "Incwadi Yami," p. 189, 1887.)

"Say, stranger, have you struck the original I.D.B. cemetery, or how is it that you find such a thundering heap of *gonivas* in your ground!" ("I.D.B.," by W. T. E., p. 234, 1887.)

"If you've got the *gonivahs* why don't you plant 'em somewhere safe, and run 'em down when you get a chance, like the others do?" (Griffith's "Knaves of Diamonds," p. 65, 1899.)

Gonya.—(Kaf. *um Konya*, an insect which makes an uncanny noise at night.) An insect of the Pneumora species (*P. scutellaris*); to hear the sound which this insect makes

at night is regarded by the Kaffirs as a bad omen. See Blas op.

"The 'last voices of night' that I heard as sleep breathed over me was the *Ghonya* shrieking in the woods afar off like a wounded ghost." (Noble's "The Cape and its People," p. 367, 1869.)

"The male is familiar to residents in the Eastern Districts by the Kaffir name of *ghonya* as well as by the very loud and prolonged noise which he makes at night." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," p. xxii, VIII. Part I., 1893.)

"The *Ghonya* from the darkness cried again as if the sorrows of the world were in the cry." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 129, 1897.)

Good-for, A.—(1) The South African form of "I.O.U." (2) Promissory notes issued by the Transvaal Government previous to the annexation by Sir Theophilus Shepstone were also known as "Good-fors".

"Behalve de gouvernementsnoten werden er door handelaars, private personen en zelfs door Kerkbesturen *goedvoors* ('goed' voor drie pence of zes pence enz.) . . . in circulatie gebracht." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 438 n., 1882.)

"The Pretoria tradesmen would no longer accept *good fors* of even a few shillings' value." (Fitzpatrick's "The Outspan," p. 77, 1897.)

"'Now I'll just take your *Good-for* for that thousand pounds, Mr. Lipinski, and then we'll say good night.'" (Griffith's "Knaves of Diamonds," p. 51, 1899.

Good karroo.—*Adenachaena parvifolia* is so termed.

"A. parvifolia (*Good karroo*) is one of the most valuable plants, as pasture, for Merino sheep." (Harvey's "Genera of South African Plants," p. 184, 1868.)

"*Chrysocoma tenuifolia, Berg.* . . . keeps green in winter, and is often browsed, but less so than the *Goed-karroos.*" ("S. A. Agric. Jour.," p. 177, August, 1912.)

Goose, Spur-winged.—*Plectropterus gambensis.* Each wing is armed with a sharp spur.

"The *Spur-winged goose* (*Plectropterus gambensis*). Known to the Boers as the Wilde macaauw (wild muscovy)." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 149, 1908.)

Gorah.—A Hottentot musical instrument made of a bent

reed, along which is stretched a length of prepared sinew, with a small piece of split quill at the end of it. Inserting the piece of quill in his mouth, by strong breathing the performer produces a few soft notes.

"This instrument is called a *t'goera*, a name which seems to be applicable enough to it, as tolerably well corresponding with the sound of the instrument." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 229, 1785.)

"A single performer, quite absorbed in the musical tones of his *goorah*." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 167, 1868.)

Goratjes.—(Hot. "*χorá*, verb, nach Wasser graben," Krönlein.) Holes made in the sand of river beds for the water to percolate into.

"Dry sand rivers in which you have to dig *gorratjes* (little holes in the sand) to find water." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 42, 1897.)

Gora water.—Water which has been obtained by the above process. This method of obtaining water must have been known to the Hottentots before the advent of Europeans, and for that reason the word "gora" should seem to be of Hottentot origin, and the etymology suggested by Backhouse to be due to a striving after meaning. The expression is in common use in the Midland Districts of the Cape Colony today. See Crow water.

"Near this place water for the horses and for making coffee was obtained from a hole dug in the soil. This is termed *gra' water*, graven or digged water." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 580, 1844.)

Goshen.—One of the two independent states set up by the Boers, of which Stellaland was the other; they were both abolished and the country declared to be British territory by Sir C. Warren in 1884.

"Two little Boer republics, *Goshen* and Stellaland, were actually formed on the territory of the chiefs under British protection." ("Times' History of the War," I. p. 78, 1900.)

Goudboom.—(D. *goud*, gold; *boom*, a tree.) *Protea conocarpa* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 126, 1823) = *Leucospermum conocarpum, R. Br.*

Goudsbloem.—(D. *goud*, gold; *bloem*, a flower.) (1) *Cryptostemma calendulaceum, R. Br.* The marigold is known in Holland by this name, but in South Africa it has been transferred to this flower, which is not unlike a dandelion, except

that it has a dark centre. (2) Various species of *Gazania* are also known by this name. I have seen Namaqualand, after rains, in some parts absolutely carpeted with them for miles.

"The term *Goudsbloem,* like too many of the colonial names, is applied gratuitously to various plants fancied to have a resemblance to the *Marygold.* Different species of *Arctotis* have generally been pointed out to me and sometimes a kind of *Cotula.*" (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 229 n., 1822.)

"In September the ground is literally carpeted with endless varieties of gazenias—local name *Gousbloom.*" (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 190, 1902.)

Gouna vijg.—(D. *vijg,* a fig.) *Mesembryanthemum edule, L.* is so called in the Riversdale District. See Hottentot fig.

Gouph.—(Hot. "*c houb,* subst. das Fett um den Magen," Krönlein.) The upper drainage area of the Gamka River, which is exceedingly fertile after rain.

"Through the *Gouph* or hollow of the Karoo." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 75, 1896.)

Gouritz.—For the first part of its course this river is known as the Gamka, it has its rise in the Nieuwveld Mountains.

Go-way bird.—The onomatopoetic name of *Schizorhis concolor,* the grey plaintain eater. See Groote muisvogel.

"I continue my walk along the kopje top succeeding in obtaining specimens of the *Go-way bird.*" (Tangye's "In New South Africa," p. 401, 1896.)

"Along the Crocodile River . . . they are fairly common, uttering their harsh cry of '*guay, guay!*' in the evening." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 109, 1908.)

Graaf stok.—(D. *graven,* to dig; *stok,* a stick. Bushman name, * *Kibi.*) A digging stick; it was used by the Bushmen, one end pointed, the other weighted with a neatly rounded, beautifully perforated stone. Numbers of these stones are still found in various localities.

"The other carried what my Hottentots called a *graaf stok* (a digging stick) to which there was affixed a heavy stone, to increase its force in pecking up bulbous roots." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 29, 1824.)

Granaat apple.—(Sp. *granada,* Lat. *granatum,* full of seeds.) See Pomegranate.

Grapes, wild.—The fruit of *Vitis capensis.* It grows in large clusters not unlike black grapes, and has a pleasant flavour resembling that of the English black currant, for which it makes a by no means bad substitute.

Grapple plant or **thorn.**—Burchell thus designates *Harpagophytum procumbens,* better known perhaps as the Haakdoorn (q.v.). The large seed-vessels of this plant are covered with sharp, strong, hooked thorns; when the ripened seed is to be liberated the capsule splits up the middle, the two sides then open out very widely and form a tough and effective grapple ready to hook on to anything that touches it in passing, and so is the seed distributed. In the quotation from Prof. MacOwan one means by which the distribution of this curious plant is secured is described. See Haakdoorn.

"The beautiful *Uncaria procumbens* (or *Grapple-plant*) was not less abundant." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 536, 1822.)

"The *Grapple-plant* capsule is a thin oval affair of singular toughness and elasticity, with four or five curving marginal arms, reaching out and up. They are furnished with several formidable hooks at the tip, and some others lower down, but all recurved, pointing downwards, and very sharp. The capsule lies flat on its side, kèpt from turning over by two cunning studs or projections which dig into the soil. The hooked arms then stand up in the air curving over inwardly. At a glance one can see the meaning of the contrivance. It is just a trap with an obvious intent. A spring-buck leaping and curvetting in the gladness of its heart sets its foot down upon the capsule. The curved arms, elastic as whale-bone, give a little, and the hoof comes down upon the tough seed-vessel. The hooks catch on all round the buck's hock, and every kick and scuffle drives them further into the flesh. The luckless beast is fairly shod with this grapple and many a weary mile must he limp along in torture before he has trodden the thing into pieces and poached the seeds into the ground. And this is the way, at cost of much weariful agony to the antelopes, that the *Grapple-plant* ensures its seasonal life from year to year. One way and another there is a good deal of cruelty in the Dark Continent." (Prof. MacOwan, "C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 406, 1898.)

Grass bird.—The Natal name for one or two small birds of the Warbler family.

Grass fires.—Along the coast it is generally regarded as necessary to burn the grass off annually, thus removing the old growth before the young grass appears. See Veld fires.

"The rotten wood is burnt off by *grass fires*, although burning the veld is not, as a rule, there regularly practised." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 35, 1896.)

Grass klip-fish.—*Clinus graminis.*

"A species less frequently met with is the 'Grass klip-fish' (*C. graminis*)." ("South African Journal of Science," VII. p. 221, 1911.)

Graveel wortel.—(D. *graveel*, gravel; *wortel*, a root.) *Berkheya atractyloides.* "A tincture prepared from the bruised roots is diuretic, and of great service in gravel." (L. Pappe, M.D.)

Graveyard.—A portion of the Dutoitspan Diamond Mine was so named by the diggers in the early days, because so much money and labour was buried in it by the over-sanguine.

Greasy slip.—Veins of crystallized carbonate of lime which traverse the "blue-ground" in all directions, and are of varying thickness up to two or three inches, are so called at the diamond fields, because being covered with a whitish substance, very soapy to the touch, they were a source of real danger. See quotation.

"When a wall or block of blue-ground is dressed down and left standing with such a vein—or *greasy slip* as it is termed—in it, it becomes highly dangerous, as all above that vein (at times an immense mass) is liable to come down without a moment's warning." (Matthew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 149, 1887.)

Great bee.—A large hairy bee, of which the natives have a great dread, declaring it to be so poisonous that its sting is always fatal; but the natives say this of animals and insects that are more innocent than this bee. See Groot bij.

"Some time ago there was a deal of correspondence in this ('Uitenhage') paper on the identity or character of the *Great bee* found by seekers of wild honey, and referred to by General Bisset in 'Sport and War'." ("Queenstown Free Press," 21 November, 1879.)

Great elephant.—Chaka was so named on account of his immense size. See Hyaena man.

"He (Chaka) was also styled the '*Great elephant,*' as one who, with the weight of his ponderous body, could crush his victims beneath his feet." (Moodie's "History of the Battles in Southern Africa," I. p. 393, 1888.)

Great locust bird.—See Locust bird.

"It (*Ciconia alba*—the white stork) consumes large quantities of locusts, and so earns for itself the title of *Great locust-bird.*" (Woodward's "Birds of Natal," p. 200, 1899.)

Great River.—The Orange River was often thus designated by early travellers. See Garieb.

"The Gheissequas, a Hottentot nation situate more to the east on the borders of the *Great River.*" (Le Vaillant's "New Travels," II. p. 181, 1796.)

"At 7 a.m., after an address by Mr. Anderson and prayer, we took our leave of Bern and his people, and quitted the *Great River.*" (Campbell's "Travels," p. 161, 1815.)

Great snipe.—*Gallinago major,* a regular migrant to Natal.

"*Great snipe.* . . . This bird is widely scattered throughout Natal." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 188, 1899.)

Great Trek.—The memorable exodus of Boer families from the Cape Colony to the little known regions beyond the Orange River, which began in the year 1833. A variety of causes led to this voluntary expatriation of so many brave men with their wives and families, dissatisfaction with the British Government being the primary cause. It is generally known as the Great Trek.

Greenback.—The East London name of the fish known elsewhere on the Cape Coast as the "Skipper" or "Skipjack" (q.v.).

"The fish was a Saury pike, known here as a *Greenback,* and in some places as the 'Skipper' or 'Skipjack' from its habit of jumping out of the water." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 26 September, 1912.)

Green beans.—Green bean pods cut and cooked—"French beans".

Green cuckoo.—*Chrysococcyx smaragdineus.* See Golden and Emerald cuckoo.

"Here we saw that beautiful bird the *green cuckoo,* one of the few feathered inhabitants of these lonely woods." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 156, 1818.)

Green hides.—Hides salted and exported undried.

"The following abstract . . . will indicate in a forcible manner the rising importance of the frontier trade. . . . Ivory, £1800 7s. 6d.; *Green hides*, £18,145 4s. 0d.; Dry, £11,886 0s. 0d." (Steedman's "Wanderings," I. p. 297, 1835.)

Green mealies.—Mealies or Indian corn gathered and cooked while still green and tender; they make an agreeable dish.

"What we considered a great delicacy, and in fact, what is considered so by every colonist and nigger, were the cobs of the mealie (stalk), that is the bunch of grain whilst it is green and consequently soft, boiled, eaten with butter they are delicious." (Browning's "Fighting and Farming in South Africa," p. 208, 1888.)

Green swallow.—*Merops persicus* is so styled in Natal.

"It is popularly known as the *Green swallow*, perhaps from its swallow-like flight." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 90, 1899.)

Grenadier's Cap.—See Cockscomb.

"The 'Cockscomb' craggy mountain, or as it is sometimes called the *Grenadier's Cap*, rises . . . to an altitude of 5400 feet." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 117, 1856.)

Grenadilla.—(Lat. *granatum*, a pomegranate.) The fruit of a species of passion flower — *Passiflora quadrangularis, L.*

"Passionsblume, die unserm Gärtner *Grenadilla* nennen." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 441, 1745.)

Greywing.—*Francolinus africanus.* See Berg patrijs.

Grieksch.—In Cape Dutch the phrase *Hij praat grieksch* means: He is unintelligible to me.

Grijs appel.—*Parinarum mobola, Oliv.* is so called in the Transvaal.

Grijsbok.—(D. *grijs*, grey, hoary.) *Raphicerus melanotis.*

"Great numbers of a small antelope called *grysbok* were driven out before the beaters." (Clairemonte's "The Africander," p. 30, 1896.)

Grijse Muishond.—*Herpestes caffer.* See Kommetje-gat Kat.

Grinnet.—See Sijsje.

Griquas.—A people sprung from intercourse between Europeans and Hottentots; their language like that of the Bastaards is Dutch. The difference between the Bastaard and the Griqua seems to be that in the former the white

predominates, while in the Griqua the Hottentot is the more pronounced.

"The *Griqua* is less of the mongrel than the Bastaard; his features are better defined, his bearing is more manly, his hair more crisp, and his complexion more dark." (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 19, 1846.)

"The word *Griqua* seems to be an abbreviation of Cherigriquois, the name of a tribe living to the south of the Little Namaquas." (*Ibid.*, p. 21.)

Grizzly.—The screen employed on the Rand gold mines to separate the fine material from the coarse, the former being sent at once to the mill, the latter being retained for further treatment.

"The ore as it comes from the mine is mechanically tipped over a *grizzly* or inclined screen, composed of parallel bars at short distances apart." ("Report S.A.A.A.S.," p. 240, 1903.)

Groen boontjes.—(D. *groen*, green; *boon*, bean.) See Green beans.

"Neem *groen boontjes*, haal di puntjiis en draadjiis af.," etc. (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 29, 1898.)

Grondwet.—(D. *Grondwet*, fundamental law, the constitution.) The Dutch term for the Constitution of the Republic.

"In 1856 the *Grondwet*, or Constitution of the Republic, was proposed and adopted at Potchefstroom." (Bryden's "Victorian Era in South Africa," p. 24, 1897.)

Groot bij.—(D. *groot*, great; *bij*, a bee.) (1) *Acherontia atropos.* The death's head moth is so called because it is often found in the hives and nests of bees. The natives have the idea that it stings and that its sting is certain death. (2) The name is also given to a large hairy bee of which the natives are equally afraid. See Great bee.

"Unter den Schmetterlingen ist Sphinx atropos von den Eingebornen als die *grosse biene*, deren Stich lebensgefährlich sei, unnothigerweise sehr gefürchtet." (Kranz's "Süd-Afrika," p. 170, 1880.)

Groote muisvogel.—See Go-way bird. This bird is not unlike an overgrown Muisvogel (q.v.).

Groote visch-vanger.—(D. *visch*, fish; *vangen*, to catch.) *Ceryle maxima.* (1) The great kingfisher. (2) The fishing eagle.

"Hear our jackhals-vogel and *groote visch-vanger* voci-

ferously vaunting." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 4 December, 1908.)

Groot prat.—(D. *groot*, great; *prater*, a talker, chatterbox.) A braggart, swaggerer. (Cf. *Groot Prat en Broek Scheur is Broers.*)

Ground nuts.—See Monkey nuts.

"The cultivation of the 'pea-nut,' known at the Cape as the *ground-nut*, has attained extensive dimensions in the United States of America." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 188, 1871.)

Ground pig.—See Cane rat.

"Cane rats otherwise known as *Ground pigs* (*Thryonomys swinderenianus*." (Fitzsimon's "Snakes of South Africa," p. 60, 1912.)

Grunter.—This name is given to both *Trigla peronii* and *T. capensis*, the Grauwe and Roode knorhaan; in each case the appellation has reference to the noise which the fish makes when taken out of the water.

Guana or **Iguana.**—*Varanus niloticus* and *V. albigularis* are both known by this name; the former, the larger of the two, haunts the banks of rivers and eats the eggs of crocodiles. See Legavaan.

Guano.—(Sp. *guano* or *huano*, from Peruvian *huanu*, dung.) Sea-bird excrement, which is found in immense accumulations on the islands where these birds nest. It is a useful manure and a considerable trade is done in the article by the Cape Government.

"In my description of the West Coast of Africa . . . allusion has been frequently made to *guano* and to the trade in that article carried on some years ago on so large a scale, and even yet not quite extinct." (Andersson's "Okovango River," p. 340, 1861.)

Guarri.—(Kaf. *um Gwali.*) *Euclea undulata*, the bark of which the natives use as a purgative. This is the real Guarri, but the name is applied to other members of the same family.

"The ground is covered with shrubs about 4 feet high, called by the natives *Guerrie*, a species of Royena." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 43, 1789.)

"Various kinds of sweet grass and small shrubs, varied with very good large bushes and trees, as . . . *quarri*, etc." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 32, 1897.)

Guarri honey.—A very pale honey in much esteem in the Riversdale District, obtained by the bees from *Royena sp.*

Guarri tea.—This is made by the Hottentots from the leaves of *Euclea lanceolata, Mey.*

Gubu.—(Kaf. *i Gubu,* any hollow, sounding thing, a drum.) The onomatopoetic name of a Zulu musical instrument, which consists of a calabash attached as a sounding-board to a bow, the string of which is struck with a stick, the result being a monotonous, meaningless sound that is neither musical nor attractive to the European ear.

"Their chief instrument, called a *gubu,* which is something like a one-string banjo, with an empty gourd for a drum." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 189, 1906.)

Guinea grass.—*Panicum maximum, Jacq.* It occurs in Rhodesia and the lower bushveld of the Transvaal.

Gulugulu.—(Z. *um Gulugulu,* a wild fruit.) *Strychnos Gerrardi, N. E. Brown.* Sometimes called also the Kaffir orange (q.v.).

"The pulp surrounding the seeds of our native tree *S. Gerrardi,* popularly known as *Gulugulu,* is eaten by natives and children." (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 86, 1907.)

Gum trees.—The general South African name for the different varieties of eucalyptus.

Gungu.—(Kaf. *um Gqungu,* a basket made of rushes for tobacco.) The term is applied to the roughly made baskets in which Pondo tobacco is put up for the market.

"Pondo tobacco in *Gungus* and grain bags." (Advts. "East London Dispatch," 27 August, 1906.)

Gungunhlovu.—(Kaf. *Umkungunhlovu,* Dingaan's Great Place; from *isi Kungu,* a surrounded place; and *in Hlovu,* the Elephant.) The kraal and residence of the Zulu chief Dingaan, built by him to commemorate his murder of Chaka, his brother, who was known as in Hlovu, the Elephant; a name subsequently assumed by Dingaan.

"During my stay here the whole regiment . . . were often assembled without the fence, to practise their songs and dances preparatory to exhibiting in their turn before Dingaan at his residence *Unkunginglove.*" (Gardiner's "Narrative," p. 28, 1836.)

"Umgungundhlovu, the place of the great elephant, a name naturally transferred in after years by the natives to

Maritzburg, the *Umgungundhlovu* or seat of government of the white man." (Russell's "Natal," p. 121, 1891.)

Gunpowder weed.—*Silene gallica,* so called on account of the smallness and blackness of its seeds.

"*Silene gallica.* . . . This is the *Gunpowder-weed* of the colonists; its black seeds resembling powder." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 127, 1859-60.)

"Several species of Campion, also the so-called *Gunpowder-weed* (*S. gallica*)." (Edwards and Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 139, 1897.)

Gunubi.—(Kaf. *ama Gqunube,* a wild fruit not unlike a raspberry.) A river in the Eastern Province.

"Survivors of tribes broken by Tshaka hid in the kloofs of the *Goonoobie,* or Brambleberry River." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 26 July, 1912.)

Gurnard.—*Trigla peronii.* The fish known by this name in South Africa is nearly allied to the English Grey gurnard (*Trigla gurnardus*).

Gus-ooi.—(Hot. "* *nos,* subst. eine unfruchtbare Zeige oder Schafmutter (holl.: overlooperooi)," Krönlein; D. *ooi,* a ewe.) A barren ewe.

Gwenya.—(Kaf. *in Gwenye,* the wild plum.) Döhne ("Zulu-Kaffir Dict.") makes *um Gwenya* the wild olive tree, which among the Kaffirs is called *um Nquma,* while Davis ("Kaffir Dict.") makes *um Gwenye* the wild plum tree, a name given to *Odina caffra.*

"The parrots chattering over their *gwenyas.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 22 July, 1910.)

Haak.—(D. *haak,* a hook.) See Stock-fish. The reference is to the *hooked* under-jaw of the fish to which the name was originally applied.

Haakdoorn.—(D. *haak,* a hook; *doorn,* a thorn.) Burchell gives this name to *Acacia detinens,* the Wacht-en-bitje (q.v.). It seems now to be more frequently applied, however, to *Harpagophyllum procumbens.* See Grapple plant.

"On the way I halted a few moments to gather a beautiful parasitic plant growing on the branches of a *Haakdoorn* and now in full flower." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 320, 1822.)

Haak-en-steek.—(D. *haak,* a hook; *steek,* a prick, sting.) *Acacia spirocarpoides, Engl.* A variety of acacia having both straight and hooked thorns, sometimes called the Whitethorn.

"Men verdeelt de doornen der acacia's in drie soorten: *haak-doorns, steek-doorns,* en *haak-en-steek-doorns,* en deze

benamingen, zoowel als van de *wacht-een-beetje*, duiden genoegzaam hun karakter aan." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvaalers," p. 341, 1882.)

"Nor shall I tell you of the *haak-en-steek* doorns, that tear your garments and lacerate your skin, especially when you are in eager pursuit of game, and unmindful of your pathway." (Du Plessis' "A Thousand Miles in the Heart of Africa," p. 139, 1905.)

Haakplek.—(D. *haak*, a hook ; *plek*, a place, spot.) An obstruction, difficulty.

"It may be as well to mention that the Transvaalers managed to teach the Hollanders a couple of Dutch words. 'Vuurhoutjes' and *Haakplek* have found great favour and are likely to be taken over." ("Queenstown Free Press," 13 May, 1884.)

Haanepoot.—(D. *haan*, a cock ; *poot*, a foot.) The Dutch name of a firm delicious grape—the Muscat of Alexandria—which is grown largely in various parts of South Africa. By some the name is said to have reference to the shape of the leaf, by others to the shape of the bunches ; the former seems the more probable. See Honey-pot.

"A large white Persian grape called here the *Haenapod*, or cock's foot." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 65, 1801.)

"Of grapes the *haanepoot* . . . are considered the best for the British market." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 202, 1896.)

Haarde-staart.—The name given to a fish at Struis Bay (Gilchrist).

Haarkant.—(C.D. *haar*, right hand ; D. *kant*, side, edge.) The right side. See Hot en haar.

"De ossen schrikten en sprongen uit het pad en de wagen kwam aan den *haarkant* (de regterzijde) in eene tamelijk diepe sloot." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 44, 1890.)

Haarkauwsel.—(D. *haar*, hair ; *kauwsel*, that which is chewed.) The ball of hair sometimes found in the stomach of ruminating animals.

Haar-scheerder.—(D. *haar*, hair ; *scheerder*, a barber.) *Solipuga*, an exclusively African genus of Arachnida. See Rooiman and Jaag-spinnekop.

"They are known locally by the name of . . . *Haarscheerder* (hair-cutters), and there is a current belief that they

cut off the hair of a sleeping person at night." ("Science in South Africa," p. 178, 1905.)

Haas-oor.—(D. *haas*, hare; *oor*, an ear.) The Namaqualand name for a variety of *Stapelia.*

Hadadah.—The onomatopoetic name given by the colonists to the large brown ibis, *Geronticus hagedash, Vieil.*

"There is also in these countries a large ibis of a brown lustre commonly called by onomatopy *addada.*" (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 190, 1846.)

"Flocks of *ha-di-da* grub silently and unconcernedly in close proximity to the camp." ("The African Monthly," p. 445, October, 1907.)

Hadji.—(Ar. *Hājj*, a pilgrim to Mecca.) The title given to those among the Malays of South Africa who have made the pilgrimage to Mecca.

Hagel.—(D. *hagel*, hail, shot.) In South Africa this word is used in both senses—hail and shot, but when used in the latter sense the size of the shot is often indicated by the name of the bird or animal for which it is to be used, e.g. kwartel- (quail), patrijs- (partridge), bok- (buck) hagel.

Hairbell.—See Harebell.

"The shelter of an untidy bunch of what looked like coarse 'grass' which bore aloft the graceful, swinging, pink *hairbells* (note the spelling because we have no hare-bells)." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Hair serpent.—This would appear to be the name given by the early colonists to the Cape cobra.

Hair-tail.—*Trichiurus haumela.* The Natal designation of this fish whose habitat is tropical seas.

"What His Excellency caught is . . . the *hair-tail* . . . which is comparatively common on the coasts of India and Malabar." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 766, 1906.)

Half mense.—(D. *half*, half; *mensch*, man, human being.) *Adenium Namaquanum.* See Elephant's trunk.

"The ravines and slopes were here dotted with the extraordinary column-like succulent *Pachypodium Namaquanum*, known to the Hottentots as *Half-mense.* . . . Peculiar to the country, and only found on a few of the mountains of the most inaccessible parts, it attains a height of from 6 to 8 feet, its fleshy, branchless trunk being covered with sharp thorns and surmounted by a crown of green leaves about 8 inches in diameter. . . . The trunk is often almost the girth of a

man at its thickest point, and the effect of these solitary erect figures against a background of rocks is such as to render their name of *half-men* very appropriate." ("The State," p. 487, November, 1911.)

"Our north-western divisions . . . so drear, and so empty of life that the inhabitants are given to speak of a certain branchless, mopheaded, succulent plant growing there as *'n halve-mens*, that is its shape is half-man like as seen against the sky line!" ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 17 May, 1912.)

Hamba kahle.—(Zulu and Kaf. *uku Hamba*, to go; Zulu *kahle*, Kaf. *kuhle*, softly, carefully.) The Zulu farewell, "go in peace," "a pleasant journey," is contracted from *Hamba ka-kuhle.*

"'Send us the news sharp' was the cry as we let go; 'Good-bye and good luck' and '*Hamba kahle*' as we got further out." (Mather's "Golden South Africa," p. 37, 1888.)

Hamels.—(A.S. *hamelian*, Eng. *hamble*, to mutilate, maim; D. *hamel*, a castrated ram, a wether.) The common designation of a wether throughout South Africa.

"Those who know that part of the country, know what an excellent field it is for a sheep chase; and how a dozen of startled *hamels*, just separated from a large flock, would be likely to try a driver's legs, and lungs too, in crossing it." (Dugmore's "Reminiscences," pp. 13-14, 1871.)

Hammer-kop.—(D. *kop*, a head.) *Scopus umbretta.* A bird of a dull brown colour. It builds an immense nest, and after the fashion of the jackdaw and magpie it will carry away any bright object that it can pick up, and will decorate the exterior of its nest with it. It haunts the valleys and streams in search of frogs and shell-fish which are its chief food. The name refers to the curious, hammer-like appearance of its head.

"While we dressed upon a flat ledge of rock a *hammer-kop* (hammer-head) came down to the water, but swerved off on seeing us." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 7, 1889.)

Handling.—(D. *handelen*, to trade, deal.) A corruption of the Dutch word meaning to trade, barter.

"Thus when *handling* once begins, it often goes on briskly." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 6, 1850.)

Hands.—Bundles of newly gathered tobacco leaves are so styled.

"These *hands* are then laid in large heaps on the floor, and well covered with blankets for sweating." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 10, 1896.)

Hang.—(G. *Hang*, a declivity, slope.) A steep slope on a mountain.

Hangberger.—A Cape Peninsula name for the Hottentot fish (q.v.), sometimes corrupted to Hamburger. Fleming ascribes the name to the fact of the fish "being chiefly taken in deep water, near a place called Hangberg (overhanging rock)"; others derive the name from the fish's habit of frequenting rocky ledges.

"The best fish for boiling. Stokvisch, geelbek, . . . *hamburger*, seventy-four." (Hewit's "Cape Cookery," p. 18, 1907.)

Hangklip or Hanglip.—(D. *hangen*, to hang; *klip*, a rock.) A rocky promontory, 1448 feet high, forming the termination of the Hottentot's Holland Mountains, on the eastern side of the entrance to False Bay. There are other mountains so named in other parts of the country, e.g. Queenstown.

"Finding a small stream of excellent water at this place, we agreed to stay all night; and next morning we continued our journey round the *Hanglip* or Cape False." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 8, 1789.)

Hanskoentjes.—(D. *handschoen*, a glove, gauntlet.) The honeysuckle is so named by the Dutch.

Harders.—*Mugil capensis.* This fish belongs to the same family as the English "Grey mullet". It is caught in large numbers round the Cape Peninsula.

"1652, 22-24 August. Having yesterday gone out fishing we again caught and salted 400 large steenbrass and about 2000 *harders*." (Moodie's "Records," p. 13, 1838.)

"There is likewise about the Cape a sort of Herrings, the Cape-Europeans call *Harters*." (Kolben's "Present State of the Cape of Good Hope," II. p. 193, 1731.)

Hard lines, luck, cheek, etc.—This adjective is used to qualify a variety of nouns besides those specified, the general idea being that the thing specified is difficult or hard to endure.

Hardloop.—(D. *hardloopen*, to run fast.) Make haste! Hurry!

"As (the gemsbok) are already at a considerable distance, the word is at once given to *hart-loop* (to run or gallop)." (Drayson's "Tales of the Outspan," p. 115, 1862.)

Hard Pear.—(1) In Natal this name is given to *Pleuro-*

stylia capensis. (2) In the Cape Colony it is applied to *Strychnos Henningsii.*

Harebell or Hairbell.—*Dierama pendula,* plentiful in the neighbourhood of Queenstown.

Hare's foot fern.—*Aspidium capense, Willd.*

"This is familiarly known as the *Hare's foot fern* from the strong resemblance borne by its shaggy rhizomes to a hare's foot." (Sim's "Kaffrarian Ferns," p. 47, 1891.)

Harpuisbosje.—(D. *harpuis,* resin, pitch; *bos,* bush.) *Euryops multifidus, D.C. E. tenuissimus,* and in the Queenstown District, *E. florinbundus, N.E.Br.* At the time of flowering there exudes from these plants a matter resembling pitch or resin, which is highly esteemed for its medicinal qualities. Sometimes it is called the Resin pimple bush, and sometimes by metathesis, Rapuis bosje (q.v.).

"A shrub which grows from 2 feet to 3½ feet high, called by the colonists *harpuis bosjes,* the resin tree, and held in great esteem by them." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 176, 1814.)

"We again were in danger of being burnt; a sea of flame raging on one side of the road and consuming the resinous *arpuse bushes* with a roaring noise, audible a long way off." (Methuen's "Life in the Wilderness," p. 120, 1848.)

"To illustrate the influence of Dutch nautical terms on Afrikaans he related how he contrived a few days back to make his Malay servant understand that he was required to obtain some resin from the shop. The Dutch word was 'hars,' but this was not intelligible to the boy. The English word having slipped his memory, he bethought himself that in Van Riebeek's day resin would be in demand on the wooden ships. The nautical synonym was 'harpuis'. Thinking it probable that if this word had been introduced, the aspirate would in time have been dropped, he turned to his servant and asked him to get some 'arpuis'. *Rapuis* was the immediate intelligent response. The nautical word had been taken over, the 'h' dropped and the 'r' added." ("Cape Times' Report of a Lecture on Afrikaans," by Mr. C. J. Van Rijn, p. 11, 11 March, 1912.)

Harris buck.—*Hippotragus niger.* So called after Major Cornwallis Harris who first obtained this antelope in the Magaliesberg near Pretoria. See Sable antelope and Zwartwit pens.

Harslag.—(The word *harslet* or *haslet* was in common use in Kent fifty years ago for the lungs, liver, and heart of a pig: this word is from the Old French *hastalet*, roasted meat, diminutive of *haste*, a spit, a piece of roasted meat; Lat. *hasta*, a spear. The Dutch *harst*, a sirloin, a piece to roast, seems to be from the Old German *herstan*, to roast. It seems likely that the first syllable of the word *harslag* embodies a confusion of the two words. Old French *haste* and old German *herstan*.) The heart, lungs, and liver of a slaughtered animal.

Hartebeest, Red.—(D. *hert*, a deer, hart; *beest*, animal.) *Bubalis Caama. Caama* (Hot. *kamab*, with initial lateral click) is the English form of the name by which the animal was known to the Hottentots.

"On the road we had seen large herds of the wild asses called quaggas, and of *hart-beests*." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 12, 1785.)

Hartebeest, Lichtenstein's.—*Bubalis Lichtensteini.*

Hartebeest huisje or **hut.**—(D. C. J. Van Rijn suggests that the former part of this word is a corruption of *hard biezen*, the reference being to the materials of which these huts were often made; *huis*, a house.) A frail structure of "wattle and daub," so called, apparently, because a similar primitive structure was often erected by the earlier hunters. Backhouse's suggestion (see below) seems to be quite wide of the mark.

"A *hartebeest house*, being a roof put upon a wall about 2 feet in height." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 256, 1818.)

"The *hartebeest houses* are so called from an imaginary similarity in their figure to the outline of the species of buffalo, called in South Africa the hartebeest." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 357, 1844.)

"A colony of Hottentot women had seized possession of our *hartebeests hut*."

"N.B.—The hartebeests hut is a colonial name for an outhouse or stable." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 242, 1873.)

"By the kindly exertion of a friend who was known here, we together got a *hartebeest huisje* for the night." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 190, 1897.)

Harvest mackerel.—The name given at Port St. John to the large shoals of small fish often seen on the east coast; they are probably a species of herring.

"We have been notified of such shoals occurring near St. John's . . . they are there called 'herring' or *harvest mackerel.*" ("East London Dispatch," 19 August, 1905.)

Hasepad Kies.—(D. *haas,* hare; *pad,* path; *kiezen,* to choose.) The colonial form of *Het hazenpad kiezen,* to run away, to take to one's heels.

Heartwater.—A disease affecting sheep, goats, and cattle, the infection being communicated by the "bont tick," *Amblyomma hebræum, Koch,* after feeding on an affected animal.

"The characteristic lesion is an effusion of a clear, buff-coloured sero-albuminous fluid into the thoracic cavity and pericardial sac, which coagulates into a firm jelly on exposure to the atmosphere. Hence its popular name *heartwater.*" ("Science in South Africa," p. 346, 1905.)

Heemraad.—(D. *heemraad,* a dike-rieve.) In the earlier days of the Colony the *Heemraad* was a sort of rural court or district council appointed to act with the Landdrost in adjudicating with reference to certain minor offences, etc.

"The Cape of Good Hope . . . is divided into four districts over each of which is placed a civil magistrate called a Landdrost, who with his *Heemraden,* or a council of country burghers, is vested with power to regulate the police of his district, superintend the affairs of government, adjust litigations, and determine petty causes. Their decisions, however, are subject to an appeal to the Court of Justice in Cape Town." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 12, 1801.)

Hengsel.—(D. *hengsel,* a hinge, handle.) The small and cunningly twisted loop by which a whip is hung to the handle.

Herald Snake.—*Leptodira hotambœia*—a common and widely distributed snake.

Herberg.—(D. *herberg,* a tavern, public-house.) In Cape Dutch this word means lodging, shelter. The connexion between this word and the English words *harbour* and *harbinger* is of interest as illustrating the different forms and meanings which words etymologically the same may assume in cognate languages.

Herd.—(D. *herder,* shepherd, herdsman.) This word is used throughout South Africa for "herdsman," whether it be sheep, goats, cattle, horses or ostriches that he guards. In Scotland and the northern English counties a shepherd is still designated a herd, but elsewhere in England the word is

generally used as part of a compound : goat-herd, swine-herd, cow-herd, shepherd.

"The sleeping children undisturbed by the loose musket-firing from the terrified inhabitants or the startled *herds*." (Ward's "Five Years in Kaffirland," I. p. vii, 1848.)

Herring.—The fish so named in Natal belongs to the genus *Caranx*. See also Harvest mackerel.

"The Natal *herring* is therefore really a 'horse mackerel'". ("East London Dispatch," 20 June, 1906.)

Hes.—(D. *Hes*, a Hessian.) A clumsy, stupid fellow. For historical reasons the word Hessian as applied in America conveys no very complimentary meaning ; it is used there to designate a politician whose services are at the disposal of those who are willing to pay the most for them. But how the word has acquired the meaning which it bears among the Dutch of South Africa is not so apparent. Cf. Swaap.

Heuveltje.—(D. *heuveltje*, a hillock.) (1) A hillock. (2) The small hillocks in cultivated lands, which, for some unexplained reason, produce a stronger growth and an earlier crop than the rest of the land.

"The incidence of the *heuveltje* in the cultivated lands, is an accepted phenomenon which offers food for reflection. . . . These *heuveltjes* never need manuring, and their originating cause is not as yet explained." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," XXIII. 347, 1903.)

Hiccough nut.—The fruit of *Combretum bracteosum, Engl. and Diels.*, has received this name in Natal ; it is a coast-growing plant.

"The exquisite heads of scarlet flowers of the *Hiccup-nut* (*Poivrea prasteosa*) surrounding its rich velvety brown and green flower buds." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 447, 1861.)

Highveld.—(D. *hoogveld.*) The inner plateau of the sub-continent, from 5000 to 6000 feet above sea-level is so styled. See Hoogveld.

"For perhaps a week the towering bulwarks of the *High-veld* were visible as we toiled along." (Fitzpatrick's "Jock of the Bushveld," p. 223, 1907.)

Hill redwing.—*Francolinus Levaillanti*. See Redwing.

Hindoos.—A term applied in the earlier days of the Colony as a British possession to such Europeans as came from India to the Cape either to recruit their health or to take up their residence. In those days not a few availed themselves

of the opportunity, which a residence at the Cape afforded, of recruiting from the trying effects of the climate of India.

"'The Hindoos in Cape Town!' 'The *Hindoos*' . . . exclaimed we. 'Yes, Sir, the *Hindoos*, but as you seem surprised at finding any of the followers of Brahma in Africa, I must explain to you that the *Hindoos* is a soubriquet applied by the local residents to all visitors from India—whether they be Koelies from Calcutta, Mulls from Madras, or Ducks from Bombay.'" ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," p. 43, 15 September, 1830.)

Hinge-bird.—*Syncobrotus bicolor.* The note of this bird is very similar in sound to the harsh creaking of a rusty hinge, hence the name.

"It is a cheerful bird and quite enlivens the bush with its peculiar song, which sounds not unlike the creaking of a rusty hinge, from which we sometimes call it the *Hinge-bird.*" (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 433, 1875-1884.)

Hippopotamus.—(Greek, *hippos*, a horse; *potamos*, a river.) *Hippopotamus amphibius, L.* At one time abundant in the rivers of South Africa this animal is now to be found in one or two rivers of Zululand only; it is still fairly common in the Zambezi. See Sea-cow.

"I left Naliela on 13 August, and when proceeding along the shore at midday, a *hippopotamus* struck the canoe with her forehead." (Livingstone's "Missionary Travels in South Africa," p. 497, 1857.)

Hippopotamus mole.—See Sand mole, Cape mole, and Duin mol.

"It is also called the 'duin mol' and the *hippopotamus mole.*" ("The State," p. 231, September, 1912.)

Hlonipa.—(Kaf. *in Tloni*, shyness, bashfulness, shame; *uku Hlona*, to be afraid of reverentially.) This word is used to describe a custom among the Kaffirs applying exclusively to females, according to which if a mother-in-law meets her son-in-law she may not speak to him; a woman may not mention the name of her husband nor of her father-in-law; the women of a tribe may not mention the name of a dead chief, nor may they use any word in which these names occur. This curious custom has had a powerful effect upon the language itself, as will be readily understood. The word *hlonipa*

means that they are too bashful or polite to use such names in common everyday speech.

Hock.—(D. *hok*, a pen, kennel.) A small enclosure for fowls or small animals.

Hoek.—(D. *hoek*, an angle, corner.) A narrow glen or corner formed by the junction of hills or mountains, the entrance to it being also the exit: e.g. Fransche Hoek.

"In visiting *Franche Hoek* I did not as before regard without interest that race of French refugees formerly persecuted by their unjust country." (Le Vaillant's "New Travels," I. p. 33, 1796.)

Hoeka.—(Hot. "*huga*, adv. von Alters her, von jeher," Kronlein.) This word is occasionally heard among the coloured farm servants, meaning "of old".

Hoenderspoor.—(D. *hoen*, a hen; *spoor*, a spur.) *Scolopia Zeyheri.* The name refers to the shape of the thorns. See Doorn Peer (Sup).

Hoepelbeen.—(D. *hoep*, a hoop; *been*, a leg.) Cape Dutch for bandy-legged.

Holderstebolder.—(D. *holderdebolder*, topsy-turvy.) Head over heels, topsy-turvy.

Hole in the Wall.—A curious natural phenomenon on the coast of Pondoland. See quotations.

"Two ponderous black rocks arose from the water's edge upwards of 80 feet above its surface, exhibiting through one of them the phenomenon of a natural archway called by us *The Hole in the Wall.*" (Owen's "Narrative," I. p. 280, 1833.)

"Some fine scenery is met with on the coast-line, notably *Hole in the Wall*, one of the lions worth seeing in the Transkeian Territories." (Henkel's "The Native or Transkeian Territories," p. 14, 1893.)

Home.—This word is employed by English colonists throughout South Africa when speaking of England, often even when they are African born and their parents too.

Hondeklip Bay.—(D. *hond*, a dog; *klip*, a rock.) A small bay on the Western coast, named from an isolated and conspicuous rock, which in its outline somewhat resembles a crouching dog.

Honey-bird or **Guide.**—Several birds of the family *Indicatoridæ* have been thus designated from their habit of guiding men and animals to the nests of bees. They flutter about

the traveller and make a peculiar noise to attract attention. A portion of the honey is invariably left for the little guide.

"There is reason to suppose that the moroc of Abyssinia and the bee-cuckoo, which I have described above, are one and the same bird." (Sparmann's "Voyage," II. p. 193, 1785.)

"Up comes a *honey-bird* . . . 'chet, chet, chet, chee,' he said, which is his way of saying as how he's found a honey-tree, and wanted some one to go shares with him." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 52, 1897.)

"An interesting family are the *Honey guides* (*Indicatoridæ*), several species of which are widely spread throughout South Africa . . . they are undoubtedly like cuckoos, parasitic in their breeding habits and deposit their eggs in the nests of other birds." ("Science in South Africa," p. 141, 1905.)

Honey-eaters or suckers.—Birds of the family *Nectariniidæ*. These exquisite little creatures with their bright metallic colours flashing in the sun are exceedingly attractive. They live on nectar, pollen, and insects. See Sun birds.

"Larks, doves, and *honey-eaters* flock in countless numbers round." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 397, 1856.)

"*Honey-suckers* or Sun-birds that flit like living gems from flower to flower." (Russell's "Natal," p. 36, 1891.)

Honey-pot.—This is a rather amusing example of "striving after meaning". The Dutch name of this richly flavoured grape, the muscat of Alexandria, is Haanepoot (q.v.). This name has been corrupted by English colonists into "Honey-pot," approaching the Dutch name in sound, but having reference to the lusciousness of the fruit rather than to the shape of the leaf.

"He led us into the vineyard where we found abundance of the most delicious flavoured grapes, one sort, called the *honey-pot*, especially so, and of immense size." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 190, 1855.)

"The muscatel and sweet-water grapes, and a fine, fleshy, well-flavoured variety called *hanna-poot*, or more commonly *honey-pot*, are all specially good." (Lucas' "Camp Life and Sport," p. 36, 1878.)

Honing boschje.—(D. *honing*, honey.) *Syndesmanthus* and several others of the *Ericaceæ* are so named in the Riversdale District.

Honing koek.—(D. *honing*, honey ; *koek*, a cake.) Honey

cake or Gingerbread; the pollen of flowers collected by bees and known as bee-bread.

Honingthee.—(D. *honing*, honey; *thee*, tea.) *Cyclopea genistoides Vent.* An infusion of the leaves of this plant has a sweet, astringent taste, and is useful in colds and coughs.

Honingwijzer.—(D. *wijzen*, to show, point out.) See Honey-bird.

"This bird which, on account of the singular property it is endued with, is called by the colonists *honing-wijzer*, or honey-guide." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 190, 1785.)

Hoof and tongue sickness.—Foot and mouth disease. See Klauw ziekte.

"We have had a great deal of *hoof and tongue sickness* amongst our cattle lately." ("Queenstown Free Press," 22 January, 1867.)

Hoog-pister.—(D. *hoog*, high; *pis*, urine.) The name given to a large beetle, *Manticora*, because it ejects to a considerable height (and whether purposely or accidentally, often enough into the eyes of its would-be captor) an exceedingly acrid fluid.

Hoog veld.—See also under Bosch veld and High veld.

"Door het *Hoogeveld* wordt verstaan het eigenlijke plateau van Drakensberg, dat zich tot aan Magaliesberg en Lijdenburg, en Westelijk, langs Vaal-rivier uitstrekt." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 332, 1882.)

Hoorn Pof Adder.—*Bitis caudalis*, so named because of the horn-like scales on the head. It is also called the Hornsman.

Hooter.—The steam whistle employed at factories.

"The *hooter* from the tobacco factory." ("The State," p. 287, September, 1911.)

Horensmannetje.—(D. *horens*, horn; *mannetje*, mannikin.) *Bitis cornuta.* The so-called horned snake; these horns are two curiously modified and greatly enlarged scales, which stand erect immediately over the eyes and are shed in the process of desquamation.

"Die Schlange Cerastes, oder *die gehörnte*, findet sich auf dem Vorgebürge, wenn dem P. Tachard zu glauben." ("Voy. de Siam," p. 111.) (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 353, 1745.)

"In the early morning I found and captured a cerastes or *horned snake* sixteen or eighteen inches long. . . . The colonial name is *Horenmanijee.*" (Baines' "Explorations," p. 374, 1864.)

Horensmanooi.—(D. *ooi*, a ewe.) A horned ewe.

Horologieberg.—(D. *horloge*, a watch; *berg*, a mountain.) A mountain near Worcester in the Western Province, by the shadow of which upon certain natural objects the early colonists in the locality were able to tell approximately the time of day. *Horloge* has become *Horlosi* and even *Orlosi* in South Africa, and means a watch or clock.

Horse fish.—See Paarde-visch.

Horse-shoe geranium.—*Pelargonium zonale var. stenopetalum* is so called because of the marking of its leaves.

"A large shrub with juicy, green stems and thick leaves, usually, but not invariably, marked with a dark semicircle, whence its name *horse-shoe geranium*." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 299, 1859-60.)

Horse-sickness.—*Oedema mycosis.* A deadly epizootic disease which has been known in the Cape Colony since 1719. It seems from the researches of Dr. Edington, Director of the Government Bacteriological Institute (Report, 1895), to be due to the presence in the blood of the vegetative spores of a micro-organism of a fungoid character. In one of the serious outbreaks of this dreaded disease, no less than 70,000 horses and mules, worth £525,000, died in the Cape Colony alone.

"As the season for Paarde-ziekte, or *horse distemper*, was expected to begin, generally about the beginning of February, a party of people set out this day for the Colony, taking with them a great number of horses." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 509, 1822.)

"The establishment of Mr. Cloete on the Breede River is very extensive. . . . The *horse-sickness* is, unfortunately, not unknown even here, but at times commits dreadful ravages among the herds of horses which are obliged to remain at pasturage during the periods of its visitation." (Nicholson's "The Cape and its Colonists," p. 137, 1848.)

Horse whim.—A large wooden wheel, used in the early days of the diamond fields, for hauling the buckets, which contained the diamondiferous soil, up from the mine.

Hot en haar.—(D. *hot*, *hotom*, to the left; *haar*, *haarom*, to the right. Cf. G. *Hott und har*, on all sides, and the Platt Deutsch phrase, "*He weet nich hutt! noch hoh!*") These words are equivalent to the "off" and "near" of English drivers, and are employed: (1) To describe the position of the oxen in a span or team. (2) To direct the oxen which way to turn: *hot*, to the left; *haar*, to the right. In

the expression, *Hij het hot en haar*, "he has it rough," "he has plenty to contend with," sometimes heard, the idea seems to be that the person spoken of is getting buffeted from all sides.

"Each ox will pay attention, and go to the right or to the left, merely upon hearing its own name pronounced with a *hote* or a *haar* added to it." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 127, 1785.)

"These two words *har* and *hot*, to which the dictionary gave no clue, puzzled me not a little, and the only explanation I can offer is contained in the names of two towns on the opposite sides of the Seine, Harfleur and Honfleur, so I leave the matter to better linguists than myself." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," pp. 61-62, 1852.)

"Literally I did not know my right hand from my left when *hot* stood for one and *haar* for the other, sounds intelligent enough to the most stupid bullock that ever bore the yoke." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 194, 1870.)

"Men kan kwalijk een 'voor-os' 'achter' spannen, of een dier dat *hot* (aan den linkerkant), trekt, *haar* (aan den rechterkant)." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 104, 1882.)

Hotnot.—A common Dutch pronunciation of Hottentot.

Hotom.—A porridge made of meal and water.

Hottentot.—This name is generally supposed to be onomatopoetic (cf. Barbarian), imitating, as nearly as possible, the clicking sounds made by these people in their speech ; but it is referred by Dr. Th. Hahn, in his work "Tsui-goab, the Supreme Being of the Khoi-Khoin," to the old German or Frisian Hüttentüt, the gibberish used by the astrologers and quack doctors. The people call themselves "Khoi-Khoin," or men of men.

"The Europeans call those people *Hottentots*, perhaps because they have always that word in their mouth when they meet strangers." ("A Voyage to Siam performed by Six Jesuits," p. 68, 1688.)

"Die *Hottentotten* gefiel die Freygebigkeit und das annehmliches Wesen dieses Admiral's dermassen wohl, das sie gar bald einen Vergleich mit ihm schlossen." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 12, 1745.)

"The more general name of *Hottentot* has been given probably from their language, which is harsh, broken, full of

monosyllables. . . . It is as if one heard nothing from them but hot and tot." (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 242, 1846.)

Hottentot.—*Cantharus blochii.* A small fish of excellent quality abundant in Table and False Bays. The name refers to its colour and stunted shape. See Hangberger and Mud-fish. In Natal the name is given to *Cantharus natalensis.* See Rock fish.

"The *Hottentot fish,* which is like a sea-bream, is daily brought to market in great plenty." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 560, 1798.)

"Abundance of excellent fish are to be procured here, such as the delicious Roman fish, *Hottentot.*" (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 88, 1838.)

Hottentot bean tree.—*Scotia speciosa.* An old colonial name for this tree. See Boerboon.

"The *Hottentot's bean tree.*—The clusters of scarlet flowers, intermingled with the small and elegant green foliage, give it a remarkable pre-eminence over the tall trees of the ravines." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 106, 1833.)

Hottentot bonnets.—*Disperis capensis* was known by this name, now it is more generally known as Moeder kapje (q.v.).

"*Disperis capensis* . . . is known by the name of the *Hottentot bonnet,* on account of the peculiar shape of its purple and green flowers." (Bunbury's "Cape of Good Hope," p. 88, 1848.)

Hottentot bread.—*Testitudinaria Elephantipes.* The plant more generally known as Elephant's foot (q.v.).

"*Testitudinaria Elephantipes, Hottentot's bread,* found on the Karroo about Uitenhage." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 326, 1844.)

Hottentot cherry.—The leathery berry of *Maurocenia capensis.* See also Aasvogel besjes and Kaffir cherry.

"*M. capensis* . . . Engl. name *Hottentot cherry.*" ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 465, 1859-60.)

"The Kaffir apple, *Hottentot cherry* . . . wilde pruimen, and many another shrub." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karroo," p. 130, 1889.)

Hottentot fig.—*Mesembryanthemum edule.* A trailing evergreen, with succulent, three-cornered leaves and pretty flowers. The fruit is full of small seeds and has a not unpleasant flavour. The word "fig" refers to its shape and small seeds. See Ghokum and Gouna vijg.

"Dicke dreyeckigte und safftigte Blätter von gewissen Feigen, die man *Hottentottische Feigen* nennt." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 141, 1745.)

"The *Mesembryanthemum edule* grew here in abundance and was called Hottentot figs (*Hottentot vijgen*)." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 163, 1795.)

Hottentot god.—There are several of the *Mantidæ* thus designated in South Africa, one or other of which the Hottentots were said to worship. Kolben professes to have seen them pray to this insect, but his imagination is sometimes the source of his facts. Sparrman, in denying that they worshipped the insect, says that there is a variety of mantis which they think it a crime to injure.

"Die Hottentotten beten auch als eine gütige Gottheit an, ein Ungeziefer, welches sich, dem Sagen nach, bloss in ihrem Lande findet."

"Ich habe gar oft dergleichen gesehen: Es hat einen grunen Rücken mit weissen und rothen Flecken." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 98, 1745.)

"There is a genus of insects (the mantis) called by the colonists the *Hottentot's god;* but so far are they from worshipping these insects that they have more than once catched some of them, and given them to me to stick needles through them by way of preserving them." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 211, 1785.)

Hottentot's Holland.—The *Hottentot's Holland* Valley, now called Somerset West, together with other territory, was purchased from the Hottentots for a mere trifle in 1672 by the Dutch.

"Der Name *Hottentottisch-Holland* kommt nicht daher als ob diese Gegend der Provinz Holland ähnlich sähe: sie ist grosser von ganz anderer Gestalt, und gebügrig. Man hat ihr den Namen gegeben, weil sie bey der ersten Untersuchung sehr bequem schien die Heerden der Compagnie zu ernahren." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 214, 1745.)

Hottentot's Kauw goed.—(D. *kauwen*, to chew; *kauw*, a quid; *goed*, stuff, goods.) *Mesembryanthemum tortuosum*, *L.*, is so called in the Karoo.

"The plant which goes under the broad designation of *Hottentot's Kauwgoed*, grows in the Karoo." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Society," p. 48, IX., 1898.)

Hottentot's Kooigoed.— (D. *kooi*, a bed, couch; *goed*,

stuff.) A soft woolly substance obtained from the shrub *Eriocephalus umbellatus.* See Kapok.

"Boegoe, anys, *hottentot's kooigoed,* katte kruie van alles'n weinig op water getrek en enige male per dag te drink." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 121, 1898.)

Hottentot's tea.—*Helichrysum serpyllifolium, Less.* Largely used by the coloured people and infused as tea.

Hot winds.—Northerly winds heated by their passage over the hot plains of the interior, sometimes make the heat of the summer almost unendurable.

"At certain seasons, however, northerly breezes prevail; these are termed by the colonists 'hot winds'. On these occasions the wind feels as if it were blowing off a furnace in a glass foundry, being heated in its passage over the burning sands of the great Kalahari desert." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 60, 1850.)

Hours.—Distances by road in South Africa are measured by the time it takes a man on horseback to cover them at the ordinary rate of travelling, say about six miles an hour. The reply to a question as to distance generally being, "Oh, so many hours".

"The *uur* or one *hour* on the road is reckoned as much as a man can ride on a round trot." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 81, 1785).

"A Dutch mile which they in general call an *hour* is about three miles and a half English." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 58 n., 1798.)

House snakes.—*Boodon infernalis, B. guttatus,* and *B. lineatus.* These snakes are distinguished as the black, the spotted and the brown house snakes in the neighbourhood of King William's Town. They are non-poisonous. Another species, *B. mentalis,* is found in Damaraland.

"These *house snakes* are more serviceable to man than cats, for they can follow rats and mice into their hiding-places." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 1 September, 1911.)

Hout Bay.—(D. *hout,* wood.) Too often spoken and written "Hout's Bay," as though it had been named after a person. The Bay was at one time well wooded all round its shores, and it is this fact that is commemorated in the name. It is on record that Riebeeck "found there the finest forests in the world, containing as lofty, thick, and straight trees as can be desired". (Moodie's "Records," p. 34, 1838.)

"Der *Holz-Bay* (*Hout Bay*) ist nicht weniger schlimm. Dieser Bay hat den Namen von einem grossen Wald der sie umfasset." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 204, 1745.)

"1653, 11 July. Proceed with the sloop behind Table Mountain to examine and sound the bay there called by us in consequence of its forests, *Hout Bay*." (Leibbrandt's Precis, "Van Riebeeck's Journal," Part I. p. 76, 1897.)

Houtkapper.—(D. *hout*, wood; *kappen*, to chop, cut, fell.) (1) A bird of the *Capitonidæ* family—*Lybius torquatus* is so called. (2) The name is also given to a species of termite—*Hodotermes havilandi*, which is destructive to growing crops.

"A noisy little barbet which the Hottentots called *Houtkapper* (wood-cutter) from the noise it makes with its beak against the branches of trees in search of insects." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 318, 1822.)

"The trouble here is not the small white ant, but the large brown black head, locally known as *Houtkapper* or wood-chopper." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," p. 471, 1904.)

Houtpaard.—(D. *hout*, wood; *paard*, a horse.) A wooden block 6 or 7 feet in length, with a peg driven in at one end, used by the Hottentots to assist them in crossing flooded streams and rivers.

"Being loaded each with three or four bundles they would not perhaps have found it practicable to cross the stream without the assistance of what the Klaarwater Hottentots termed a *Houte-paard* (wooden-horse)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 415, 1822.)

Hump.—Generally applied to the protuberance on the back of an ox, between the shoulders, a favourite piece with South African housewives for salting.

"One day I dined on beef-steak, on lion, and *hump* 'de rhinoceros' done in the ashes. . . . Rhinoceros hump was a frequent and favourite dish of mine." (Anderson's "Okavango River," p. 130, 1861.)

Hunger-belt.—A thong of hide (according to Krönlein the Namaqua words for hunger and for riem are from the same root, **a*, to hunger), worn as a belt by the Namaqua Hottentots which in times of scarcity is gradually tightened to deaden the gnawings of hunger. Lichtenstein, literally translating the German name for a similar contrivance, which, he says, is used by the people of the lower classes in that country, calls it the "girdle of emptiness" (*Schmachtriemen*; compare

Den Schmachtriemen umschnallen, to starve; *schmachten,* to languish, pine, especially for want of food).

"He had rather buckle the *girdle of emptiness* round him than submit to such exertions as going to the chace, or catching insects." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 46, 1814.)

"Dying of hunger and my *girdle of famine*—the leather strap worn round the waist is called by the savages a lambele strap or 'hunger-girdle'—tightened to the last hole. I felt strangely tempted to devour my Christmas dinner uncooked." (Harris' "Wild Sports," p. 293, 1839.)

"Food he had none, for every man carried a signal of distress round his belly." (Baines' "Explorations," p. 8, 1864.) (On p. 467 Baines gives an illustration of a "Makalaka with the first reef in his *hunger-belt*".)

Huspot.—(F. *hochepot;* Eng. *hodge-podge;* D. *hutspot.*) The South African name for a kind of ragout of meat and vegetables.

"Haricot (Cape name, *huspot*)." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 91, 1901.)

Huurkamer. — (D. *huur,* rent, hire, lease; *kamer,* a chamber.) Rooms built for hire. In most South African inland towns rooms are to be found built for the use of the owners or visitors at Nachtmaal time, when there is a large influx of farmers from the surrounding district with their wives and families. At other times they are nearly always empty, but they are still termed *huur-kamers.*

Hyæna man.—See Great elephant.

"Another of his (Chaka's) designations has been the 'Hyæna man,' as being descriptive of the revolting scowl and dark treachery of that ferocious beast." (Moodie's "Battles in South Africa," I. p. 392, 1888.)

Ice-plant.—*Mesembryanthemum crystallinum, R.,* is so called because it has the appearance of being covered with ice-sparkles, and is always cool to the touch. See Slaai bosch.

"The vegetation is confined chiefly to some sorts of the *Mesembryanthemum crystallinum,* or *ice-plant,* as it is generally called." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," I. p. 44, 1812.)

I.D.B.—These initials stand in South Africa for "Illicit Diamond Buying," a crime severely punished. Previous to the establishment of the Compound System (q.v.) at the Diamond Fields, the native labourers in the mines would

frequently steal the stones and dispose of them to unscrupulous persons for a sum considerably less than their market value; to such an extent was this illicit trade carried on that it was estimated that from one-fifth to one-furth of the diamonds found in the mines failed to reach their lawful owners. This condition of things brought about the establishment of the Compound System and the passing of most stringent laws, making it a crime to be in possession of an uncut diamond without a licence.

"'The fellow had money there with which he turned *I.D.B.*' 'What's that?' said Carr. 'Illicit Diamond Buyer,' said Cobus. 'I forgot that the expression had been coined since you left, and an I.D.B. renders himself amenable to the law.'" ("At Home in the Transvaal," p. 520, 1884.)

"They have given an unenviable reputation to three letters of the alphabet—*I.D.B.*, which mean 'Illicit Diamond Buyers,' and refer to some of the most cunning and unscrupulous rascals in creation." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 290, 1891.)

I.D.B. Act.—The common name of the Diamond Trade Act, which came into force on 1 September, 1882. It was framed to suppress, if possible, the nefarious traffic above described.

Idle Dick or **Lazy Jack.**—*Sphenœcicus natalensis.* The common names of this bird in Natal.

"If flushed more than once, it betakes itself to a clump of grass or bush, and will suffer itself to be taken with the hand rather than rise again; for this reason it has acquired the name of *Idle Dick* or *Lazy Jack.*" (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 281, 1875-1884.)

Ifafa Lily.—The name given in the Transkeian territories to *Cyrtanthus lutescens, Herb.*

Iguana.—See Guana.

"Hence the *Iguana,* a small kind of crocodile, proceeds on shore at night and takes chickens from the hen-roosts and eggs from the fowl-house." (Bisset's "Sport and War in South Africa," p. 179, 1875.)

"In South Africa this reptile—the Nile Monitor—is often miscalled an *iguana.*" (Bryden's "Animals of Africa," p. 174, 1900.)

Ihashe.—This word, in use among the Kaffirs, is the result of their efforts to reproduce the English word "horse".

Ijzer-magauw.—Dutch name for *Manis temmincki*, a nocturnal animal which feeds on ants and termites; it breaks into their nests with its powerful claws and catches the occupants on its sticky tongue. See Pangolin.

Ijzerpaard.—(D. *ijzer*, iron; *paard*, a horse.) (1) The railway engine. (2) Sometimes applied to a bicycle.

Ijzer vark.—(D. *varken*, a pig.) *Histrix cristatus*, *L*. The Dutch name for this animal.

"The *hystrix cristata* of Linnæus, called by the colonists here *yzter-varken* (or *iron hog*), is the same animal as the Germans carry about for a show in our country by the name of *porcupine*." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 151, 1785.)

Ijzer vogeltje.—(D. *vogel*, a bird, fowl.) *Alseonax adusta*. The Dutch name of a small bird of the Muscicapidæ family. The name refers to the iron colour of the bird.

Imfe.—(Kaf. *im Fe.*) *Holchus saccharatus*. A sweet cane grown and chewed by the natives; it is of little good for any other purpose.

"A species of sugar cane, called *imfe*, is grown in great abundance; of this the natives are remarkably fond." (Kay's "Researches in Caffraria," p. 123, 1883.)

Impala.—*Æpyceros melampus*, sometimes called the pallah.

"We sat like statues as the *impala* walked out from its stall between Teddy's knees." (Fitzpatrick's "Jock of the Bushveld," p. 302, 1907.)

Impi.—(Kaf. *im Pi*, an army, an enemy.) An army or regiment, an enemy.

"Hanta . . . heads, by right of office, the *impi yakwomkulu*, or regiment of the great place." (Holden's "Past and Future of the Kaffir Races," p. 155, 1866.)

Inbooking.—(D. *boeken*, to enter, to book.) The anglicized form of the word used by the Dutch in the Transvaal for a system of apprenticing natives that was open to great abuse. See Black ivory.

"Under the specious name of *inbooking* (a form of apprenticeship) they were actually made slaves for an indefinite number of years." ("At Home in the Transvaal," p. 255, 1884.)

"He must have been one of those *inboeked* children that never grow out of their apprenticeship." (*Ibid.*, p. 522.)

Indaba.—(Kaf. *in Daba*, news, information.) A native council meeting for the discussion of business of importance

to the tribe. It seems as if the word were likely to pass into South African slang.

"Es würde sehr freuen, wenn ich zu ihm kommen und die *indaba* (Neuigkeit) von Sekukuni erzählen wolle." (Wangemann's "Ein Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 522, 1868.)

"The general conduct of his daily life, his work, his hunts, . . his *indabas*, differ little from the vogue and usage of the past." (Robinson's "A Life Time in South Africa," p. 313, 1900.)

"At this stage the *indaba* was adjourned for half an hour." ("East London Dispatch," 1 July, 1907.)

Indian flame plant.—*Poinsettia pulcherima* has been thus designated, the reference being to the bright red bracts beneath the inflorescences.

"If the curious draw them apart he will find between floral organs pretty much the same as occur upon the Poinsettia or *Indian flame plant*, and the melkbosch." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Indian pride or **Pride of India.**—The handsome *Lagerstroemia indica* is so named in Natal.

"This little lonely tenement is marked out by an oblong heap of stones, with a dwarf bush of *Indian pride* at either extremity." (Methuen's "Life in the Wilderness," p. 284, 1848.)

Indian shot.—*Canna indica.* The popular South African designation of this plant; it refers to the striking resemblance which the seeds bear to swan-shot.

Induna.—(Kaf. *in Duna*, councillor, one of rank.) A man in authority; one who is next in rank to the chief. The word is more frequently used by the Zulus than among the Kaffirs of the Cape Colony.

"While Uys and his people were occupying Dingaan's attention, the English settlers proceeded with their natives against the kraals of Sotobo and another *in-duna* situate between Mooi River and the Tugela." (Shooter's "Kaffirs of Natal," p. 322, 1857.)

Ingelegd.—(D. *inleggen*, to pickle, preserve; cf. G. *einlegen*, to salt, pickle.) Pickled, preserved; the Cape Dutch name also for pickled fish, the adjective being used as a noun in the Eastern Province of the Cape Colony.

"Geelbek, commonly called Cape Salmon, . . . makes

good fish pie, 'smoorfish,' *engelegte*, or pickled fish." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 65, 1902.)

Ingubu.—(Kaf. *in Gubo*, a garment, skin, blanket.) A dress or garment of any kind is offered for sale to the Natal natives under this name.

"Cast-off articles of European attire known to the natives as *Ingouboos*." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 187, 1899.)

Inja.—(Kaf. *in Ja*, a dog.) (1) A dog. (2) The term is applied also to subordinates. (3) It is further used as a term of opprobrium or contempt, as by Kaffirs to Fingoes. As employed, however, by a chief of any of his indunas or people it is regarded as a compliment, indicating loyalty and fidelity.

"On these occasions the *inja* (dog), although of the most wretched description, appears to render exceptional service." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 134, 1833.)

"The word *incha* (dog) has two meanings diametrically opposed to one another in the metaphorical language of these tribes. To call a man a 'dog' would be the most unpardonable insult, but a chief will say of one of his subordinates, 'That man is my dog,' and the appellation will be received with a smile of assent by the person on whom it is bestowed." (Casalis' "Basutos," p. 177, 1861.)

Ink-berry.—The small black berries of *Cestrum umbellatum*, the juice of which was sometimes used by the early colonists as a substitute for ink—hence the name.

"Its scientific name is *Cestrum umbellatum* and the children often call it *ink-berry*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 10 November, 1911.)

Ink-fish.—An East London name for the cuttle-fish (*sepia*); it has reference to the inky fluid which the animal ejects when irritated or disturbed.

"The *ink-fish* or squid is caught out at sea in the trawl nets." ("East London Dispatch," 21 November, 1905.)

Inkosi.—(Kaf. *in Kosi*, a term denoting respect, a chief, king.) (1) The bestower of a benefit; a chief or commander. (2) Shortened to "inkos" this word is often used in the common parlance of the Border districts as an acknowledgment of some benefit. A Kaffir will express his sense of indebtedness for a favour by saluting the person bestowing it as an "Inkosi" or benefactor. The word has, however, in the form *enkosi* come to be regarded, and is often used by colonists, as being the equivalent of the English "Thank you".

"Calling the King *Kousi*, which is not his name, but his title, Kousi signifying king, or principal chief in their language." (Thompson's "Travels and Adventures," p. 118, 1827.)

"A law has been laid down by the great *Inkos*, the Supreme Chief, who lives at Government House." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers, and British," p. 145, 1881.)

Inkosikazi.—(Kaf. *in Kosi*, a chief; *kazi*, denoting female.) (1) A wife of a king or chief. (2) Often used by the natives when addressing a white woman as equivalent to mistress or lady; and also of their own wives whether of the blood or not.

"He (the washing Kaffir) acquits himself at his task better than the *Inkosigas* (white mistress) who bungles hers so sadly." (Roche's "On Trek in the Transvaal," p. 246, 1878.)

Inkruipers.—(D. *inkruipen*, to creep in between.) Men who had secured farms in the way described under Inkruip plaats (q.v.) were so designated.

Inkruip plaats.—(D. *inkruipen*, to creep in between; *plaats*, a place; C.D. a farm.) In early days in the Orange Free State and the Transvaal when an applicant for a Request farm (q.v.) could find no suitable vacant site, he would sometimes squat between two such farms the owners of which had included (not an uncommon occurrence) within their boundaries much more than the stipulated 3000 morgen, and at the survey would claim the excess land from each or both to make up his required area. Such a farm was known as an Inkruip plaats.

"But there were many seekers after spare land, and among them one Floores Tromp, who under the impression that the owners of Boschhoek and Waterval claimed more land than they were entitled to, squatted on the south side of the Incandu River, near the Drift, and put in an application for any spare land which might be held by the original grantees. When the surveyor, Mr. Bell, came along a couple of years later, he cut off nearly 3000 acres from the adjoining farms, and Tromp obtained the *inkruips plaats*." ("Bloemfontein Post.")

Insangu.—(Kaf. *i Sangu*, the leaves or seeds of the wild hemp.) The Kaffir name for *Cannabis sativa*, the dagga (q.v.) of the Hottentots.

"The smoking of *insangu* or 'dacca' as it is variously called is a widely distributed habit throughout South Africa." (Schulz and Hammar's "New Africa," p. 201, 1897.)

Inspan.—(D. *inspannen,* to put to, as horses to a carriage.) To yoke oxen or to harness draught animals to a vehicle.

"I determined as a rule to *inspan* as early as possible in the morning, lest the people should annoy me with importunities." (Baine's "Explorations," p. 48, 1864.)

Interior, The.—The countries nearer the equator than those referred to in the expression up country.

Intombi.—(Kaf. *in Tombi,* a maiden.) A girl or young unmarried woman.

Intonga.—(Kaf. *in Tonga,* an article or weapon for defence, a stick.) The Kaffir name of the fighting stick which the natives generally carry.

"The only weapon carried by anyone of them was the *itonga* or fencing-stick." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 269, 1833.)

Inyoka.—(Kaf. *i Nyoka,* that which glides away, a snake.) A snake.

"I described the noise to Jack in the morning, and he at once said it was made by a *nhoca* snake as thick as his arm." (Rose Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay, Its Natives and Natural History," p. 114, 1891.)

"One of the Amatongas . . . gave a most unearthly howl, and a bound which I never saw equalled, dropping all his assegaies, whipping off his moutcha in a twinkling, saying that an *inyoka* snake had bitten him." (Baldwin's "African Hunting," p. 112, 1894.)

Ipimpi.—(Kaf. *i Pimpi,* the snake which flattens its neck.) The native name for the Ringhals (q.v.), a snake resembling the cobra de capello in its manner of flattening and inflating the neck.

"Intelligence reached me of the pitiable situation of a native female . . . who had been bitten by an *impimpi* or cobra de capello." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 198, 1833.)

Ipiti or **Piti.**—(Kaf. and Z. *i Puti,* the small blue buck.) *Cephalophus monticola,* the smallest of the South African antelopes, known in the Cape Colony as the small Bluebuck, and in Natal by this name. See Epiti.

"The presence in Swazieland of the delicately formed

little Natal bluebuck, more generally known as the *piti*, was not suspected until recently." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 18 November, 1908.)

"The beautiful little *ipiti*, no bigger than a toy terrier, and quite as sprightly and alert." (Green's "Richard Hartley, Prospector," p. 244, 1905.)

Iron-wood.—*Olea laurifolia, Lank.* The wood known to the natives as "Umsimbiti" (q.v.), largely used in making the framework of wagons. It is known in the Cape as Black iron-wood.

"The hardest and toughest of the Natal woods is that known under the native name 'Umzimbiti' (*iron-wood*)." (Mann's "Natal," p. 157, 1859.)

"*Olea laurifolia* (Black *iron-wood*). This tree reaches the stature of a medium-sized or large timber tree, but the wood is excessively hard and not durable in the ground." ("Science in South Africa," p. 391, 1905.)

Iron-wood tree.—In the Transvaal *Copaifera mopane, Kirk*, is known by this name. See Turpentine tree.

Isandhlwana.—(Kaf. dim. of *i Sandla*, the hand.) The name of the mountain in Zululand close by the scene of the disaster to the British troops under General Thesiger (Lord Chelmsford) on 22 January, 1879. See Superintendent.

Isicoco.—(Z. *isi Coco*, the head-ring.) The Zulu name for the head-ring of the Zulu and Matabele warriors. See Ringed, To be.

"All their heads were shaven, sufficient hair only being left to attach the *isiqoko*, which is composed of sinews attached to the hair and blackened with grease." (Harris' "Wild Sports," p. 120, 1839.)

Ivy-leaved geranium.—Two species of *Pelargonium* are thus designated: *P. peltatum, Ait.*, and *P. lateripes*—two species doubtfully distinct.

Izibongi.—(Kaf. *uku Bonga*, to praise, extol.) The Zulu *izibongi*, Kaf. *imbongi*, are officials whose duty it is publicly to proclaim the various titles and praises of their respective chiefs.

"Mr. Shepstone, with Cetewayo and some of his followers, retired to a hut to consult on different subjects; while this was going on inside an amusing scene was taking place outside between two *izibongi* (jesters or praisers), each yelling out the string of praises of their respective chiefs—Mr.

Shepstone and Cetewayo—and trying to outdo each other." (Moodie's "Battles in South Africa," II. p. 474, 1888.)

Jaagspinnekop.—(D. *jagen*, to hunt; *spinnekop*, a spider.) An arachnid of the Order *Solifugæ;* it hunts its prey with considerable swiftness. See Rooiman and Haar-scheerder.

"There are worms to cut off your young vegetables . . . horrible looking *jaagspinnekoppen* (hunting spiders) to startle you." (Du Plessis' "In the Heart of Africa," p. 55, 1905.)

"They are variously known locally by the name of Romans, *jagd-spinnekoppen* (hunting spiders) or haar-scheerders (hair cutters), and there is a current belief that they cut off the hair of a sleeping person at night." ("Science in South Africa," p. 178, 1905.)

Jaarhonderd.—(G. *jahrhundert*, a century, an age.) In South Africa this word is employed by the Dutch with the meaning of a long time, an indefinite period.

Jackal.—(Turk. *tchakal;* Pers. *chagal.*) *Canis mesomelas.* This animal commits great depredations among the small stock of the colonial farmer, and is the cause of considerable loss. It is as cunning as it is destructive, and is trapped or poisoned with difficulty. See Silver jackal and Rooi jakhals.

Jackal.—A piece of Hottentot attire depending in front from the thong or belt generally worn round the waist, just as the Staart-riem (q.v.) does behind. It is so called because it is generally made from the skin of the jackal.

"This covering consists of a bag or flap made of skin. . . . They call this purse by the Dutch name of *Jackall.*" (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 185, 1785.)

"It was not possible for the motion of the limbs to be less impeded by clothing, as he wore nothing more than his *jackal.*" (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 64, 1824.)

Jackal buzzard.—*Buteo jakal.* So called because its cry strikingly resembles that of the common jackal. See Jackal vogel.

"A neighbour of ours (Mr. Joseph Wilmot) saw one of these birds (*Jackal buzzard*) doing battle with a large snake. After watching this singular affray for some time he went to the spot to see what snake the bird was fighting with and found a large 'ringtals' (!) quite 'hors de combat'." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 27, 1875-84.)

"The *Jackal Buzzard* (*buteo jakal*) is fairly common

throughout South Africa." (Haagner and Ivy's " Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 58, 1908.)

Jackal's besjes.—(D. *bezie*, a berry.) The fruit of *Sideroxylon inerme, L.*

Jackal's kost.—(D. *kost*, victuals, food.) *Hydnora Africana.* An offensively smelling plant, parasitic on the roots of *Euphorbia.*

" Further along the coast at the foot of Sugar-loaf Hill is found the curious *Hydnora Africana* or *Jackal's kost* growing parasitically on the roots of the *Euphorbia caputmedusæ.*" (Noble's " The Cape and its People," p. 259, 1869.)

" Not a few solved the problem as some higher beings have done since, by making others work for them—the mistletoe and loranthus, the dodder and *Jakhal's kos* (*Hydnora*) are examples of this class, and, be it noted, they bear the marks of their laziness on their own degenerate bodies." (" East London Dispatch," p. 8, 29 March, 1912.)

Jackal vogel.—(D. *vogel*, a bird, fowl.) See Jackal buzzard.

" Sometime after a *Jackal vogel's* nest came to view, built on the top of a large tree, which grew out of the face of a perpendicular and lofty ' kranz ' or precipice." (Fleming's " Southern Africa," p. 380, 1856.)

Jackass penguin.—See Penguin. So named from the strange noise which it makes, very much like the braying of a donkey.

" This species is known to seafaring men as the *Jackass penguin ;* and its most favourite resorts are the Ichaboe, Mercury, Hollanisbird, and Possession Islands." (Andersson's " Birds of Damaraland," p. 348, 1872.)

Jack hanger.—*Lanius collaris.* This designation has reference to the bird's habit of hanging his captures on thorns until they are to his taste. See Butcher bird and Fiscal.

" The butcher bird, called by the colonists *Jack hanger*, likes to eat his game high . . . small birds, beetles, locusts, etc., impaled on the long stiff thorns, form his well-stocked larder." (Martin's " Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 252, 1890.)

Jacky hangman.—Natal name for the above bird.

" The boys call it *Johnny Hangman* from the extraordinary habit it has . . . of impaling its prey after killing it, on the thorns." (Woodward's " Birds of Natal," p. 40, 1899.)

Jag.—(D. *jagen*, to hunt, chase.) To hunt, pursue, give chase.

"I directed Cobus to ride round and *jag* them up to me." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 119, 1850.)

"These being very wild I *yached* them on the Boer principle." (*Ibid.* II. p. 373.)

Jagziekte.—(D. *jagen*, to hunt; *ziekte*, sickness.) Chronic catarrhal pneumonia in sheep is thus designated, the panting of the animal making it look as if it had been hunted.

"In the later stages the poor beast stands with its ribs fixed and flanks heaving, panting for breath, hence the Dutch name *jagziekte* or droning sickness." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 526, 1905.)

Jakob Evertsen.—*Sebastes capensis, Cuv.* A highly prized fish, named, it is said, after a ship's captain of the early days, who had a very red face and projecting eyes, the fish bearing a likeness to him in these particulars. The Japan and Amboyna fishes of the same name—see first two quotations—must belong to other species. Kolben quotes Francisci's account of the origin of the name, and then adds: "Der neue Name allenthalbenaus gebreitet wurde. Die Einwohner des Vorgebürges, welchen den Evertsen gar wohl kannten, hielten ihn für gar wol ausgesonnen, und also wurde es garbald in verschiedenen Indianischen Compagnien eingeführt, woselbst man die rothen Brassen nimmer anders heisset, als Jacob Evertsen." ("Beschreibung," p. 369, 1745.) See Karl grootoog.

"Three of them came on board . . . to sell us fish . . . amongst others red steenbrassem, salammets, and *Jacobs Ewertzen.*" (Kaempfer's "History of Japan, 1690-2," Reprint, I. p. 12.)

"There is likewise, it is said, a large fish near the pierhead at Amboyna, to which the name of *Jakob Evertsen* has been given, and they pretend that it takes away one man every year." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," II. p. 352, 1798.)

"Abundance of excellent fish are to be procured here such as the delicious Roman fish, Hottentot, *Jacob fever.*" (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 88, 1873.)

"Called *Jacob Evertsen*, after a Dutch captain remarkable for a red face and large, projecting eyes." (Pappe's "Edible Fishes of the Cape of Good Hope," p. 10, 1866.)

Jakob Zwart.—(D. *zwart*, black.) The Jeffrey's Bay name of the Rooi stompneus (q.v.).

Jamboes.—(Mal. "*jambu*, a common name for several fruit trees of different genera" (Crawford). "The Sanskrit name Jambu is, in the Malay language, applied with distinguishing adjectives to all the species" (Eugenia). (Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary".) See the Rose-apple.

Janblom.—A huge frog is so named by the Dutch.

"The shriek of the loorie, the metallic croaking of the *Jan blom frog*." ("Cape Times," p. 9, 17 September, 1912.)

Jan Frederik.—*Cossypha caffra*. Onomatopoetic name of the Cape red-breast.

"The male sings very pleasantly, and his notes have been likened to the following differently intoned syllables, *Jan Fredric-dric-dric-fredric*, whence its colonial name of *Jan Fredric*." (Andersson's "Birds of Damaraland," p. 119, 1872.)

"You may see and hear the lively, inquisitive *Jan Frederic* thrush, with his pleasing song and his curious note—*Jan Fredric-dric-dric-fredric*." (Bryden's "Tales of South Africa," p. 109, 1896.)

Jan groentje.—The name given to the exquisite little Sugar-birds (q.v.) which "like emeralds feathered in flame" hover over the flowers of garden and bush.

"There is a reason . . . and a very cogent one, for *Jan groentje* to wear a fine coat." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 2 April, 1909.)

Janklass or **Jakklaas.**—A corruption of the Dutch jakhals, jackal.

Jan tadental.—See Tarantall.

Jantji trap-zoetjes.—(D. *trappen*, to tread; *zoetjes*, gently, softly.) An appropriate name for the slow-moving chameleon, "Johnny go-lightly". See Verkleurmannetje.

Japanese Quince.—The name given in South Africa to *Cydonia Japonica*, which with its brilliant flowers makes a fine show in the garden in winter.

Jawoord.—(G. *jawort*, consent.) Acquiescence, consent.

Jekkert.—(D. *jekker*, a coat.) A coat, jacket.

Jersey lily.—*Nerine Sarniensii*, *Herb.*, sometimes called the Guernsey lily—a beautiful Amaryllid native on Table Mountain.

Jerusalem oak.—*Chenopodium Botrys*, *L.* An alien plant naturalized and known by this name in the Transvaal.

Jerusalem pony.—A euphemism for *Cimex lectularius*—bed-bug.

Jeukbol.—(D. *jeuken*, to itch; *bol*, a bulb.) *Idothea ciliaris, Kth.* The bulb is dried and used as an emetic.

Jig-a-jig.—Under this name Queenstown boys eat the bulb of a small liliaceous plant—*Dipcadi hyacinthoides, Baker.* See Curly curly.

Jigger.—*Sarcopsylla penetrans.* The West Indian chigoe was introduced into Africa via the Guinea Coast some years ago; it seems to have made its way right across the Continent, and to be travelling southward. Stanley gives an interesting account of its African journeyings in the Introduction to Decle's "Three Years in Savage Africa" (xxi, 1898). The female burrows under the skin of the feet, often under the toe-nail, and becoming considerably distended with eggs occasions great pain, and, if not properly attended to, may occasion the loss of the toe or foot.

"They told me that now I had returned the locusts and the *jigger* would flee away, and their land would be at rest." (Scott Elliot's "Naturalist in Mid Africa," p. 258, 1896.)

"We hear that the *jigger*, an insect the size of a pin's head, is invading South Africa, and is now as far as Beira." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 448, 1897.)

Jimmy.—A recently arrived emigrant is thus designated in Natal.

"A raw emigrant and what Natalians call a *Jimmy*." (Aylward's "The Transvaal of To-day," p. 216, 1878.)

Job's tears.—(1) The hard involucres of *Coix lachryma* have received this poetic designation. (2) *Cyanotis* (*Tradescantia*) also blossoms for a day and then perishes, or "dissolves in tears," whence it is known as "Job's tears". (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 183, 1906.)

John Brown.—*Gymnocrotaphus curvideus.* See Tambrijn.

John dory.—*Zeus capensis*, a near relative of the European fish of the same name—*Zeus faber*.

Jointed cactus.—*Opuntia pusilla*, a dangerous weed; it is a near relative of the prickly pear, and threatens to become a great pest.

Jonas klip.—(D. *klip*, rock.) Dolomite is so called in Bechuanaland.

"It is stated where *Jonas klip* (dolomite) is present the disease (lamziekte) will occur." ("S.A. Agric. Jour.," p. 39, July, 1912.)

Jong.—(D. *jong*, young, a young one.) In the Cape Colony this word was originally applied to young male slaves; but now throughout South Africa it is applied to young men indiscriminately, and often by girls to girls. See Klong and Ou' Jong.

"Tied his *jong*, or young bushman slave, to the wheel of his wagon, where he was severely flogged." (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 253, 1846.)

"These slaves were called *yungs* or 'boys,' and to this day the Bastaards, when asked what they are, will say, 'Ek es ein yung' (I am a yung or boy)." (Farini's "Through the Kalahari Desert," p. 279 n., 1886.)

"Presently a couple of *jongs* came along with dainty cigarettes in their mouths." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 13 February, 1912.)

Joseph or **Josvisch.**—*Callorhyncus antarticus.* How the fish came by its trivial name is not clear. Dr. Gilchrist ("History of the Local Names of Cape Fish") suggests that "it may be a corruption of 'Jood's visch' or 'Jews' fish'". The fishermen of the Cape suggest that the name is derived from the brilliant and varied colours of the living fish. See Rabbit fish and Elephant fish.

"Among the various sorts of fish that appeared on the tables at the Cape were the *Chimæra callorhyncus* (Dodskop or *Joseph*), the flesh of which is white and well tasted; and the *Raja miraletus* (or Rock)." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 295, 1795.)

Juffer or **Juffrouw.**—(D. *juffer*; cf. G. *Jungfer*, *Jungfrau*, maiden, miss.) This word is commonly used in Cape Dutch when speaking of or addressing a married woman; the etymological significance of the first syllable has so far disappeared that a maiden is spoken of or addressed as jonge-juffrouw. Juffer is equivalent to the English "mistress".

Jummers.—(D. *immer*, always, evermore.) Again and again, repeatedly.

Jump, To.—(1) A process by which a "Claim" (q.v.) on the Diamond Fields, if not worked for a certain period, might be legally appropriated by the first person who desires to have it. (2) The word has now, as a slang term, a much more ex-

tended application, and refers to the wrongful appropriation of another person's property.

"Five thousand bricks were *jumped* the other night from . . .'s brickyard at Klipdrift." ("Queenstown Free Press," 18 August, 1871.)

"He told me he had *jumped* the claim six weeks ago, and had no cause to curse his luck. I don't know that I have explained this term *jumping*. When a digger vacated his claim for eight consecutive days, not putting pick in it nor sorting stuff, it became 'jumpable' by the old committee rules, and the first man who noticed its idleness might take it over." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 165, 1873.)

"But ivory is not now so difficult to procure, and land so much more scarce and less easily *jumped*." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 234, 1889.)

Jumpers.—Those who entered into the occupation of vacated claims under the above regulation.

Jumping seeds or eggs.—The seed capsules of *Excœcaria reticulata* are sometimes found inhabited by the larvæ of a small moth—probably *Carpocapsa saltitans*. These capsules, when fallen from the tree, may sometimes be observed to jump to a considerable height, the result of the vigorous movements of the insect inside. Similar jumping seeds have been observed both in Natal and in the neighbourhood of Cape Town.

"These are the only *jumping seeds* of which I had heard until I met with those of Natal." (Wesley, "Naturalist," III. p. 22, 1889.)

"Having seen an account in 'Science Gossip' for August of a *jumping seed* found at Beaufort West, I thought a note on the so-called jumping 'eggs' found round Cape Town might be of sufficient interest for insertion in the 'Scientific African'." ("Scientific African," p. 28, December, 1894.)

Kaaiman.—The word appears to be of American origin, and outside of South Africa it is applied generally to the large saurians of America, and occasionally to those of the Eastern hemisphere; but among the Dutch of South Africa it is applied, not as one would expect to a crocodile, but to a small lizard, though Backhouse seems to use it of the Legavaan (q.v.).

"We saw a young *Kaimon* swimming in the river; it was of a species that attains to four feet in length, and which climbs in the bushes by the river side and catches birds, etc." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 237, 1844.)

Kaaiman bloemen.—(D. *bloem*, a flower.) The sweet-scented flower *Nymphæa stellata, Willd.*, the blue one. Riversdale name.

Kaalblad.—(D. *kaal*, bald, bare; cf. Eng. callow; *blad*, leaf.) The variety of the prickly pear (*Opuntia*), the leaves of which are almost bare of thorns. Whether this is really a variety or only a "sport" is not quite clear; it appears to revert very quickly to the prickly type. The combination of "epitaphs" in the second quotation is particularly fine.

"The *kaalblad* is not only safe but the birds evince a decided liking for its leaves and fruit." ("Queenstown Free Press," 4 September, 1877.)

"Select a farm that has on it especially plenty of spec boom, and *carl prickly pear*." (Douglas' "Ostrich Farming," p. 66, 1881.)

"The *Kaal-blad* is a 'sport' of the 'prickly pear,' but the seeds yield for the most part the original prickly pear." ("Handbook of the South African Exhibition," p. 290, 1885.)

"One kind—the *kahl-blad* or 'bald-leaf' has no thorns." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 57, 1890.)

Kaalgare.—(D. *kabel*, cable; *garen*, thread, yarn; *kabel-garen*, rope-yarn.) The tarred rope-yarn used to bind the reeds when thatching.

Kaalkop.—(D. *kaal*, bare, bald; *kop*, a head.) (1) A bald head. (2) By hunters it is applied to a tuskless elephant.

"The bush was very good, a moderate breeze of wind which I kept always below, but I had great difficulty in getting the bull out from the company of the *carl-kop* (naked head)." (Baldwin's "African Hunting," p. 301, 1894.)

Kaal laagte.—(D. *kaal*, bare, bald; *laagte*, a valley.) A valley or hollow bare of vegetation.

Kaal perske.—(D. *kaal*, bare, bald; *perzik*; G. *Pfirsch*; F. *pèche*, a peach; from the Lat. *persicum*, the fruit of the persicus or *persica arbor*, peach tree.) The Cape Dutch name for the nectarine.

Kaam-besjes.—(Hot. * *kamab*, the hartebeest; *bezie*, a berry.) *Pappea capensis, E. and Z.*, also called Wilde pruimen (q.v.). The fruit resembles a plum, has a pleasant taste, and makes a refreshing beverage and good vinegar. See also Kaffir plum.

"*Sapindus Pappea (Sond.)*. . . . The fruit called 'wilde preume, oliepitten, wilde amandel, *t'kaambesje*,' is edible,

and a bland oil is expressed from the seeds." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 241, 1859-60.)

Kaapenaar.—A resident of Cape Town or of the Cape Peninsula.

"The *Capenaars* have always attempted to justify the holding of human flesh in bondage by appeals to Scripture." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," IV. p. 180, November, 1834.)

"He was a *Kaapenaar*, came to the country in 1868 in the humble capacity of cook and valet to the chief." (Dower's "Early Annals of Kokstad," p. 99, 1902.)

Kaapenaar.—The Port Elizabeth name for the fish *Dentex argyrozona*, known at Cape Town as the silver fish.

Kaaps.—(D. *kaap*, a cape.) Used by the Cape Dutch of anything South African.

Kaapsche nooitje.—(D. *kaap*, a cape; C.D. *nooi*, a young woman.) The Riversdale and Knysna name for the Pompelmoosje (q.v.).

Kaapsche wolf slang.—(D. *slang*, a snake.) *Lycophidium capense*.

Kaarshout.—(D. *kaars*, a candle; *hout*, word.) According to Sim ("Forest Flora") this is another name for *Gardenia Rothmannia*. See Aapsekost. But the name is universally applied to *Pterocelastris variabilis, Sond.*, which is very resinous.

Kabaai.—("This word seems to be one of those which the Portuguese received in older times from the Arabic (*kaba*, a vesture). By them it was introduced into India, thence to the Malay countries, and is in common use in Java. . . . It has become familiar in Dutch from its use in Java."—Yule and Burnell.) The word came to the Cape in the old Dutch East India Company's days and is applied to a sort of dressing-gown or pyjamas.

"There was here an Ambassador who had brought Hidalcan a very rich *Cabaya* . . . which he would not accept of, for that thereby he would not acknowledge himself subject to the Turk." (Cogan's "Voyages and Adventures of Ferdinand Mendez," done into English by H. E. Gent, pp. 10-11, 1653.)

"He takes his solitary cup of coffee or sopie or both, and smokes his pipe, then lounges about the house in his slaapmutz and *nagt-cabaay*, his night-cap and gown." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 104, 1801.)

Kabeljauw.—(D. *kabeljauw*, a cod, codfish.) *Sciæna*

aquila is known by this name in the Cape Colony; in Natal, however, it is known as the Cape salmon (q.v.).

"A pleasant river called *Cableows* River, from a fish which goes by that name, and which is a species of cod, being found near its mouth." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 80, 1789.)

"We got a great prize in a stranded *cabaljao*, fifty pounds weight, like a huge salmon." (Alexander's "Expedition," II. p. 83, 1838.)

"The Natal 'Cape salmon' . . . proves to be our well-known and very common *Kabeljaauw*, called for briefness 'cob' or 'kob' (*Sciæna aquila*). This fish is very widely distributed, and is not rare on the British coast, where it is known as 'meagre'." ("East London Dispatch," 26 June, 1906.)

Kaboe mealies.—(Kaf. *i Qubu*, a heap of Kaffir corn before it is winnowed; anything done stealthily or in haste.) Mealies stripped from the cob and boiled without removing the skin.

"They gave me something to eat, just what they had ready —*kaboe mealies* (boiled maize)." (Kestell's "Through Shot and Flame," p. 14, 1903.)

Kaduks.—(F. *caduc*, decrepit, decayed; Lat. *caducus*, frail, perishable.) Weak, decrepit, to live poorly.

Kaffir.—(Ar. *Kāfir*, an infidel, an unbeliever in Islam.) The Arabs applied this word to the negroes of the interior; from them it was adopted by the early Portuguese navigators, our countrymen in turn taking it over from them, and subsequently applying it specially to the Bantu tribes of South East Africa. This term, like the term Hottentot, is entirely unknown in the language of the people to whom it is thus specifically applied, and I have known it to be vigorously repudiated by them as a national designation.

Raw or Red Kaffir, the latter sometimes shortened to Reds, are designations applied to these peoples in their uncivilized condition; the epithet "red" having reference to the red clay or ochre with which they smear themselves. A School Kaffir is one who has been brought under the influence of the Christian missionary, or has been taught at one of the schools established for that purpose.

"He learnt that the whole people of the island of S. Lorenzo . . . were black *Cafres* with curly hair like those of Mozambique." ("Barros," II. i. 1, 1552.)

"Nunmehro sind wir bey dem Lande von Natal angelangt, welches die *Kaffern* oder *Caffern* bewohnem." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 74, 1745.)

"Fear made them imagine that they saw *Caffres* everywhere." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 282, 1796.)

"Last night seven of the *School Kaffirs* with their families decamped." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," p. 508, 1852.)

"The *Reds* have been largely influenced." (Cook's "Mission Tour," p. 93, 1893.)

"The *Red Kaffir* is in truth a savage." (Ballantyne's "Six Months at the Cape," p. 44, 1879.)

Kaffir almanac.—A species of *Hæmanthus* is so called in Natal, because the Zulus sow their mealies when this plant is in flower.

Kaffir-boom.—(D. *boom*, a tree.) *Erythrina caffra.* A winter-flowering species of leguminous "coral tree". "The scarlet blossomed ornament of the mid-winter landscape." See Kaffrarian pea.

"I frequently noticed the *Erythrina caffra*, or corallodendron (called by the colonists *Cafferboom*)." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 36, 1840.)

"The *Kaffir-booms*, with their magnificent scarlet flowers, look gorgeous when growing, as they habitually do, among the boulders." (Balfour's "Twelve Hundred Miles in a Waggon," p. 170, 1895.)

Kaffir-bread tree.—*Encephalartos altensteinii*, a species of *Cycadaceæ.* The name is applied to other members of the same family, because it is said, in times of scarcity, the Kaffirs ate the nutty flavoured seeds.

"Two plants of the palm tribe were frequently met with, one the Zamia cycadis or *Kaffir's bread-tree*, growing on the plains." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 189, 1801.)

"Our local Cycads, known to science by the generic name *Encephalartos*, are commonly called *Kaffir-bread*, 'bread fruit tree,' 'bread-palm' or simply 'palm'. A few of the more knowing call them zamias, the name of an allied genus not found in South Africa." ("East London Dispatch," 24 December, 1908.)

Kaffir chestnut.—The fruit of *Brabejum stellatifolium* is sometimes so called. See Wild almond.

Kaffir chief.—*Coliopasser procne;* this bird is known also as the Long-tailed finch (q.v.), and in Natal as the Sakabula.

Kaffir circus.—A slang name for the market on the Stock Exchange, where transactions in South African land, mining, and other stocks are carried on.

Kaffir corn.—*Andropogon sorghum, Brot.* Next to the mealie, this is the most important native-grown grain, and is largely employed in the concoction of Kaffir beer.

"Several of the English settlers had at different times planted considerable quantities of *Kaffir-corn.*" (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 144, 1833.)

"Utshuala, a fermented liquor made from the grain of the amabale, or *Kaffir-corn.*" (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 217, 1852.)

Kaffir or **Hottentot cherry.**—*Maurocenia capensis.* The name given to the fruit of this shrub. See Aasvogels besjes and Hottentot cherry.

"The Kaffir apple, *Hottentot cherry* (Aasvogels besjes or vulture's berries, as the Boers call it) . . . blossomed on every side." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 330, 1889.)

Kaffir crane.—See Mahem. The name is sometimes given to *Bugeranus carunculatus* also. See Wattled crane.

Kaffir doctor.—See Doctor.

Kaffir doorn.— In the Riversdale District this name is given to several species of *Lycium.*

Kaffir druiven.—(D. *druif*, a grape.) *Pollichia campestris, Ait.* A Sterkstroom name.

Kaffir fink.—*Calliopasser procne.* See Kaffir chief.

Kaffir gods.—I have not been able to identify these flowers.

"It graphically pictured the tawny *Kaffir gods* rising on slender stems, with soft, rich petals flaming in the long grass." ("Cape Times," Weekly Ed., 11 March, 1903.)

> And where will you find such beauty
> At the close of a hunter's day
> As in a klump of *Kaffir gods*
> Where wandering sun-beams stray?

Kaffir jack.—An Eastern Province name for the Common hornbill. See Toucan.

"The nasal whistle of the common hornbill or *Kaffir jack* is almost certain to come from various quarters." ("East London Dispatch," 4 August, 1906.)

Kaffirland.—The territory formerly occupied by the Kaffirs, with a sea-board of 250 miles eastward from the Great Fish River.

"The elephants in this colony are now become more wary, withdrawing . . . far up the country on the north side of Visch-river and into *Cafferland.*" (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 335, 1785.)

"*Kaffirland,* a country of mountain, of forest, and of kloof." (Godlonton's "Case of the Colonists," p. 71, 1845.)

Kaffir orange.—The Natal name for the fruit of *Strychnos spinosa, Lam.* The shell is hard, the seeds poisonous, but the pulp surrounding the seeds is thought by some to be pleasant. See also Clapper, Gulugulu, Wooden and Wild orange.

"The *Kaffir orange* of the sea-coast bush is a *strychnos,* and has strychnine in its seeds." (Mann's "Natal," p. 159, 1859.)

"A kind of strychnia, called the *Kaffir orange* . . . the seeds had better be rejected." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South East Africa," p. 9, 1877.)

Kaffir piano.—A native musical instrument—the marimba. It is made of flat bars of hard wood fastened across a frame, beneath which a number of calabash shells are fixed. The bars of wood when struck emit sounds that are not at all unmusical. The instrument is sometimes called the "Calabash piano".

"The song had a rapidly played accompaniment on the *Kaffir piano.*" (Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay," p. 253, 1891.)

"They manufacture excellent earthen pots for cooking food. With an instrument called a *calabash piano* they make a rude kind of music." (Whiteside's "New Geography of South Africa," p. 73, 1890.)

Kaffir plum.—The fruit of *Odina caffra.* This is a handsome tree growing in the kloofs and forests; the fruit is not unlike an acorn in shape and size, the colour is a bright red, the flavour sub-acid, and the stone large. Backhouse gives this name to the *Kaam besje* (q.v.).

"I visited a steep wood . . . to see the tree known in the colony by the name of pruim or *Caffer-plum, Pappea capensis.*" (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 205, 1844.)

"Seein' him about reminded me of the *Kaffir plums.*" (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 18, 1897.)

Kaffirs.—The slang name on the London Stock Exchange of the various South African land, mining, and other stocks.

"There has been a substantial rise in *Kaffirs* during the

last few days." ("The Empire," p. 25, 12 December, 1897.)

Kaffir slangen wortel.—(D. *slang*, a snake; *wortel*, a root.) *Polygala serpentaria, E. and Z.* The roots of this plant are regarded by the natives as a certain cure for snake-bite.

"According to Ecklon and Zeyher, confirmed by Dr. Pappe, the root is a Caffir remedy for the bite of serpents, whence the specific name, and the colonial *Kaffir schlagen* (!) *wortel.*" ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 93, 1859-60.)

Kaffir sorrel.—*Pelargonium scutatum, Sweet.* The astringent sap of the leaves is used to relieve sore throat.

Kaffir tea.—*Helichrysum nudifolium, Less.*, is so designated in Kaffraria; but in Natal the name is given to another plant, *Athrixia capensis.*

"An indigenous herb both nutritive and refreshing, which is known to us as *Kaffir tea* (*Athrixia phylicifolia*)." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 96, 1899.)

Kaffirtjes.—The Riversdale name for *Wurmbea capensis, Thun.* The flowers are nearly black.

Kaffir truck.—The beads, cotton blankets, brass wire, arm and finger rings, and other articles in demand among the natives, are known collectively as *Kaffir truck.*

"This portion of South Africa is dependent entirely on the P.M. Berg traders for . . . *Caffre truck.*" (Mason's "Life with the Zulus," p. 133, 1855.)

"Glass, beads, knives, scissors, needles, thread, small looking-glasses—such are the chief staples of *Kaffir truck.*" (Robinson's "A Life Time in South Africa," p. 279, 1900.)

Kaffir water-melon.—*Citrullus vulgaris, var.* This plant is a native of the Eastern coastal districts. See Bitter melon and Tsama water melon. The Kaffirs call the melon *um Xoxozi.*

Kaffraria.—This name seems to have been applied at one time to the whole of the territory from the Great Fish River to Delagoa Bay, including, that is, Natal and Zululand. Subsequently the country from the Great Fish River to the River Umtata was thus designated. Now, however, it is generally employed of the territory that was embraced by British Kaffraria, lying between the Keiskama and the Kei Rivers. The whole of this country—including British Kaffraria and the Transkeian Territories—is splendidly watered and is one

of the most fertile regions of South Africa. Its rivers are numerous, a few of them fairly large, but none of them of much use for navigation. Its forests, along the Amatolas, contain magnificent trees, supplying good timber; while all along its coast, the land and the climate are both alike favourable to the cultivation of almost any kind of fruit, field, or garden produce.

"*Caffraria*, a country of Africa of large extent. It lies from the kingdom of Angola in the north to the Cape of Good Hope, and is bounded east, west, and south with the ocean; the south-eastern part is fruitful and well peopled; the rest barren, mountainous, and little peopled. The inhabitants are so barbarous that they are called by this name from their rude way of living, which signifies the lawless people; they were all heretofore man-eaters, and many of them continue such to this day. They call themselves Hottentots. Mr. Herbert, an Englishman, who was in these parts, will scarcely allow them to be perfect men; and saith they sell man's flesh in the shambles." ("Geographical Dictionary, very necessary for the right understanding of all modern histories." By Edmund Bohun, Esq., London. Printed for Charles Brome at the Gun, at the West End of St. Pauls, 1691.)

"The term *Kaffraria* has sometimes been applied to the whole territory lying between the Great Fish River and Delagoa Bay. . . . But from this point (the Umtata) to the Great Fish River is properly designated Kaffraria." (Smith's "Sketches," "Wesleyan Methodist Magazine," p. 56, 1849.)

Kaffrarian pea.—The seed of the Kaffir boom (q.v.). I have never known the Kaffirs to use the seed of this tree as an article of food as suggested by Mr. Friend in the following quotation; they make ornaments of them by stringing them together like beads. The tree is known to the Kaffirs as *um Sintsi.*

"Another writer speaking of the *Erythrina* or Coral trees says that they have been named from the vivid scarlet colour (ἐρυθρὸς) of their splendid blossoms. The seeds of one kind are called *Caffrarian peas* by Barrow, probably because those people used to eat them as such." (Friend's "Flowers and Flower Lore," p. 524, 1886.) [What Barrow really says is: "But one of the largest and most showy trees, and at this time in the height of its bloom, was the *Kaffirs' bean tree*

—the *Erythrina corallodendron.*" ("Travels," I. p. 188, 1801.)]

Kains.—(D. *kaan,* animal fat rendered down.) The browned pieces of skin remaining after the internal fat of an animal has been melted out; these are eaten cold with a little salt and are highly esteemed. In my young days the same thing was known in East Kent by the name of browsels or brownsels.

Kajaten hout.—*Strychnos Atherstonei.* See Cape teak.

Kakelaar.—(D. *kakelen,* to chatter.) *Irrisor viridis.* This bird has a loud and harsh voice—hence the name. See Monkey bird.

"Its voice is harsh and resounding, and has acquired for it the name of *Kackela* among the Dutch, which signifies the 'Chatterer'." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 137, 1875-84.)

Kalander.—See Calander.

"Kalanders uit Koren te hou. Sit enige stukke wilde dagga tusschen di koren in di sakke." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 98, 1898.)

Kalbas.—The Cape Dutch form of the word "calabash".

Kalbasdop.—A jocular term for the head.

Kalbassies.—A designation sometimes given to the mumps. See Pampoentjes.

Kalk gras.—(D. *kalk,* lime, chalk.) *Fingerhuthia africana, Lehm.,* a Bechuanaland name for this grass.

Kalkoen.—(Shortened form of *Kalikoenschen haan* or *hen,* a turkey-cock or hen; this is derived from the name Calicut, the city whence the bird was supposed to have been brought.) A turkey.

Kalkoeneier.—(D. *ei,* an egg.) A person with a freckled face is jocularly so called, the reference being to the spotted appearance.

Kalkoengift.—(D. *kalkoen,* a turkey; *gift,* poison.) *Physalis minima, L.*

Kalkoentje.—*Macronyx capensis* and in Natal *M. croceus* are known by this name; the former is also called the Cut-throat lark (q.v.). They have a gamey scent sufficiently strong to mislead dogs.

"This handsome pipit, which is called the 'Cut-throat lark' by the English colonists, *Kalkoentje* by the Dutch, is common throughout all the open country of the Colony."

(Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 530, 1875-84.)

Kalkoentje.—The western province name of *Gladiolus alatus.* In Namaqualand *Gladiolus alatus, Linn. var. β. namaquensis, Ker.*, is so styled. But in the Riversdale District the name is given to *Tritoma crosata, Ker.*

"*Kalkoentjes* and patrijsjes are good names for some flowers, if one understands Dutch." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 107, 1906.)

Kalk-visch.—*Lepidopus argyreus.* See Scabbard fish.

Kalmus.— (Lat. *calamus ;* Gk. *κάλαμος*, a cane or reed.) The Cape Dutch have given this name to *Alepidea amatybica,* one of the *Umbelliferæ.* The root is finely powdered and administered in small doses for stomachic pains. It is known to the Kaffirs as *i Qwile.*

"De kastoor-olieboom (*Ricinus communis*), de aloë, stramonium (*Datura stramonis*), *kalmus* en andere planten groeien in het wild, terwijl de inboorlingen van kruiden en wortelen gebruik maken, die in de pharmacopeia kwalijk bij name bekend zijn." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 342, 1882.)

Kalotjes.—(D. *kalot,* a skull cap ; F. *calotte.*) (1) A small cap. (2) Ixias—the popular name of these pretty wild flowers.

"*Kalossies* from pale yellow to bright orange, with black centre, or whole flowers metallic blue." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 241, 1902.)

Kalver bosje.—(D. *kalf,* calf ; *bos,* bush, shrub.) *Pelargonium sidoides, D.C.* This species which is not described in the *Flora capensis* has reddish coloured roots possessing an agreeable scent.

Kalver-kop.—(D. *kalf,* calf ; *kop,* head.) The Berg River name of a fish.

Kama.—(Hot. * *ameb,* with initial lateral click. The Namaqua name of a Buchu bush used in the preparation of skins.) The name given to a karoo plant (Order *Ficoideæ*), the fleshy, juicy leaves of which are used in the preparation of skins for karosses, voorslag, and other uses.

"I told the man to take off the skins (ostrich) and prepare them. . . . He first pressed them into *kama* (a soft, salt, juicy bush) for about a week, then he brayed the skins and finally put them into mimosa bark. . . . I can assure you it made

good shoe leather, especially the leg parts." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 8 October, 1912.)

Kamassiwood.—*Gonioma Kamassi, Mey.*

" The Knysna export under the name of Boxwood was all, or mostly, *Kamassiwood,* without any Boxwood." (Sim's " Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 323, 1907.)

Kambaroo.—Several species of *Fockea,* which are eaten raw by the natives and made into preserve by the farmers' wives, are so called.

" 'Have you seen a Cape *Kamaroo?'* asked the doctor, 'that enormous plant of milky tubers, of which locally, by the way, we make an alluring komfyt?' . . . The Kew Gardens *Kamaroo* weighs over 141 lb." (" East London Dispatch," p. 10, 27 July, 1912.)

Kameel.—(D. *kameel,* a camel.) The Cape Dutch name of the *Camelopardalis giraffa.*

"De giraffe, *kameel* geheeten, wordt aangetroffen in het Boschveld, tusschen de Olifante-rivier en den Limpopo." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 344, 1882.)

" Rather suddenly we came upon a klompje of giraffe, and as . . . we wanted meat, I rammed the spurs in and galloped headlong for the *kameels.*" (Bryden's "Tales of South Africa," p. 70, 1896.)

Kameel doorn.—(D. *doorn,* thorn, brier.) *Acacia giraffæ, Burch.* One of the largest of the Acacias is so named by the Dutch.

"A large solitary tree of *Kameel-doorn* (camel thorn, or tree upon which the Camelopardalis generally browses), the first I had seen of the species, was standing there." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 453, 1822.)

Kamferfoeli.—(D. *kamperfoeli,* the honeysuckle; this is a corruption of the Latin *caprifolium.* The Cape form of the word seems to have been influenced by the well-known kamferboom, camphor tree.) The woodbine or honeysuckle.

Kamma.—(Hot. * *gami* (lateral click), water.) The word often occurs in aboriginal place names; e.g. Kraggakamma, Sapkamma, Tsitsikamma, etc.

Kammetjes.—(D. *kam,* a comb.) *Freesia refracta, Klatt.,* is so called in the Riversdale District, the reference being to the comb-like arrangement of the flowers.

Kammassie-hout.—(D. *hout,* wood.) *Celastrus ellipticus.*

"An erect, greyish shrub, called *Kammassie-hout* by the colonists." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 459, 1859-60.)

Kanalje.—(F. *cannaille*, rabble, mob; L. *canis*, a dog.) As used in Cape Dutch this word means a rogue, a rascal.

Kanaribijter.—(D. *kanarievogel*, a canary bird; *bijten*, to bite.) Another name for the Butcher bird (q.v.).

"The loud and clear whistle of the *canari-byter* (canary biter), a species of Lanius is heard from afar." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 18, 1822.)

Kaneel.—(F. *cannelle*, cinnamon; dim. of *canne*, Lat. *canna*, a cane, reed. Cf. Wycliffe, N.T., Apoc. XVIII. 13, *canel*, cinnamon.) The Cape Dutch name for cinnamon.

Kaneelbloem.—(F. *cannelle*, cinnamon; D. *bloem*, a flower.) *Ixia cinnamomea* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 57, 1823) = *Hesperantha cinnamonea, Ker.*

Kaneeltjes.—A wild flower is so called because of its cinnamon-like scent.

Kanker-blaren.—(D. *kanker*, cancer; *blad* (pl. *bladeren*), a leaf.) *Ranunculus pinnatus, Poir.* The Dutch use the fresh juice of this plant for ulcers, etc.—hence the name.

"One of them (*R. pinnatus*) called *Kanker-blaren* is a colonial remedy for cancerous sores." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 6, 1859-60.)

Kanker boschje.—*Sutherlandia frutescens, R. Br.* is so named in the Riversdale District. See also Keurtjes.

"Di *Kanker-bossi* is ni alleen ver kanker goed ni, mar oek ver gewone maag kwale." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 124, 1898.)

Kanna.—(Hot. * *kan* * *ga* (with cerebral click before each word), adj. half-yellow, half-grey, the eland.) *Taurotragus oryx.* The Dutch form of the Hottentot name of this animal. See Eland.

"The eland, called *kanna* by the Hottentots, is a handsome animal of a stouter make than the other antelopes, yet still possessing much elegance, to which its straight, spiral horns, pointing backwards, and their legs in a great measure contribute." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 312, 1822.)

Kanna.—*Mesembryanthemum emarcidum* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 415, 1823), a Karoo plant = *Mesembryanthemum anatomicum, Haworth.*

Kannabosch.—*Salsola aphylla* and *S. foetida, Del.* Probably so named from being the chief food of the kanna or eland.

The ashes of this bush are used to make lye for soap boiling. The name is applied to several other plants also.

"A species of Mezembryanthemum, which is called *Channa* by the natives, and is exceedingly esteemed among them." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 23, 1789.)

"The plant alluded to was a species of salsola or salt-wort. It is known to the country people by the Hottentot name of *Canna*, and is that plant from the ashes of which almost all the soap that is made in the colony is made." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 91, 1801.)

"The *Kanna-bosch* (written *Ganna* by the Dutch) may probably have been considered as the favourite food of the kanna (eland)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 267, 1822.)

Kannaland.—The part of the colony lying between the little Zwaart Berg Range and Touws River, probably so called as being the habitat formerly of the kanna or eland.

"This is called the *Channa Land;* and derives its name from a species of Mezembryanthemum, which is called Channa by the natives, and is exceedingly esteemed among them." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 23, 1789.)

"The word *Kannaland*, the name of a part of the Cape Colony, may . . . be supposed to intend a country abounding either in the eland or in this shrub." (The kannabosch.) (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 267, 1822.)

Kannidood.—(D. *kan-niet-dood*, cannot die.) The popular designation of several varieties of aloe, especially *A. variegata;* it refers to the striking way in which these plants will exist and flourish for a long time apparently without sustenance.

"Here we find . . . several kinds of 'air plants,' *Canne doets* or aloes, and the 'Zoute bosche'." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I. Part I. p. 24, 1878.)

"Another excellent example of the efficiency of these protective arrangements is supplied by the so-called *Kan-niet dood* plants. . . . Suspended in the air, they economize the water and food materials originally contained in their leaves and stem so well that they are able not only to live a year or more, but also to produce flowers." (Edmonds and Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 125, 1897.)

"Di blare van'n *kan-ni-dood* warm maak, en'n gat daarin snyen di vinger daarin steek." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 118, 1898.)

Kanot grass.—(Z. *u Gonoti*, a thin stick which bends

easily; rattan; Kaf. *in Gonoti,* rattan, a reed.) *Flagellaria guineensis Schumach.*

"The bush on the coast is rendered impenetrable by a dense undergrowth of shrubs and climbers . . . or pliant monkey-ropes and *kanot grass.*" (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 446, 1868.)

"The materials consisted of wattles and the *konotie* tree-runner from the bush for tying." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 90, 1899.)

Kantoor.—(D. *kantoor,* a counting-house, office; F. *comptoir.*) A magistrate's or other office.

Kaparngs.—The wooden sandals worn by the Malays.

"The old coloured woman walking carefully in *kaproens.*" ("The State," p. 596, December, 1911.)

Kapater.—(Mansvelt recognizes this word as being related to D. *kapoen,* a capon, and *kappen,* to cut; but this can scarcely be all that is to be said upon the etymology of this curious word.) A castrated goat.

"She kindly invited us to supper, for which she had the head of a large *kirpater* bok." (Shaw's "Memorials," p. 126, 1841.)

"One of the biggest goats—a great blue '*kapater*' with long beard, massive horns." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 228, 1897.)

Kapitein visch.—(D. *kapitein,* captain; *visch,* fish.) *Clinus anguillaris.*

Kapje.—(D. *kap,* a cap, hood.) A useful article of female attire largely worn in the country; it is made to shade the face and to protect the back of the neck at the same time. It cannot be said to enhance in any way the appearance of the wearer.

"Upon their heads is tossed the *kapje* (cappy), a hideous calico funnel of which the coal-skuttle bonnet of our grandmothers was the refined and graceful model." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 327, 1873.)

Kapok.—(Mal. *kapuk,* the cotton tree, *Eriodendron anfractuosum; Kapas,* cotton.) (1) Cotton-wool is spoken of among the Dutch as kapok, as is also the woolly material which encloses the seed of a Karoo bush—*Eriocephalus umbellatus.* (2) The word is also used of snow. See Hottentotskooigoed.

"*Capok* is the denomination given to the cotton which

incloses the seed in the capsule of the silk-cotton-tree (*bombax pentandrum*), and is not used for spinning but for making mattrasses, bolsters and pillows. The other cotton is the produce of a perennial shrub (*gossypium herbaceum*). Its seed vessels contain a very fine cotton, called *capas*, which is woven into an infinite number of cotton and calico pieces." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 74 n., 1798.)

"Thans kan het hier koud worden. Tot mijne verbazing hoorde ik, dat op twee plaatsen reeds *kapok* gevallen was." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 206, 1890.)

"On the evening of this my first Sunday among the Griquas, it began to snow. . . . The storm lives in the memories of the older Griquas as *De groote kapok*, and the season of it was a time to date from: *De jaar van de groote kapok*." (Dower's "Annals of Kokstad," p. 25, 1902.)

Kapok-haantje.—(D. *haan*, a cock.) A Bantam cock. Then by metaphor a diminutive but pugnacious man. A Bantam hen is also known as the *Kapok-hennetje*.

Kapok vogeltje.—(D. *vogel*, a bird.) *Ægithalus minutus*. This is the smallest of the Cape birds; it owes its popular name to the fact that it builds its pretty and ingenious nest of wool or wild-cotton (*kapok*), which is woven so closely as to resemble white felt. The entrance to the nest can be closed by the inmates against snakes and other intruders. Adding to the ingeniousness of the contrivance, a small outside compartment is made just under the entrance, perhaps, as the natives declare, for the use of the male bird, but perhaps also to mislead egg-seeking snakes.

"The *capok-vogel* (cotton-bird) so called on account of its curious bottle-shaped nest, built of the cotton-like down of certain plants." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 214, 1822.)

"*Kapok-vogel*, the ingenious constructor of a wonderful nest, a good illustration of which appeared in 'Good Words' for August last." ("Scientific African," p. 76, 1896.)

Karanteen.—*Sargus cervinus*. The Natal name of this fish. See Gold stripes.

"The fish pictured to-day is a *Karantine*. It is a local species, and so far as I know has not been classified." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 334, 1905.)

Karba.—(Pers. *qarabah*, a large flagon.) A wicker-covered bottle, a demi-john. Cf. Eng. carboy with the same origin.

Kardoesi.—(D. *kardoes*, a cartridge; F. *cartouche; L. charta*). A paper bag, the paper cornet used by grocers.

Karl grootoog.—(D. *groot*, great; *oog*, an eye.) The Struis Bay name for *Sebastes capensis*. See Jakob Evertsen.

Karmasten.—(F. *gamaches; G. Gamaschen;* Eng. gamashes, gaiters, or leggings.) Gaiters, leggings.

Karoo.—(Hot. * *kurú* (dental click), to be dry, sparsely covered, hard.) This is the term applied to a large extent of country in South Africa. It is divided into the Great and the Little Karoos, the average elevation of the former being about 3000 feet above the sea level. The soil is exceedingly fertile when water is procurable, indeed in the spring, after rains, it is a veritable flower garden. The vegetation consists of fleshy, succulent-leaved herbs and shrubs, and deeply rooted bulbous plants, which afford splendid pasturage for sheep and goats.

"In certain districts, where the land is, as it is called, *carrow*, or dry and parched, the Hottentots, as well as the Colonists, are 'shepherds'." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 197, 1785.)

"Next day we proceeded through what the Dutch call *Karo*, which is a very extensive plain, interspersed with small succulent and fruitescent plants." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 44, 1789.)

"Naked, arid plains of clay, known to the natives and also to the colonists by the name of *Karoo*." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 11, 1801.)

"The country west of De Aar . . . is genuine sweet *Karoo* forming excellent pasture for sheep, goats, and ostriches." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 16, 1896.)

Karoo bush.—The various succulent leaved shrubs referred to above are spoken of generally as "Karoo bush".

"The herbage consisting principally of *Karoo bush*, thinly scattered over a stony ground." (Nicholson's "Cape and its Colonists," p. 48, 1848.)

Karoo lark.—*Alæmon nivosa* is so called.

Karoo veld.—(1) The herbage peculiar to the Karoo. (2) The area covered by Karoo herbage.

"The *carrow-veld* taken in its most extensive signification is horribly parched up and arid." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 246, 1785.)

Karos.—(Hot. *khob*, skin, hide; *khoros*, dim. form.) A skin blanket. This was practically the only article of clothing which the native in his raw condition wore. Originally the karosses were made exclusively of skins, but in recent years, owing to the disappearance of the larger animals and the introduction of cotton blankets, these have almost entirely superseded the real karos. The article itself was common to both the Hottentots and Kaffirs—"beyderseits in krossen gehen" (Kolben)—but the Kaffirs have their own name for it—um Nweba.

"*Kros*—ein Mantel von Schaafs Fellen, dergleichen die Hottentotten tragen." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 28, 1745.)

"The Hottentots do not burden themselves with a great many changes of their cloaks or *krosses* (as they call them in broken Dutch")". (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 87, 1785.)

"In cold weather (Lobengula) wraps himself well up in a large skin *kaross*." (Wood's "Through Matabeleland," p. 54, 1893.)

Karper.—(D. *karper*, a carp—*Cyprinus carpio, L.*) *Spirobranchus capensis* is known by this name among the Dutch.

Karree or **Kiri.**—(Hot. **karib* (cerebral click), honey-beer.) A drink prepared by the coloured people from honey or prickly pear syrup, to which a small quantity of the dried and powdered root of a certain plant (concerning which they are very secretive, but which appears to be *Mesembryanthemum stellatum, Mill*) is added, and the whole fermented. See Moerwortel.

"They have long been acquainted with a particular plant, which grows in some of the most arid situations of the interior of the colony, and is only known to a few of them; this plant as well as the drink which is made by its means, is called *karree*." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 229, 1835.)

"Out of the honey, young bees and bee bread which we acquired our men brewed a really good wine, which they termed *kirrey*. It was quite as strong as porter, and only took a few hours to make; the only addition besides water, being a whitish powder. The powder increases itself with each brew, like the vinegar-plant. It adds a splendid flavour to ordinary sugar-water, and as yeast for bread making simply cannot be equalled." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 20 December, 1911.)

Karree boom.—(D. *boom*, a tree.) *Rhus viminalis, Vahl.* The well-known Graaff Reinet tobacco pipes are made of this wood, which is of a dark red colour.

Karree- or **Kiri-moer.**—(D. *moer*, lees, dregs.) The dried and powdered sediment of the fermented liquor "karree". It is used as a barm or leaven by many Karoo housewives for making bread, and is in great request.

"The people . . . were . . . drinking honey-beer made with honey and water, mixed in a bambus, and fermented by means of a root called *mor*, but which I only saw when ground." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 155, 1838.)

"A little barme or *moer* obtained from the Kuruman people." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 273, 1868.)

Karre oogie.—(Hot. **uri* (cerebral click), white ; *oog*, an eye.) *Zosterops capensis.* See Witte oogie.

Karwats.—(D. *karbats*, a scourge of leather ; Pol. *karbacz ;* Turkish *kyrbatsj*, a whip of rhinoceros hide.) A whip made of one piece of hide throughout.

Kasarm or **Kasern.**—(D. *kazerne*, barracks ; Span. *caserne ;* Lat. *quaterna*, a chamber to hold four or a quaternion.) (1) The small quarters erected between the ramparts and houses of a fortified town, to obviate the necessity of billeting the soldiers on the inhabitants. (2) Barracks. (3) The name was also given to a row of huts occupied by the slaves or servants.

Kastrol.—(F. *casserole*, a saucepan ; *casse*, a crucible ; O.H.G. *kezi*, a stove.) A common name for a saucepan or stewpan.

Kat doorn.—(D. *kat*, a cat ; *doorn*, a thorn.) (1) *Asparagus retrofractus.* The Wild asparagus is so called because its thorns are hooked like the claws of a cat. (2) The name is also given to one or two other plants for a similar reason, e.g. *Acacia caffra, W.*, *Zizyphus mucronata, Brogn.*, *Scutia indica*, etc.

"*Scutia commersoni* . . . a shrub, 4 to 5 feet high, *Katdorn ;* branches sub-angulate." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 478, 1859-60.)

"The forest generally consists of various kinds of mimosas, acacia, and other thorny trees, such as the 'wagt-een-beetje,' *kat doorn*, etc." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 24, 1868.)

Katel.—(Hind. *khāt*, a light bedstead ; Tamil and Mal. *kattil ;* in this form it was adopted by the Portuguese. The

word was introduced into South Africa in the old Dutch East India Company's days, where, with a slightly different meaning, it has found a permanent home.) A stout, wooden frame with raw hide thongs interwoven; this is swung under the tilt of the buck-wagon, and, when travelling, makes a by no means uncomfortable substitute for a bed. The name is sometimes given to a bed that has no tester, and so reverts to its original meaning—a light bedstead.

"Indian bedsteads or *Cadels*." (Van Twist's "Generall Beschrijvinge van Indien," p. 64, 1648.)

"I accepted an invitation to avail myself of the *Cadel* or bed swung in the wagon." (Baines' "Explorations," p. 22, 1864.)

"A sort of framework made of leather (called a *cartel*) on which were placed mattresses and pillows." (Pritchard's "Friends and Foes in the Transkei," p. 66, 1880.)

Katjepiring.—(Mal. *kacha-piring*, *Gardenia florida*.) In South Africa the name has been transferred to *Gardenia Thunbergia*. The striving after meaning has resulted in the assimilation of the first part of this Malay word to the name Katje (Katie) all over South Africa.

"*Kœzschebyring* eine Stande die man aus Madagascar gebracht hat, an welchen Ort er diesen Namen träget, und weil ihn die Europäer beybehalten, so führe ich ihn ebenfalls an ohne einige Veränderung." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 444, 1745.)

"Wild *Catjepiring* is a hard and strong kind of wood, and on this account used for clubs." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 111, 1796.)

"Vying in sweetness with the wild *Katjepeering* and the overpowering 'asparagus'." (Noble's "The Cape and its People," p. 373, 1869.)

Katje thee.—In the Riversdale District *Gladiolus angustus, Linn.*, is known by this name.

Katlachter.—(D. *kat*, a cat; *lachen*, to laugh.) *Erythropygia Coryphæus, Lay.* The name refers to the unmusical noise which this bird makes. See Slang verklikker.

"The Bosch-creeper or *Katlachter* was repeatedly noticed among the bushes which fringe the Orange River." ("Scientific African," p. 76, March, 1896.)

Katstaart. — (D. *kat*, a cat; *staart*, a tail.) Various species of *Lachenalia*—especially the pale ones—are known by

this name in the South-Western Districts of the Cape Province.

Katte kruiden.—(D. *kat*, a cat; *kruid*, herb, grass; *Kattekruid*, *Nepeta Cataria*, catmint.) In South Africa this designation has been transferred to *Ballota Africana*, *Benth.*, not because cats are supposed to be partial to it, but because it is covered with soft hairs. Decoctions of its leaves are used for coughs, colds, and asthma.

"Boegoe, anys, hottentotskooigoed, *katte kruie* van alles 'n weinig of water getrek en enige male per dag te drink." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 121, 1898.)

Katunker or **Katonkel.**—(M. *ketung*, the name of a fish given by Crawford. Suggested as the possible origin of the Cape word.) *Thynnus pelamys*, one of the *Scomberidæ*.

"Many of the Cape fish are endowed with the quaintest Dutch names. Here are a few of them: Kabeljouw, baardmannatje, poempelmoesje, *katunka*, elftvisch, stinkvisch, poeskop, dageraad, and others." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 449, 1893.)

Kauwgoed.— (D. *kauwen*, to chew; *goed*, goods, things.) The Dutch name for *Mesembryanthemum tortuosum*, *L.*

Keesjesblaren or **Kissiblaar.**—(D. *keesjeskruid*, the mallow; *blad*, a leaf. Cf. G. *Käse-pappel*, Eng. "cheeses," the fruit of the mallow.) (1) *Malva rotundifolia*, *L.* A poultice of the leaves of this plant is used for sore throat, sore eyes, boils, etc. The emollient quality of the mallow is suggested by its English name—mallow; Lat. *malva*; G. *μαλάχη* from *μαλάσσω*, I soften. (2) In the neighbourhood of East London this name is applied to an *acanthaceous* plant—a favourite food of the bush-buck, *Isoglossa sp.*

"The plant known as *kissie-blad.*" ("East London Dispatch," 9 June, 1911.)

"Graaff Reinet. A farmer of this district reports losing seventeen ostriches and a horse through feeding them with mallows (*kiesie bladeren*)." ("Queenstown Representative," p. 8, 30 August, 1912.)

Keever beetle.—(D. *kever*, a cock-chafer.) *Heteronychus arator*.

"*Heteronychus arator*, the *Keever-beetle*, is very injurious to the roots of growing grain. It is widely distributed and is one of the most destructive insects in South Africa." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 138, 1911.)

Kehla.—(Zulu, *i Kehla*, a young man who has taken the head-ring.) A "ringed" or married man. See Ringed, To be.

"The excited savages fell back yielding place to a couple of tall *amakehla*, or head-ringed men, grim and ferocious of aspect in their war dresses, with their great shields and broad-bladed spears, who advanced to the fore." (Mitford's "The Gun Runner," p. 182, 1893.)

Kei apple.—See Apple.

Kei lily.—*Cyrtanthus sanguineus* is known by this name in some parts of the Transkei.

Kelkie wijn.—(D. *kelk*, a cup, glass; *wijn*, wine.) The onomatopoetic name of the Namaqua partridge (q.v.), by which it is known in the Karoo.

"Wegen ihres Rufes beim Fliegen heissen die hubschen Thierchen (Namaqua = Rebhuhn) auch *kelchie wyn*, doch hörte ich viel deutlicher die englischen worte 'pretty war' heraus." (Bachmann's "Süd-Africa," p. 69, 1910.)

Kerel.—(D. *kerel*, lad, fellow; cf. Eng. churl.) In familiar conversation this word had the meaning of "fellow"; e.g. "een slim kerel," a smart or sharp fellow.

"Well sonny he went; and bymeby back came the same cart—the same identical cart—with another *kerel*." (Glanville's "Kloof Yarns," "The Empire," p. 7, 15 October, 1898.)

Kerfstok.—(D. *kerf*, a notch; cf. Ger. *kerben*, to notch; Eng. *carve*; D. *stok*, a stick.) The sticks upon which the Bushmen "herds" nicked the losses in the stock entrusted to their care. Have we not here a hint as to the origin of the "tallies" of the English Exchequer?

"On the return of their masters they would with the help of their *kerf-stok* (or nickstick) account for the loss of every ewe, wether, or lamb which had died or been lost, with a distinctness and fidelity truly surprising." (Cloete's "Five Lectures on the Emigration of the Dutch Farmers," p. 36, 1856.)

Kerkdorp.—(D. *kerk*, a church; *dorp*, a village, hamlet.) A small village, consisting of a church and a few small cottages, which are only used by those who have built them, at service time.

"Door een *kerkdorp* verstaat men in Zuid-Afrika een plaats, waar een kerk gebouwd is en eenige huizen, die slechts bij 'kerkgelegenheid' in gebruik zijn, doch zonder winkels of

gouvernementskantoor. Zulk een dorp is Amersfoort." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 360 n., 1882.)

Kermes.—(D. *kerkmis* or *kermis* ; Ger. *Kirchmesse*, wake, fair, the old English "church-ale".) This word is no longer known among the South African Dutch in the sense which it bears in Holland, and among the French-speaking Belgians, who still remember so much of their Flemish origin as to retain their *kirmess* or *kirmes;* but it still lingers in South Africa in one or two expressions with which parents will deny children a pleasure they ask for: e.g. *'T is ni jederdag Kermis ni,*—It is not a holiday every day. One's luck does not always hold.

Kersbosje.—(D. *kaars*, a candle; *bos*, a bush.) *Sarcocaulon Burmanni.* The candle-bush, so called from the readiness and steadiness with which it burns even when green.

"The *Kerzbosch*, or candle-bush, a stunted thorny plant, if lighted at one end in the green state will burn steadily just like a wax candle." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 60, 1890.)

Kersehout.—(D. *kers*, a cherry ; *hout*, wood.) *Pterocelastrus variabilis.* This name must not be confounded with Kaarshout (q.v.).

Kersopsteektijd.—(D. *kaars*, a candle ; *opsteken*, to light, kindle ; *tijd*, time.) (1) The gloaming. (2) The Malay Khalifa (q.v.).

Kettle, To cook the.—A colloquialism common in South Africa, for making the water in the kettle to boil.

"As soon as we got to the top we outspanned, and . . . made a fire, and began *cooking the kettle.*" (Hick's "The Cape as I Found It," p. 71, 1900.)

Keurboom.—*Virgilia capensis, Lam.* A tree growing along river courses or in damp places, bearing a light purple flower.

Keurtje.—*Sutherlandia frutescens, R. Br.* See Kanker boschje.

Keurtjeboom.—The Riversdale District name for *Psoralea pinnata, L.*

Khakibush.—A species of *Aplopappus.* The name has reference to the dull fawn colour which the withered leaves assume. (See "C.G.H. Agric. Journ.," p. 76, 7 January, 1907.) The name is also applied to *Alternanthera Achyrantha, R. Br.*, a troublesome weed now spread widely throughout South Africa, the seeds having been introduced from the

Argentine Republic with imported fodder. The name was given to this plant because it made its appearance in military camps during the late war in places where it was previously unknown.

Khalifa.—(Ar. *Khalifa*, the title assumed by the successors of Mahomet; a Vicegerent.) The designation in South Africa of a Malay religious festival. See Kersopsteektijd.

"Town Hall, Kimberley. *Khalifa* representation in aid of the fund for the relief of the sick and wounded in the Transvaal War." ("Diamond Fields Advertiser," 31 May, 1900.)

Khoi-Khoin.—(Hot. *khoii*, a man; *khoin*, the men.) Men of men. The title by which the Hottentots were wont to speak of themselves; it is still retained by the Namaquas as their national name. The name Hottentot was originally accepted by these people under the impression that it was a Dutch word.

"The name which they bear among themselves in every part of the country is *Quai-quae*." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 151, 1801.)

"Der Verfasser . . . wurde 1850 nach Süd-Afrika ausgesandt und von 1851 hat er bis kurzem unter den *Khoi-khoin* (Namaqua-Hottentotten) besonders auf der Station Bersaba gearbeitet." (Krönlein's "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin," III. 1889.)

Kiewits.—(G. *Kibitz*, peewit.) *Stephanibyx coronatus*. An onomatopoetic name for this noisy plover.

"Flocks of *keuwitts* screamed out a disagreeable sound, resembling that of the name they bear." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 153, 1785.)

Kikvorsch vanger.—(D. *kikvorsch*, a frog; *vangen*, to catch.) *Circus ranivorus, Daud.* A variety of falcon which feeds chiefly on frogs and small water birds.

Kimmelsaad.—(G. *Kümmel*, cummin, caraway seed; L. *cuminum;* D. *saad*, seed.) Caraway seeds.

"*Kimmel saad* brandewyn—¼ lb., *kimmel saad*, three bottels brandewyn," etc. (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 83, 1898.)

Kina bosje.—(D. *kina*, from Peruvian *cinchona* bark.) A variety of protea is so called because of the bitter quinine-like taste of its leaves. See Pinang bosje.

Kinderbesje.—(D. *kind*, a child; *bezie*, a berry.) *Halleria elliptica*, the black berries of which are eaten by children.

Kinderbewijs.—(D. *kind*, a child; *bewijs*, title, deed.) A bond passed by the surviving spouse of two persons married in community of property, to secure the property of the children accruing from the deceased parent.

King.—Abbreviated form of King William's Town in general use. This town, named after William IV, is situated at the foot of the Amatolas, on the Buffalo River, and was the chief town of British Kaffraria.

"Nach der Sitte der Engländer, Alles abzukürzen wie sie z. B. anstatt 'King Williamstown' nur 'King' sagen." (Kranz's "Süd-Afrika," p. 190, 1880.)

"A grog wagon (i.e. a wagon with liquor on board that had come from *King*, and which very often followed the troops) had arrived that day." (Browning's "Fighting and Farming in South Africa," p. 119, 1880.)

King bream.—The Natal name of a fish.

"The species mostly in evidence are salmon, *king bream*." ("Natal Pictorial Mercury," p. 138, 28 November, 1906.)

King-fish.—A fish of the genus *Caranx* is so called in Natal.

"A *king-fish* is illustrated, the particular specimen weighing 28 lb." ("East London Dispatch," 26 July, 1906.)

King klipvisch.—See Koning klip-visch.

"For a hot climate, many of the fish in the Cape waters furnish excellent eating, the Roman, *Kingklipvisch* . . . being among the choicest." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 449, 1893.)

King of six.—A King Williamstown name for the Rooibekje (q.v.). The reference is to the number of females by which the male is generally accompanied during the breeding season.

King of the red bills.—*Vidua principalis* is thus designated in Natal; its pretty wax-like red bill makes a marked contrast with the black and white of its plumage.

King vulture.—See Koning aasvogel and Zwart aasvogel.

"Because the others will not venture near a carcase when a black vulture is feeding, it is often called the *King vulture*." ("Agric. Journ. S.A. Union," p. 367, April, 1911.)

Kinkel bosches.—*Tetragonia fruticosa* and other species; the seeds when mature rattle in the fruit, "hence the Dutch name" (Sim).

Kinkhost.—(D. *kinkhoest*, whooping-cough. Pegge in

the Supplement to Grose's "Provincial Glossary," gives "*kink-haust*, a violent cold with a cough," as a Lancashire term; it occurs also in Scotland.) The whooping-cough.

Kip-kippies.—A wild fuchsia-like flower is so called in Namaqualand; it bears a very inflated, red and green seed-pod.

Kippersol.—("The word is Portuguese, *quita-sol*, 'bar sun'."—Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary". At one time the word was in frequent use in India in the form *kitty-sol*, which was the name given to the bamboo and paper umbrellas imported from China. It is of interest to note that the other popular South African names of this tree have reference to the shade which it affords: *Noois boom*, Parasol tree.) The name has been given in South Africa to a tree—*Cussonia Thyrsiflora*—which grows something like an umbrella in shape; its roots contain a large quantity of moisture, and in times of drought are in great request, being dug out by the Bushmen and Hottentots and chewed as a means of quenching thirst.

"Above his head was borne two *kippe-soles*, or sun skreens, made of paper." ("Van Twist," p. 51, 1648.)

"Upon the summit of a precipice a *kippersol* tree grew, whose palm-like leaves were clearly cut out against the night sky." (Olive Schreiner's "Dream Life and Real Life," p. 26, 1893.)

Kiri.—This word, which is in constant use throughout South Africa, seems to be of Hottentot origin and to have been applied to a stick of hard and tough wood, used sometimes in digging and sometimes in self-defence. The "knob-kiri" is a stick with a large knob at one end of it; at close quarters it is quite a formidable weapon, but both Hottentots and Kaffirs can often throw it a good distance with much skill and accuracy. The "Knob-kiri" is called by the Kaffirs *i Gqeba*.

"Der Kirri ist entwann drey Fuss lang und eines Daumes dick. . . . Der *kirri* hat zwey stumpfe Enden, und diënst die Pfeile, Hassagayen, Rackums, und was der Feind sonsten, herwirfft, zu pariren." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 86, 1745.)

"He—Gaika—had in his hand an iron *Kiri*, and his cheeks and lips were painted red." (Smith's "Sketches of South Africa," "Wesleyan Methodist Magazine," p. 410, 1849.)

"The skulls were frightfully broken, exhibiting marks of the *knob-kerries* and stones with which they had been fractured." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 340, 1856.)

Kiriehout.—*Rhus lævigata.* See Bosch taaibosch.

Kitchen Dutch or **Kaffir.**—The mixture of English and Dutch or English and Kaffir words frequently employed when speaking to servants by those who understand neither Dutch nor Kaffir perfectly. It is interesting to find that this epithet "kitchen" was applied to bad Latin as far back as three hundred years ago. Minsheu, "Guide to the Tongues," 1617, has—"Kitchin latine . . . L. Barbàries, oratio malè latina".

"By this time they could both speak Sesuto and 'Low' or *Kitchen Dutch* (as it is called in those parts) well." (Barkly's "Among Boers and Basutos," p. 109, 1893.)

Kivitje.—Dim. of Kiewits (q.v.). The word is generally used in this form in the Karoo districts, where the bird is also known as the Mannevogel (q.v.).

"Clouds of long-legged, white-winged *Kee-vekies*, the pest of the hunter, circled overhead." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 142, 1891.)

"Here and there . . . the plover of the country would scream out of its plangent *keviche*." (Stuart's "Pictures of the War," p. 315, 1901.)

Klaar.—(D. *Klaar*, clear, ready.) This word is in everyday use in the Midland Districts of the Colony, both among English and Dutch, in both its meanings—clear and ready.

> Then the bachelor rises and shaking off sleep,
> Hastens down to his kraals to look after his sheep;
> Whilst I as a guest, no enjoyment to mar,
> Lie slumbering on till the coffee is *klaar* (ready).

(Hudson's "Features of South African Frontier Life," p. 208, 1852.)

"It is anticipated that in six months' time the long-talked-of bridge will be *un fait accompli*, or to suit the times should one say it will be *klaar?* Shades of old Kurveyors, what wouldn't you have given for that bridge." ("East London Dispatch," p. 8, 2 July, 1912.)

Klaas vaak.—(D. *Klaas*, shortened form of Nicolas; *vaak*, sleepiness.) The "dustman" familiar to English children.

Klapklapertje.—*Megalophonus Apiatus, Vieil.* An onomatopoetic name which has reference to the curious sound made by this bird's wings when rising.

"This beautiful lark . . . is well known from its singular habit of rising 15 or 30 feet into the air, perpendicularly, making a sharp cracking noise with its wings as it rises uttering a long shrill 'phew' and then falling as abruptly to the earth." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 216, 1867.)

Klapmuts.—(D. *klapmuts*, a riding-cap; cf. Scotch *mutch*, a woman's cap or bonnet.)

Their toys and *mutches* were sae clean,
They glancit in our ladies' e'en.—(ALLEN RAMSAY.)

(1) "A quaint, though not unbecoming cap often seen in Gerard Dow's pictures, and still worn here and there by old-fashioned ladies of Dutch descent." (De Vere's "Americanisms".) (2) The name of a village in the Western Province near to which is a peculiar dome-shaped mountain, which is supposed to bear some resemblance to this old-fashioned article of female attire.

"1657, 22 October . . . in the afternoon passed the kloof between the Diamandt and the Paarl Bergh, and on the other side of the *Clapmus Bergh*, partly good soil, but generally bare and sandy." (Van Riebeeck's "Journal," Moodie's "Records," p. 112, 1841.)

"At half-past six we came to Albertyn's farm, lying at the foot of a mountain, called de *Klapmuts*, where we passed the night." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," II. p. 71, 1798.)

Klappers.—See Clappers.

"It is also called *klappers* from the character of the somewhat horny pods, in which the seeds rattle about." ("S.A. Jour. of Science," VII. p. 269, 1911.)

Klapper taart.—(Mal. *kĕlapa, klapa*, coco-nut; D. *taart*, a tart.) A tart, the contents of which are chiefly coco-nut.

Klappertje.—(D. *klapperen*, to chatter.) *Cisticola terrestris* and *C. textris* are both known by this name.

"The *Klappertje* as it is called by the Dutch colonists, is not uncommon at Nel's Poort." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 236, 1875-84.)

Klauw ziekte.—(D. *klauw*, a claw, paw; *ziekte*, sickness.) Foot and mouth disease affecting horned cattle and some other animals. See Hoof and tongue sickness.

"A disease called the *klow sickness*, which rages among the horned cattle in the summer, and numbers of cattle die." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 96, 1789.)

"Many sheep perished this season from the *klauw ziekte* or foot-rot." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 305, 1844.)

Klaver.—(D. *klaver*, clover.) Clover, but in some of the south-western districts this name is also applied to Lucerne—*Medicago sativa.*

Klein baas.—(D. *klein*, little, small.) The designation given by farm labourers to the eldest son of the farmer, and also to a sub-manager.

"The next morning I went for a walk with Smith, who was the *Klein-baas* of the farm. *Klein-baas* is the term used for the sub-manager, and 'baas' is the manager or proprietor." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 15, 1896.)

Klein sijsje.—(D. *klein*, little, small; *sijsje*, a linnet.) *Serinus flaviventris* and *S. marshalli.*

"The *Kleine seisjes* . . . make handsome cage birds in their greenish-yellow and bright golden colours." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 84, 1908.)

Klein sperwel.—(D. *klein*, small; *sperwer*, a sparrow-hawk.) *Malierax gabar.*

"Der südafrikanische Gabar ist bedeutend grösser als jener von West- und Nordostafrika." (Holub und Pelzeln's "Ornithologie von Südafrika," p. 34, 1882.)

Kleintjes.—(D. *klein*, little, small.) Little ones, often applied to children.

"While the partners ate and drank heartily, the *clynies* were busy in their way." ("South Africa a Century ago," p. 138, 1901.)

Klimop.—(D. *klimop*, ivy; *klimmen*, to climb; *op*, up, upon.) (1) The South African name for the creeping plant *Cynanchum capense, Thunb.*, which has been proved to be poisonous to sheep and cattle. (2) The name is also given to the Wild clematis.

"*Clematis* . . . One species is wild in England, and many are cultivated in gardens. The colonial name for the Cape species is *Klimop.*" ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 2, 1859-60.)

"Cattle and sheep when tied up at the *Klimop* . . . showed, fifteen or thirty hours afterwards, the first symptoms of 'krimp-ziekte'." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 399, October, 1904.)

"*Klimop* or 'Traveller's joy'." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 214, 1906.)

Klinkers.—(1) A brick that has been partially vitrified in the kiln used for paving courtyards. (2) The term is also applied (as in the quotation) to a specially hard sort of biscuit.

"On some of the wagons we found *klinkers*, jam, milk, sardines, salmon, cases of corned beef, and other such provisions in great variety." (De Wet's "Three Years War," p. 48, 1903.)

Klip.—(D. *klip*, a rock, reef.) (1) In Cape Dutch this word is used of rock in general, and also of a pebble. (2) It is also used in the slang of the Diamond Fields for a diamond.

"Stooping to set large *klips* (stones) behind the wheel, to prevent the wagon from slipping back." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 50, 1852.)

"Then Senior went on to tell them about the Kaffirs he had seen flogged to death for stealing a *klip* (as the Dutch and many of the Kaffirs call a diamond)." (Couper's "Mixed Humanity," p. 48.)

"The natives had not yet acquired a knowledge of the value of diamonds or *klips* as they were then termed." (Matthews' "Incwadi Yami," p. 186, 1887.)

Klip bloem.—(D. *klip*, a rock; *bloem*, a flower.) Some of the *Crassulaceæ* are so named by the Dutch.

Klip dagga.—See Dagga.

Klip das.—See Dassie, which is the diminutive of Das.

"The rock-rabbit or hyrax, known all over South Africa by its Boer name *Dassie* (which is a diminutive of *Klip das*, literally, rock-badger), an absurd title, is a most amusing and interesting little beast." (Bryden's "Animals of Africa," p. 57, 1900.)

Klip els.—(D. *els*, alder.) *Plectronia mundii*.

Klipesse.—(D. *esch*, an ash tree.) (1) *Rhus Thunbergii*, which is found in rocky situations in the western province—Stellenbosch, Worcester, and Clanwilliam Districts. See Kliphout. (2) *Plectronia Mundtiana* is also known by this name.

"Kliphout or *Klipesse* of the colonists." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 521, 1859-60.)

Klip fish.—*Clinus superciliosus*, a fish with a great variety of brilliant colouring; it belongs to the *Blenniidæ* family, which has many representatives in the waters of the Southern Hemisphere. This name is also applied to the *Clinidæ* generally.

Klip gift.—(D. *gift*, poison.) The name given to a substance scraped from the surface of the rock in caverns and employed by the bushmen, with other poisons, to envenom the tips of their frail but effective arrows.

" The upper part of the cavern was covered with a thick coating of dark, pitchy matter, which I at first took to be merely the effect of smoke, but was subsequently told that it was *Klip-gift* or rock-poison, with which the Bushman always envenoms the points of his darts." (Kay's " Caffrarian Researches," p. 101, 1833.)

Klip haas.—(D. *haas*, a hare.) *Lepus crassicaudatus.* This animal is also known as the Roode haas and Rooi stert.

Kliphout.—(D. *hout*, wood.) *Rhus Thunbergii.* See Klipesse.

" There are numbers of Cape plants which yield tannin, and some of them, such as kreuppelboom, wagenboom, *kliphout* . . . are unequalled for tanning purposes." (" Castle Line Guide to South Africa," p. 62, 1888.)

Klip kous.—A large *Haliotis* which is found on the rocks when the tide is very low; it is exceedingly tough and requires a deal of stewing, but when properly prepared is very good. See Paarlmoer.

" The *Klip-kousen* are sometimes called by the virtuosi, Nabel-snails. These are frequently found at the Cape." (Kolben's " Present State of the Cape of Good Hope," II. p. 209, 1731.)

" A sort of snail or cockle, *Klip kous* (*Haliotis*, *Linn.*), from half a foot to a foot and a half diameter, is usually stewed." (Sparrman's " Voyage," I. p. 26, 1785.)

" The people eat sea-ears, which are called *Klipkausen.*" (Le Vaillant's " Travels," I. p. 18, 1796.)

Klip kraal.—A Kraal (q.v.) with walls of packed stones.

Klipneuker.—(D. *klip*, rock; C.D. *neuken*, to hit.) A species of lizard. See Klipsalamander.

Klipplaats.—(D. *klip*, rock; *plaats*, place.) A stony ledge; a rocky locality, e.g. Klipplaats on the Midland Railway.

" These ledges or *Klipplaats* . . . are to be seen in all the Natal rivers." (Barter's " The Dorp and the Veld," p. 60, 1852.)

Klipsalade.—See Dolossi.

Klipsalamander.—(D. *klip*, rock; Lat. *salamandra*, a

reptile resembling a lizard, *Salamandra terrestris, Brongn.*) The name is given to several varieties of rock-loving lizards.

"'A dassie could not live here,' said a Boer, 'only a *klip-salamander*.'" (Alexander's "Expedition," I. pp. 142-3, 1838.)

"A species of lizard with a long name, *klip-salamander*, whose sole occupation is to lie all day on a rock in the blazing sun—though not asleep, for its eyes are always open." ("The State," p. 251, September, 1911.)

Klipspringer.—(D. *klip*, rock; *springer*, leaper.) *Oreotragus saltator.* This pretty little animal is, in habit, a miniature chamois of extraordinary activity, and is found only on almost inaccessible mountain heights. See African chamois.

"The *Klipspringer*, is as a rule, little known to Europeans." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karroo," p. 70, 1889.)

Klip, To.—To place a stone behind a wheel to prevent the vehicle running backwards.

"Crawling into the wagon, the wheels of which were *klipped* to keep us from running down the hill." (Roche's "On Trek in the Transvaal," p. 91, 1878.)

Klip uyntjes.—(D. *ui*, an onion.) The Namaqualand name of a bulbous plant, *Babiana sp.*, with a pretty blue flower and hard, sharp-pointed leaves, found growing among rocks.

Klip zuiger.—(D. *zuigen*, to suck.) *Chorisochismus dentex.* This fish is so called from its habit of adhering to rocks. See Sucker-fish.

Klip zweet.—(D. *zweet*, sweat, perspiration.) See Dassiespis.

Klis or **Klits grass.**—(D. *klissen*, to be entangled.) *Setaria verticillata, Beauv.*, a grass very common in some parts of the country, the seeding part of which, furnished with numerous minute hooks, knots and tangles in the most curious fashion. It is a source of much trouble and annoyance to farmers and gardeners.

"*Klitsgras* may be disregarded and weduwenaars don't excite much remark. But there is a weed the seed of which gets into your clothes first and into your flesh afterwards, and unless promptly removed, causes excessive irritation and discomfort." (Du Plessis' "A Thousand Miles in the Heart of Africa," p. 139, 1905.)

"The fruits of such plants as the burr-weed and *klis grass* are a source of trouble and loss." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 23 July, 1909.)

Klokjes.—(D. *klok*, a bell; G. *Glocke*; Eng. *clock.*) In Holland a *klokje* is a bell-shaped flower, but in South Africa the name has been applied to *Erodium moschatum*, *W.*, for the reason set forth in the quotations.

"This morning in throwing out some water I observed some seeds of the pest-grass . . . begin to writhe about in the ground, some jumping and alighting on one end (the seed end), which was propelled into the earth like a corkscrew. In this manner, I suppose, it is provided by nature that when the first rain falls, these seeds, lying on the baked earth, in inactivity, spring into life and plant themselves, while the spiral writhing of the shaft end or beard propels the seed underground." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 163, 1868.)

"Each carpel has a hard point at the base, like an awl; the style curls round in a close spiral, like a corkscrew; and its top is flattened out like the feathered arrows of a weather-cock. When it falls upon broken ground or among grass, the seed end, being heavier, strikes the ground first, pegs itself in slightly, and the weathercock end projects to catch every puff of air. Round it goes and round again, till the seed is cleverly screwed into the ground. Most Cape children know the peculiarities of this plant, and loosen the half-ripe carpels for the pleasure of watching the springy style tear itself loose, and begin to take its corkscrew turns, carrying round the feathered top like the hands of a clock, as they think, and which has suggested the name *Klokjes* for the plant." (Prof. MacOwan, "C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 152, 1897.)

Klompje.—(D. *klomp*, a clump.) A cluster of trees, shrubs, animals, or men is termed in the Midland Districts a "klompje".

"Even at close quarters of a mile we were able to disperse small *klompjies* of Kaffirs and cattle." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 215, 1855.)

"Snyman also saw nothing except one *klompjie* of kameels." (Baines' "Explorations," p. 241, 1864.)

Klong.—(C.D. *klein-jong*, a servant boy; *klong* is a contraction of this designation.) The word is in common use in various parts of South Africa, and is applied to coloured males without reference to age, much as the word "boy" is among the English colonists; indeed so far has the original sense disappeared that the expression "ou' klong" (lit. "old small youngster") is by no means uncommon.

Kloof.—(D. *kloof*, a cleft, gap, chasm.) A wooded gorge, a ravine running up between two hills, or up the side of a mountain. Compare the U.S. word "clove," a mountain cleft, a ravine.

"Of these passages or *kloofs*, as they are called by the colonists, there are but three that are ever used by wheel-carriages." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 63, 1801.)

"This pass is defended by a block-house and is called the *Kloof*, a word of frequent occurrence in this colony, and signifying a pass either over or between mountains, and often a deep ravine down the side of a mountain." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 15, 1822.)

"There was not a *kloof* or a 'drift' . . . where they might not be cut off." (Bird's "Annals of Natal," II. p. 4, 1888.)

Klopje.—(D. *klop*, a knock.) A hit or blow; the noise which a bullet makes when it finds its billet in the body of an animal is also spoken of as the *klop* of the bullet. See Clap.

"When I get home I cannot help giving the Hottentot another *klopje*, when I am fined £10." (Bryden's "Victorian Era in South Africa," p. 7, 1897.)

Kloppertje.—*Cisticola terrestries*, one of the grass warblers. See Ting-ting.

Kluitje.—(D. *kluit*, a jest.) In Cape Dutch the word is applied to an obvious untruth.

Kluitjes.—(D. *kluit*, a lump, clod.) The South African name for small dumplings.

"Brood *kluitjes* (bread dumplings)." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 15, 1904.)

Knecht.—(D. *knecht*, a man-servant. Etymologically this is the same word as the English "knight".) An overseer, a head servant.

"The trader then instructs his *knecht* or head servant to make a parade of the goods." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 5, 1850.)

Knee-haltered.—A riem attached to the horse's bridle, or passed round his neck, is fastened round the leg just below the knee, in such a way that while the horse can feed with ease it can only move at a slow pace.

"Having *knee-haltered* my horse to prevent his straying, I proceeded to dine upon a guinea-fowl, which I had killed." (Harris's "Wild Sports of South Africa," p. 68, 1839.)

Knie-diep-voor-dag.—A curious phrase meaning an hour or two before sunrise.

Knikkertjes.—(D. *knikker*, a marble.) The beans of *Cæsalpinia bonducella*, a native of South America. They are often washed up on the coast.

Knob-billed duck.—*Sarcidiornis melanonota.*

"The *Knob-billed duck* is nowhere common, and does not appear to be known south of the Orange River." (Distant's "A Naturalist in the Transvaal," p. 123, 1892.)

Knob-nosed Kaffirs or **Knobnoses.**—The people so called are a branch of the Baraputses; the name has reference to the peculiar manner in which they tattoo their noses, the flesh being raised in small knobs lengthwise down the nose like a string of beads. The name was originally given by the Trek Boers, Knop-neus.

"A friendly tribe of natives, whom, from a peculiarity in the nasal prominence, they dignified with the appellation of *Knob-nosed Kaffirs.*" (Harris's "Wild Sports of South Africa," p. 350, 1839.)

"The degraded Magwamba ('demons' or 'devils') called *Knobnoses* by the Transvaal Boers." (Keane's "The Boer States," p. 99, 1900.)

Knob-thorn or **-wood.**—*Xanthoxylon capense, Hars.* One of the well-known indigenous trees of South Africa, the trunk of which is covered with a profusion of bluntly pointed protuberances, which give it a very curious appearance. See Paarde praam.

"For instance between the Shashe and Dopperpan we passed through a calcareous strip of country, with various kinds of sweet grass and small shrubs, varied with a very good large bush and trees, as *knoppies-doorn.*" (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 32, 1897.)

Knock up, To.—To be winded or exhausted.

"The long run added to the steep hill on the other side took so much out of the horses, that mine *knocked up.*" (Bisset's "Sport and War in South Africa," p. 5, 1875.)

Knoopdarm.—(D. *knoop*, a knot, tie; *darm*, gut, intestine.) A disease affecting sheep; it is a twist or stoppage in the intestines.

"I notice on p. 619 of your issue, of 27 December, some cures for *Knoopdarm* in sheep." ("The Farmer's Weekly," p. 760, 17 January, 1912.)

Knopjies doorn.—(D. *knop*, head, knob; *doorn*, a thorn.) *Acacia nigrescens pallens, Benth.*

Knorhaan or **Korhaan.**—(D. *knorren*, to scold; *haan*, a cock.) These birds, of which there are several varieties, are bustards: *Otis afra*, is known as the "common"; *O. scolopacea*, as the "vaal"; and *O. cœrulescens*, as the "blaauw" korhaan. The first of these is exceedingly noisy when disturbed, and well deserves the name of "Scolding-cock"; its raucous cry has been fairly described as resembling a "shrill-voiced woman's nagging heard afar, so that the words are not intelligible".

"Besides the two species of bustards known in the Colony by the name of *Korhaans*, at this place was a third . . . called here the wilde-pauw." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 139, 1801.)

Knorhaan.—The two fish *Trigla peronii* and *T. capensis* are both thus designated because of the peculiar noise which they make when taken out of the water. See Grunter.

"The Gurnard or *Knorhaan* (*Trigla peronii*) not unlike its European representative (*T. gurnardus*)." (Gilchrist's "History of the Local Names of Cape Fish," p. 215, 1900.)

Knysna lily.—A beautiful species of *Vallota* now being cultivated both in the Colony and in Europe. See George lily.

"*Nysna* lily (*Cyrtanthus obliquus*)." (Burchell's "Travels," II. Index, 1824.)

Kobeljauw or **Kabeljauw.**—(D. *kabeljauw*, a cod; cf. Scot. "*kabbelow*, a cod-fish salted and hung for a few days," Jamieson.) *Sciæna hololepidota, Cuv.* A large fish common on the South African coast. The name is very often shortened to *Cob.*

"At the Cape there are several sorts of the fish called *Cabeliau*. . . . The *Cabeliau* of the sort that is salted at the Cape is not spotted as in the Indian *Cabeliau*." (Kolben's "Present State of the Cape of Good Hope," II. p. 188, 1731.)

"I found him waxing a stout fishing line for *kabbeljauw*, a very large but coarse sea-fish." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 25, 1897.)

"Our well-known and very common *kabeljauw*, called for briefness 'cob' or 'kob' (*Sciæna acquila*)." ("East London Dispatch," 26 June, 1906.)

Koejava or **Goejava.**—*Psidium Guayava, L.* The Dutch pronunciation of the name of this fruit.

"*Goyavus* is eaten, when ripe, both raw and stewed in

red wine and sugar." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 273, 1796.)

Koeriempje.—The name given to an edible wild plant.

Koesijsters.—A confection or sweetmeat which has been boiled in fat and dipped in powdered sugar.

"*Koesisters* (Batavian or old Dutch sweetmeat recipe)." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 128, 1904.)

Koeskoetje or **Koestertje.**—(F. *coucher*, to lie down ; from Lat. *collocare ;* cf. G. *kuschen*, to crouch, to submit.) Various members of the *Alaudidæ* family have received this appellation from their peculiar habit of crouching close to the ground when alarmed.

"*Megalophonus cinereus, Lath.* Beim Herannahen eines Menschen oder Thieres duckt es sich nieder, drückt sich flach auf die Erde, dass man oft einige Schritte an ihn vorübergeht, ohne es zu bemerken." (Holub und Pelzeln's "Ornithographie von Süd-Afrika," p. 136, 1882.)

Koeskop.—(1) A term applied to hornless cattle and also to tuskless elephants. (2) It is also used of a fish, a species of *Chrysophrys.* See Poeskop.

"If a chief happen to have any hornless cattle (*koeskop*) among his herd." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 428, 1868.)

"John pulled my sleeve and told me not to shoot, because it was a *koeskop*, i.e. an elephant without tusks." (Kerr's "Far Interior," I. p. 90, 1886.)

Koggelaar.—*Cossypha bicolor* is so called both in Natal and in the Cape Colony. See Mocking-bird.

"Called by the Boers in Natal *Koggelaar.*" (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 351, 1868.)

Koggelmander.—*Agama.* Several lizards are thus designated. I have also heard chameleons so called—Koggelmannetje.

"Jumping up he threw the lizard to Mr. De Beer, who loudly exclaimed: 'Mr. Chairman, there is a *cogolomander* here' and ran away." (Churchill's "Men, Mines, and Manners," p. 87, 1895.)

"The leguan, a large animal of the lizard tribe; the *koggelmanner* of two sorts, one dull, greyish black, the other with dark blue head, usually seen on stones." ("Scientific African," p. 61, 1896.)

"The lizards, grey *kokelmannetje*, the little cooking man, and the blue blinking Agora, have hardly yet crept out to

bask in the sun." (Trotter's "Old Cape Colony," p. 234, 1903.)

"They are spiny lizards and bask in full sunlight on smooth rocks, often nodding their head, and have thus gained the name of *Kokkelmanetje* or little bowing man among the Dutch." ("Science in South Africa," p. 145, 1905.)

Kokerboom.—(D. *koker*, a case, sheath; G. *Köcher*, a quiver, pen case.) *Aloe dichotoma* has received this name because the Bushmen and Hottentots of the western coast almost invariably made the quivers for their poisoned arrows from the stem of this aloe; cleaning out the woody interior they fixed to the tough bark cylinder a bottom and sometimes a lid. The word *kokur* (a quiver) occurs in "The Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester," about A.D. 1300, "Mid swerd and bowe bisyde, and *o kokur* fol of flon" (and a quiver full of arrows). (Ed. Wright, II. Ap. H, l. 66.)

"A large *Aloe dichotoma*. . . . This plant is called the *Koker boom*, or Quiver tree; and has its name from the use to which it is commonly applied by the natives." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 58, 1789.)

"It is called in the country *kooker-boom*, or quiver tree, its pithy branches being employed by the Bosjesmans and Hottentots as cases for their arrows." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 381, 1801.)

"The natives more towards the western coast frequently use the branches of the *Aloe dichotoma*, which is therefore called by the Hottentots and colonists *kokerboom* or quiver tree." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 199, 1824.)

Koko.—*Celastrus undatus* is thus named by the Hottentots.

"An erect shrub, *koko*, of the Hottentots." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 457, 1859-60.)

Kol bosch.—Is this *Cussonia thyrsiflora?* See Cabbage tree.

"We have had left at our office . . . a couple of roots of a bitter herb which grows in the veld both in this and the lower districts, which has proved to be a certain cure for gall-sickness . . . the plant is called *Kol bosh* by the Dutch." ("Queenstown Free Press," 3 May, 1875.)

Kolbrook.—The name given to a variety of pig, with short legs, said to be so designated from the ship "Colebrook,' wrecked off Cape Agulhas, from which the variety was first obtained.

Kol haas.—(D. *haas*, a hare.) *Lepus saxatilis*.

"Backed into the shelter of an untidy bunch of what looked like coarse 'grass' . . . there lay in his well couched 'form' a fine big *kalhaas*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Kolwa.—(Kaf. *uku Kolwa*, to believe; *i Kolwa*, a believer.) A Christianized Kaffir is so called by his own people. The initial M in the quotation is the contracted sign of the plural —ama.

"Accused is a *Mkolwa* or Christianized native." ("East London Dispatch," 14 February, 1906.)

Komaroo or **Kambroo.**—A plant of the genus *Fockea* (*glabra*), the root of which contains a large quantity of water, of which the natives avail themselves during the long droughts which sometimes prevail. In the Riversdale District the word is sometimes shortened to "Koo".

"*Kamerup* was the name given here to the Hottentots' water melon, a large succulent root." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 150, 1796.)

"The natives of the central and northern districts know very well how to find such underground reservoirs of the precious liquid, e.g. the *Komaroo* (*Fockea*) and 'Barroe' (*Cyphia*)." (Edmonds and Marloth's "Elementary Botany for South Africa," p. 125, 1897.)

Komberse.—(D. *kombaars*, a coverlet, rug.) A rug, blanket; sometimes a kaross is so styled.

"In the evening I took my pillow and *Komberse*, or skin-blanket, to the margin of a neighbouring vley, where I had observed doe blesboks drink." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 186, 1850.)

Kombuis.—(D. *kombuis*, *kabuis*, a nautical term for the cooking place aboard ship; cf. Eng. *caboose*.) Cape Dutch for the kitchen. The word used in Holland is *keuken*.

"In de kleinere huizen is de 'vuurhaard' aan het eene einde van het voorhuis, doch meestal heeft men een 'kookhuis' buitensdeurs, of een *Kombuis*, evenals de slaapkamers door een dunnen muur van het woonhuis afgeschoten." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 423, 1882.)

Komfoor.—(D. *komfoor*, *kafoor*, a chafing dish; F. *chauffoir*, a foot-stove; *chauffer*, to warm.) The description of this article as used in South Africa, given in the quotation, is as accurate as the author's etymology appears to be inaccurate.

"To preserve warmth the Dutch women use an apparatus to set their feet upon called a *komfoor.* It is a square box, with a few holes cut through the top, and closed only half-way up the front. Into the inside a few hot charcoal embers are introduced from time to time in an iron basin. The name is compounded of Kom, a basin, and Vuur, fire, changed into Foor. Our English word comfort might almost be thought to have had its origin from this apparatus." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 84, 1844.)

Kommetje.—(D. *kom,* a basin; *kommetje,* a small cup.) (1) In Cape Dutch this is a small basin. (2) The term is also applied to the basin-like depressions that in some localities are very numerous in the veld. See Comitjes.

"The cluck of the liquor as it passed into the tin *komeky.*" (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 122, 1897.)

"A feature of this part is the peculiar surface conformation known as *Kommetjes,* in which flat or gently sloping ground, overlying an impervious ironstone gravel, has the surface closely but irregularly pitted to a depth of about 2 feet, while the adjoining ground is similarly elevated, it is said by the action of earthworms." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 2, 1907.)

Kommetje-gat kat.—*Herpestes caffer.* See Grijse muishond.

Kommetje thee water.—The Western Province name of a wild flower.

"The quaint little *Kommitje thee water* (little cup of tea), with its pink and white flower, that looks as though it were made of china." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 190, 1902.)

Konfijt.—(D. *konfijt,* preserve.) Various fruits are splendidly preserved by the Dutch housewives; whether in syrup or candied they form a very appetizing adjunct to the tea table, and are known by this name.

"The Dutch, I must tell you, rise so early that a twelve o'clock dinner is honestly earned after seven hours dawdling about, and then they have a long 'siesta' in their darkened rooms; after which coffee and cakes, tea and *comfáát* until it is time to go to bed again at ten." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 25, 1871.)

Koning aasvogel.—(D. *koning,* king; *aas,* carrion; *vogel,* a bird.) *Otogyps auricularis,* the Black vulture.

"Their is another fairly well-known species, the Black vulture, called by the Boers *Koning aasvogel* (King vulture)." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 4, 1908.)

Koning klip-visch.—(D. *klip*, rock; *visch*, fish.) *Epinephelus gigas*, a delicious table fish. See Garoupe.

Koning riet-haan.—(D. *riet*, a reed; *haan*, a cock.) *Porphyrio madagascariensis.*

"The 'Blue Gallinule' or 'Koning riet-haan' is generally distributed throughout the Colony." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 619, 1875-84.)

Koning rooibekje.—(D. *rood*, red; *bek*, a beak, bill.) *Vidua principalis*, a well-known little bird.

"It is known to the Boers as the *Koning rooibekje* (King red-bill)." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 72, 1908.)

Konya.—(Kaf. *um Konya*, an unknown noise or voice heard at night, regarded by the natives as a bad omen; chirping insects generally are known as *isi Konyana*, more particularly the insects (*Pneumora*) known to the Dutch as Opblasers (q.v.). The name refers to and imitates to some extent the weird noise which the insect makes at night. See Gonya.

"A large kind of grasshopper, called by the natives *umkonya*, a name which is intended to represent its call. The same name, though with an introductory guttural—*ghonya* is used by the colonists also." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 8 January, 1909.)

Konza, to.—(Kaf. *uku Konza*, to wait upon, to serve.) To pay one's respects to the chief; to act as a minister of the chief; to attend to the request or command of another.

"It is the custom for all the young men in the country to spend a few months every year *Konzaing*, i.e. paying their respects at court; but not to put too fine a point on it, this means in fact that they have to hoe the king's corn, and at the same time find themselves in provant." (Leslie's "Zulus," p. 93, 1875.)

"It suits them for the time to come and *konza*, to make peace." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 137, 1897.)

Kooboo besjes.—(D. *bezie*, a berry.) The sweet, edible stone fruit of the *Elaeodendron sphærophyllum.*

Koodoo.—(Kaf. *i Qudu.*) *Strepsiceros capensis*. One of the largest and perhaps the most handsome of all the South African antelopes. The horns of a full-grown bull are magnificent in their proportions and appearance, diverging in a splendid spiral until they are several feet apart.

" Koedoo is the name given by the colonists to a beautiful tall gazelle, with long and slender shanks, which is larger though much less clumsy and heavy than the elk-antelope. The horns too of the *koedoo*, besides that the spiral twist on them is more deeply embossed and is embellished with a singularly prominent edge, or rib, are twice as long as the horns of the elk." (Sparrman's " Voyage," II. p. 213, 1785.)

Kooi.—(D. *kooi*, cage, fold, pen.) In Cape Dutch this word is used of a bed. It appears to have been taken over from the sailors.

" De Afrikaner zegt niet ' in de kraam kom ' maar in die bed (*kooi*) kom." (" The Northern Post," p. 12, 20 June, 1912.)

Kook-a-vic.—The onomatopoetic name of *Laniarius gutturalis*. See Bakbakiri.

" The *Kook-a-vic* was piping his shrill note in a bush hard by—' Kook-a-vic, kook-a-vic, kook-a-vic '." (Clairmonte's " The Africander," p. 126, 1896.)

Kool hout.—(D. *kool*, coal; *hout*, wood.) *Lachnostylis capensis*. See Coalwood.

Kooltry.—(Spelt phonetically.) A general term in the Riversdale District for *Crassula* and *Cotyledon*.

Kool zonder spek.—(D. lit. " cabbage without bacon ".) A humorous designation for a ladies' party without gentlemen.

Kooper.—(D. *koopen*, to buy, purchase.) In the early days of the diamond fields the diamond buyers were known as " koopers ".

" It came under earnest debate whether to burn the proprietors' tents . . . or to seek the stalls of the *koopers*." (Boyle's " To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 182, 1873.)

Koord haar.—(D. *koord*, cord, string, rope; *haar*, hair.) Various species of the genus *Passerina* are so named because their tough bark is made into a rough sort of rope for thatching purposes.

Koorn kriek.—(D. *koorn*, *koren*, corn, grain; *kriek*, a cricket; *kraken*, to crack, creak.) *Eugaster longipes*, an insect belonging to the *Locustidæ*; it is very destructive to

pumpkins, mealie cobs, etc., and does at times great damage to crops.

Koorts pijpje.—(D. *koorts*, fever, ague; *pijp*, a pipe, tube.) A clinical thermometer.

Kop.—(D. *kop*, a head, pate.) (1) In common use in Dutch for the head. (2) The term is also used when speaking of a hill—the diminutive "Kopje" being invariably employed of hills of low altitude.

"We did not advance this day more than ten miles into the country, but halted for the night in the plain at *Kopjes* Fontein, so called on account of several low hills in the surrounding distance." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 285, 1822.)

Kopdoek.—(D. *kop*, a head; *doek*, a cloth.) A head cloth. See Doek.

"He deposited his shapeless hat on the floor, tapped his red *kopdoek* with a claw-like forefinger, and waited for an inspiration." ("The State," p. 642, December, 1911.)

Kop-en-duik.—(D. *duiken*, to dive, stoop, duck.) In the neighbourhood of Queenstown a small lizard is known by this name from its habit of ducking its head when disturbed.

Kop-en-pootje.—(D. *poot*, a foot.) The designation of a favourite Dutch dish, the principal ingredients of which are sheep's head and feet.

Koper draad.—(D. *koper*, copper; *draad*, thread, wire.) *Aristida sp.* This name describes this grass when ripe; it is really a valuable pasture grass, because, when burnt off, it shoots up in the spring a month earlier than other grasses, and is then succulent and nourishing, but when ripe it is hard and wiry and of little worth as food for stock.

"*Koper-draad*, or copper-wire grass. *Andropogon excavatus* becomes so hard and bristly as it matures that it has been favourably mentioned as a suitable material from which to manufacture paper, yet in the early stages of its growth it is of great value as a pasture grass." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of Cape Colony," p. 103, 1896.)

Kopje.—See Kop.

Kopje walloper.—One who visited the diamond diggers at their claims in the early Kimberley days to purchase their diamonds.

"The *kopje walloper* was generally a gentleman of the Hebrew persuasion hailing from Petticoat Lane or the Minories." (Matthew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 227, 1887.)

"That *rara avis* a *kopje walloper* who could read and write." (Cohen's "Reminiscences of Kimberley," p. 38, 1911.)

Koren bloemetjes.—(D. *koren*, korn; *bloem*, a flower.) *Ixia flexuosa*, *Linn.*, and other species are so named in the Riversdale District.

Korenkrekel.—(D. *koren*, corn; *krekel*, a cricket.) The Dutch name for members of the *Locustidæ* or Green grasshopper family—*Eugaster longipes*, etc. See Koorn krick.

"The *korenkrekels*, e.g. *Eugaster*, are, however, common enough. These are rather stoutly built insects with the first pair of wings much reduced and the second absent. The first pair are capable of producing a shrill, piercing sound." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 120, 1911.)

Korenland kraai.—(D. *koren*, corn, grain; *kraai*, a crow.) *Corvus segetum* has been thus named by the Dutch, because of its habit of frequenting cornlands.

"The *Korenland kraai* (cornland crow) of the Dutch, *Corvus segetum* of Temminck." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 54, 1889.)

Korhaan.—See Knorhaan.

Kos.—(D. *kost*, food, victuals.) Food; "Veld kos" is such food as the veld will furnish; "Pad kos," provisions for a journey. These words are in constant use in the Midland districts.

"Lebricht Arie owed twelve dollars to a farmer, and not having the means to pay, engaged with the Boer above mentioned to work six months on his farm, at two dollars (three shillings) per month and his *cost* (victuals) on condition that the Boer should immediately discharge his debt." (Phillip's "Researches," I. p. 156, 1828.)

"He wandered about the country . . . and . . . ate the *veld kos* (wild roots of the country)." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-2," p. 157, 1852.)

Kos natje.—*Crassula columnaris* has received this appellation—why, I cannot say.

"Here we find . . . the long and short *Cos natchie*, or *Crassula*." ("Trans. S.A. Philos. Society," I. Part I. p. 24, 1878.)

Koster.—(D. *koster*, a pew opener, sexton; cf. G. *Küster*, a clerk, sexton; Lat. *custor*, from *custos*, a keeper, guardian.) The title of the sexton or caretaker in the Dutch Reformed Church.

"A little further on lived a *koster* or sexton, a set of people that are more respected by the colonists than with us." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 67, 1785.)

Kous-bandje.—(D. *kous;* F. *chausse,* a stocking; D. *kouse-band,* a garter.) *Elaps Hygeæ Merr.* A small, vicious snake, marked in transverse bands of scarlet and black, is thus named in the Midland districts. Compare the Cape English "Garter snake," which is, however, given to another snake.

"The *Kouse band,* or Garter snake, is another of the poisonous reptiles of that country; it is particularly dangerous to travellers, as it resembles the soil so much that it is not readily perceived." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 163, 1789.)

Kraai bek.—(D. *kraai,* a crow; *bek,* bill, beak.) See Papegaai Visch.

Kraai uijntjes.—(D. *kraai,* a crow; *ui,* an onion.) A blue crocus-like flower is so named in Namaqualand. It is very much like the flower of the Klip uijntje (q.v.); the latter, however, has very sharp, almost thorn-pointed leaves, while those of the Kraai uijntje are quite soft.

Kraal.—(Sp. *corral,* a court, enclosure; Port. *curral,* a cattle pen, paddock.) (1) An enclosure for stock. (2) A Hottentot village. (3) Any native village or collection of huts. The word seems to have been introduced by the Dutch and applied somewhat contemptuously at first to the Hottentot and Kaffir holdings and villages.

"Der Hauptmann verspricht . . . keins Veränderung in den Gesetzen und Gewohnheiten des *kraals* vorzunehmen." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 77, 1745.)

"A place or fold where sheep or cattle were enclosed in the open air was called a *kraal.*" (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 164, 1795.)

"Places where cattle are put up at night . . . are called *kraals,* a name which they have also thought proper to transfer to the collected huts of the Hottentots or Kaffirs." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 136, 1801.)

Kraal bosje.—*Galenia africana,* and other plants.

Kraal fuel.—See Mist.

Kraal, To.—To enclose or shut in a kraal.

Kraan oog.—(D. *kraan,* a crane; *oog,* an eye.) The name given by the Dutch to the seed of *Nux vomica,* which is thought to be like a crane's eye.

"The Nux vomica seed, then called *kraan oog* (crane's

eye), was rasped and used with some success." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," p. 61, June, 1904.)

Kraan vogel.—(D. *kraan*, a crane; *vogel*, a bird.) *Anthropoides paradisea*, sometimes called the Blue crane, and occasionally "Kraan vogel," is corrupted into "Krans vogel".

Krans.—(D. *krans*, a wreath, garland; G. *Kranz*, a crown.) (1) A crown of rocks upon the top of a mountain. (2) Thence the word appears to have acquired the meaning of a precipice, a sense in which it is constantly used.

"The way ended about half-way up abruptly, against the side of a precipice. This place the inhabitants of the Cape call the *Krants* or wreath." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 31, 1798.)

"We passed this morning under a mountain whose summit is garlanded with a ring of perpendicular rocks appropriately termed *kranz*." (Barker's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 88, 1852.)

"Another range of mingled bush and *Krantz*." (Fleming's "South Africa," p. 364, 1856.)

"We hear that five horses were precipitated down a *krans* (or precipice) by the same wind and killed." ("Queenstown Free Press," 16 January, 1861.)

Krans vogel.—See Kraan vogel.

Krawwetjes.—(Mal. *krabil*, *krabu*, an ear-ring; thence D. *oor-krabben*, ear ornaments.) Ear-rings are sometimes so called.

Kreef.—(D. *kreeft*, a lobster; F. *crevette*, *ecrevisse;* Eng. crayfish.) *Palinurus Jasus lalandii*—the cray-fish which abounds in Table Bay. See Crayfish and Cape lobster.

"A new theological schism has sprung up amongst the Malays touching the important question whether *Kreef* or crawfish is to be considered ceremonially unclean or not." ("Queenstown Free Press," 30 June, 1863.)

"Hawkers screaming their wares mid ear-splitting cries of *kreef! kreef!* snoek! snoek!" ("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 81, 1871.)

"The *Krief*, which resembles our crayfish, and which abounds in the waters of Table Bay . . . is in itself but a poor libel upon the lobster." (Little's "South Africa," I. p. 151, 1884.)

Kreupelhout.—(D. *kreupel*, crooked, lame; *hout*, wood; *kreupelhout*, underwood.) *Leucospermum conocarpum*. In

Holland the word appears to be applied to brushwood or undergrowth generally; in Cape Dutch it is limited to the above wood and has reference to its contorted appearance.

"Another sort of tree at the Cape . . . is what the Cape-Europeans call *Cripple-wood.* These are dwarf trees with very crooked, knobbed branches." (Kolben's "Present State of the Cape of Good Hope," II. p. 259, 1731.)

"*Kreupel boom,* a large shrub or small tree, with greyish, hairy leaves, and compact heads of tawny yellow flowers." (Bunbury's "Journal," p. 57, 1848.)

Krimmetart.—This word is a corruption of the English "cream of tartar," and is the name given by the Dutch to the fruit of the Baobab (q.v.).

"In this capsule numerous kidney-shaped seeds are embedded, between fibrous divisions, in a white, pulpy, acid substance, somewhat resembling cream of tartar in taste and hence called by the Boers *kram-a-tat.*" (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 441, 1868.)

"In het Noordoostelijke gedeelte van het Boschveld wordt de baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) gevonden, door de Boeren *krimmetat-boom* genaamd, 60 tot 80 voet in doorsnede." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 341, 1882.)

"With this meat we had to eat *Krimmetart,* a fruit resembling a cocoanut, but sour and full of small pips." (Moodie's "Battles," II. p. 342, 1888.)

Krimpziekte.—(D. *krimpen,* to shrink, lessen; *ziekte,* sickness.)

"Cattle and sheep . . . showed 15 to 30 hours afterwards the first symptoms of *Krimpziekte.*" ("C.G.H. Agric. Journal," p. 399, October, 1904.)

Kring-gat bok.—(D. *kring,* a circle, ring; *gat,* a hole, the posterior.) The Dutch name of *Cobus ellipsiprymnus.* Steedman (II. p. 95) says: "It is easily distinguished . . . by the singular and regular ellipse of milk-white hair, which passes over the croup, down the posterior face of the hips, and between the thighs, having the tail in its superior focus, vividly contrasting with the dark vinous-brown colour of the surrounding parts."

"Er sah dicht neben sich ein Rudel Waterbocke (Pallafalla, *Kring-gat*), ein seltenes Wild, und er hatte seine Flinte zurückgelassen." (Wangemann's "Ein Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 409, 1868.)

"Zoo vindt men er in die gebergten op onbereikbare plaatsen, Buffels, Klipspringers, Koedoes, *Ringgatten*, . . . enz. enz." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 1, 1890.)

"*Cobus ellipsiprymnus, Kring-gaat* of the Dutch; Water-buck of the English." (Selous' "Hunter's Wanderings in South Africa," p. 218, 1895.)

Krink.—(Mansvelt says: "*krink*, omdraaien (van't voorstel van een wagen). Van't oude *krenghen*, draaien of wenden.") (1) To turn a wagon. (2) A mode of punishment which seems to be peculiar to South Africa, the ingeniousness of which is only equalled by its brutal cruelty. See quotation.

"He showed us great weals on his dirty skin where he had been thrashed with the sjambok (raw-hide strip). He further stated that on the previous day they *krinked* him. This is the most dreadful punishment that can be imagined. . . . The head of the victim is tied to the off hind wheel of a wagon, and his feet to the off front wheel. The pole is then pulled over to the near side. The torture entailed by this process is somewhat similar to that of the old-fashioned rack." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 223, 1896.)

Kroeshaarmens.—(D. *kroes*, woolly, curled; G. *kraus*; mid Eng. *crous;* D. *haar*, hair; *mensch*, person.) Woolly-haired man. The Hottentots are so called the "Langhaarmens," being men of European blood.

Kroeskop.—(D. *kroes*, woolly, curled; *kop*, a head.) Another nickname applied to the Hottentots.

Kropgans.—(This word bears a different meaning in South Africa from that which it has in Holland; as used there the first syllable is derived from *kroppen*, to cram, and a *kropgans* is a goose that has been fattened by cramming. But as employed in South Africa the first syllable has reference to the *krop* (Eng. *crop*) of the bird to which the name is applied.) *Pelecanus roseus*, at one time fairly common at the mouths of the rivers and on the vleys of South Africa.

"Pelicans with their large claws (? craws) called here *Kropgans* (*Pelecanus onocrotalus*), which are not scarce on the coast, were also kept in a tame state, and lived on fish." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 295, 1795.)

Kruidje-roer-mij-niet.—See Roer-mij-niet.

Kruip mol.—(D. *kruipen*, to creep; *mol*, a mole.) A mole

that makes long galleries very superficially without coming to the surface.

Kruisbesjes.—(D. *kruisbes*, a gooseberry. Vercoullie says: "Het eerste lid behoort bij 2. kroes, wegen de kroezelige haartjes er op".) The fruit of *Grewia occidentalis* is known in the Cape Colony by this name, the reference being apparently to the cross-like arrangement of the four-lobed drupe.

Kruis bosje.—(D. *kruis*, cross; *bos*, a bush.) *Grewia occidentalis*, the colonial Assegai-wood, so called because the wood is used by the natives to make assegai shafts.

Kruis gras.—*Cynodon Dactylon.* See Bermuda grass.

Kruit water.—(D. *kruit*, gunpowder.) Water strongly impregnated with sulphuretted hydrogen, and giving off an unpleasant smell of sulphur. The smell disappears after the water has been exposed to the atmosphere a short time, when the water may be used for garden and other purposes.

"Such water is called *kruid water* locally, on account of the similarity of its smell to that of exploded gunpowder." (Saunder's "Underground Water Supply of the Cape of Good Hope," p. 11, 1897.)

"Many of the springs yield *kruit water*, water i.e. with the smell of sulphuretted hydrogen, due to the mutual decomposition of pyrites and the organic matter in the shales in the presence of moisture." (Roger's "Geology of the Cape Colony," p. 137, 1905.)

Kuier.—(D. *kuier*, a walk.) In Cape Dutch this word means a visit, an outing.

"Maar de Afrikaner *trekt* niet als hij misschien voor zes maanden of een jaar op reis gaat om vrienden of betrekkingen te bezoeken (*kuieren*, een *kuier* maken)." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 40 n., 1882.)

Kuier gast.—(C.D. *kuieren*, to pay a visit; D. *gast*, a guest.) A visitor, a guest.

Kuifkop.—(D. *kuif*, a tuft, crest; *kop*, head.) See Geelgat.

"The *Kuif-kop* as it is called . . . is found in great abundance in the neighbourhood of Cape Town." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 207, 1875-84.)

Kuifkop-koeskoetje.—(D. *kuif*, a tuft, crest; *kop*, a head; F. *coucher*, to lie down; G. *kuschen*, to crouch, submit.) *Megalophonus cinereus, Lay.* The name refers to the tuft of brown feathers on its head. See Padloopertje.

Kuifkop valk.—(D. *valk*, hawk, falcon.) *Lophoaëtus oc-*

cipitalis. This bird has a crest of eight or ten narrow feathers. See Black hawk.

Kuikendief.—(D. *kuiken*, a chicken; *dief*, a thief.) *Milvus ægypticus*, a species of kite. See Geelbek wouw.

"A kite which in size, manners, and appearance much resembles the common kite of Europe . . . is known by the name of *Kuikendief* (chicken thief)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 502, 1822.)

"According to Major Stevenson Hamilton, the Game Warden of the Transvaal Game Preserves, its Dutch name of *Kuikendief* (chicken thief) is not merited, as his experience of them is that they do not steal poultry." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 60, 1908.)

Kukumakranka.—*Gethyllis spiralis* and other species. The peculiar, strongly scented berry of this field plant is thus designated in the neighbourhood of Cape Town. Steeped in brandy it is used as a remedy for the colic.

"*Kukumakranka* (*gethyllis*) is the name given to the legumen or pod of a plant, that grew at this time among the sand hills near the town, without either leaves or flowers. . . . This pod was the length of one's finger . . . had a pleasant smell, and was held in great esteem by the ladies. The smell of it resembled in some measure that of strawberries, and filled the whole room." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 116, 1795.)

"Onder de planten in Zuid-Afrika moet genoemd worden de *Koek-ma-kranke* (*Gethijlis spiralis*); het lof bestaat uit weinige fijne, groene blaadjes met een fraaie witte bloem, en de langwerpige, oranje-gele aardvrucht heeft een bijzonderen, vrij scherpen reuk . . . De vrucht wordt op brandewijn gezet en deze aangewend tegen koliek." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 342, 1882.)

Kupidutje.—A name sometimes given to the Kiewit (q.v.).

Kurang.—(Mal. *kurang*, to be deficient, defective.) A Malay verb used in Cape Dutch as an adverb = unfairly.

"From Malay or Indian sources we have . . . *kurang* (unfair)." ("Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Kurper or **Kerper.**—(D. *karper*, a carp.) *Spirobranchus capensis*, a well-known fresh-water fish. See Karper.

Kurveyor.—(D. *karwei*, work; F. *corvée*, labour, drudgery; Lat. *corrogata*, lit. work done by command.) One who conveys goods by wagon. Formerly all goods were conveyed from the coast inland and up-country by this means; during

the last thirty or forty years the railways have wrought a change, but kurveying is still a remunerative employment in some parts. See Transport rider.

"The foundations of some of the largest fortunes in the East were laid by *kurveyors*." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 372, 1871.)

"A fine independent young fellow was Robert Walters, the transport rider or *karveyor*, as they are called in South Africa." (Hobson's "At Home in the Transvaal," p. 27, 1884.)

Kurvey, To.—To convey goods by wagon as above.

"For various reasons not a farmer *kurveys* between either Concordia or Springbok and Port Nolloth." ("Queenstown Free Press," 8 August, 1873.)

"'There will be an end to those visits one day,' said the merchant, 'and then good-bye to your *kurveying* Walters.'" (Hobson's "At Home in the Transvaal," p. 29, 1884.)

Kusting or **Kustingbrief.**—(D. *kusting*, a mortgage; *brief*, a letter.) A mortgage bond upon a property covering the balance due on the purchase price of the property.

Kwaad.—(O.D. *quaedt*, "bad, malicious, perverse"; *quade*, "ill, evil, bad, naughty, wicked," Hexham; D. *kwaad*, ill, angry.) Angry, vexed, put out. The word is used by Chaucer in the Cook's "Prologue": "'Sooth pley, *quaad* pley,' as the Fleming seith," l. 4357. The word occurs also in Skelton, who wrote in the latter part of the fifteenth century:—

> This tretise devysed it is
> Of two knaues sometyme of Dis.
> Though this knaues be deade,
> Full of myschiefe and *queed*,
> Yet where so ever they ly,
> Theyr names shall neuer dye.

(Ed. Dyce, I. p. 168, ll. 1-6.)

"The Boers meanwhile smiled and said that Mr. . . . was a *kwaad* (angry) man." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 57, 1852.)

Kwaai.—Angry, vicious, bad-tempered. The word is used of both animals and men.

"When the birds are savage—*quei* the Dutch call it, they become very aggressive." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 111, 1890.)

"You'd have to ride Pansy, and she's in a camp full of *kwaai* birds." (Mitford's "Aletta," p. 53, 1900.)

Kwartel.—(D. *kwartel*, a quail.) *Coturnix africana*, the Cape quail.

"The Cape quail (*Coturnix africana*), the *Kwartel* of the Dutch, does not need any description, being too well known throughout the length and breadth of the land." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 46, 1908.)

Kwedini.—(Kaf. *in Kwenkwe*, a boy; *in Kwenkwendini*, the Voc. case, boy! *Kwedini* is a contraction of the latter and is only used in Kaffir in the vocative case.) A term applied on the Border to a native boy, but never by the Kaffirs to a circumcised lad, however young he may be.

"A young native boy was badly hurt with a blow from the pole, owing to the fastening of the chain to the yoke of the oxen giving way; and this *kweedini* was walking behind the pole driving the bullocks on; the snapping of the chain took place just when the strain was heaviest." ("Queenstown Representative," p. 5, 27 January, 1912.)

Kweek gras.—(D. *kweek*, dog's grass.) See Quick grass.

Kween.—(D. *kween*, a barren ewe.) A barren animal of any sort. See Queen.

Kya.—(Kaf. *i Kaya*, a place of abode, home; *in Dlu* is the Kaffir word for a house, hut.) A house, hut.

"A native living in a kraal at Lydenberg quarrelled with another native, whom he accused of having fired his *kya* . . . the first native made a torch . . . and set about two dozen newly made *kyas* alight and fled to the adjacent hills." ("East London Dispatch," 24 November, 1911.)

Kyk.—(D. *kijken*, to look, see, peep. Cf. G. *gucken.*) To look, pry. Chaucer uses the word in the same sense:—

> Into the roof they *kyken* and they gape
> And turned all his harm unto a jape.
>
> ("The Milleres Tale.")

Laagte or **Leegte.**—(D. *laagte*, a valley.) A valley or shallow dip in the veld.

"We emerged on a sandy elevation or 'buet' (? bult) overlooking an extensive undulation or *leegte*." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 25, 1868.)

"As far as I could see up the open *laagte* the ground was teeming with heavy game." (Schulz and Hammar's "New Africa," p. 188, 1897.)

Ladies' fingers.—The name given in Natal to a variety of small, delicately flavoured banana.

Lady bird.—The *Chrysomelidæ* are known by this name in South Africa, because of their superficial resemblance to the lady-birds—*Coccinellidæ*. See Blauw beesje.

Lady's heart grass.—A variety of grass—*Briza maxima, Linn.*—with a heart-shaped head is so called in the neighbourhood of Queenstown. It has been introduced from England where it is known as "quaking grass".

Lager.—(G. *Lager*, a camp; *lagern*, to encamp.) The extemporized wagon fortifications so successfully employed by the Dutch voortrekkers in their frequent conflicts with the natives. The wagons were drawn up in a circle, and fastened together with the trek-touws, the spaces between were filled with goods and thorn bushes, and the families and oxen placed within. The meaning of the word has been gradually extended, and now it is used of any extemporized fortification or stockade, and, in the German sense also, of an encampment. It is an interesting fact that the Helvetians, in their conflicts with the Romans under Julius Cæsar, adopted the same method of defence, as appears from the following: "But the greatest trouble he had was to distresse their campe, and to breake their strength" (or lager) "which they had made with their cartes". (North's "Plutarch," v. p. 19. Tudor Translations.)

"There is a good strong *laager* at Jakins." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-52," p. 196, 1852.)

"At every *laager* the Zulu forces were driven back." (Holden's "History of Natal," p. 92, 1855.)

Lager, To.—To adopt the defensive measures described above.

"Had the camp been at once *laagered* in the Dutch fashion, on the first indication of the enemy's presence . . . it may be that

> Another sight had seen that morn,
> From Fate's dark book a leaf been torn."

(Russell's "Natal," p. 229, 1891.)

Lager, To go into.—In times of Kaffir disturbance people were said "to go into lager," when, from scattered farms, they gathered for mutual protection within some such temporary defence as above described.

Laksman.—(Mal. *laksamana*, the title of one of the highest

dignitaries in the Malay State—the Commander of the Forces. Is this word the Malay rendering of the Dutch fiskaal? This latter officer was authorized to inflict corporal punishment on slaves and Hottentots for petty offences; the present debased meaning of the word would be thus accounted for.) (1) The public executioner. (2) A name given in some parts of South Africa to the Fiscal or Butcher bird (q.v.) apparently because of his doings as an executioner.

"*Laksman*, sn. hangman." ("Patriot Woordeboek," 1902.)

"It is commonly known as the 'Jack-hanger' and 'Butcher bird' in the Cape, the 'Jacky-hangman' in Natal, and the *Lachsman* in the Transvaal." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 95, 1908.)

Lamvanger.—(D. *lam*, a lamb; *vangen*, to catch.) *Aquila rapax.* This bird, also known to English colonists as the golden eagle and to the Dutch as the coo vogel, is so destructive to flocks as to cause it to be destroyed on all occasions. See Coo vogel.

"The English of the Cape call it the Golden eagle, on account of the reddish colour of its neck and belly, and the Dutch farmers *lamvanger*, or lambsiezer, because it is accustomed to seize and carry off to its aerie a lamb or kid." (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 220, 1846.)

"The bird which Chapman says is called by some *Lammitjie vanger* (lamb catcher), and by others the Golden eagle, differs so far as I can find only in the lighter colour of its plumage from the European kind." (Baine's "Explorations in South East Africa," p. 194, 1864.)

Lamziekte.—(D. *lam*, lame; *ziekte*, sickness.) *Osteomalacia.* Paralysis generally of the hind-quarters of cattle, but in acute cases the paralysis is sometimes complete. Dr. Theiler, the Director of Veterinary Research for the Union of South Africa, has arrived at the conclusion, after an elaborate series of experiments, that Lamziekte is neither infectious nor contagious. Careful microscopic investigation has failed to discover any specific organism to which the disease could be traced. He advances the following theory as a working hypothesis, that "Lamziekte is primarily a disease of the muscular system caused by a toxin which accumulates in the muscles and is obtained from grasses of certain regions where it is produced under the influence of certain climatical and

tellurical conditions". By this theory the Doctor says that it is possible to explain, if not all observations, at least the great majority. ("Agric. Journ. S.A. Union," p. 49, July, 1912.)

"The *lamziekte* is when cattle are not able to stand; it comes on gradually, and is slow in its progress; after the death of the animal the bones of its legs are found to be without marrow, instead of which they are filled with water." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," II. p. 64, 1798.)

"It is, therefore, very probable that congestion of the liver, giving rise to indigestion, may act as the exciting cause, and produce a serious complication of these cases of so-called acute *lamziekte*." ("Science in South Africa," p. 361, 1905.)

Landdrost.—(D. *landdrost*, a sheriff; cf. Ger. *Drost*, a governor of a province.) The Board of Landdrost and Heemraden was a judicial court; it consisted of the Landdrost and six Heemraden, who acted in much the same capacity as the county magistrates and their courts do in England. These courts were formed under the old Dutch law of the colony, but were continued long after the British had taken possession. See Drost.

"Er setzte den ersten *Landdrost* oder Richter, ein, von beeden Colonien, Stellenbusch und Drachenstein." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 236, 1745.)

"The colony . . . is divided into eleven districts. Each is placed under the superintendence of either a *Landdrost* or a *deputy landdrost*, who administers the government, in most respects as the representative of the Governor; and it is through him that all laws, proclamations, and inferior regulations are carried into effect." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 75, 1822.)

Lands.—Those portions of a farm that can be brought under cultivation for cereal or other crops are termed "the lands," often only too small a proportion of the whole property.

"In front of the house the *lands* (fields) stretch away in the distance." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 6, 1896.)

"The day was frightfully hot, and at all the Kaffir *lands* the men picked up water-melons, tasteless to eat, but thirst quenching." (Stuart's "Pictures of the War," p. 320, 1901.)

Landsvaders.—(D. *land*, country; *vader*, father; lit. "fathers of the country".) Men whose years and experi-

ence have given them influence and authority in the land; members of parliament.

"Then follows this: 'There is a possibility of the natives electing their own representatives to take their place among the *Landsvaders*'." ("Queenstown Free Press," 13 May, 1884.)

"In the early days of the Republic a farmer was fined 80 rix-dollars because he came to show the *Landsvaders* samples of quartz containing visible gold." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 81, 1897.)

Lang beentjes.—(D. *lang*, long; *been*, a leg.) In the district of Worcester a species of *Leucadendron* (*Proteaceæ*) is known by this name.

"Amongst the farmers it is known from its height (the fully-grown shrub attains about 8 or 10 feet) and slender branches, as *Lang beentjes.*" ("The South African Medical Journal," I. p. 128, 1884.)

Langhaarmens.—See Kroeshaarmens.

Lap or **Lapje.**—(D. *lap*, a patch, rag.) A rag or clout.

"Blue dungaree, or as it is termed by the natives *lap* (corruption of cloth), was the article in greatest request." (Owen's "Narrative," I. p. 118, 1833.)

"The dish-cloth is a great institution in the Boer household. A dirty bit of *lapje* (rag) it is, which fulfils more than its allotted share in the common round." (Hicks' "The Cape as I Found It," p. 179, 1900.)

Latje.—(D. *lat*, a lath.) The tough, young shoots of trees (chiefly quince, *kweepeer*) are often used by those in authority for purposes of castigation.

"Parting the quince *luikeys* with my hand." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 209, 1897.)

Laughing dove.—*Turtur senegalensis*, *Linn.* The name refers to the strange laughing sort of coo which this bird has.

"The little *Laughing dove* . . . is also common in places, especially in the Municipal Gardens in Cape Town." ("Science in South Africa," p. 142, 1905.)

Lavandel.—(D. *lavendel*, lavender.) The name given in the Transvaal to *Heteropyxis natalensis*, *Harv.*

Lazaretto.—(It. *lazzeretto*, a plague-hospital.) A lazar-house, plague hospital.

Lazarus.—(Gk. *Λάζαρος*, Luke XVI. 20; Heb. *Eleazar*, he whom God helps.) Leprosy, leper, leprous. Cf. Eng. lazar, one afflicted with a filthy and dangerous disease.

Lazy Jack.—See Idle Dick.

Leader.—(1) A boy employed, when trekking, to lead the two front oxen of the span, which he does by means of a riem fastened to their horns. (2) The two front oxen of a span are also termed leaders.

"The *leader* (as the boy is called who leads the two front oxen of the span) on my first wagon journey was a Bushman." (Cole's "The Cape and the Kaffir," p. 141, 1852.)

Leader.—A vein of gold-bearing quartz which is supposed to indicate the whereabouts of the main reef.

"Many quartz veins more or less auriferous have been found which are supposed to lead to the rich or mother vein; these are thus called *leaders* and some of them are giving a fair percentage of gold." ("Queenstown Free Press," 6 June, 1884.)

Lead water, To.—In many of the towns and villages of South Africa, water, both for drinking and irrigation purposes, is brought by means of an open "Furrow" (q.v.). The Dutch are very expert at this work. For irrigation, each householder —unless he holds what are known as "dry erven"—has the right to turn the water from the furrow on to his land for a time determined by the size of his holding. Guiding the water from the furrow so as to wet the land uniformly is termed "leading water".

"Along one of these (furrows) the water is *led* to the field which is to be watered." (Lownde's "Every-day Life in South Africa," p. 86, 1900.)

Lean-to, A.—A room or shed built against the side or back of a house, with a separate sloping roof.

"One has not the satisfaction of enjoying the comfortable bit of shade afforded by the *lean-to*, which we had rigged up in the corner of the laagar." (Hutchinson's "In the Tents in the Transvaal," p. 137, 1879.)

Lechwe.—*Cobus leche;* a beautiful species of water-buck discovered by Oswald, Murray and Livingstone.

"Troops of *leches*, or, as they are here called, *lechwes*, appeared feeding quite heedlessly all over the flats." (Livingstone's "Missionary Travels in South Africa," p. 204, 1857.)

"The river and the banks are frequented by the rare species of waterbucks, called by the natives *luchee* (*Adenota leche*), before noticed in this neighbourhood." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 141, 1868.)

Leegte.—See Laagte.

Leer visch.—(D. *leer*, *leder*, leather; *visch*, fish.) *Lichia amia*, known in Natal as the Garrick (q.v.). Gilchrist suggests that the fish was thus named by the early Dutch sailors, because of the similarity of its leathery skin to that of a fish so named in the East Indies.

Leeuwbekkies.—(D. *leeuw*, a lion; *bek*, a beak, snout.) (1) The snap-dragon—*Antirrhinum majus*—has received this name from the Dutch. It is known in some parts of England as "Calf's snout". (2) The name is also applied to other *Scrophulariaceæ* with personate corollas.

Legavaan.—(Amer. *yuana*, Sp. *iguana*, a lizard.) Both *Varanus niloticus* and the smaller *V. albigularis* are known by this name. See Guana and Iguana.

"Frequented by numbers of the large amphibious lizards called the *leguan* or guana." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 29, 1840.)

"My though, but he's about the biggest *legovaan* I've ever seen!" (Mitford's "Renshaw Fanning's Quest," p. 81, 1894.)

Leg off, A.—The leg of an animal broken by a shot or in any other way is said in Dutch-speaking districts to be "off" or to have been "shot off".

"Yes, he's wounded certainly, got a *a leg off* (broken)." (Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 497, 1906.)

Lekker.—(D. *lekker*, dainty, nice, sweet.) (1) Tasty, delicious: in common use in the Midland Districts. (2) Sometimes used of a person the worse for liquor.

They lyvd at ease in vile excess,
They sought for *lecker-cost*.

(Riche's "Alarme to England," 1578).

"Unsere Reisegesellschaft bezeichnete das Wasser *lecker* weil es keinen salz gehalt hatte." (Wangemann's "Ein Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 93, 1868.)

"In gaol for drunkenness or violent incontinence of speech when only *lekker* or half-tipsy." ("The State," p. 243, September, 1911.)

Lekkers.—(D. *lekker*, dainty, sweet.) Confections made of sugar; sweets.

"As pocket handkerchiefs are the exception and *leckers* (a kind of sticky sweetmeat) the rule, your hand, at the finish

of a family 'How do you do?' has something of the adhesiveness and consistency of a glutinous fish." (Atcherley's "A Trip to Boerland," p. 78, 1879.)

Lelspreeuw.—(D. *lel*, uvula, wattle; *spreeuw*, a starling.) *Dilophus carunculatus.* See Locust bird.

"It is sometimes called *lelspreeuw* on account of the large 'lel' or wattle which the male develops in the breeding plumage." ("Transvaal Agric. Journ.," p. 529, July, 1908.)

Lemon dove.—*Haplopelia larvata.* See Cinnamon dove.

Lemon grass.—*Elionurus argenteus, Nees.*, is commonly known by this name.

Lemon wood.—*Xymalos monospora, Harv.*, common in Transvaal forests.

Leopard bird.—Another name given by sailors to *Ossifraga gigantea.* See Glutton bird.

Leopard toad.—*Bufo regularis.*

"A large and extremely handsome form, with bright yellow spots and markings, is generally known as the *leopard toad.*" ("Science in South Africa," p. 149, 1905.)

"Several of these were new to science. Among the more interesting of these may be mentioned a *toad* which was marked like a *leopard.*" (W. C. Scully, "The State," p. 222, March, 1912.)

Lepelhout.—(D. *lepel*, a spoon; *hout*, wood.) *Hartogia capensis.* In the Transvaal *Mystroxylon burkeanum, Sond.*, is so called.

"This tree is found in the woods of the districts of Swellendam and Caledon, where it is known by the name of *Lepelhout* (ladle wood) and in the bushy ravines on the eastern side of Table Mountain." (Pappe's "Silva Capensis," p. 10, 1862.)

Let rip, To.—A slang expression applied to the firing of a gun, the use of vigorous language, etc.

"I galloped round the kopje with my police and half-a-dozen volunteers . . . and we *let rip*, to use the Africander expression." (Barkly's "Among Boers and Basutos," p. 186, 1893.)

Liddoorn.—(D. *likdoren*, a corn; *doorn*, thorn, prickle. Cf. the first syllable *lik* with D. *lijk*; Ger. *Leiche;* M.E. *lich*, a corpse; A.S. *lic*, a body.) A corn.

"Voor 't engelse 'corn' zegt de Hollander meestal 'eksteeroog' en de Afrikaner *liddoorng* en niet 'likdoorn'." ("The Northern Post," p. 12, 20 June, 1912.)

Lifting the elbow.—A euphemism for "given to drink".

"There's a sight too many chaps out here who are a deal too fond of *lifting the elbow.*" (Mitford's "Gerard Ridgeley," p. 24.)

Lift, To.—Another word in common use for taking away unlawfully, stealing. The word is not unknown in this sense on the Scottish border.

"Cattle were to be *lifted* from town kraals." (Sheffield's "Story of the Settlement," p. 227, 1884.)

Lighted candles.—In Natal the flowers of *Loranthus natalitius* are thus designated.

"The long tubular flowers are frequently decorated with alternate transverse bands of colour, white and crimson, and one (*L. natalitius*), waxy white, tipped with yellow, has no fanciful resemblance to *lighted candles*, by which name I have heard the children call them." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 452, 1868.)

"In Natal another species (*L. natalitius*) has waxy white flowers tipped with yellow which the children know as *lighted candles.*" (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 128, 1906.)

Lighting matches.—See quotation.

"Every one who lives in the Eastern Province knows what is meant by *lighting matches.* The 'matches' of *Loranthus oleæfolius* are born in umbels of three to five flowers, bright red at base and orange in the upper portion with green tips. . . . When ready for lighting the tips which hold the ends of the stamens become black. When this sensitive point is struck by birds, back fly the petals, and the pollen is thrown some distance as the stamens are freed from confinement." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 127, 1906.)

Lilac disa.—The trivial name of *Disa Harveiana Lind.*

Lily, Natal.—*Gladiolus psittacinus, Hook*, is known in Grahamstown by this name.

Lily of the hill.—See Trumpet lily.

Lily, Pig.—This is the unromantic name by which the beautiful creamy white arum—*Richardia africana*—is known in the neighbourhood of Cape Town. In Engler's "Natürlichepflanzenfamilien," this plant now stands under the name of *Zantedeschia æthiopica, Sprengl.*

"Thousands upon thousands of arums, *pig-lilies* as

they call them in Africa." (Haggard's "Jess," p. 48, 1887.)

Limbo.—Certain varieties of coloured cotton prints, used in trade and barter with the up-country natives, are so called.

"We exchanged some *limbo* . . . for eighteen young fowls." (De Waal's "With Rhodes in Mashonaland," p. 259, 1896.)

"The native in the foreground is wearing the distinguishing mark—yellow *limbo* round his head, as worn by our friendlies." (Wills and Collingwood's "Downfall of Lobengula," p. 187, 1894.)

Limoen gras. — *Andropogon Schœnanthus, Linn.*, is so called because of the faint lemon scent which it gives off when bruised ; but the name is more commonly and more appropriately (its lemon scent being much stronger) applied to *Elionurus argenteus, Nees.*

Links.—(D. *links*, at the left hand.) The left-handed one. The name borne by Makanna, originally a Kaffir of common rank, who, by his talents and address, gradually raised himself to distinction as a witch-doctor. He was an important personage in the attack made by the Kaffirs on Grahamstown, on 22 April, 1819. He was drowned while trying to escape from Robben Island, where he was detained as a prisoner.

Lion fish.—

"Should any sportsman be thinking of emigrating to South Africa, I would strongly recommend him the following bill of fare for his first dinner party in the wilderness. . . . First course.—Tortoise soup, Crab, *Lion fish* found in the rivers." (Cole's "The Cape and the Kaffirs," pp. 84-85, 1852.)

Lion's Head.—A mountain in the immediate neighbourhood of Cape Town, which is supposed to resemble a lion couchant; one part is known as the Lion's Head, the other as the Lion's Rump.

"Einige sagen der Name komme von denen sonst darauf gewesen Löwen her. Vor kurzer Zeit hielte sich ein dergleichen fürchterliches Thier da auf, welches Vieh und Menschen zerrisse. . . . Anders meynen der Berg heisse also, weil er einem liegenden Löwen ähnlich scheint der auf seinen Raub lauert." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 208, 1745.)

Lion's Rump.—See above.

"A long unbroken hill of moderate height, is King James's Mount (the *Lion's Rump* of the Dutch)." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 14, 1801.)

Little dog-rose.—*Dombeya Dregeana, Sond.*, is so called in the Eastern Province.

"The Dombeya, sometimes called *little dog-rose.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 27 May, 1910.)

Liverpool of South Africa.—Port Elizabeth is sometimes so designated, but whether the designation is intended to be taken humorously, or as being anticipative, is somewhat uncertain.

"The *Liverpool of the Cape* was not yet in existence, and a dreary, barren-looking waste met many a disappointed eye." (Dugmore's "Reminiscences," p. 5, 1871.)

"Port Elizabeth, *the Liverpool of South Africa,* is the next point we have to aim at." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers and British," p. 78, 1881.)

Loan Farms.—This was the designation of those farms which were originally granted by the Government on yearly lease, the lease-holder paying an annual rent of twenty-four rix-dollars. The payment was regarded as a renewal of the lease, the tenure being really a lease held in perpetuity; this seems to have been the oldest form of tenure in the Cape Colony.

"The number of these *loan farms* registered in the office of the receiver of land revenue on closing the books in 1798, were:—

In the District of the Cape	110
,, ,, ,, Stellenbosch and Drakenstein	689
,, ,, ,, Swellendam . . .	541
,, ,, ,, Graaff Reinet . . .	492
Total	1832"

(Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 380, 1804.)

"A *loan place* which is a place obtained from the Government, that has not yet been surveyed, is half-an-hour's walk in every direction from the house or centre." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 585, 1844.)

"Sixty morgen of land proved in Africa far too little for men who, in Europe, never probably owned an acre; so eventually they obtained *loan farms* of 6000 or more acres." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," I. p. 95, 1845.)

Lobengula.—The bloodthirsty despot who ruled the Matabele, until the territory over which he held such baleful sway was occupied by the forces of the British South African Company.

"*Lobengula* . . . His name means 'defender,' but for the Matabele nation he was the 'destroyer'." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 77, 1897.)

Lobola.—(Kaf. *uku Lobola,* to compensate; to pay dowry for a wife.) The word lobola would seem to indicate that the original idea in giving cattle in order to secure a wife among the Kaffirs, was of a somewhat different character from that which obtains at present; that it was in fact regarded as a solatium to the mother for the pains which she is supposed to experience when her daughter is taken from her. This may have been the original idea in the transaction, but there is no doubt that at the present time the custom has degenerated into the mere buying of the woman on the part of the would-be husband on the one hand, and the securing the largest number of cattle possible for her on the part of her father or guardian on the other hand; the choice of her husband being a matter in which the woman, as a rule, has very little if any voice.

"If they will but treat my daughter well that is the best *uku-lobola.*" (Colenso's "Ten Weeks in Natal," p. 138, 1855.)

"The verb for buy is *tenga,* but when a Kaffir speaks of buying a wife he uses the verb *lobola,* which means to take away a cutting, and figuratively to remove a pain. It would seem therefore that the word when applied to the giving of cattle for a girl, refers to the pains which the mother endured in bearing and nurturing her, and that they were originally given to remove those pains, that is to reward her for them." (Shooter's "Kaffirs of Natal," p. 48, 1857.)

Location.—(1) In the Eastern Province of the Cape Colony, the "location" is a portion of land set apart by a municipality somewhere on the outskirts of the town, upon which natives are allowed, under certain regulations, to reside. (2) In Natal the term refers to certain large tracts of land which are firmly secured by Government to the natives. Each such "location" is suitable for a population of from 10,000 to 12,000, and is the property of the tribe collectively. Altogether the total area of the land thus secured to the natives in Natal is not less than 2,000,000 acres.

"Up the country each town has its *location*, an adjoining town really, separated from it by a little space, where the natives live." (Lownde's "Everyday Life in South Africa," p. 113, 1900.)

"The plan Government devised was to preserve the natives distinct from the whites, and for this purpose large tracts of country were set aside, under the designation of '*locations* for the natives'. On these *locations* the natives were to be collected, and governed by their own laws, through the medium of their own chiefs." (Holden's "History of Natal," p. 176, 1855.)

Lock, To.—This was the term applied to the old method of skidding the wagon wheels for the descent of a steep place. It consisted in fastening the wheel with a riem or chain in such a way that it could not revolve. Sometimes a "lock-shoe" or "riem-schoen" was employed into which the wheel was slipped and secured, saving enormously in wear and tear. All this has, however, been superseded by the patent-screw brake.

"Down still steeper hills . . . both the hind wheels are *locked*, and sometimes one of the forewheels into the bargain, especially in rainy weather, when it is slippery." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 124, 1785.)

Lock-shoe.—A small trough of hard wood into which the wheel is slipped to prevent wear and tear when the wheel is locked.

"In order that the lowest fellies of the wheel which is to be *locked* may not be worn, together with the iron-work round it, a kind of sledge carriage, hollowed out in the inside, and called a *lock-shoe*, is fitted to it." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 124, 1785.)

Locust bird.—(1) The wattled starling—*Dilophus carunculatus*. This bird destroys large numbers of locusts in their immature or voetganger stage, and is no less destructive among them when they are on the wing. (2) Two Pratincoles—*Glareola melanoptera* and *G. pratincola*—follow the locust swarms in great numbers. At one time they were seldom seen in the Cape Colony except when in pursuit of their favourite food, but in recent years they seem to have settled down in some parts, and failing locusts do not hesitate to attack the fruit. All three of these birds are known to the Dutch as Klein springhaan vogel (small locust birds). (3) *Cicona alba*;

this member of the stork family, responsible for so much in the domestic life of Germany, confers a great benefit of another sort upon the agriculturist. Locusts appear to be its chief South African food ; it is known as the " Great locust bird ".

" The numbers of the grillevori are not less astonishing than those of the locusts." (Barrow's " Travels," I. p. 257, 1801.)

" The white stork of Europe is known here as the *great locust bird*." (Burton's " The Cape Colony for the Settler," p. 11, 1903.)

Lokkertje.—(D. *lokken*, to decoy, allure.) A tame bird used to lure wild ones into a cage or trap. Cf. Caxton's " I am no byrde to be locked ne take by chaf." (" The Historye of Reynard the Foxe," 1481.)

Lol.—(D. *lollen*, to sit by the fire, to chat ; cf. G. *lallen.*) The term applied at one time by the students at Stellenbosch to a students' party ; a social evening ; a spree.

" We were approached one day in class by a solemn-looking individual, and invited in the name of the lady of one of the professors to be present at a *loll*. The word applied to an evening party brought up rather a funny picture before the imagination, and suggested the thought that people must feast here in Roman fashion, but we were subsequently informed that it meant a simple evening party." (Mackinnon's " South African Traits," p. 45, 1887.)

Longbelly.—A Natal corruption of the name of the native chief, Langelibelele, who gave so much trouble in 1873.

Long-tailed cormorant.—*Graculus africanus, Gray.* See Crown duiker.

Long-tailed finch.—The common designation of *Chera progne*, the Kaffrarian grosbeak. See Kaffir chief.

" A few of the *long-tailed finches* also described in the *Systema Naturæ* as the Loxia caffra, and in the same work as *Emberiza longicauda*, were here seen flying about among the flags." (Kay's " Caffrarian Researches," p. 85, 1833.)

Long Tom.—(1) A somewhat primitive arrangement employed by the early diggers at the diamond fields for " sorting " the diamondiferous material ; it is sufficiently described in the quotation. (2) This designation was also applied by the British soldier to the big guns employed by the Boers in the Anglo-Boer War, 1899-1902.

"First of all came the *Long tom*, a trough fitted with ripples, into the head of which the gravel was thrown, and through which a constant flow of water . . . was maintained, while the gravel was raked and the larger stones and pebbles removed, the fine gravel behind the ripples being taken to the sorting tables." (Mathew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 175, 1887.)

"A 6-inch Creusot or *Long tom* which . . . had come down from Laing's Nek by rail." ("The Times' History of the War," II. p. 198, 1902.)

Longwagon.—The pole running beneath the wagon between the two axles, and connecting them together.

"Extra delay was caused by the *long-wagon* (perch-pole) of the buck-wagon getting badly cracked in crossing a spruit on the wrong road." (Balfour's "Twelve Hundred Miles in a Wagon," p. 188, 1895.)

Long-ziekte.—(D. *long*, lung; *ziekte*, sickness.) See Lung-sickness.

Loog.—(D. *loog*, lye.) *Mesembryanthemum micranthum.* The ash of this plant is used both by the Dutch and by the Hottentots in making soap; as is also the ash of *M. junceum, Harv.*, which is more widely distributed and extends into the Eastern Karoo.

Looper.—(D. *looper*, a slug.) The name given in South Africa to a large-sized buckshot or slug.

"With plenty of powder, buck-shot, *loepers*, or slugs." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 47, 1852.)

"Nine *loepers*, well and tightly loaded in a shot cartridge." (Mitford's "Clement Wayneflete," p. 76, 1894.)

Lootsman.—(D. *loot*, lead; Eng. *leadsman*, the man who gauges the depth of water by means of lead and a line. Cf. Eng. pi-*lot;* see Skeat.) *Naucrates ductor.*

"Vom *Lootsmann.* Dieser Fisch führet seinen Namen desswegen, weil man glaubt, er diene dem Meer-Vielfrasse zum Wegweiser." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 376, 1745.)

"Another rare fish recently acquired was . . . a fine specimen of a sucker-fish or *lootsman*. . . . The chief characteristic of this fish is the long narrow sucker on the top of the head, this being 3½ inches long by nearly 2 inches in width." ("East London Dispatch," 5 May, 1908.)

Loquat.—The tree *Eriobotrya japonica, Lind.*, is a native of China and Japan; the name as we have it approximates to the Canton pronunciation of the Chinese name

meaning "rush orange". The fruit when ripe is very juicy and pleasantly subacid. The word is introduced because the fruit is so well known to South Africans.

Lory.—(The word is a corruption of the Malay *nuri*, a parrot. Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary".) *Turacus corythaix*, *Gallirex porphreolophus*, and *Schizorhis concolor*, the two latter being northern birds, are all Lories (*Musophagidæ*). Turacus has a much more extensive range than the others, and is common in the forests of the Cape Colony. Its general colour is an iridescent green, the tail and wings are steel blue, the latter when expanded showing a brilliant crimson shot with purple. See Bush lory and Go-way bird.

"The *cuculus persa*, a beautiful bird, called by the colonists *loeri* or *lori*, with scarlet wings, a green crown, tipped with red, and a red bill." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," I. p. 195 n., 1812.)

"The lovely doves and woodpeckers with beautiful *lowries* fluttering." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," p. 97, 1831.)

"*Lories*, richly tinted and mellow coloured." (Russell's "Natal," p. 36, 1891.)

Lospit.—(D. *los*, loose, free; *pit*, the stone or kernel of fruit.) The name given to a variety of peach the flesh of which does not adhere to the stone. See Taaipit.

Love bean.—In the Transvaal the seeds of *Abrus precatorius, L.*, are known by this name.

Lovebird.—*Agapornis roseicollis.* A pretty little bird of the parrot tribe.

Love grass.—*Setaria verticillata, Beauv.* The hooked seeds of this grass attach themselves firmly to one's clothing. See Klis or Klits grass.

Lucht.—(D. *loog*, lye.) A corruption of the Dutch word "Loog" (q.v.), it is applied to a potash salt obtained by burning a small karoo bush with cylindrical fleshy leaves, known as the "Asbosje" (ash bush). The salt thus obtained is used as a lye in the manufacture of the coarser Boer or Kaffir tobacco as it is called.

"Much of the tobacco consumed in the Colony is dipped in a lye of *lucht*." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 480, 1896.)

Lui haai.—(D. *lui*, lazy, slothful; *haai*, a shark.) *Scyllium africanum.* This dogfish is known round the coast by

several names: e.g. Bonti haai (variegated shark), Tiger shark, Schaam oog (bashful eye).

Luipard.—(D. *luipaard*, a leopard.) The hunting leopard. *Cynælurus jubatus.* Known also as the Vlackte tijger.

"The creature known as the Hunting leopard, generally called *Luipard* by the Dutch (*Cynælurus jubatus* of naturalists), is rather rare in South Africa." ("Science in South Africa," p. 126, 1905.)

"I may be allowed here to remark . . . that the South African animal called *Luipard* (leopard) by the Dutch colonists . . . and supposed to be the *Felis jubata*, has not the sharp retractile claws which distinguish the feline genus." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 326 n., 1824.)

Luiters.—Unaware, innocent.

Lumpy jaw.—Actinomycosis of the bony structure of the jaw. See Ray fungus disease, Big jaw, and Wooden tongue.

Lung sickness.—A highly infectious inflammatory condition of the pleura and lungs; the cause of heavy losses at times to the cattle farmers of South Africa. See Long ziekte.

Luns.—(Eng. "To lunge a colt in breaking him in, is to hold him with a long rope, and drive him round in a circle. Still in use," Halliwell.) To tame a horse, to break a young horse in.

Lunsriem.—(D. *luns*, a linch-pin.) (1) The small strip of untanned hide with which the linch-pin is secured in the end of the axle. (2) A term of opprobrium applied to an Englishman, and to a dirty fellow or tramp.

Die dit nie spreek, hij is bekent:
Als *luns-riem* of een rooinek-vent.

(Een Patriot, Reitz's "Afrikaanse Gedigte," p. 21, 1888.)

Lynx.—The name sometimes given to *Felis caracal*, though this animal differs in several characteristic features from the true lynx of the northern hemisphere. See Rooi-kat.

Maaiers.—(D. *maden*, maggots.) A term applied to maggots and caterpillars.

Maal klip.—(D. *maal*, meal; *klip*, a rock, stone.) The primitive implement employed by native women in grinding meal or snuff.

"A *maal-klip*, that is a flat stone, or one which has been slightly hollowed in the centre, upon which the dried locusts were reduced to powder, by means of a smaller round stone

worked with both hands." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 58, 1905.)

Maanhaar Jackal.—(D. *manen*, a mane; *haar*, hair.) *Proteles cristatus, Gray.* This name has reference to the ridge of long dark hair which this animal has running from the head down its back. See Aard-wolf.

"The *mona* (maned) *jackal*, by which name it is most commonly known, may be found all over South Africa." (Nicolls and Eglinton's "Sportsman in South Africa," p. 93, 1892.)

"The *Maanhaar* (maned) *jackal* . . . an animal intermediate in appearance between the hyena and the common jackal, has recently been the subject of discussion, as to whether it attacked sheep or not." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 338, 1896.)

Maantje hut.—(D. *mand*, a basket; cf. Eng. *maunde*, a hand basket; the word is still in use.) A hut made of wattles and covered with anything that will keep out the wet or cold; easily erected and easily removed.

"They built only the *maantje house*—a slight basket frame of wattles, covered with rush mats, which could be erected or taken down by the wife while the man boiled the kettle. When I visited the Griquas at the Mount Currie Laager first in 1869, one of these maantje huts was still in use." (Dower's "Annals of Kotstad," pp. 4-5, 1902.)

Maan visch.—(D. *maan*, the moon; *visch*, a fish.) *Orthagoriscus mola.* See Sun-fish.

Maccles.—(G. *Makel*, a stain, spot, blot; Lat. *macula*, a spot.) Diamonds made defective by a dark ridge across them, detracting considerably from their value.

"The commonest kind of flaw is a dark ridge stretching right across the stone, as if it had been severed at some period of its growth and welded together again. Diamonds so marked are called *maccles*." (Devereaux' "Side Lights," p. 142, 1899.)

Madagascar cat.—*Lemur catta, L., L. macaco, L.*, and *L. mongoz, L.* In Natal these pretty little animals, which make interesting pets, are so styled.

"They have brought with them . . . macacas, or as they are sometimes termed *Madagascar cats*." (Owen's "Narrative," II. p. 88, 1833.)

"Curious lemurs which are usually known as *Madagascar cats.*" (Bryden's "Animals of South Africa," p. 12, 1900.)

Mackerel.—*Scomber brachysoma, Bleek,* is known by this name in Natal.

Made road.—A road which has been metalled is so called to distinguish it from a road cut through the veld by the traffic only. This latter, up to comparatively recent years, was the South African style of road nearly everywhere outside a town.

"At Mamre, and at Mamre only, through all this South African trip, we found a *made road.*" (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 26, 1873.)

Magerman.—(D. *mager*, lean, thin, meagre.) *Urginea altissima, Baker.* A bulbous plant with a tall, thin flower-stalk; it grows abundantly on the Queenstown commonage.

Maggot fly.—*Auchmeromyia* (*Bengali*) *depressa,* as also a species of *Ochromyia,* deposit their larvæ on the skin of man; the larvæ penetrate the skin and produce large inflamed ulcers.

Mahem.—(Kaf. *i Hemu*, Pl. *ama Hemu,* the crested crane.) *Balearica regulorum.* The name is onomatopoetic. See Crowned crane and Kaffir crane.

"They hold in high estimation a beautiful crane . . . they call it *maahoom,* from the noise it continually makes." ("Scenes and Occurrences in Albany," p. 117, 1827.)

"Observed a troop of *Ahem* cranes, consisting of ten." (Andersson's "Notes of Travel in South Africa," p. 296, 1875.)

"There were several varieties of the crane, including the lovely *Mahem,* or crested crane, and the great bull crane." (Lacy's "Pictures of Travel, Sport, and Adventure," p. 272, 1899.)

Mahogany bean.—The Rhodesian name of the seed of *Afzelia cuanzensis.*

Maifoedi.—A term applied to a rascal or loafer.

"*Myfooty* is a common Hottentot term, which I would defy even themselves to construe." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 27, 1850.)

Makatan.—A variety of water-melon from Bechuanaland which makes splendid feeding for stock, and is now being grown in the Karoo.

Mak gauw!—(D. *maken*, to make, do; *gauw*, quick.) (1) Be quick! Make haste! In common use in Dutch-speaking districts. (2) A mild kind of Kaffir beer is so called (*ama-rewu*) because of the quickness with which it can be prepared.

"One horseman drew rein . . . while the other cantered in shouting 'Kom vriend, laat ons rei! *mak hoe!*' (Come friend, let us ride! Make haste!)." (Turnbull's "Tales from Natal," p. 177, 1901.)

Mak gauw.—*Dichapetelum cymosum* is so called because of the rapidity with which it acts, killing the cattle that eat it in a very short time; it is a native of the Transvaal. See Gift blaar.

"On the 4th we . . . reached Zacharias De Beer's, surnamed 'pure gyft' or rank poison, on account of the quantity of *Makhouw*, or cattle poison, that grows on his farm." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 82, 1877.)

Makreel.—(D. *makreel*, mackerel.) *Scomber grex*, a near relative of the English mackerel—*Scomber scombrus, L.*

Makrolletje. — (F. *macaron;* G. *makrone*, macaroon, a cake.) A variety of "koekey" made with almonds, macaroon.

"The one word I feel sure of is 'oublietje . . . *makrolletjes* (macaroons) may be another." ("Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Malachite sun-bird.—*Nectarinia famosa*, a beautiful little metallic green bird, with yellow shoulders and long tail-feathers.

Malagas.—*Sula capensis.* The common gannet of South Africa found round the coast in countless thousands.

"As soon as the *Malagos* spies a fish under her, she pops her head nimbly into the water and if she catches the fish she swallows it before she brings her head up again." (Kolben's "Present State of the Cape of Good Hope," II. p. 143, 1731.)

Malamock.—(Devic regards this word as being a corruption of the F. *mamelouk*, a mameluke; Ar. *mamluk*, a slave; the reference being to its dark plumage and beak.) A sailor's name for the black-browed Albatross—*Diomedia melanophrys, Temn.* Layard ("Birds of South Africa," p. 364, 1867) gives the name as "Mollymaw," but the form Malamock is the common one.

"On the 26th, the large birds called *malmucks*, which are brown and white underneath, passed us in great numbers." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 91, 1795.)

"The butterfly-plumaged Cape pigeons, the dark-plumaged Cape hens; the snipe-like whale-birds; the swan-like *molly mawk*." (Mann's "Natal," p. 204, 1859.)

Malay.—This word is very generally used in the Western

Province as though it were synonymous with the word Mohammedan.

"The religion of the False Prophet was introduced into the Colony by the importation of Malacca slaves by the Dutch; hence the terms *Malay* and Mahomedan became synonymous in the Colony." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 606, 1844.)

Malbaar.—A native of Malabar; some of these people were brought over by the Dutch as slaves in the earlier days of the Colony; their intelligence, industry, and mildness of disposition, made them of considerable value.

"First the Madagascar woman . . . next to them the *Malabars*, then the Bugunese or Malays." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 72, 1785.)

"There, at the Cape, they are no longer merely Malays or *Malabars* or natives of the coast of Mozambique, they are slaves." (Semple's "Walks and Sketches at the Cape of Good Hope," p. 37, 1805.)

Mal gift.—(D. *mal*, foolish, mad; *gift*, poison.) A poison obtained from the *Buphane disticha*, used by the Bushmen on their arrows; so called by the Dutch from the peculiar effects which it produced in the wounded animals.

"Another poison used by them was extracted from the *Amaryllis distichia* (Paterson), which was called *mal gift* or mad poison by the Dutch and Namaqua Hottentots." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 78, 1905.)

Mali.—A word in constant use among the natives, and frequently heard among the colonists also, for money. According to Dr. Bleek ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 202, 1857), this word is the result of Hottentot (*mari*) and Kaffir (*mali*) efforts to pronounce the English word "money". The Rev. J. L. Döhne ("Zulu-Kaffir Dictionary," Intro. xxxv, 1857) says that this derivation is a mistake, "since it comes from quite another quarter, because both its radical letters and its meaning show us the way to trace it through the Suaheli to the Arabic and Shemitic מלה (*malah*), *plenus est, repletus est*, from the root מלא (*mala*), *complere*, *μαλειν*, *augere*, *μαλλον*, *magis*". The entire paragraph is exceedingly interesting.

"The fact is that the Kaffir has for some time made the discovery that, next to cattle and wives, a certain number of threepenny pieces is the most desirable of possessions; and

nothing which is not readily convertible into *mali*, or hard cash, has now much attraction for him." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 214, 1852.)

"He appears stretching out his hands for *mali* (money). If the 'mali' is not forthcoming that instant, good-bye to peace." ("Adventures in Mashonaland by Two Nurses," p. 181, 1893.)

Malkop.—(D. *mal*, foolish, mad; *kop*, a head.) A wrong-headed, foolish person; also one who is insane.

Mallemot.—(D. *mallen*, to fool; *mot*, a moth.) A variety of hornet, the sting of which is exceedingly painful.

Mal mier.—(D. *mal*, foolish, mad; *mier*, an ant.) A small ant that often appears in the sugar.

Malmokki.—*Cavia cobaya*, *Schreb*. The tame guinea-pig.

Malta thistle.—*Centaurea melitensis*, *L*.

Maltese lily.—*Sprekelia formosissima*, *Herbert*. The Cape name of this flower, which is a native of Mexico and Guatemala. It is known in England by the name Jacobæa lily according to the "Botanical Magazine" of 1790.

Maltrap.—(D. *mal*, foolish; *trappen*, to trample, kick.) (1) This word is applied to a young and frisky horse, and (2) also to a young person who acts foolishly or without consideration.

Malva.—(D. *maluwe*, a mallow.) In Cape Dutch this word is applied to geraniums generally.

Mamba, Black.—(Kaf. *im Mamba*, a large snake.) *Dendraspis angusticeps*. This snake is found in Natal and in the low countries to the east. Its bite is almost certain death.

"The snake was a large black one, called by the Kaffirs *M'namba umkulu*, or great puff-adder. It did not resemble the ordinary puff-adder in colour, size, or character." (Drayson's "Sporting Scenes," p. 260, 1858.)

"The black *mamba*, which is nearly as large as a rattle-snake, is, however, a dangerous creature, being ready to attack man without provocation, and the bite may prove fatal in less than an hour." (Bryce's "Impressions of South Africa," p. 23, 1898.)

Mamba, Green.—See quotation.

"The younger specimens" (of the mamba) "are green, but as they grow older they get darker; there is no ground, however, for distinguishing the black from the *green mamba* specifically." ("Science in South Africa," p. 148, 1905.)

Man.—An exclamatory form of address in common use all over South Africa, employed often enough quite irrespective of either the age or the sex of the person addressed.

"With many *mans!* and other fashionable interjections they carry on their brainy conversation." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 13 February, 1912.)

Mandoor.—(Port. *mandador*, an overseer, superintendent.) A foreman. This is the Malay form of the word current in the Archipelago, whence it was brought in the early days to South Africa by Malay slaves.

Man-eaters.—Native tribes or remnants of tribes, that have been robbed of their cattle and all other means of subsistence by stronger tribes, have been compelled to resort to cannibalism for sustenance; but proof is not wanting, in some cases, that that which was begun from necessity was continued from choice. During the terrible times consequent upon the devastation of Natal by Chaka's impis, the remnants of the tribes that were left were reduced to the most terrible straits. Undava, a man of the Amadunge tribe, began the practice of cannibalism; he collected a band of men, who hunted for human beings as tigers do for their prey. They were ultimately killed or dispersed by Dingaan about 1820. It must be said that the Kaffirs as a people are entirely free from the stigma of this disgusting practice.

"I have myself conversed with several men who escaped after having been captured by these *man-eaters* and after having been told off to furnish the next feast for their captors; and with one—a chief still living in this Colony—who was compelled to carry the vessel in which he was told he himself would be cooked." (Moodie's "Battles in South Africa," II. p. 297, 1888.)

"Dingaan drove the last of the *man-eaters* from the Biggarsberg." (Russell's "Natal," p. 124, 1891.)

Manel.—(F. *mandille*, footman's cloak, great-coat; Lat. *mantrellum*, a cloak.) A dress-coat, a frock-coat.

"Het einde was dat Adoons ontsnapte en triomfantelik de *manel* aan de President bracht. Ongeveer tot het einde van de oorlog heeft Pres. Steyn de jas gedragen die zijn zorgzame vrouw voor hem had meegegeven." ("Northern Post," p. 2, 27 June, 1912.)

Mangrove.—*Bruguiera gymnorhiza*, which (with the red mangrove, *Rhizophora mucronata*, *Lamb*, and the

white mangrove, *Avicennia officinalis*) at one time formed a considerable belt on the Bluff side of Durban Bay.

Mannevogel.—Another name for the Kivitje (q.v.).

Manotoka boom.—The Western Province name for *Myoporum acuminatum.*

Mantis.—(Grk. μάντις, one who divines, a seer.) This insect is also called the "Praying insect" (q.v.). One variety of mantis occupied an important position in the esteem of the Hottentots. See "Hottentot's god". Kolben says that they worshipped it, but Thunberg, who is probably much nearer the truth, says that "it is by many considered an animal of a fortunate omen". There are a good many varieties of this insect in South Africa.

"A small grey species of grasshopper (*Mantis fausta*) . . . which has obtained the name of Hottentot's god." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 65, 1796.)

"All the *mantis* tribe are very remarkable insects . . . whose dusky sober colouring well suits the obscurity of night." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 418, 1822.)

Mantyi.—(K. *i Mantyi*, a magistrate.) A magistrate is designated by the natives *i Mantyi.*

"It was thought at one time the whole sixty-nine would accept the *Mantje's* invitation, and become the guests of the country." ("East London Dispatch," p. 10, 29 June, 1912.)

Market-master.—The municipal officer whose duty it is to attend to all the affairs of the morning market.

"I should advise them to send the *market-master* . . . to visit our market." ("The Queenstown Free Press," 3 August, 1859.)

Maroola.—*Sclerocarya Caffra, Sond.* A handsome tree (Order *Anacardiaceæ*) common in the Transvaal Bushveld; it is found also in Natal, Rhodesia, and Portuguese East Africa. The fruit has an acid and slightly mango-like flavour, and is largely used by the natives for making an intoxicating drink.

"Some doubt having arisen as to whether the kernels whose analysis was given on page 136 of the last issue of the 'Journal' were really obtained from the *Meroola* or *Marula* as described, a few specimens of the whole fruit of this tree were obtained." ("Trans. Agric. Jour.," p. 411, January, 1907.)

"A big *marula-tree* is for a moment enveloped in a sheet of flame, and then down comes one of the great limbs, its

rending and tearing lost in the rage of other sounds." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 30 July, 1912.)

Marsbanker.—*Caranx trachurus.* The horse mackerel so named in Holland from the Marsdiep in the Zuyder Zee, retains its Dutch name in the Cape Colony. In New York *Alosa menhaden* is known as the Mossbunker.

"Adsi is the *Maasbancker* of the Dutch." (Kaempfer's "History of Japan," 1690-2, Reprint, I. p. 229.)

"The familiar Stock-fish (*Merlucius vulgaris*) and the *Maasbanker* (*Caranx trachurus*) are examples from a group of the fishes illustrating identity of Cape and European forms." ("Science in South Africa," p. 193, 1905.)

Marsbloem.—(D. *Maart*, March; *bloem*, a flower.) *Brunsvigia Josephinæ, Gawl.* This beautiful *Amaryllid* bears its flowers in umbels occasionally as much as two feet in diameter.

"Several other plants of the *Amaryllis* tribe threw up their flower stems quickly; among them the beautiful *Brunsvigia Josephinæ* called *Marsbloem* (March-flower) with a large spreading head of deep crimson, lily-like flowers." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 606, 1844.)

Mashona piano.—A somewhat crude, but ingenious musical instrument made by the Makalakas, consisting of a wooden frame, with iron tongues of different lengths fastened upon it in a row, each emitting when struck a different musical note.

"It is interesting to examine their splendid assegai work, their waist knives, their delicately tipped arrows, the curious engravings on their battle-axes, and the careful workmanship displayed in the crude musical instrument known as the *Mashona piano.*" ("Scientific African," p. 78, 1896.)

Masked duck.—*Dendrocycna viduata.* A tree duck with the front part of the head white, found occasionally in Natal.

"White *masked duck* . . . there is a specimen . . . in the Durban Museum." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 209, 1899.)

Mason.—This word, influenced probably by the Dutch use of the word *metselaar* (C.D. *messelaar*) for both mason and bricklayer, is used all through South Africa, where, in England, the word "bricklayer" would be employed.

Master.—(D. *meester*, teacher.) This word is often used in the sense of "teacher".

"He asked me to stay to supply the place of *master*." (Damberger's "Travels," p. 61, 1801.)

N.B.—In a note the author explained the word *master* as follows: "This office unites those of schoolmaster and of overseer to the slaves of the plantation".

Matabele.—(Lit. "Those who disappear".) The reference is to the large size of the ox-skin shields behind which the redoubtable warriors of Moselikatse fought; it was nearly twice the size of those used by the Basutos, with whom, or with the Bechuanas, the name seems to have originated. The Matabele are really a Zulu people.

"Our road wound for some distance in a north-westerly direction amongst numerous *Matabili* villages." (Harris's "Wild Sports," p. 111, 1839.)

"Hearing at the Baharutse that a tribe possessing much cattle lived at some distance eastward, they proceeded thither and were received in a friendly manner by Moselekatse the king of that division of Zoolus called Abaka Zoolus, or more generally, *Matabele.*" (Moffat's "South Africa," p. 133, 1846.)

Matabele flower.—Species of *Striga* is so called.

Mat house.—The temporary shelters used by natives and Boers when on trek: they are hive-shaped and consist of rush mats stretched over sticks stuck in the ground in a circle and drawn together at the top.

"On either side of it stood respectively, a *mat-house* and a square tent." (Scully's "Between Sun and Sand," p. 18, 1898.)

Matjesgoed.—(D. *mat*, mat, hammock; *goed*, stuff, material.) *Cyperus textilis.* This reed is so called because it is largely used for making mats and baskets.

"The mat-rush grows here in abundance . . . of the sort called Hard *matjesgoederen.*" (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 123, 1824.)

Matroosberg.—(D. *matroos*, a sailor; *berg*, a mountain.) The highest elevation in the western part of South Africa. It is situated in the neighbourhood of Worcester and is about 7340 feet high.

"Did not our beloved Club cover itself with glory, by the discovrey of the snow-flea, the Pulex nivalis, on the wintry slopes of the *Matroosberg?*" ("Mountain Club Annual," p. 14, 1894.)

Matrix.—The so-called Blue ground (q.v.), in which the

diamonds are embedded, is known by this designation at Kimberley.

"Gems are discovered in the most unlikely *matrix*. I use this word matrix to express the substance in which diamonds at the Cape, at least, are actually found, and where, as I feel sure, by nature's alchemy, whatever that was, they were crystallized." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 126, 1873.)

Mauritius thorn.—A species of *Acacia* (Kaf. *u Bobo*) is thus named in the native territories and in Natal.

Mauve Afrikander.—The name sometimes given to *Gladiolus recurvus*; it is very variable in colour.

"Called by some people the *Mauve Afrikander*, this beautiful flower may be found here growing from 3 to 4 feet high, with as many as ten or twelve flowers on a stem." ("Cape Times," p. 9, 14 September, 1912.)

Mealie.—(D. *milie*, millet; C.D. *mielie*, maize; Port. *milho*, grain; Lat. *milium*, millet.) The plant and seed of the *Zea mais*, or Indian corn, are thus designated by English colonists all through South Africa. This form of the word is obviously due to a striving after meaning; the connexion of the word *mielie* with the word *meal* is somewhat remote. Mealies and Kaffir corn (q.v.) are the chief food of the natives.

"1658, July 23-24. As the season for sowing Dutch grain is past, he recommended that each farmer should sow a good quantity of *mily*, or Turkey wheat brought from Guinea, by the Hassalt." (Moodie's "Records," p. 137, 1841.)

"*Melis* (Indian corn) were then distributed for food." (Damberger's "Travels," p. 71, 1801.)

"Abundant crops of hay, oats, *mealies*, or Indian corn, and barley." (Colenso's "Ten Weeks in Natal," Hist. Sketch, p. vi, 1855.)

Mealie bird.—In Natal *Serinus icterus* is so called.

"It is commonly known as the *mealie-bird*, and abounds everywhere where there are Kaffir 'mealie' gardens or patches of Indian corn." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 58, 1899.)

Mealie cob.—See Cob.

"The young *mealy-cob* is generally preferred to bread." (Mann's "Natal," p. 137, 1859.)

Mealie-cob worm.—The name given to the caterpillar of

Heliothis armiger, which is a great pest to the agricultural farmer.

"The *Mealie-cob worm* attacks buds and pods and does extensive damage to mealies, peas, tomatoes, and lucerne." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 150, 1911.)

Mealie gift.—(D. *gift*, poison.) See Rooi-bloem and Witch-weed.

Mealie, Green.—The young cob is boiled or roasted whole, and is much esteemed—being known as "Green mealies".

Mealie meal.—The coarse flour made from mealies. It is the principal food of the natives in Natal; when freshly ground and made into porridge it is both wholesome and nutritious.

"The consumption of *mealie* (maize) *meal* in Durban has increased." (Holden's "Natal," p. 282, 1855.)

Mealie-stalk borer.—The larva of a moth, *Sesamia fusca,* which eats out the core of the growing mealie, and sometimes destroys large quantities.

Mealies, Stamped.—(D. *stampen,* to pound.) The grain is pounded with a wooden pestle in a deep mortar made from the hollowed trunk of a young tree, until it is freed from the outer skin. Damberger ("Travels," p. 79, 1801) describes the process though he does not use the word.

"Before the husk can be separated from the pure grain, a second threshing or *stamping* is necessary." (Thunberg's "Travels," IV. p. 85, 1796.)

Measures, Liquid.—The liquid measures usually employed in South Africa are as follows:—

The Half Leaguer	=	63	Imperial Gallons
The Aum	=	32	,, ,,
The Anker	=	7½	,, ,,
The Keg	=	4	,, ,,

Mebos.—(Mansvelt says that this word has apparently come to us via India, from the Arabic *mushmush* (apricot); but from what Thunberg says—see quotation below—it should seem to have come from Japan, and was probably introduced into South Africa in the days of the Dutch East India Company with the article itself.) The name given to apricots which have undergone a peculiar process for preserving them: they are stoned and then dried with sugar and salt. The taste for mebos is an acquired one.

"I saw several kinds of fruit the produce of this country

(Japan) either dried or preserved in yeast, in a mode which is, I fancy, only practised in Japan or China. The fruit that was only dried, such as plums and the like, was called *mebos*." (Thunberg's "Travels," III. p. 120, 1796.)

"The best sort of preserve is called *mebos*, and is made of stoned and sun-dried apricots, flattened out and pickled with salt and sugar." ("Answers," Art. "More interesting Data about Life in Boerland," p. 7, 18 November, 1899.)

The following note is of interest as supporting the origin of the word suggested above :—

"The appended explanation regarding the derivation of the word *meebos*, regarding which there has been a good deal of speculation, has been arrived at by Mr. B. H. de Waal, who was at one time Netherlands Consul at Cape Town :—

"'Some years ago I got hold of an old Dutch volume in which occurred a description of one of the annual visits paid at that time by one of the heads of the Netherlands factory at Desjima to the Mikado.

"'In this mention was made of a kind of plum, prepared with salt—a preserve—which the writer terms "meibos". I could ascertain nothing further with reference to this, but always in search of what I wanted to know, I asked the Japanese ambassador, when I met him recently, whether he had ever heard of such a fruit. Not a little to my surprise he replied that he knew it well. It was a small plum, the fruit of a tree whose beautiful blossoms delight the heart of the Japanese in the spring, which is preserved with salt and the name of which in the Japanese language was *Umeboshi*.

"'I have now come to the conclusion that our old navigators became acquainted with this delicacy in Japan, learned to like it, and afterwards at the Cape attempted to imitate it, but used the fruit of apricot trees in default of the proper article, and that the word *Meibos* or *Meebosje* had its origin in *Umeboshi*.'" ("Northern Post," 27 September, 1912.)

Medlar, Wild.—The Natal name of *Vangueria infausta*.

Meelbol.—(D. *meel*, meal, flour; *bol*, a ball.) Flour or meal pressed hard into a cloth and boiled, after which it is crushed fine, mixed with milk and used as food for infants and invalids.

Meerkat.—(D. *meerkat*, a monkey; lit. sea-cat; cf. Ger. *Meerkatze*, "überseeische Katze"—Tetzner. Andresen and others maintain that the word is a corruption of the Sanscrit

markata, an ape.) *Suricata tetradactyla* and *Cynictis penicillata*, two small animals not unlike the prairie dog of the Western States of America both in appearance and habit.

This seems to be one of the many examples in South African nomenclature in which the names of known animals in Europe have been transferred to African animals that were supposed to resemble them; with the result in this case that, to make the word mean something, the former part of it has been made by some equivalent to the English word "moor" (Bryden, "Kloof and Karoo," p. 55, 1889), and by others to the Dutch word "mier" (cf. Eng. pis-mire), an ant.

"Small quadrupeds that borrow in the ground, and which are known to the colonists under the general name of *meer-cats*." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 231, 1801.)

"There are two kinds of *meerkats*, one red, with a bushy tail, like a squirrel, the other grey with a pointed tail, and it is this latter kind which makes so charming a pet." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 158, 1890.)

Meester.—(D. *meester*, master, teacher.) In the early days of the Colony the "meester" was an itinerant teacher passing from farm to farm, giving a certain time to the children of each. This method, and the incapacity of many of those so employed, could have had but one issue so far as the pupils were concerned. See Master.

"This *meester* as he was called (that is, schoolmeester, or schoolmaster), considered it part of his profession . . . to let every person know the extent of his acquirements." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 114, 1824.)

"Schrijver heeft onder die *meesters* aangetroffen: deserteurs, verloopen rechtsgeleerden en geneeskundigen, mislukte studenten, jongelui van goeden huize doch met een treurige geschiedenis achter zich, en personen, die te lui of te ongeschikt waren om te werken;—*meesters* die alleen nuchter waren als er geen drank te krijgen was, en niet naar het dorp mochten gaan, dan onder behoorlijk opzicht;—*meesters*, die in het een of ander verbeterhuis thuis behoorden,—de laatste personen aan wie men de opvoeding van kinderen zou toevertrouwen. . . . In één woord: treurig." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 406 n., 1882.)

"These *meesters* were generally disbanded men, or deserters from regiments stationed out there, and found a

double occupation, both as itinerant teachers and helpers on the farm." (Greswell's "Our South African Empire," II. p. 230, 1885.)

Meestergoed.—(D. *meester*, still used in some parts of Holland for "doctor," "medical man"; *goed*, goods, wares, stuff.) Medicine.

Meestering.—(D. *meester*, master, teacher.) To follow the occupation of teaching.

Meitje.—The onomatopoetic name of *Chrysococcyx Klaasi.*

"Monsieur Le Vaillant named this cuckoo after his Hottentot servant Klaas, who was almost as fond of birds as himself. It is widely spread throughout the bush and thorn lands, where its rather monotonous cry of *mitje*, *mitje* is continually heard during the summer." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 118, 1899.)

Mélées.—The off-coloured diamonds from two carats down.

"On a certain day I had entrusted him with two or three hundred carats of *melée*—small stones—to sell." (Cohen's "Reminiscences of Kimberley," p. 267, 1911.)

Melk boer.—(D. *melk*, milk; *boer*, peasant, farmer.) The farm servant whose special duty it is to tend and milk the cows; a dairyman.

Melk boom.—(D. *melk*, milk; *boom*, a tree.) The various species of *Ficus* native to the Eastern Province and Natal are so named because of the milky fluid which exudes from a broken branch.

Melk bosch.—See Milk bush.

Melk fish.—*Atyposoma gurneyi, Boul.*, is known to the fishermen of False Bay by this name.

Melkhout boom.—(D. *hoot*, wood.) *Sideroxylon inerme* is so called in the Riversdale District.

Melktouw.—(D. *touw*, a rope.) Various climbing *Asclepiadaceæ*, which when broken exude latex, are so named in the Riversdale District and elsewhere—*Secamone Thunbergii, R. Br.*

Meltziekte.—(D. *milt*, the spleen; *ziekte*, sickness.) The name given to a disease affecting cattle.

"The oldest and most experienced of Kurveyors confess themselves flabbergasted by *meltziekte*, and even Professor Beauford has not been able to devise an effective remedy." ("Queenstown Free Press," 1 December, 1877.)

Mest bredie.—(D. *mest* or *mist*, manure; C.D. *bredie*, a

stew.) *Amarantus Thunbergii, Moq.*, which grows on manure heaps; a Riversdale name.

Mest wurm.—(D. *mesten*, to fatten, cram; *worm*, a worm.) A term applied to caterpillars which attack young plants at the surface of the ground; they are generally found just beneath the soil and as a rule are full fed. See Cutworm.

Meul.—(C.D. a mill.) A game played on a board with white and black pieces.

Mexican poppy or **thistle.**—*Argemone Mexicana.* An American weed, sometimes called the Texas poppy. In India it is known as the Yellow thistle.

"*Mexican poppy* or yellow poppy, usually called *Mexican thistle* at the Cape (*Argemone Mexicana*), can be destroyed by continuous cutting and frequent cultivation." (Blersch's "Handbook of Agriculture in South Africa," p. 144, 1906.)

Miet or **Mijt.**—(D. *mijt*, insect, mite.) The Cape farmer's name for the tuberworm which bores its way into stored potatoes.

Milk basket.—Baskets made by the natives from a strong, reedy grass are used to hold milk; so well and closely are they plaited that no liquid can pass through them.

"His wife now brought me a very fine *lattice-work basket of milk* and two heads of roasted Indian corn." (Damberger's "Travels," p. 63, 1801.)

"In the evening they sent us in return some *baskets of milk.*" (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 70, 1801.)

Milk bush.—*Euphorbia mauritanica.* The name is applied to this plant principally and has been taken over from the Dutch (*Melk-bosch*), but is applied to several other plants (*Gomphocarpus*, etc.) which, like this, yield when punctured a white milky fluid.

"The *milk-bush* (*fiscus*), a tree not unlike a Portugal laurel." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 133, 1818.)

"The only green things visible were the *milk-bushes*—an euphorbia of a poisonous nature—that grew like long, thin fingers pointing to the sky." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 52, 1896.)

"In summer there will be hardly another plant except the succulent *milk-bush.*" (Trotter's "Old Cape Colony," p. 223, 1903.)

Milk sack.—(D. *zak*, a bag, pocket.) A bag made of

ox or quagga hide in which Amasi (q.v.) is prepared—*im Vaba.*

"In that (the hut) of a wealthy Caffer, there is usually a *milk-sack* made of bullock's hide, so closely sewn together as to prevent leakage, and capable of containing several gallons." (Steedman's "Adventures," I. p. 263, 1835.)

Milk weed.—*Asclepias fruticosa, Linn.*, is so called in Bechuanaland. See Wild cotton.

Mimosa.—(Gr. μίμος, an imitator.) A leguminous tree—*Acacia horrida*—common all over South Africa in several varieties. The name has reference to the irritability of the leaves of some species which seem to imitate animal sensitiveness. One species is known in England as the "Sensitive plant".

"The banks were skirted by a thicket of the doorn-boom . . . a species of *mimosa.*" (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 89, 1801.)

"A broad valley, covered with rich pasturage and dotted with *mimosa* bushes, stretched out over several acres." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 364, 1856.)

Mispel.—(D. *mispel*, a medlar.) *Vangueria infausta.* See Wild medlar.

"Nog is er, behalve vele andere wilde vruchtsoorten zoo als *wilde mispels, stamvruchten*, enz., enz., de groote *karmetart* of *baobab*, die van wege zijne *zwaarlijvigheid*, wel de Olifant onder de Boomen genoemd kan worden." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 2, 1890.)

Misrijbol.—(D. *mest*, dung, manure; *rijden*, to ride; *bol*, a bulbous root.) A variety of *Hæmanthus*, which appears to have received this inelegant appellation because it happens to be in flower just about the time that the mest (manure) is being carted, or in South African English "ridden" on to the vineyards. The name is also applied to a fragrant Amaryllis.

Mission Reserves.—In Natal a Mission Reserve is a section of country held in trust from the Government by a religious body for the benefit of the natives. There are no less than twenty-three such Mission Reserves in that province, containing in all 164,729 acres.

Mist.—(D. *mest*, dung, manure.) The firmly trodden accumulation on the floor of the kraal, which is not unlike light, fibrous peat in appearance. It is often cut into slabs or blocks, and used either as fuel or for wall building, some-

times it is pulverized and used as manure. For one purpose and another it is invaluable to the South African farmer.

"This evening our fire was of *mest* or dried cow-dung, which turns to a white ash, gives a great heat, and is no bad substitute for wood." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 51, 1852.)

"It is the practice to cut the material which . . . is known as *mist* into slabs." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 492, 1896.)

Mistkruier.—(D. *mest*, dung, manure; *kruier*, a porter.) The not inappropriate appellation of the various dung-rolling beetles (Fam. *Scarabædiæ*). See Tumble bug.

M'limo or **Umlimo.**—("Every being to whom the natives render adoration is called *Molimo*, the signification of which shows that it is not of heathen origin. It is evidently composed of the prefix *Mo*, which belongs to almost all those words representing intelligent beings; and of the root *holimo*, above, in the sky. *Moholimo*, or the abbreviation *Molimo*, therefore signifies 'He who is in the sky'."—Casalis, "The Basutos," p. 248, 1861.) The word came into prominence during the military operations in Matabeleland in 1896. The *M'limo* was supposed to be an invisible god, who communicated his will to the people through several oracles, these being themselves often spoken of as M'limos.

"A few indeed there were who seemed to have some confused notion of invisible powers, who they designated *Moor-eemo* and *Booreemo*, and of whom they were taught by their sorcerers to stand in constant dread." (Kay's "Caffrarian Researches," p. 236, 1833.)

"The *M'limo* is an invisible god who has three priests about the country." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 31, 1897.)

"These *Umlimos* or prophets exist among all the tribes in Mashonaland." (Selous' "Sunshine and Storm in Rhodesia," p. 236, 1896.)

Mocking bird.—*Cossypha bicolor* is sometimes so called. It certainly imitates the notes and calls of some other birds with considerable success. See Koggelaar and Piet-myn-vrouw.

"The *Mocking bird* of the colonial boy." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 102, 1908.)

Moeder haartslag.—*Satyrium spathulatum* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 15, 1823) = *Disa spathulata, Sw.*

Moederkapje.— (D. *moeder*, mother; *kap*, cap, hood.) The popular designation of one or two of the many orchids growing in the veld—*Disperis villosa, Pterygodium catholicum;* the name has been suggested by the shape of the flower.

"And here is the Pride of Table Mountain and the *Muttercap*, two of the twenty-five species of orchids that exist in South Africa." (Mackinnon's "South African Traits," p. 124, 1887.)

Moeder-skep-oppies.—(D. *moeder*, mother; *opskep*, to scoop, or dish up.) The popular name of another wild flower = mother-lay-the-table.

Moeni.—(D. *moeten*, must, ought; *niet*, not.) A contraction of *moet niet* = must not, do not.

Moertje-en-kinders.—(D. *moeder*, mother; *kind*, a child.) See Dollossi.

Moer wortel.—(D. *moer*, lees, dregs; *wortel*, a root.) The root of *Anacampseros ustulata, E. Mey.* employed in making "karree" and "karree moer".

"*Moer-wortel* is an umbelliferous plant, from the root of which and honey the Hottentots make, by fermentation, an intoxicating liquor." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 150, 1796.)

Moesoek.—(Mal. *musuh*, an enemy, rival, opponent.) One who is superior. *Hij is mij moesoek*, he is my master, he can beat me. Sometimes the word is corrupted to "Moses".

"In '*Hy* is my *Moses*' or '*Moezoek*,' the '*Moses*' comes from Malay muzuk, a rival, and by extension of meaning, conqueror." ("Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Mof.—(D. *mof*, a muff; nickname for a German. Cf. prov. Ger. *Muff*, a rude, blunt man; *muffen*, to be sulky; and Eng. *muff*, a foolish person.) An imported animal; *mofschaap*, a merino sheep; *mofbeest*, an imported bull or cow; *mofkoe*, a cross between Africander and imported (Friesland) animals.

"A cross-breed from a fellow *mof* and the second generation was a light yellow." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, June, 1910.)

"In 1910 people might have assimilated the Opposition just as a farmer might put bastard sheep among his *mof*-

schapen." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 7 October, 1912.)

Moffeer.—To vex, to attack.

Mof hartebeest.—*Bubalis Lichtensteini.*

Moggel.—*Barbus capensis* has been thus named by the Dutch.

"My people came back in the evening with two large *moekul* or flat-heads." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 144, 1838.)

Mohair.—(F. *moire,* a woven, watered fabric; Ar. *mokhayyar,* "a kind of coarse camelot or hair-cloth". Skeat says: "The English spelling is a sophisticated one, from a ridiculous attempt to connect it with English hair; just as in the case of cray-fish, cause-way".) The long silky hair of the Angora goat.

"Angora wool is called in French *poil de chevre,* in Italian *pelo di capra,* in German *mohair wolle,* in Turkish *seftīk.* The first quality is long, bright, white; the second quality is reddish; the third is brown or black; the fourth is grey. When spun it is called in English *mohair,* in French *filée de chevron,* in Italian *filo d'Angora.*" ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 125, 1857.)

Mole rat.—*Georychus hottentotus.* The members of this family are found only in Africa—*Bathyergidæ.*

"The fur of the blesmols, *mole rats,* and sand moles is usually rusty grey above, whitish below, and without any sheen." ("The State," p. 229, September, 1912.)

Mole snake.—*Pseudaspis cana.*

"When alarmed the *Mole snake* is very pugnacious." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 1 September, 1911.)

Molteno disease.—Another name for the disease affecting horses and cattle, which appears to be caused by eating the plants known as "Ragwort"—*Senecio Burchelli* and *S. latifolius.* See Stomach staggers.

"The chemical examination of *Senecio latifolius* was made by Dr. H. E. Watt; the physiological examination of the pure materials prepared by Dr. Watt was undertaken by Dr. A. R. Cushny, F.R.S., of University College, London. The results leave no doubt that the *Molteno disease* of South Africa can be caused by the consumption of *S. latifolius.*" ("Queenstown Representative," p. 7, 27 February, 1912.)

"The name *Molteno disease* arose from the fact that the

Molteno Farmers' Association was responsible for the first investigation into the cause of what is still often referred to as merely black gallsick." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 5 March, 1912.)

Mombakjes.—(D. *mom*, a mask; *bak*, the cheek.) The masks such as are employed at carnivals and by English children on 5 November—Guy Fawks' Day.

Is't Noger mensch van oer de zee?
Of is't *mombakjes* aan?
Mombakjes is dat waarlijk niet.
Dat's zwartsel op de vel.

(Dower's "Annals of Kokstad," p. 94, 1902.)

(This represents the astonishment of a Griqua at the black faces at a Christy minstrel entertainment.)

Monkey apple.—The fruit of *Royena pubescens, W.*, is called by this name in Lower Albany.

Monkey bird.—The Eastern Province name for the Kakelaar (q.v.).

"Here about it is sometimes referred to as the *monkey-bird* because of a resemblance in its cries to the explosive barking of the black-faced monkey." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 4 December, 1908.)

Monkey nuts.—The oily edible fruit, matured under ground, of the plant *Arachis hypogæa.* See Pea-nut and Ground-nut.

"A peculiar salad made with oil extracted from *monkey-nuts* and vinegar manufactured from the pine-apple." ("Chambers's Journal," "Trappist Monastery in Natal," p. 467, 1897.)

Monkey touw or **Monkey ropes.**—(D. *touw*, a rope, cord.) The tough and pliant stems of various climbing plants—*Vitis capensis, V. Thunbergii, Secamone alpine*—which depend in enormous numbers and of every size from the branches of stouter growths in the forests.

"I swung over, holdin' fast to a *monkey-tow.*" (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 141, 1897.)

"Both form *Monkey ropes*, which, split up, are much used by the natives." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 177, 1907.)

Monkey uyntjes.—*Mariscus capensis.* The bulbs are formed, boiled in milk, and used as food by the Bechuanas in the neighbourhood of Kimberley.

Monster.—(D. *monster*, a sample, pattern.) A sample of

goods offered for sale on the public market. Cf. Port. *mostra,* a pattern, sample; Lat. *monstrare,* to show.

Mont aux Sources.—(F. "Mountain of Springs".) One of the highest points in the Kahlamba or Drakensberg (q.v.) range, being 11,000 feet high. It is situated on the Western boundary of Natal. This was the appropriate name given to this mountain by some early French missionaries, for on its slopes the Tugela, the Vaal, the Orange, and the Caledon Rivers all have their rise.

"A mountain which the natives call Pofung (the Elan) because there they have frequent Elan hunts, but which we have designated in our map by the name of *Mont aux Sources.*" (Arbousset's "Narrative," p. 70, 1846.)

Moocha or **Mutya.**—(Kaf. *um Tya,* a band or thong, the dress worn by the Zulu men, which is made of strips of skin or animals' tails.) A sort of apron or short skirt worn by the native men.

"A wee little Kaffir boy with nothing upon him but his *moochie* or tails, drives by a herd of calves." (Roche's "On Trek in the Transvaal," p. 325, 1878.)

"His dress consisted only of a monkey skin *muchi,* or apron, and in his hand he carried a rifle." ("Chambers's Journal," "A Kalahari Story," p. 95, 1898.)

Mooi.—(D. *mooi,* handsome, pretty, fine.) Good-looking, fine. This word is in frequent use in the Midland Districts among English-speaking colonists, but among the Dutch it has to do duty for almost every shade of appreciation.

"The *moye* kinder (pretty little children)—to translate for you." ("South Africa a Century Ago," p. 138. "Lady Barnard's Letters," 29 November, 1797.)

"There stands the broad sounding adjective '*MOOI,*' which has to fit into every possible shape. . . . Everything is monotonously *mooi.*" (Dr. T. Hahn's "Address S.A. Public Library," 29 April, 1882.)

Mooi nooije.—(D. *mooi,* handsome, pretty; C.D. *nooi,* a young woman.) The Struis Bay and Hermanuspetrusfontein name for *Box salpa.* See Bamboo-fish.

Mooipraat.—(D. *mooi,* pretty, fine; *praten,* to talk, prate.) To fawn, flatter.

Moon bird.—The name sometimes given to the Dikkop (q.v.).

"It has a loud, plaintive call which may often be heard on

bright moonlight nights, a fact which has earned for them the name of *Moonbirds* in some districts." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 131, 1908.)

Moon fish.—*Psettus falciformis.* The name appears to be applied to a different fish in Natal.

"The fish photo this week is that of a *moon-fish.* . . . It is a bluish silvery fish without scales and grows to a weight of about 3 lb." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 339, 1905.)

Moon lily or **Moon flower.**—*Datura Knightii,* which has long, pendulous, strongly scented white flowers.

"The stars looked down on him; scent from an unseen *moon-lily* was floating like incense through the air—the night was full of mystery." ("The State," p. 603, December, 1911.)

Moord Spruit.—(D. *moord,* murder; *spruit,* sprout; but in Cape Dutch a small stream, a tributary.) This name commemorates the ruthless butchery of men, women, and children by Dingaan's impis, on this branch of the Blauwkrans River, immediately after the treacherous murder of Retief and his party at Umgungundhlovu, 1838.

"At Blauwkrantz, *Moord Spruit,* and Malan's Spruit none of the whites escaped." (Bird's "Annals of Natal," I. p. 233, 1888.)

Mooselmaan.—(Ar. *muslim;* Pers. *musulman,* a true believer, a follower of Mahomet.) The Natal natives distinguish the so-called Arab merchants (q.v.) by this name from the smaller ("Coolie") shopkeepers.

"To the natives, however, this section has now become *Mooselmaan.*" (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 492, 1899.)

Morgen.—(D. *morgen,* morning, acre; the area of land that could be ploughed by one span in a morning.) In South Africa this land measure is equal to about two English acres.

"Ein *morgen* hat 660 Rheinische Schuh ins gevierte." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 13, 1745.)

"Eighty *morgens* of land or 120 English acres." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 64, 1801.)

Mors.—(G. dial. *morsch, murschtot;* Mansvelt says: "*Mors* bet. eig. verpletterd, verbroken, en komt van een oud ww. morsen (verpletteren)".) As used in South Africa this word means altogether, totally, quite: e.g. mors-dood, quite or stone dead.

"I pulled up my pony, fired from the saddle, aiming well in front, and next instant, to the general astonishment, the

koorhaan fell dead as mutton—*moors dood* as a Boer would say." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 176, 1893.)

Mosbieker or **Masbieker.**—A corruption of Mozambiquer, a native from the neighbourhood of Mozambique, many of whom are employed in South Africa as labourers at the mines and elsewhere. In the earlier days many were brought down as slaves. See Mozambiquer.

"Their (the people of Mazhanga) language is very like that spoken by most of the prize negroes brought from the east coast to the Cape. They have consequently been called very appropriately, I think, *Mosbiekers*—a corruption of Mozambique—from this resemblance." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 182, 1868.)

Moschus kruyt.—(D. *muscus*, musk; *kruid*, herb.) *Geranium præcox* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 512, 1823) = *Erodium moschatum, Willd.* It has a faint scent of musk.

Moselekatze's bird.—*Coracias caudatus.* This bird is met with in the Transvaal bushveld, and is known by this name because Moselekatze (Umzilikazi, King of the Matabele, and father of Lobengula) claimed its feathers for his own exclusive use and ornament.

Mossie.—(D. *musch*, a sparrow.) *Passer arcuatus.* The colonial name of the Cape Sparrow.

"The *Mossie*, like its cousin the English bird, is essentially a 'cit.'" (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 479, 1875-84.)

Most.—(D. *most*, must.) The unfermented juice of the grape.

"During the wine-pressing season we used to quaff foaming tankards of must or *moss* as it was called." ("The State," p. 243, September, 1911.)

Mostbolletje.—(D. *most*, must; *bol*, a ball.) A toothsome roll or bun prepared with the unfermented juice of the grape and usually flavoured with aniseed.

"Then, too, we made *Moss bolletjes*, a delicious bun, which every housekeeper prided herself on making a good supply of." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 6, 1902.)

Most konfijt.—(D. *most*, must; *konfijt*, preserve, confection.) A thick syrup prepared from grapes.

"Om gou terpentynseep of *moskomfyt* op te set is oek

goed." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 116, 1898.)

"The first idea in planting vines is to provide *mos confyt*, a kind of grape sugar syrup, which is given as part of their rations to the coloured labourers." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 483, 1905.)

Motbij.—(D. *mot*, a moth; *bij*, a bee.) The death's head moth—*Acherontia atropos*—is known by this name among the Dutch.

"A few days ago several hives were attacked by what is known in the Dutch language as the *motbij*, presumably with the object of eating the honey." ("The Cape Mercury," 9 October, 1906.)

"The big moth, commonly called the death's head, or by the Dutch the *mot-bij*. . . . The natives, to whom it is known as 'vivingane,' are terribly afraid of it." ("East London Dispatch," p. 9, 9 October, 1908.)

Mother-of-pearl butterfly.—*Salamis Anacardii*. This beautiful butterfly is thus designated in Natal, and no other name could be more appropriate; seen in the sunshine it has all the iridescent beauty of the material after which it is named.

"One must see *Salamis Anacardii* gliding with extended wings to realize what a beautiful object this *mother-of-pearl butterfly* is." ("Science in South Africa," p. 170, 1905.)

Mottekruid.—(D. *mot*, a moth; *kruid*, a herb, grass.) See Akkewani.

Motworteltjes.—(D. *mot*, a moth; *wortel*, a root.) See Akkewani.

Mountain canary.—*Alario alario*. See Berg canarie, Namaqua canarie, and Blackhead.

"We had one tame for a long time which we kept in a cage with a *Mountain canary* (*Alario alario*)." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 58, 1899.)

Mountain head pear.—*Pleurostylia capensis*. The bark tastes like quinine.

Mountebank eagle.—*Helotarsus ecaudatus*. So called in Natal from its peculiar flight.

"They have a curious habit of turning somersaults in the air like a tumbler pigeon, from which it has been called the African *Mountebank eagle*." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 148, 1899.)

Mouse-birds.—See Muis vogel.

"A flock of long-tailed *mouse-birds.*" (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 2, 1896.)

Mouse klip-fish.—(D. *klip*, a rock.) *Clinus mus*, a small prettily coloured fish found in rock-pools at False Bay.

"The *Mouse klip-fish* is a pretty little fish—the nearly straight upper profile of the snout, the slightly *retroussé* upper lip and the beady eye are not unlike that of a mouse." ("S.A. Journal of Science," VII. p. 222, 1901.)

Mozambiquer or **Maasbikker.**—A native from the east coast—Mozambique. See Mosbieker.

"Without the inactivity or dulness of the *Mozambiquer*, or the penetrative genius of the Malay, he (the Malabar slave) forms an excellent medium between the two." (Semple's "Walks and Sketches at the Cape of Good Hope," p. 49, 1805.)

"The slaves from the coast of *Mozambique* . . . are so proverbial for their extreme stupidity, that the greatest affront a Dutch colonist can cast on another's understanding is to observe that he is *als domme als een Mozambiquer*, or as stupid as a *Mozambique.*" (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 201, 1835.)

"Besides this we had two cooks, a Malay and a *Mozambiquer.*" (Boyle's "Savage Life," p. 271, 1876.)

Mud bream.—*Chrysophrys Robinsoni*, a Natal fish.

Mud-cracker.—

"*Mud-crackers* are always in season and are a useful fall-back. I have known times when *mud-crackers* were the *pièce de résistance* on the menu, being readily taken when other baits were ignored." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 3 June, 1905.)

Mud fish.—An East London name for the fish known generally as the Hottentot (q.v.).

"A large number of people in this district have never seen a trout . . . and therefore would possibly mistake a largely marked *mud fish* (tottie or Hottentot) for a trout." ("East London Dispatch," p. 2, 24 October, 1905.)

Mud lark.—*Scopus umbretta.* In Natal the Hammerkop is known by this name.

"This curious bird, called also *Mud lark* by the colonists, is found in nearly every stream." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 199, 1899.)

Muid.—(D. *mud*, four bushels; F. *muid*, a hogshead;

Lat. *modius*, a peck.) A South African measure equal to $2\frac{243}{256}$ bushels.

"One farmer in the Umvoti country reaped 120 *muids* (of $2\frac{243}{256}$ bushels each) from 30 acres of land, which had been sown with 5 *muids* of seed. Another proprietor states that he reaped 95 *muids* off 15 acres, which had been sown with 3 *muids* of seed." (Mann's "Natal," p. 124, 1859.)

Muishond.—(D. *muishond*, a mousing dog.) *Zorilla striata*. A gentle and easily tamed little animal, but in common with most members of the family *Mustelidæ*, when irritated it emits from the anal glands a powerful and fetid odour. See also Stink muishond and Stink cat.

"We observed a tame mongoose or *mausehund* from Java, a species of *viverra*, which ran about and suffered itself to be handled." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 36, 1818.)

"Piet, an old Hottentot of my uncle's, who had as many dodges for defeating the Kaffirs, stalking an ostrich, or trapping a *mousehunt*, as any jackal has for stealing chickens." (Drayson's "Tales of the Outspan," p. 347, 1862.)

"Within two yards of us was a striped *Muishond* with his paws firmly planted on an adult Black-necked cobra (*Naia nigricollis*). The *Muishond* stood facing us menacingly, daring us to approach." (Fitzsimon's "Snakes of South Africa," p. 30, 1912.)

Muishond.—In some parts of the Western Province this name is applied to a particularly evil-smelling tobacco.

Muis vogel.—(D. *muis*, a mouse; *vogel*, a bird. The former part of the word has reference to the hair-like character of the breast feathers of the bird; some, however, regard it as a corruption of the Dutch word for the crest which the bird has, *muts*, and others as a corruption of the Dutch word for sparrow, *musch;* the first suggestion appears to be the more likely.) *Colius striatus*. See Mouse bird.

"A few birds, among which was the *musch-vogel* (sparrow), a bird the size of the common sparrow, having red feet, a long tail, and cinereous brown-coloured plumage."

"Perhaps *muts-vogel* (cap-bird) from its crest, or possibly *muis-vogel* (mouse-bird)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 214, 1882.)

Murg-van-groente.—(D. *murg*, marrow; *groente*, greens, vegetables.) The vegetable marrow; the Dutch name seems to be a translation of the English name.

"*Murg van groente.* Skil en sny in mooi stukke, laat'n

bitji in sout water lè', kook dan gaar en skep uit." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 27, 1898.)

Mushroom flower.—The name sometimes given in Natal to the root parasite *Cycnium adonense, E. Mey.* It appears in the mushroom season and bears handsome pure white flowers which nestle low in the grass and at a distance may be taken for mushrooms—hence the name.

Musk kat. — *Genetta tigrina* and *G. felina* are both known by this name.

Mussel cracker.—*Pagellus lithognathus*, also known as the White steenbras at East London, has been thus named.

"Judging by the enormous incisors, and the perfect pavement of rounded molars with which the jaws of these white steenbras are armed, these fish live largely upon shell-fish, hence the local name *mussel cracker* and the Durban name *mussel crusher*." ("East London Dispatch," 6 November, 1905.)

Mussel crusher.—The Natal name of the above fish. See quotation above.

Muti.—(Zulu, *umu Ti*, a tree, shrub, herb; hence also medicine, because that is prepared by the natives principally from herbs; a charm.) The word is often used by Europeans in Natal for medicine, physic.

"They could see but a *muti* (tree or plant) neither fit for food nor medicine." (Drayson's "Sporting Scenes," p. 165, 1858.)

"They (the Kaffirs) don't mind saying some are used as *mooti*—physic." (Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay," p. 172, 1891.)

"He produced a few pinches of powder from the *muti* bag suspended round his neck, and sprinkled it over a freshly kindled fire of dry twigs. While the powder burned he muttered incantations, and performed various rites; and when the flame died down he carefully collected the ashes. . . . It would relieve his mind if we would let him just sprinkle the ashes over us, as it was a very powerful *muti* he had made, and was simply guaranteed to queer any funny business. He was obviously in earnest, so we submitted as gravely as possible, and were duly sprinkled." ("The State," p. 659, December, 1911).

Muts.—(D. *muts*, a cap, hood.) A cap, night-cap. See Klapmuts.

Mynheer.—(D. *mijnheer*, sir, gentleman; cf. G. *mein*

Herr.) (1) A term of respect often employed in South Africa when a minister of the Gospel is addressed or spoken of. (2) Frequently of more general application, as to a superior.

"On one side of him sat *Mynheer*, as the local Predikant or Minister is commonly known among his flock." (Mitford's "Aletta," p. 2, 1900.)

Mynpacht.—(D. *mijn*, mine; *pacht*, rent.) The proprietor of a farm which was proclaimed as a gold-field, was allowed by the Transvaal Gold Law to reserve for himself a certain number of "claims"—these were technically known as the Mynpacht.

"As the *mynpacht* necessarily occurs frequently in these pages, some notion of its meaning may be given for the benefit of distant readers. When farms are proclaimed as public fields, the Government allow the owners . . . to take out *Myn Pacht* Brieven, which entitles them to reserve from interference from diggers about a tenth portion of the ground." (Mather's "Golden South Africa," p. 320, 1888.)

"These constitute what is technically known as the *Mijnpacht*, and as they were supposed to represent the pick of the bunch, a *Mijnpacht* was the most valuable portion of a proclaimed farm." (Wilson's "Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal," p. 165, n.d. (? 1901).)

Myrtle apple.—The fruit of a *Myrtaceous* plant growing along the Eastern coast.

"We roamed the veld and bush in search of wild fruits—*myrtle apples*, 't'gokums,' 'gwenyas,' etc.—which I presume are still to be found by the enterprising East London youth." ("East London Dispatch," p. 12, 28 September, 1912.)

Naaibosch.—(D. *naaien*, to sew; *bos*, a bush.) *Azima tetracantha* is so called on account of the needle-like character of its spines.

Naairiempjes.—(D. *naaien*, to sew; *riem*, a tie, thong.) Finely cut strips of duiker or steenbok skin, used for sewing the skins together for Karosses (q.v.).

"Aan Koedoes, Hartebeesten en Rooibokken had men overleérvellen en voorslagen te danken, en Duikers en Steenbokken bragten de *naairiempjes*." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 25, 1890.)

Naald bosje.—(D. *naald*, a needle; *bos*, a bush.) *Monsonia biflora, D.C.* This plant has well known medicinal properties, and is used in cases of dysentery.

"The *Naald bosje* is a small, shrubby, herbaceous plant, growing pretty freely in most districts of the Transvaal. . . . The seeds are enclosed in five seed-bearing vessels, each of which terminates in a long fine bristle or beak. These seed-vessels with their bristles are attached to a central column, and form the curious needle-shaped fruits that give the plant its name." ("Trans. Agric. Jour.," p. 655, July, 1909.)

Naaldkoker.—(D. *naald*, a needle; *koker*, a case, quiver.) The dragon-fly is so named by the Dutch.

Naaldvisch.—(D. *naald*, a needle; *visch*, a fish.) *Hemiramphus calabareus*. The lower jaw of this peculiar-looking fish is prolonged to about half the length of the body.

Naartje.—(This word has been imported from the East; it appears to be more nearly related to the word "orange" than the form of the latter word would seem to indicate. The efforts to connect the word "orange" with the F. *or*, Lat. *aurum*, gold, as though the name had reference to the golden colour of the fruit, have caused the disappearance of an initial *n*, the proper form of the word being *narenge*. In Tamil the citron is *nartei*, and the wild orange *narta marum*.) *Citrus Aurantium, var.* A small delicately flavoured fruit.

"The oranges, especially that kind called *nareteyes*, are excellent." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 14, 1796.)

"The lime . . . is not quite so hardy as the orange, but the *naartje* is hardier than either." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 194, 1896.)

Naboom.—*Euphorbia tetragona*. See Gnaarboom. In the Transvaal *E. Reinhardtii, Volkens.* is so named.

Nacht apie. — (D. *nacht*, night; *aap*, ape, monkey.) *Galago maholi*, the Transvaal lemur; another member of the same species—*G. garnetti*—is found in Natal. See Bush-baby.

"The maholi is invariably called by up-country white colonists in South Africa the *night-ape* from the Boer 'nagt-apje'." (Bryden's "Animals of South Africa," p. 14, 1900.)

Nachtegal.— (D. *nachtegaal*, nightingale.) *Saxicola pileata* is so named by the Dutch; this bird has a pleasant song which it will frequently sing far into the night—hence the name. See Schaapwachtertje.

"The Dutch boors have given it the name of 'Schaap wagter' or shepherd; it has also the more local name of *Nagtgaal* and 'Rossignol,' from a habit it is said to have of

singing by night." (Andersson's "Birds of Damaraland," p. 108, 1872.)

Nachtmaal.—(D. *nachtmaal*, the Lord's Supper.) The sacramental service in the Dutch Reformed Church.

"The *Nachmaal* or communion, which happens three or four times in a year." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 4, 1850.)

"In the course of this day's trek we met no less than ten or twelve wagons containing Dutch families on their way to . . . the half-yearly *Nachtmaal*, or sacrament." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 52, 1852.)

Nacht muis.—(D. *nacht*, night; *muis*, a mouse.) This name refers to the nocturnal habits of the animal. See Duinrat.

Nacht patrijs.—(D. *nacht*, night; *patrijs*, a partridge.) The yellow-throated sandgrouse—*Pterocles gutturalis*.

Nacht slang.—(D. *nacht*, night; *slang*, a snake.) *Lamprophis aurora.* This snake has the habit of moving about in the evening when it cannot be seen.

And warns me it is time to haste
  My homeward walk across the waste,
Lest my rash tread provoke the wrath
  Of *nacht-slang* coil'd across the path.

(Pringle's "Poems," p. 111, 1829.)

"The *Nacht slang* is about 2 feet in length and is olive-brown in colour." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 1 September, 1911.)

Nacht uil.—(D. *nacht*, night; *uil*, an owl.) Several birds of the *Caprimulgidæ* are known to the Dutch by this name: *Caprimulgus europæus*, etc.

Nageltjes.—(D. *nagel*, a clove; G. *Nelke*, gilliflower, carnation.) *Lapeyrousia fusifolia, Ker*, is so named in the Riversdale District, on account of its strong clove scent.

Nagskaal.—See Nastagal.

"*Nagskaal* sop met brandewyn en heuning om mè te gorl." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 152, 1898.)

Naklip.—Disintegrated rock of various bright colours is so called in Namaqualand. It is said to be the material used by the Bushmen in their paintings.

Naloop.—(D. *na*, after; *lopen*, to run, flow.) The weak brandy that flows after distilling.

Namaqua canarie.—See Berg canarie.

Namaqua dove.—*Oena capensis.*

"This exquisite little dove . . . is known by the name of *Namaqua dove* to the Dutch Cape Colonists." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 573, 1875-84.)

"As for the birds they abound in every bush . . . turtle-doves and little black-eyed *Namaqua doves.*" (Du Plessis' "In the Heart of Africa," p. 137, 1905.)

Namaqua partridge.—*Pteroclurus namaqua.* This bird belongs to the genus *Pterocles,* and seems with one or two other species to be peculiar to Africa.

"At this place we met with for the first time the *Namaqua partridge,* a very small species of Grous." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 265, 1822.)

"Large flocks of *Namaqualand partridges,* or Sand-grouse, of which there are two or three kinds, were seen in the locality." (Leyland's "Adventures in South Africa," p. 141, 1866.)

Namaqua pheasant.—*Francolinus natalensis.* It is known as the "Coast pheasant" in Natal.

"The Natal Francolin, called by the Dutch the *Namaqua pheasant.*" (Distant's "A Naturalist in the Transvaal," p. 105, 1892.)

Nana bezies.—(D. *bezie,* a berry.) The edible fruits of several species of *Rhus* are known by this name in Albany.

Nancy pretty.—An East London name for a wild flower (*Saxifragæ* ?).

"We scrambled up the rocky bed of a bush stream noting how the few days' rain was putting freshness into the *Nancy pretty* and Twin sisters (*Streptocarpus*) occupying the crannies." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 13 October, 1911.)

Nap.—See Gnap.

Naras.—(Hot. **nárab* (initial cerebral click), "ein in Damraland bei Walfischbai im Sande wachsendes Rankengewächs, nahrhafte melonartige Frucht, und mit mandelartig schmeckenden Kernen," Krönlein, "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin".) The name given by the Hottentots to the fruit of a cucurbitaceous plant—*Acanthosicyos horrida*—growing in Namaqualand. This fruit is the principal food of the tribe of the Topnaars; the seeds are also used by Cape confectioners as a substitute for almonds which they resemble in flavour.

"We found the new fruit *'Naras* of which I had first heard from the Boschmans of Ababies. The *'Naras* was growing on little knolls of sand." (Alexander's "Expedition," II. p. 68, 1838.)

"*'Naras.* This plant is a *Cucurbitacea,* almost as large as a new-born child's head. The flesh of it is eaten raw, and the seeds are kept for the dry season, when there is no fruit. The seeds taste almost like almonds." (Hahn's "'Tsuni * Goab," p. 47, 1881.)

Nastagal.—(D. *nachtschade,* the night-shade; as early as Kolben's time it had been corrupted to *nagskaal.*) The name given in the Transvaal to *Solanum nigrum, Linn.* See Sobosobo and Nagskaal.

"Those who live in the High Veld know there is a bush which grows in the mealie lands and ripens its black berries in the autumn called in Dutch *Nastergaal,* a species of *Solanum.*" ("South African Gardening and Agriculture," p. 377, September, 1912.)

Nastagal ink.—The expressed juice of the berries of *Solanum nigrum, Linn.* See Sobosobo.

"I did not always have good ink, and the first pages of my notes are written in various shades; I had even to use *Nastagal ink* made by our women." (Kestell's "Through Shot and Flame," p. 206, 1903.)

Natal, Terra de.—(Port.) This Portuguese word for "Christmas" will record for all time the people who discovered and named the Colony, and also the day of its discovery, 25 December, 1497.

"Nunmehro sind wir bey dem *Lande von Natal* welches die Kaffern oder Caffern bewohnen." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 74, 1745.)

"After passing *Terra de Natal* there is nothing but fine weather to be expected." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," I. p. 148, 1845.)

Natal bottle brush.—*Greyia Sutherlandi* is sometimes so called.

"*Greyia Sutherlandi* is a handsome flowering tree of the upper districts, and is sometimes known as the *Natal bottle brush.*" (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 33, 1907.)

Natal cotton plant.—*Batata paniculata.*

"*B. paniculata* or *Natal cotton plant,* a widely dispersed

tropical species, grows at Natal." (Harvey's "Genera of South African Plants," p. 254, 1868.)

Natal fever.—An indisposition to exert one's self, induced by the intense heat of summer, is thus euphemistically designated.

"Unwillingness to work. . . . It's an old malady in South Africa, remarks the 'Argus'. We call it *Natal fever.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 7 June, 1909.)

Natal fly.—One of the *Muscidæ*, probably *Lucilia* or *Ochromya sp.*, which has the objectionable habit when in the larval condition of burrowing into and feeding upon living human flesh; the place assumes the appearance of a large inflamed carbuncle and is exceedingly painful. At one time it was very prevalent in Durban, Natal.

"Sur un Muscide de l'Afrique australe, a larve cuticole. Une Mouche . . . montée entre deux verres, et provenant aussi de d'Urban. Elle a été envoyée au South-African Museum par le Rev. C. Pettman. . . . Cette larve avait été la cause de la maladie ; elle était enfoncée dans les chairs de la Jambe, la téte la premiere ; c'était in partie abdominale que nous avions vue remuer. Je la mis sous un verre et elle se transforma en une pupe d'un brun sombre presque noir." (Dr. Blanchard, "Contributions á l'étude des Dipteres parasites," p. 2; "Extrait du Bulletin de la Société entomologique de France," 1893.)

"The *Natal fly* is said to occur; its larva causes annoyance by burrowing into the human skin, where it pupates and causes painful inflammation." ("Addresses and Papers, Brit. and S.A. Assoc. Agric. Science," III. p. 532, 1905.)

Natal ivy.—*Senecio macroglossus, D.C.*, is known by this name in Natal. It is a climbing plant with fleshy, ivy-like leaves and handsome yellow flowers. The plant is common in the neighbourhood of East London. In England it is known as Cape ivy.

Natal kingfisher.—In the Eastern Province *Halcyon cyanotis* is known by this name.

Natal lily.—*Gladiolus psittacinus, Hook.* The pink veined perianth of this exquisite flower makes it a general favourite. *Amaryllis belladonna* is incorrect, as it is only found in the Cape Districts and does not extend farther East than Riversdale.

"Another very magnificent amaryllid which is dis-

tinguished par excellence as the *Natal lily* (*Amaryllis belladonna*) presents itself in moist places." (Brooks' "Natal," p. 169, 1876.)

Natal mahogany.—(1) See Red ebony. (2) *Trichilia emetica* is also known as Natal and Cape mahogany.

Natal plum.—The fruit of *Carissa grandiflora.* See Amatungulu.

"There exists in many places along the coast . . . a plant . . . that is chiefly remarkable on account of its bearing a really valuable fruit which is familiarly known as the *Natal plum.*" (Brooks' "Natal," p. 168, 1876.)

Natal red top grass.—*Tricholæna rosae, Nees.*

Natal rum.—A vile spirit distilled from sugar refuse and nothing behind "Cape smoke" in its effects.

"No public analyst has as yet exposed to light the horrible ingredients of 'Cape smoke' and *Natal rum.*" (Greswell's "Our South African Empire," II. p. 204, 1885.)

Natal sore.—A painful eruption, like a boil, which sometimes troubles new-comers to the Garden Colony, and requires to be treated by those who understand it.

"The *Natal sore,* a very painful boil, which makes its appearance on the arms and legs of new-comers." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 13, 1852.)

"An open blain or blister generally ending in a running sore. It is known among the natives and colonists as the *Natal sore,* and is of so violent a kind as to have seriously affected those who have neglected its first appearance." ("Sketches of Life and Sport in South Eastern Africa," by Charles Hamilton, F.A.S.I., p. 50, 1870.)

"*Natal sores* are not unknown, and, as I have said, there is the 'jigger' flea." ("Cape Argus," p. 3, 4 May, 1901.)

Nat-lij.—(D. *nat,* wet, moist, damp; *leiden,* to lead.) To irrigate land. See To lead water.

Na touw.—(D. *na,* near, after; *touw,* a rope.) *Ficus natalensis* has received this name because the natives make a rough kind of cordage from its fibrous bark.

Natros or **Natrossi.**—(D. *na,* after; *tros,* a bunch, cluster; cf. F. *trousse,* a bundle; Eng. truss, trousers, trousseau.) A bunch of late grapes; gleanings in a vineyard.

Nceta.—*Monsonia ovata.* This plant, which belongs to the Geranium family, is held in high esteem by the Hottentots as a cure for dysentery and obstinate diarrhœa.

Ncetekie.—(Kaf. *in Ncete,* a small brown bird.) In the neighbourhood of King William's Town this name is applied to a number of small birds, among others to *Drymoica fulvicapella, Bp.*

"The *netikee,* the smallest of all South African birds, and a member of the wren family." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 45, 1897.)

"The Dutch name for our smallest bird they pronounce *Knedike.* It is about the size of our English wren, of a brown-grey in colour. It builds its nest of fine grass, wool, and fluff, the inside of it being not so large as the inside of a tennis ball." ("Everyday Life in the Cape Colony," by X. C., p. 41, 1902.)

Nciba.—(Kaf. *i Nciba,* the swiftly flowing.) The native name of the Great Kei River.

Needle fish.—This is its Natal name. See Naald visch.

"A *needle fish* or 'half-beak'. It is a semi-transparent, greenish fish, not often seen by day, but may be speared at night with a lantern." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 719, 1906.)

Neef.—(D. *neef,* cousin, nephew.) In Cape Dutch this word is used by elderly men as a term of address to a young man; as Oom (q.v.) is used by young people to an elderly man, or by young or middle-aged men to each other.

Negeoog.—(D. *negen,* nine; *oog,* an eye.) A boil, an inflammatory tumour.

"Myn vrouw had'n *negeoog* an haar nek, wat so erg was dat di doktor gevaar daarin gesiin het." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 131, 1898.)

Negotie ware.—(F. *négoce,* trade; Lat. *negotium,* lit. want of leisure, hence a business, an occupation; *waar,* ware, commodity.) Groceries, hard or soft goods offered for sale; the stock-in-trade of a store-keeper or pedler.

Negry.—A word which has died out, but which appears to have been applied in the earlier days of the Colony (1) to the slaves' quarters on an estate, (2) to a collection of native huts.

"1657, December 6. The sergeant reported that Henry, with a *negerye* of 5 huts, was also at the mustard-leaves; besides four other *negeryes* having altogether about 64 houses." (Moodie's "Records," p. 92, 1841.)

Nek.—(D. *nek,* neck, nape of the neck.) A narrow ridge connecting two hills or mountains, as Laing's Nek (q.v.).

"Had to travel along the narrow ridge (*nek*) in order to reach the opposite high land." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 92, 1841.)

> By rising ground on all quarters shut in
> Excepting the *neck* that leads out on the plain.

(Hudson's "Features in South African Frontier Life," p. 72, 1852.)

Nelly.—*Ossifraga gigantea*, otherwise known as the Giant petrel.

"It is called the *Nelly* by sailors." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 765, 1875-84.)

Nenta.—(Hot. * *Nenta*, with initial click.) *Cotyledon ventricosa.* This plant is supposed to be the cause of a disease fatal to sheep and goats, and thus of considerable loss to the South African farmer. Some leguminous plants are also suspected.

"The Russian moufik contracts neurotis through continued eating of the leguminous *Lathyrus;* the Australian sheep takes it from the leguminous *Swainsonia*, and the Cape goat gets it, may I say, from an undetermined leguminous *Nenta*." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 308, 1897.)

Nenta.—The disease referred to above—*Cerebro-spinal meningitis.*

"The well-known disorder in sheep and goats known at the Cape as *Nenta*." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 302, 1897.)

"Whether *t'Nenta* and Stiff-ziekte are names for one and the same thing differing in degree, I cannot say." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," 12 September, 1901.)

Neuk.—(D. obs. *neuken*, to push, strike.) This word survives in South Africa with the meaning to hit, to strike. *Ek zal jou neuk*—"I'll hit you". It is regarded as a coarse word.

New Year's plum.—A variety of plum that ripens about New Year time.

"Another case also where a farmer made £7 10s. out of a single or Mirabelle (*New Year's plum*) tree in one season." (Henkel's "The Native or Transkeian Territories," p. 51, 1903.)

Nieuwhout.—(D. *nieuw*, new; *hout*, wood.) The Knysna name for *Pygeum africanum.* See Red stinkwood.

Nieuwjaars vogel.—(D. *nieuwjaar*, New Year; *vogel*, a bird.) *Coccystes serratus;* "this bird visits the Cape about the New Year, whence the name which it has acquired among the colonists".

Nieuwziekte.—(D. *nieuw*, new, recent, fresh; *ziekte*, sickness.) The Dutch name for the Strangles, an infectious and contagious disease of equines, due to a specified organism. The term is also applied to Glanders.

"Indeed glanders is also commonly called *nieuwziekte;* consequently, it is often very difficult to convince the proprietor of a horse suffering from glanders that it is really infected with that disease and not strangles." ("Trans. Agric. Jour.," p. 391, January, 1907.)

Nigger.—A term of contempt applied to people of coloured blood, and as a rule as vigorously resented by them as the designation Kaffir is sometimes resented by the natives.

"There is something in the circumstances occasioned by the presence of the African races here, which may be said to be analogous to the circumstances occasioned by slavery in the Southern States. The word *nigger* condenses and includes nearly all that we wish to suggest." (Glanville's "At Home and Abroad," p. 92, 1878.)

"Talking of the *niggers* they had shot, or the kraals they had destroyed." (Olive Schreiner's "Trooper Peter Halkett," p. 20, 1897.)

Night adder.—*Causus rhombeatus* is so named by the English colonists on account of its habit of moving about at night. It is not an uncommon snake in the Eastern Province.

"In the boom slang (*Bucephalus capensis*), the schaapsticker (*Psammophylax rombeatus*) . . . the so-called *night-adder* (*Leptoderia rufescens*), they (the teeth) are remarkably lengthened, and not only so, but grooved." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," III. p. 9, 1884.)

Nix.—(D. *neits;* G. *Nichts*, nothing.) Nothing. Nix-nie, nothing at all.

"'Why, Cole, this is *nix*' (snow). A play upon the Dutch word *niets*, meaning 'nothing'." (Justice Cole's "Reminiscences," p. 38, 1896.)

"I could tell that there was some critters there that they did not like—maybe a tiger—but I could see *nix* beyond a rock or a tree stump." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 278, 1897.)

Nixnuts.—(G. *nichtsnutz*, useless, worthless.) Applied to (1) a person who is neither clever nor capable; (2) it is used also of a rogue.

Nole-kole.—(D. *knol*, a turnip; *kool*, a cabbage.) *Brassica oleracea, var. caulorapa.* Toward the root the stalk of this vegetable expands into a turnip-like mass, which is the edible part.

No Man's Land.—In Sir George Grey's time as Governor, the territory now known as Griqualand East was so called; but in later times the designation was transferred to the coast country between Zululand and Delagoa Bay.

"The country which is called *No Man's Land* is claimed by two powerful governments; and Sir George Grey has written to Adam Kok stating that in consequence of the land being claimed as above mentioned, the case has been referred to the British Government." ("Queenstown Free Press," 15 May, 1861.)

"There still remained the undefined country (still called *No Man's Land* by the Republic) lying between Zululand and Delagoa Bay, and it was therein that President Kruger hoped to secure a footing on the sea-board." (Robinson's "Life Time in South Africa," p. 361, 1900.)

Nonna or **Nonni.**—(Port. *nona*, a nun. Crawford ("Malay Dictionary") says that the word is used by the Malays of an unmarried European lady; hence most probably its use and application in South Africa.) A young European lady, a young mistress.

"The cry of the young gnu was sometimes onje . . . a good deal resembling the *nonje* of the colonists (meaning miss)." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 176, 1785.)

"She found the master and his wife dead, but the *nonnie* (little miss), although severely wounded, still breathed." (Sellick's "Uitenhage, Past and Present," p. ix, 1905.)

Nooi or **Noi.**—(? Port. *noiva*, a bride.) A young woman; the word is in fairly common use among the Dutch.

"The kind-hearted *noë* or lady of the house, commiserating my condition . . . informed me that she had an excellent receipt for sun-burn." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 54, 1850.)

"Many of the Dutch *nois* or young maidens are very pretty, and they are a very moral set of people." (Baldwin's "African Adventures," p. 155, 1894.)

Noois boom.—(? Port. *noiva*, a bride; *boom*, a tree.) *Cussonia Thyrsiflora*, a tree growing something like a sunshade in shape. See Kipper sol, Cabbage tree, Parasol tree.

"The *Nojeboom* (*Cussonia spicata*), a small tree of very singular appearance." (Bunbury's "Journal," p. 101, 1848.)

"In the huts were all sorts of odd things—calabashes, beads, . . . large pieces of the root of the *nöe-boom* peeled for food." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 135, 1855.)

"One of the most remarkable of the Natal trees is our only representative of the Ivy family, and is known as the 'Cabbage tree' and to the Dutch as the *Nojes boom* (*Cussonia*)." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 447, 1868.)

Nooisborsies.—(? Port. *noiva*, a bride; *borst*, the breast.) A variety of pear is so called by the Dutch.

Noordkaaper.—(D. *noord*, north; *kaap*, a cape, promontory.) The name given by the fishermen to a variety of whale; the designation has been taken over from the early Dutch sailors, and applied, without any appreciation of the incongruity, to an animal whose habitat is the southern ocean.

"Man siehet offt in dem Meere am Vorgebürge in der Tafelbay, den kleinen Wallfisch, Grampus genannt. Die Holländischen Seeleute heissen ihn *Noord-kaper*." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 367, 1745.)

"The cachalot, a kind of whale which the Dutch call *Noord-kaaper*, is always found in great plenty sporting in the bason." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 30, 1796.)

Noordkaaperbaard.—(D. *baard*, a beard, whalebone.) The Western Province fishermen thus designate whale-bone.

"Voor balein zegt men soms niet onaardig *noorkapperbaard*." (Mansvelt's "Idioticon," p. 113, 1884.)

Noordkaaper olie.—(D. *olie*, oil.) Whale oil, used in domestic medicine and for other purposes.

Noordkaaper snot.—An ugly name for a jelly-fish; in common use, however, in the Riversdale District.

Noorse-doorn.—(D. *norsch*, gruff, disagreeable; *doorn*, a thorn.) *Euphorbia enopla*, and one or two other species are known by this name, which refers to the *noli me tangere* character of their spines. In times of drought these spines are burnt off, when the plant is not without value as a food for stock.

The trees referred to in the first quotation I have been unable to identify, but, from the description given, they must be something quite different from the Noorse-doorn of the Jansenville and Midland Districts of the Cape Province.

"Trees as high as fir-trees and much resembling them called the *Noors-doorn* are seen raising their lofty tops over the more humble trees." (A letter from Port Natal dated 29 May, 1839, Chase's "Natal Papers," Part II. p. 98, 1843.)

"The milk of the *noorse-doorn* is not poisonous, and forms an excellent food for cattle, sheep, and goats, which are all extremely fond of it." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 16, 1889.)

"The drought continues in the Ruggens with unabated severity, and the *noorse-doorn* and finger-pol plants are now in daily requisition to keep stock alive." ("Midland News," 10 November, 1898.)

Noorse or **Noorse-doorn Veld.**—Veld composed almost entirely of Noorse-doorn ; in some parts of the country, lying between Jansenville and Pearston, the Noorse-doorn is so thick as to be almost impenetrable.

"After an outspan for breakfast . . . we struggled onwards, until presently we began to enter upon the *noorse-doorn veldt* (lit. nurse-thorn country), consisting of bushes of a tall cactus, which like the euphorbia exudes a milky juice on being broken." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 16, 1889.)

Num bosch.—(Hot. **num*, with an initial click.) Another Riversdale name for *Aster filiformis, D.C.* See Draai bosch. The Grahamstown name is Gom bosch (q.v.).

Num-num.—(Hot. **num* **num*, each syllable with an initial click.) *Carissa arduina.* The common name of shrub and fruit alike, the latter being very small and without any distinctive flavour; the flowers resemble those of the jessamine both in appearance and scent.

"The Hottentots call this shrub *'num 'num* (or *noom noom*, agreeably to English orthography), each syllable preceded by a guttural clap of the tongue. They eat the berries, but I always found them very insipid." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 192, 1822.)

"Various kinds of sweet grass and small shrubs, varied with very good large bush and trees, as . . . *noem noem*, guarri, etc." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 32, 1897.)

Nutgrass.—*Cyperus bulbosus.* This weed with its nut-like roots and rapid propagation has nearly ruined some of the gardens in Graaff Reinet.

Nutseng or **Nutzung.**—*Halleria elliptica.* See Kinderbosje, for which this is another name.

Nylstroom.—(D. *Nijl*, the Nile; *stroom*, a stream, river.) This name was given by the Dutch to the River Maghaliquain, or "Fierce Crocodile River," under a somewhat curious misapprehension. See quotation.

"On the 6th we rode along the Maghaliquain or 'Fierce Crocodile River' which has acquired the name of *Nylstroom*, or the River Nile, in a somewhat singular manner. It is well known that in the earliest migrations of the Dutch Boers from the Cape Colony they entertained hopes of being able to reach the Beloofte land, i.e. the promised land of Canaan. The heaps of stones collected by the Kaffir women when they clear a field for cultivation and which remain long after that field has reverted to its primitive condition as part of the wilderness, were supposed to be monuments piled up by the children of Israel, who if this evidence is to be received, must be supposed to have come as far south as the frontier of Albany during the forty years' wanderings. And when the avowed Jerusalem trekkers or pilgrims came to the Maghaliquain and found it flowing north, they at once christened it the Nile, and fondly hoped it would lead them down into Egypt whence they could easily reach the Beloofte land." (Baines' "Gold Regions of S.E. Africa," p. 83, 1877.)

"The dream of the early voortrekkers for a modern Palestine has not been realized." (Distant's "A Naturalist in the Transvaal," p. 133, 1892.)

Oak fern.—*Pellaea geraniæfolia, Fee.* The name sometimes given to this fern in the neighbourhood of King William's Town.

"This is frequently known as the oak fern, but has no connexion with the English *Oak fern* (*Polypodium dryopteris*), nor with another *Polypodium* from Natal frequently grown here under the name of oak fern (*P. Plymatodes*)." (Sim's "Kaffrarian Ferns," p. 28, 1891.)

Oak-leaf geranium.—*Pelargonium quercifolium.*

"Of this well-known greenhouse shrub, *the Oak-leaf geranium*, I have seen no wild specimens, but those distributed by E. & Z." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 306, 1859-1860.)

Oat-hay.—Oats which have been cut while still slightly green and afterwards hayed.

"*Oat-hay* for the Remount Agency." ("The Queenstown Free Press," 2 March, 1859.)

Obiquas.—The Bushmen were known by this name among the Hottentots.

"About the promontory of Africa, they (the Bushmen) called themselves, and were called by others, *Obiquas*, Souquas; and they had, doubtless, other denominations in parts farther inland." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," II. p. 589 n., 1846.)

Obletjes or **Oubliès.**—(F. *oubliè*, the sacramental wafer, a thin cake; Lat. *oblata*, an offering cake; from *oblatus*.) A kind of tea cake. The article and the name both go back to the advent of the Huguenots in South Africa (1688-1689); but the name was applied in England to a biscuit or cake quite 200 years before that; for in "A Noble Boke off Cookry ffor a Prynce Houssolde or eny other estately Houssolde," a collection of recipes compiled somewhere in the latter part of the fifteenth century (ed. Napier, London, 1882), the following recipe is found: "Haires in pardolos. To mak haires in pardolous tak an haire and parboille hir in good brothe swong eggs ther to and hew fleshe smalle and cast it in the sewe and sethe them well then tak *obleys* or waiffurs and couche them in a platter and salt the sewe and put it upon the *obleys* and serve it."

"*Obletjes* (or *Oubliès*). An old-fashioned recipe for tea cakes brought to the Cape by the French refugees." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 153, 1904.)

"The one word I feel sure of is *oublietje*, that delicious, crisp, wafer-like pastry to be invariably found at bazaars in the districts settled by the Huguenots, from Fr. *Oublié*, thin pastry." ("The Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Offal.—(D. *afval*, refuse, offal.) Sheep's head and feet, cleaned and prepared for cooking, are offered for sale in Midland towns by this name, which is a corruption of the Dutch word.

"The whole holiday party had retired to sleep, after indulging in a liberal gorge on a mess of sheep's head and feet, called *offal*, the signs of which were all over their persons." (Wilson's "Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal," p. 22, 1901.)

Off-chance.—A chance that seems scarcely possible.

"They go to nearly all the new rushes, of course, on the *off chance*, not expecting, nor perhaps wishing, to find." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 233, 1873.)

Off-colour.—(1) A diamond slightly tinged with yellow is

said to be "off-colour". (2) The expression is often applied to people of mixed European and African blood. (3) It is also used with the meaning "out of sorts," "not very well". (4) Sometimes it is employed to convey the idea of dubious morality.

"An *off-coloured* diamond of 115 carats was found at Dutoitspan yesterday morning." ("Queenstown Free Press," 12 April, 1872.)

"When in a general way one talks of 'yellow' stones, one means 'coloured' of that tint, not 'fancy'; in the Fields we incorrectly call them *off-colour*. The true *off-colour* has no distinct tinge at all." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 356, 1873.)

"Mr. Webb had the misfortune to possess two maid servants, rather *off-colour*, as diggers say, but really good looking." (*Ibid.* p. 146, 1873.)

"He took my watch last night because I was *off-colour*." (Olive Schreiner's "Trooper Peter Halkett," p. 235, 1897.)

Off-load, To.—To remove the load from horse, cart, or wagon; to unload.

"There was nothing for it but to *off-load*, a most tedious and tiring business." (Churchill's "Men, Mines, and Manners in South Africa," p. 221, 1895.)

Off-saddle, To.—To remove the saddle from a horse to rest it on a journey, or at the journey's end.

Oksi or **Okshoofd.**—This word is interesting as being a corruption of the Dutch *okshoofd*, a hogshead, which has passed into German in the form *oxhoft*, a fluid measure of 200-240 litres; and into English in the form *hogshead*, 52½ gallons. Tiedeman, "Notes and Queries," IV. 2, 46, says that the word is found in Dutch as early as 1550, and suggests that the cask may have been so named from having an "ox-head" branded upon it, which Professor Skeat thinks a not improbable origin of the term. In South Africa the word is applied to a large wine-vat.

Old Colony, The.—The Cape Colony is frequently so designated to distinguish it from those Colonies and States of South Africa of more recent origin.

"The greatest drag to the commerce of Natal is its intimate connexion with, and almost entire dependence on, the *old Colony*." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 15, 1852.)

"We were now in the *old Colony*, where we felt ourselves

more at home." (The Rev. J. Edwards' "Reminiscences," p. 81, 1883.)

Old lands grass.—*Panicum lævifolium, Hack.* A good hay grass.

Old man's beard or **whiskers.**—*Usnea florida.* This appellation, given in the West of England to the curious parasitic growth which one often finds there on rose-bushes, is, in the Eastern Province of the Cape Colony, given to a greyish-coloured parasitic growth, found in great profusion in some parts, upon the trunks and branches of trees, and hanging like long locks of grey hair.

"Some with the parasite *Old man's beard* swinging from their branches like grey locks." (Noble's "South Africa," p. 18, 1877.)

"Singular looking vegetable draperies known as *old man's whiskers.*" (Burton's "Cape Colony To-day," p. 125, 1907.)

Oliekoek.—(D. *olie,* oil; *koek,* a cake.) A term applied to a duffer, nincompoop.

> Hij seg maar net—jou *olie koek!*
> "Jou snuiter!" of "Jou semelbroek!"

(Een Patriot, Reitz's "Afrikaanse Gedigte," p. 24, 1888.)

Oliepitten.—(D. *olie,* oil; *pit,* a kernel, pip.) Another name for the Kaambesje (q.v.), having reference to the oil that is extracted from the kernels of the berries.

Olifant gras.—(D. *olifant,* elephant; *gras,* grass.) *Avena elephantina* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 117, 1823) = *Danthonia elephantina, Nees.*

Olifant melkbosch.—(D. *olifant,* elephant; *melk,* milk.) *Euphorbia cervicornis*—something like the finger-pol. It occurs in Little Namaqualand.

"The local name is *olifant melkbosch*; the roots grow to a considerable size, and the crown of stems often exceed a foot in diameter." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," p. viii, x. Part II. 1901.)

Olijvenhout.—(D. *olijf,* an olive; *hout,* wood.) *Olea verrucosa,* the Wild olive of the English colonist.

Om.—(D. *om,* about; G. *um,* around.) This word is employed by wagon-drivers when turning their oxen. See Hot en haar.

"Loud cries of 'Jak' to start the oxen, or 'Ah now' to

stop them, or '*Om*' to make them turn round." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 50, 1852.)

Ompad.—(D. *om*, about; *pad*, a road, way.) A roundabout way, the longest way round.

Omsons.—(G. *umsonst*, in vain, to no purpose.) In vain, useless.

Onder.—(D. *onder*, under, down.) As frequently employed this word means "up-country," "the interior".

Onder baatje.—(D. *onder*, under; Mal. *badjoe*, a jacket.) (1) An under-jacket or waistcoat. (2) The two rows of body feathers from below the wing of the ostrich.

Onderbosch.—(D. *onder*, under; *bos*, a bush.) *Trichocladus crinitus* and *T. ellipticus* are both known by this name; of the former the natives make kiries and ornaments; the latter is largely used in the neighbourhood of the Pirie forest for firewood.

"*Trichocladus crinitus* is the more common *onderbosch.*" (Sim's "Forest Flora of the Cape Colony," p. 12, 1907.)

Onderveld.—(D. *onder*, under, down below.) This word is used in Cape Dutch as the equivalent of the English "up-country," though why the country, which is so much higher, should be so designated, is difficult to say. See Bovenland.

"Mar myn vrinde het my gevraag om dit in Afrikaans te doen dan kan onse Afrikaanse *Onderveldse* susters . . . oek nut daarvan hè." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 3, 1898.)

Ongedierte.—(D. *ongedierte*, vermin.) (1) In Cape Dutch this term is applied to wild animals generally. (2) Vermin.

"Het wild gedierte noemt men in Transvaal *ongedierte*, en de leeuw wordt gewoonlijk met den naam 'ou-baas' of 'de ouwe' aangeduid." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 345, 1882.)

"Ik ga liever in huis bij eenen blanke dan in een Kaffer *struis* (stroohut) met velerlei *ongedierte.*" (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 134, 1890.)

Onweer.—(D. *onweder*, a thunder-storm.) Inclement weather.

Onze-lieve-heers beestje.—(D. lit. "Our dear Lord's little animal".) This designation is sometimes given to the Lady-bird. Judging from the names which this insect has received, it seems to be held in honour in most countries; the

English Lady-bird, the French Bête à la Vierge, and the German Marion-Käfer, all connect it with the Blessed Virgin; while the French Bête à bon Dieu and Bonne vache à Dieu and this Dutch name give it higher honour.

Oom.—(D. *oom*; G. *Oheim*, an uncle.) This Dutch word is often used in South Africa when addressing an elderly man, as denoting respect; e.g. *Oom* Paul, the ordinary designation of the President of the late Transvaal Republic. In this form or with the diminutive suffix—*Oompje*—the word conveys both affection and respect.

"Ouden van dagen worden in het huishouden met eere behandeld.

"Vandaar ook de gewoonte om de ouderen *oom*, 'ou-oom' of 'tante' te noemen, onverschillig of men van de familie is of niet—en al is de aangesprokene doodarm en van den andere geheel afhankelijk." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 427, 1882.)

"Listening to them and smoking were several people, amongst them Mr. Pieter Maynier, familiarly called by Graaff Reinetters '*Oom* Piet' (*Oom*, or uncle, being a term of affection in South Africa)." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 42, 1889.)

"Im Afrikanischen sind *oom* und *tante* die gewöhnlichen Bezeichnungen und Anreden für ältere Personen, auch Fremde, *neef* und *nichi* (*niggi*) für Jüngere. So stets bei Farbigen." (Meyer's "Die Sprache der Buren," p. 19 n., 1901.)

Oo'nd.—(D. *oven*, an oven.) The Cape Dutch word for oven has assumed this form.

Oo'nd bosje.—(D. *oven*, oven; *bos*, a bush.) *Conyza ivæfolia* is so named because a besom made of the stalks is used to sweep out the ovens.

Oorlam.—(Mal. *orang lama*, an old man.) This word is applied variously. (1) As generally used it means shrewd, sharp. (2) It is used of a Hottentot who can speak both Dutch and English. (3) It is also used of a coloured servant whose laziness prompts him to a variety of scheming either to dodge or to scamp his work. See under Baar. But Dr. Hahn, whose note I quote in full, questions the generally received etymology of both of these words.

"In this kraal there are, of persons who speak the Dutch language, and who are called *orlams*, 215." (Campbell's "Travels," p. 284, 1815.)

"Amral and the head of the Buys had been in the Colony, were therefore called *overlams* and were cleverer than the Namaquas of Kabusomop." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 251, 1838.)

"*Oerlam* was a nickname given by the Dutch colonists to the Hottentots that hung about their farms; it means a barren ewe, a creature good for neither breeding nor fattening, a worthless concern, one that gives trouble and yields no profit. However, all things are relative, and what these *oerlams* were to the Dutchmen, that the Namaqua Hottentots were to the *oerlams*." (Galton's "Tropical South Africa," p. 68, 1853.)

"The meaning of this word is not quite clear. At present this word signifies in South African Dutch a shrewd, smart fellow. Thus they say, '*Die kerel is banja orlam*' (That fellow is very shrewd). Those Hottentot clans who left the Colony and now live in Great Namaqualand call themselves *Orlams* in distinction from the aborigines, the Namaquas, and by this they mean to say that they are no longer uncivilised. If, for instance, they give a traveller a man as a servant, they say, 'He is very *orlam*, he is not baar' (He is very handy, he is not stupid). In the North-western Colony about the mission station Steinkopf, lives a large family of the *Orlams*. They manufacture stone pipes, and are bastard Hottentots, who say that a trader by the name of *Orlam* came about a hundred years ago to Little Namaqualand, and afterwards stayed amongst the Namaquas, and married a Hottentot girl. The truth is that about 1720 there was a man at the Cape of the name of *Orlam*, who had come from Batavia. He was a trader and visited chiefly Little Namaqualand and the Khamiesbergen." (Hahn's "Tsuni *Goab, the Supreme Being of the Khoi-Khoi," p. 153, 1881.)

"Mijn wagendrijver, genaamd Paulus, was teruggegaan naar eene plaats, twee uren te paard van daar, waar er vele *oorlamschen* waren." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 237, 1890.)

Oortje.—(D. *oord*, *oort*, really the quarter of a coin. The name is derived from the coins which were divided into four parts—*oorden*—by a cross. Cf. Eng. *farthing*, lit. *fourthing*.) A farthing.

Opblas.—(D. *opblazen*, to blow up, to puff up.) This is the term applied in South Africa to that inflation of the stomach and intestines of cattle which arises from imperfect digestion, known to English cattle farmers as hoven.

"Sheep and cattle turned on short succulent lucerne are apt to get hoven or *opblas.*" (Burton's "Cape Colony for the Settler," p. 106, 1903.)

Opblasers.—(D. *opblazen,* to blow up.) See Blas-op and Konya.

"The *oppblazers* (pneumora), a kind of grasshopper, were caught in the evening." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 150, 1795.)

Opgaaf.—(D. *opgaaf,* an account, statement.) In Cape Dutch certain taxes levied by the Government were so termed.

"The missionaries are now ordered to collect, and be responsible for, the *opgaaf* of the Hottentots." (Philip's "Researches," I. p. 229, 1828.)

"The first authentic account of the state of the Colony is furnished by the *oppgaaf* or tax-lists for 1796." (Martin's "History of Southern Africa," p. 111, 1836.)

Opgeitjes.—The fruit of *Gardenia neuberia,* of which the natives and children are fond. See Kaffir cherry.

Oprecht.—(D. *oprecht,* sincere, genuine.) Sincere, trustworthy.

"He rejoiced very much when the independence of the Transvaal was established, and from that day was a good and loyal *oprecht* burgher of the State." ("Prinsloo of Prinsloosdorp," p. 23.)

Oproll vark.—(D. *oprollen,* to roll up; *vark,* a pig.) A name applied in the Eastern Province to the hedgehog.

Opschep.—(D. *opscheppen,* to serve up; to scoop up.) To dish up, to serve a meal, to scoop up.

Opscheplooper.—(D. *opscheppen,* to serve up; *looper,* a runner.) One who sponges upon his friends for his meals.

Opsit.—(D. *opzitten,* to sit up.) In Cape Dutch this word is descriptive of the peculiar method of courting which in earlier days was in vogue among the Dutch farming population, the duration of the lovers' evening interview being determined by the burning of a candle, which is made at the same time to convey a hint of the state of the lady's feelings toward her wooer. Should she favour the suitor a long candle is employed, but if he is not to her liking she produces "ends," and he at once understands that his room is preferred to his company.

"After we had *opsitted* together several times, according

to our custom, and burnt many very long candles, we were married." (Haggard's "Swallow," p. 6, 1899.)

"Tobias meant to make a bit of a splash to-day, although he was not prepared for the solemnity of an *opsitting* (that all-night form of courtship dear to the heart of a Boer)." (Bryden's "From Veldt Camp Fires," p. 195, 1900.)

Opslag.—(D. *oogopslag*, a look, a glance.) (1) In Cape Dutch this word retains the meaning of a glance, a look. (2) After rains a profusion of various small, short-lived plants spring up in the open spaces between the karoo bushes; this growth is designated "opslag". (3) The term is also applied to that which is self-sown—oats, barley, etc.

"The destruction of more lasting grasses, and the increase of what we call *opslag* grass, is accounted for by over-stocking." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," III. p. 145, 1871.)

"In Humansdorp, where the burning of the veld is generally accused" (of causing lamziekte), "an *opslag* is considered to be the cause." ("South African Agric. Journal," p. 39, July, 1912.)

Opstal.—In Cape Dutch this word is used collectively of the buildings on a farm, house, stables, etc. See Upstals.

Orange-ball tree.—*Buddleia globosa*, so called because of its bright yellow balls of blossom.

Orange creeper.—*Bignoma venusta;* the reference is to the colour of its profuse flowers.

Orange heath.—*Erica blenna, Salisb., var. grandiflora, Bolus*, is known by this name in the Cape Province. See Bell heath.

Orange River.—This was the name given to the Gariep (q.v.) in honour of the Stadtholder Maurice, Prince of Orange. The river drains an enormous extent of country, and is twelve hundred miles long, having its rise in the Mont aux Sources of the Drakensberg range, and entering the Atlantic Ocean on the west coast of South Africa.

Orange, Wild.—See Kaffir orange, common in the Transvaal, Low country, or Bushveld.

"There were also baobabs . . . and figs, *wild oranges* (I measured one, it was 13½ inches in circumference, and as hard as a cricket ball)." (Balfour's "1200 Miles in a Waggon," p. 110, 1895.)

Oribi.—*Ourebia scoparia.* Not a very common antelope of Natal and the eastern districts up to Mozambique.

"*Redunca scoparia.* The *Ourebi.* Ditto of the Cape Colonist. Subokoo of the Matabili." (Harris' "Wild Sports," p. 385, 1839.)

"There were also great numbers of the graceful little *oribi* antelopes, always to be seen in twos and threes in this valley." (Selous' "Wanderings," p. 434, 1895.)

Orleans.—(D. *olijf,* olive; Cape D. *oleen hout,* olive-wood.) A corruption sometimes heard of the Cape Dutch name of the Wild olive-tree.

"For sale, 15,000 fencing poles, *Orleans* and Sneeze-wood, from 3 in. to 5 in. tops, 7 feet long." (Advt. "Eastern Province Herald," 19 January, 1899.)

Orlosi bloem.—(D. *horloge,* a clock; Lat. *horologium,* a sundial or water-clock; D. *bloem,* a flower.) The passion flower is so named by the Dutch, because the arrangement of the stamens is supposed to resemble the hands of a watch or clock.

Os bij.—(D. *os,* an ox; *bij,* a bee.) *Trigona sp.* Stingless social bees found in the Northern Transvaal. The variety thus named is also known as the Small Moka bee. There is a larger variety of Moka bee, which, if not identical with, is closely allied to, *Trigona clypeata, Friese.*

"The smaller variety of Moka is known among Afrikanders as *os bije* (ox-bees)—why, I have not been able to discover." ("South African Agric. Journal," p. 794, June, 1912.)

Ostrich.—(Lat. *avis struthio,* the ostrich bird.) *Struthio australis.* This bird has also been called the "Camel-bird," because, like the camel, it has a warty excrescence upon the breast upon which it leans; its feet too are not unlike those of the camel.

Otje.—(1) A pig. (2) The term is also employed throughout the Midlands much as the English word "piggy" is used to, or of, children.

Otje.—*Pristipoma bennettii.* This seems to be the same as the preceding word, and apparently refers, like the other popular names which have been given to this fish—Chor-chor, Grunter, Varken (q.v.)—to the curious noise which the fish makes when taken out of the water.

Otter.—There are two species of otter in South Africa, the larger being *Lutra capensis* and the smaller *L. maculicollis.*

Ou'dak.—(Mal. *katak, kadok,* a frog.) This seems to be a corruption of the Malay word for a frog.

Oude bosch.—*Leucosidea sericea*, a member of the *Rosaceæ* is thus named.

"Dense jungles of *Oude bosch* (*Leucosidea sericia*) . . . made travelling very difficult." ("Report S.A.A.A. Science," p. 210, 1908.)

Oudegeluk.—(D. *oud*, old; *geluk*, luck, happiness.) The name given in the neighbourhood of Knysna to *Halietus vocifer*. See Groote vischvanger.

Oudehout.—(D. *oud*, old; *hout*, wood.) This name is applied to several different trees, among them being *Cordia caffra* and *Leucosidea sericea*. The name has reference apparently to the fact that the wood of these trees is seldom straight. See Oude bosch.

"Een enkele boschrand . . . heet *Oud-hout* nek, naar de boschjes van *Oud-hout* waarmede de kloven begroeid zijn." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 360, 1882.)

"Two good bee plants here (Lady Frere) are the tree *oudenhout* and the wild coffee, both flowering in the spring." ("Agric. Journ. Union of South Africa," p. 717, June, 1911.)

Oudeklip.—(D. *oud*, old; *klip*, a rock.) Decomposed dolomite.

Ouderling.—An elder of the Dutch Reformed Church.

"He is now required once a year to visit the families in their dwellings in company of an *ouderling* or deacon." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 357, 1818.)

"He holds the highly honoured and responsible position of an *ouderling* or elder of the Church at Hope Town." (Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 34, 1906.)

Ou'Jong.—(D. *oud*, old, ancient; *jong*, young, junior.) Lit. "Old young," a curious combination applied to an old coloured servant. See Jong.

Ou'Klong.—(D. *oud*, old, ancient; *klein*, small; *jong*, young, junior.) See Klong.

Ou'lap.—(D. *oud*, old; *lap*, a patch, clout.) (1) A penny is often called an "ou'lap," as being a coin of little worth. (2) The word is also used as an adjective in a disparaging sense.

"Writes a correspondent (says the 'Worcester Standard') from one of the *ou'lap* districts of the South-West." ("East London Dispatch," 29 September, 1908.)

"Sixpenny bits were a rarity, and the penny or *oulap* was a practically useless coin." ("Northern Post," 20 June, 1912.)

Ou'meid's snuif.—(C.D. *ou*, old; *meid*, maid; *ou meid*, a coloured servant; D. *snuif*, snuff powder.) A large "puff ball" fungus. See Devil's snuff-box.

Ourebi.—*Ourebia scoparia.* A somewhat scarce antelope.

"Another species of antelope was here very plentiful, known by the Hottentot name of *orabie*, which, except in colour and size, being of a darker brown and a little larger, bore a considerable resemblance to the steenbok; it was marked down the face with two yellow lines." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 138, 1801.)

Ou'sanna.—(D. *oud*, old; *Sanna*, a woman's name.) The Dutch name for an old matchlock with a long barrel.

"De *ou-Grietjes* en de *ou-Sannas* van de Transvaalsche Boeren hebben het volksgevoel, de zucht naar vryheid, den droom eener Afrikaner-natie in duizenden harten doen ontwaken." (Hofmeyr's "De Afrikaner-Boer en de Jameson-Inval," p. 290, 1896.)

Output.—The quantity of gold or diamonds obtained from the mines or diggings in any given period.

"There is every prospect of the May *output* exceeding 40,000 ounces." ("Cape Argus," 9 January, 1902.)

Outspan.—(1) At intervals along the roads in South Africa spaces are beaconed off, some public, others private, where animals may be outspanned and allowed to graze; these spaces are known as "outspans". (2) The word is also used in another sense, and refers, as in the second quotation, not to the place, but to the act of outspanning.

"He proposed to ride on slowly in the evening to the next *outspan*." (Baines' "Explorations," p. 28, 1864.)

"The night of our first *outspan* was one of the coldest we had experienced in South Africa." (Wood's "Through Matabeleland," p. 1, 1893.)

Outspan, To.—(G. *spannen*, to yoke, to put to.) To take animals from the yoke or harness for rest and food.

"They very frequently unyoke or *outspan* . . . at Salt River." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 52, 1822.)

Ou-vrouw-onder-de-Komberse.—(D. lit. "Old woman under the blanket".) This is the humorous designation given by the Dutch to a dish consisting of Carbonatjes (q.v.) baked in dough or batter—not unlike the English dish known as "Toad-in-the-hole".

Overberg.—(D. *over*, over, beyond; *berg*, a mountain.)

In Natal this term is applied to the territories across its mountainous borders.

"The districts situated, with respect to the metropolis, beyond these mountains (Hottentot Holland), and also their inhabitants and produce are often distinguished in a general way by the word *overbergsch* (tramontane)." (Burchell's Travels," I. p. 88, 1822.)

"The trade with the Dutch States beyond the Drakensberg, which is technically known as the *Overberg trade.*" (Mann's "Natal," p. 170, 1859.)

"Sir Albert Hime, the Natal Premier, interviewed on the question of congestion of traffic and stoppage of permits for civil trade *Overberg,* said . . . the Government had taken action." ("E. Province Herald," 3 March, 1902.)

Ox-peckers.—The common name of *Buphaga africana* and *B. erythrorhynca.* See Tick birds and Rhinoceros bird.

"During our stay in the bush *Ox-peckers* appeared in numbers about our oxen, and actually ate large holes in the fleshy part of their backs." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 419, 1875-1884.)

"The eggs of the red-billed *Ox-pecker* are spotted with purplish red." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 118, 1908.)

Paapies.— (D. *paapje,* a cocoon, chrysalis.) In horses these are the larvæ of the fly *Aestrus equi* or *Gastrophilus equi,* and are known in English as "bots".

"The *papies* is the outcome of the gad-fly or horse-fly which deposits its eggs or larvæ on the quarters of animals and underneath the belly of the animal. The animal by biting and licking itself conveys them to the mouth and thence into the stomach." ("The Farmer's Weekly," p. 767, 17 January, 1912.)

Paar.—(D. *paar,* a pair, couple, some. Lat. *par,* equal, a pair.) A curious use of the word pair occurs in the English of the Midland districts due to the influence of the Dutch idiom. To a boy of the Midlands a pair of apples does not necessarily imply two only, nor two that happened to be exactly alike—it is used in the sense of some, a few. Cf. G. *Kommen Sie in ein paar Tagen?* (Will you come in a few days?).

"Ge my asseblief 'n *paar* voorbeelde." (Give me, please, a few examples.) (Oom William's "Samesprake," p. 7, 1885.)

Paard.—(D. *paard*, a horse.) The term applied by the Namaquas to the block of wood which they employ to assist them in crossing swollen rivers. See River horse.

"He launched into the stream upon a log of wood about his own length, commonly used for this purpose, called a *paard* or horse." (Steedman's "Adventures," I. p. 159, 1835.)

Paarde bos.—(D. *paard*, a horse; *bos*, a bush.) The Namaqualand name of a shrub of which horses are very fond.

Paarde frutang.—Some of the larger species of *Romulea* are so named in the Riversdale District.

Paarde kapok.—(D. *paard*, a horse; Mal. *kapas*, cotton.) *Lanaria plumosa, Ait.* (See Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 325, 1823.)

"Here, however, was plenty of that curious plant called by the Colonists *Paardekapok*, or horse cotton." (Bunbury's "Journal," p. 105, 1848.)

Paardepis.—*Clausena inæqualis, Oliv.* The name has reference to the peculiar smell of the wood of this shrub. The juice of the leaves of this plant is used for "sore eyes".

Through some confusion Eklon and Zeyher give the name *Hippobromus* (a Greek translation of the Dutch name) to quite a different shrub; and although the Government Forest Lists quote the Dutch name opposite *Hippobromus alata*, it is applied by the Colonists solely to *Clausena inæqualis*, the fœtid smell of which it suits exactly.

"These two species bear the coarse and inappropriate name of *Paard*,—which is given them by the Colonists of the S.E. coast where they abound." ("C.G.H. Lit. Gazette," p. 161, 1831.)

"*Hippobromus* . . . Name, ἵππος, a horse, and βρωμος, a smell; colonial name *Paardepis.* ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 241, 1859-1860.)

Paardepram.—(D. *paard*, a horse; *praam*, a woman's breast.) *Xanthoxylon capense, Harv.* In the trees of large growth the trunk is covered with knobs somewhat resembling a mare's teat—hence the name. See Knob-wood.

"A perfect vegetable cure for snake bite exists in the shape of the root of a tree growing in most parts of South Africa. The Dutch name spelt phonetically is *paraprom.*" ("Scientific African," p. 60, 1896.) (The Editor identifies "paraprom" as being probably *Polygala serpentaria*, but that is known to the Dutch as the "Kaffir Slangen Wortel".)

Paarde vijgen.—(D. *paard*, a horse; *vijg*, a fig.) The name given to a variety of *Mesembryanthemum*.

"The native plants will do their share in staying the sands; the succulent creeping *Mesembryanthemums* (T'gaukum and *Paarde vygen*) and *Myrica* all help to render the sands more stable." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 97, 1906.)

Paarde visch. — (D. *paarde*, a horse; *visch*, a fish.) *Agriopus verrucorus, C. and V.* The resemblance which the profile of the head of this fish bears to that of a horse, which is enhanced by the mane-like appearance of the dorsal fin, has given rise to this name. See Horse-fish.

Paardevoetjes.—(D. *paard*, a horse; *voet*, a foot.) A large variety of *Patella*.

Paardeziekte.—(D. *paard*, a horse; *ziekte*, sickness.) See Horse-Sickness.

"De '*paardenziekte*' wordt beschreven als een acute ontsteking der longen met sterke afscheiding van serum, dat zich in de lucht-cellen ophoopt, en in ongunstige gevallen den dood veroorzaakt door verstikking." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 358, 1882.)

Paarlemoer or **Perlemoen.**—(D. *paarl*, a pearl; *moeder*, contr. *moer*, mother.) (1) Mother-of-pearl. (2) Several varieties of *Haliotidæ* are so called. See Klip-kous.

The form Perlemoen seems to have arisen from a mistaken etymology.

"*Perlamoen* te stoof.—Haal di *perlamoen* uit di skulp," etc. (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 18, 1898.)

"The *Paarl lemoen* (!) or Klip kous ('stone stocking'), a species of shell-fish found on many parts of the South African coast, adhering to the rocks." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 164, 1904.)

"The *Perlemoen* or Klipkoes of South African seas (Haliotis)." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 192, 1911.)

Paarl, The.—(D. *paarl*, a pearl.) A town in the Western Province, situated at the foot of a granite ridge, whose enormous boulders glistening in the sun like huge pearls, suggested the name.

"Dieser Weg führet hernach auf einen Berg, der *Perlen-Berg* genannt. Nicht als ob man Perlen auf ihm fände, sondern wegen eines grossen Felsens auf seinen grossen Gipfel, den

die gemeinen Leute einer Perle ähnlich halten." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 227, 1745.)

"The mountain of the *Paarl* furnishes a fine field for the botanist." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 61, 1801.)

Pacht.—(Lat. *pactus*, an agreement, a pact.) An agreement, a duty, an impost; as D. *zout-pacht*, the salt duty.

"We would seriously take into consideration the propriety of re-establishing the old *Pacht* for Cape Town." ("C.G.H. Lit. Gazette," p. 243, February, 1832.)

Pack-ox.—Oxen were used in South Africa, before the advent of Europeans, both by Hottentots and Kaffirs for riding purposes and for carrying loads, and are still so used by the Kaffirs. A hole is bored through the gristle of the nose and a wooden pin passed through it, to each end a riem was fastened, the whole doing duty as bit, bridle, and reins. A sheep's skin is folded and fastened on the back by another riem passing quite round the body of the animal, for a saddle.

"Diese *Last Ochsen* gebrauchen die Hottentotten zum Wegtragen ihrer Hütten und Geräthschafft . . . auch setzen sie die alte Leute, Kranke und Schwachen darauf." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 166, 1745.)

"These oxen are by the colonists called *pack-oxen*, they being also used for carrying packs and burthens." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 238, 1785.)

"It was curious to see officers riding at the head of their men on *pack-bullocks* guided by a thong through the cartilage of the nose." (Moodie's "Battles of South Africa," I. p. 370, 1888.)

Pack, To.—This word is sometimes used with the meaning of "to tramp, or tread in".

"The ground all round was *packed* flat with their spoor." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 143, 1850.)

Padda.—(D. *pad*, a toad; cf. Eng. *pad*-dock, a frog, toad; Mid. Eng. *padde;* Scot. *padda.*) The South African name for all varieties of frogs, generally pronounced "podder".

"'It sounds like treacle,' said Abe with a puzzled look, 'but I don't see what the *podder's* got to do with it any how.'" (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 241, 1897.)

Padda klauw.—(D. *pad*, a toad; *klauw*, a claw, paw.) *Teucrium africanum.* The flowers of this plant resemble in shape a frog's or toad's foot—hence the name.

Padda slijm.—(D. *pad*, a toad; *slijm*, slime, mucus.) The fine filaments of several species of freshwater algæ—*Confervaceæ*—are so named.

Paddavanger.—(D. *pad*, a toad; *vangen*, to catch.) This is another name for the Hammerkop (q.v.).

"The crane put in a claim for high flying, also the *padderfanger*, and the owl too; but of course he was laughed at, for he was far too sleepy to do anything of the sort." ("Everyday Life in Cape Colony," by X.C., p. 42, 1902.)

Paddawater.—(D. *pad*, a toad.) Water pools caused by the rain in which frogs breed.

"Some farmers accuse the so-called *padda water* collecting after the rainfall." (" S. A. Agric. Journ.," p. 40, July, 1912.)

"Water of whatever description, river or rain (so-called *padawaterjes*), could not be responsible for the disease" (Lamziekte). (" S. A. Agric. Journ.," p. 46, July, 1912.)

Paddy or **Padda.**—*Lophius upsicephalus*, known at East London as the devil-fish or angler.

"Known in several places in the Colony as the *Paddy*, and in others as the Devil fish." (Gilchrist's " History of the Local Names of Cape Fish," p. 219, 1900.)

Padkost.—(D. *pad*, path; *kost*, food.) Food provided for a journey.

Padlooper.—(D. *pad*, path; *looper*, a runner.) (1) A small tortoise is so named. (2) It is more commonly applied, perhaps, to a tramp or vagabond.

"Here I saw the first land-tortoise of the species called by the Dutch *patlooper*, from their generally keeping in the pathway or carriage road." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 57, 1818.)

"Daar leerde ik op de sporen van schildpadden (*padloopers*) loopen, tot ik ze in handen had." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 9, 1890.)

Padloopertje.—(D. *pad*, path; *looper*, runner.) *Megalophonus cinereus, Lay.* The reference is to the habit which this bird has of running along the road. See Kuifkop koeskoetje.

Pagter.—(D. *pachter*, a farmer, tenant; Lat. *pactus*, an agreement, bargain.) A tenant farmer; a licensed retailer of spirituous liquors.

" There were also a town butcher and baker, and a *pagter*

(*pakter*) or retailer of wine and brandy." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 145, 1824.)

Paijbos.—*Rhus lucida.* This would appear to be a misprint for Taaibosch (q.v.).

"I have heard of their (*Aquila verreauxi*) nests in *Paijbos* bushes (*Rhus lucida*) along the Zeekoe River." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 34, 1875-84.)

Paint brushes.—The flowers of the *Hæmanthus* are known by this name in the neighbourhood of East London.

"The flowers are known to the children hereabouts as *paint brushes.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 20 July, 1909.)

Painted lady.—*Gladiolus debilis, Ker.*, is so named in the Western Province.

"Gladiolus . . . *Painted Ladies* and 'Kalkoentjes' belong here. Eighty-one species of this large genus are found in South Africa." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 198, 1906.)

Paljas.—(Mansvelt derives this word from the F. *paillasse*, bed-ticking, a clown, one dressed that is in *toile à paillasse;* but there can be little doubt, I think, that it is the Malay word *paliyas*, invulnerable, charmed against wounds; *pangliyas*, weapon proof.) In the Cape Colony this word is used of (1) a charm or spell; (2) a conjuror or sorcerer.

Pallah.—*Æpyceros melampus.* See Impala and Rooibok.

"One is called *Paala* (Parla) by the Bichuanas." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 300, 1824.)

Palm.—An Eastern Province name for various members of the *Cycadaceæ* Family. See Bread palm.

"The local cycads are commonly called 'Kaffirbread,' . . . 'bread-*palm*,' or simply *palm*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 24 December, 1908.)

Palmiet.—*Prionium Palmita,* a species of *Juncaceæ,* the stalk of which has a pleasant, nut-flavoured, edible pith which the coloured people and children seem to enjoy.

"Sometimes they (Hottentots) will devour bits of bullock's hide roasted over the fire; at others they eat the tender leaves of the *palmiet,* a plant resembling flags, which grows in the river." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 96, 1835.)

"The flower and root of the bulrush as well as the . . . *palmiet* (*Juncus serratus*) formed the main article of the diet

of the Makobas, as well as of the poorer Bechuanas." (Chapman's "Travels," I. p. 193, 1868.)

Pampelmoose.—(The etymology of this word is uncertain.) (1) *Citrus decumana, L.* The forms which this word has assumed are not a little amusing: e.g. *pumplenose, pumplemuse, pummelnose, pimplenoses.* See Yule and Burnell's "Anglo-Indian Glossary," Art. "Pommelo". (2) The fruit of *Physalis peruviana*—the Cape gooseberry is also known by this name: as thus employed it would appear to be a corruption of the F. *pomme-d'amour*, *Appeltje der liefde* (q.v.).

"The *pompelmoes* or shaddock, the fruit of which is one of the most wholesome, on account of its refreshing quality and taste." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 235, 1798.)

Pamperlang.—(Mal. *pambujukan*, flattery, coaxing, wheedling.) To flatter, cajole.

Pampoentjes.—(D. *pampoen*, a pumpkin.) Among the Dutch the mumps are known by this designation, lit. "little pumpkins"—inflamed and swollen parotid glands. See Kalbassies.

Pan.—(1) A nearly circular depression, in which a saline incrustation generally remains after the water, which accumulates in it in the wet season, has either evaporated or been absorbed. (2) The word is sometimes used as being synonymous with "Vlei" (q.v.).

"The following morning we outspanned at a *pan* (lakelet)." (De Waal's "With Rhodes in Mashonaland," p. 26, 1896.)

"Eines Morgens . . . der Kommandant und ich . . . hatten bei einer kleinen *Pan* (Pfanne d. h. Vertiefung, wo sich das Wasser ansammelt) abgesattlet." (Schiel's "22 Jähre in Süd-Afrika," p. 189, 1902.)

Pan.—A local abbreviation at Kimberley for the somewhat cumbersome "Du Toit's Pan".

Pangar.—*Pagrus laniarius.*

"It seems probable that it (*panga*) may have been originally a Malay name; and there is some confirmation of this. Valentyn in his 'Old and New East Indies,' mentions a fish which the natives called Ikan *Pangerang* or Pangarang (literally, prince) which seems to bear some resemblance to the Cape *Panga*, more especially in its having the protruding teeth. I have some confidence, therefore, in offering this explanation of the name." (Gilchrist's "History of the Local Names of Cape Fishes," p. 218, 1900.)

"Snoek is still in season; also *pangar*, a very nice fish for frying." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 142, 1902.)

Pangolin.—(Mal. *pangguling*, the creature that rolls itself up, *Manis Javanica*.) *Manis Temminckii*, a scaled animal belonging to the Order *Edentata* (ant-eaters). See Ijzer magauw.

"Seen from a distance the *pangolin* or Manis might easily be mistaken for a small alligator. . . . Possessing the power of rolling itself into a ball like a hedge-hog, this otherwise defenceless animal is at once rendered perfectly invulnerable to the attacks of its foes." (Harris's "Wild Sports," p. 301, 1839.)

Pan out, To.—A slang phrase derived from the process described below, having reference to the result of a speculation or venture.

"There's another scheme I've been plotting, but it don't *pan out* over much." (Mitford's "Luck of Gerard Ridgeley," p. 157.)

"Smith he held a commission sale in the camp every afternoon. He did not *pan out* much." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 119, 1891.)

Pan, To.—Part of the primitive process adopted by prospectors and diggers in dealing with gold-bearing quartz or soil; after being crushed it is washed in a round dish partly filled with water, the gold, if there is any, appearing as a thin yellow streak at the bottom.

"It was amusing to go to a digger's encampment, see him 'crush' his quartz, and then *pan* it." ("Adventures in Mashonaland by Two Nurses," p. 168, 1893.)

Papegaai.—(D. *papegai*; Sp. *papagayo*; Ar. *babagha*, a parrot.) *Poicephalus*. Parrot. The word is used by Chaucer:—

> The briddes singe, it is no nay,
> The sparhauk and the *papeiay*,
> That Joye it was to here
>
> ("Sir Thopas," ll. 1556-58)

but had reference to the green wood-pecker (*Gecinus viridis*).

Papegaai duif.—(D. *duif*, pigeon, dove.) *Turturœna delagorguei*. The crimson winged pigeon, a rather rare species.

Papegaai visch.—(D. *papegai*; Sp. *papagayo*; Ar. *babagha*, a parrot.) *Hoplegnathus conwayi* has received this

name on account of its hard parrot-like beak. See Parrot fish and Snoek galjeon.

Paper bark.—The Transvaal name of a species of *Albizzia.*

Paper house.—A vast improvement upon the "canvas house" of the early Diamond Field days. See quotation.

"A very pretty *paper house.* These *paper houses* are common in Bulawayo—they are really wire-wove with wooden frames, iron roofs, cardboard walls, with proper fire-places, windows and verandahs, etc. Just like a stone-built house in appearance, but portable; sent out from Queen Victoria Street in pieces." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 80, 1897.)

Papier bloem.—(D. *papier,* paper; *bloem,* a flower.) *Statice purpurata.* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 277, 1823.)

Papies.—The flowers of *Gladiolus villosus* are so called. See Pijpies, of which this seems to be a corruption.

"The pretty little pink or reddish *papie* (gladiolus villosus) is scattered over flat places." ("Cape Times," p. 9, 14 September, 1912.)

Papkuil.—*Typha angustifolia*—the bull-rush.

"In the low swampy parts *papkuil* and stick reeds." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 266, 1857.)

Parade, The.—A large open space adjoining the Castle, Cape Town, used for drill, parade, and other purposes.

"On the north-western side of the Castle is the *Parade,* a large oblong plain, surrounded by a walk, shaded by pinasters and stone pines, and enclosed by a wall and a moat." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 73, 1822.)

Paradise fly-catcher.—*Terpsiphone perspicillata.*

"It is curious that our *Paradise fly-catcher,* with its fine plumage and exquisite nest, should have such a wretched voice." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 4 December, 1908.)

Parasol tree.—The Lower Albany name for *Cussonia Thyrsiflora.* See Noois boom.

Parmantig.—(Sp. *paramento,* finery, trappings.) Fashionable, haughty, overbearing, impertinent.

"The grass was too long, the water too cold, the rains too heavy, the markets too far, the money too scarce, the merchandise too dear, the Kaffir too *parmantig.*" (Dower's "Early Annals of Kokstad," p. 14, 1902.)

"I hear some of his Dorp people are about to leave—he

is so independent and *permansig* in his doings." (Wilmot's "Life of Sir Richard Southey," p. 69, 1905.)

Parra or **Parrak**.—(D. *pad*, a toad.) A common corruption of Padda (q.v.).

Parrot fish.—In the Cape Colony this name is given to *Hoplegnathus conwayi*. See Papagaai visch. But in Natal the name is given to *Julis umbrostigma*, *Ripp.*, the reference being to its gay colouring of green, blue and pink.

"The commonest fish found (at Delagoa Bay) are rock-cod . . . *parrot fish*, long finned dory." ("East London Dispatch," 4 July, 1905.)

"I secured the head of the *parrot fish*, which is somewhat rare on our coast, in fact it is rare anywhere, only one genus of this family being known to science." ("East London Dispatch," 12 March, 1906.)

Parson crow.—*Corvus scapulatus*, *Daud.* This bird has a white breast and a white ring round its neck, while the rest of its body is black. See Wit-borst kraai. The Kaffir name of this bird is *i Hlungulu* and occasionally they designate ministers *ama Hlungulu*.

Part, For my.—A curious use of this phrase prevails in some parts of the Cape Province: e.g. "You can do it for my part," meaning, "You can do it instead of me". "You can go for my part," meaning, "You can go in my place".

Partridge, Bush.—*Francolinus natalensis* is so called in Natal.

"The *bush partridge* measures 13 inches in length." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 162, 1899.)

Partridge, Cape.—*Francolinus africanus*. A bird widely distributed throughout South Africa; it is not a true partridge, but though a little smaller not unlike its English namesake.

"In the Cape Colony the two best known species are the Cape Redwing (*Francolinus Levaillanti*) and the Grey-wing or *Cape partridge* (*F. africanus*)." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 126, 1908.)

Partridge, Namaqua.—*Pterochirus namaqua*. This bird is really a Sand-grouse.

"At this place we met with, for the first time, the *Namaqua partridge*, a very small species of Grous." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 265, 1822.)

Pasganger.—(D. *pas*, pace, step; *gang*, gait.) A horse with a peculiar gait.

"The performances of *pasgangers* and 'trippelaars' in former days, are probably lost to history." (Iron's "Settlers' Guide," p. 159, 1858.)

"It was an ugly old mare, a *pasganger* that used to waddle along in most ungainly fashion." (Dugmore's "Reminiscences," p. 33, 1871.)

Pas op!—(D. *oppassen*, to wait on, to take care of; cf. G. *aufpassen* and *Passen Sie auf!*) A common expression in South Africa equivalent to the English, "Look out!" "Take care!" It is frequently corrupted into "Boss up!"

"The warning shout of Moritz to *pas op*, would have rectified it, but our hunter was here more at home." (Drayson's "Tales of the Outspan," p. 122, 1862.)

Pass, A.—A certificate signed by a magistrate or properly authorized person, given to a slave or servant in olden days, and in these days to native or Hottentot servants to establish identity or to authorize them to proceed from one place to another with horses or stock. The word is practically equivalent to the English word "permit," a written licence or permission.

"A vagrancy law, the design of which is to commit men as vagrants . . . who might be found travelling about, without some *pass* or ticket of permission to remove." (Freeman's "Tour," p. 20, 1851.)

Pass system.—The law and its regulations by which passes or permits were issued as above.

"Upon more occasions than one I have endeavoured to bring to the notice of the public the evils of the *Pass system.*" ("The Queenstown Free Press," 2 March, 1859.)

Patrijsje.—(D. *patrijs*, a partridge.) A wild flower in the Western Province—the name refers to its shape.

"Kalkoentjes and *patrijsjes* are good names for some flowers if one understands Dutch." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 107, 1906.)

Patrijs kos.—(D. *patrijs*, partridge; *kost*, food.) *Watsonia spp.*

"The bulbs of the Watsonia—*patrijs kos* it is called—so plentiful in some parts of the veld." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Pauw.—(D. *pauw*; F. *paon*; Lat. *pavo*, a peacock.) There are three varieties of bustard known by this name: *Otis Kori*, *O. Caffra*, and *O. Ludwigii.* When full grown they are really fine birds and make good eating. They are

popularly known as the Gom pauw (from its supposed fondness for the gum of the mimosas), the Vlak pauw and the Bush pauw (from the nature of their respective habitat). See also Duin pauw.

"A third which appeared to be by much the finest bird in South Africa . . . called here the wilde *pauw*, or wild peacock." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 139, 1801.)

"On the higher grounds the *pow* (a large species of bustard) was frequently seen." (Gardiner's "Journey," p. 226, 1836.)

"There are two distinct species of them—the bush *pauw* and the vlakte or veldt *pauw*." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 196, 1896.)

Pawie perski.—(It. *Pavia*, the town; D. *perzik*, a peach.) A white clingstone peach which originally came from the neighbourhood of Pavia.

Peach brandy.—A low class spirit which is made from the yellow or St. Helena peach (q.v.).

"The yellow peach is almost the only kind grown . . . the Boer farmers use it for making *peach-brandy* . . . anything more abominable to a fresh comer than this decoction is difficult to imagine." (Distant's "A Naturalist in the Transvaal," p. 17, 1892.)

Peach moth.—*Erybolus Vaillantia.* The Natal name of this strikingly coloured moth, which is very destructive to fruit.

Peacock ore.—A variety of copper ore abundant in the copper mines of O'okiep and Concordia in Namaqualand, so called because of its deep peacock-blue colour.

"The ore is principally bornite—*peacock-ore* as it is often called on account of its beautiful iridescent colouring." ("The State," p. 487, November, 1911.)

Peacock's eyes.—In the Western Province *Moræa pavonia* is so named.

"Some of our large flowers, as *Hypoxis stellata* (*peacock's eyes*), are borne singly on the end of the flower stalk." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 111, 1906.)

Peg off, To.—To mark out by pegs one or more "claims" on an area proclaimed by Government as a gold or diamond mining area.

Peg out, To.—An adopted Americanism, meaning "to die".

Pekelaar or **Pekelaring.**—(D. *pekelharing*, pickled herring.) Fish pickled in brine or salted.

"Snoek *pekelaar* is the name we give to fillets of snoek slightly salted and sun-dried." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 142, 1902.)

Pen.—A threepenny piece is so called by the Natal natives and Coolies.

"A Kafir brought me for sale a nesting owl, which I at once purchased for a *pen* (threepenny piece)." ("Queenstown Free Press," 29 July, 1884.)

"They very seldom will sell anything for less than a threepenny-bit, which they call a *pen*, and as they rarely have change, one is obliged to try and keep a stock of *pens* in the house." (Rose Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay, Its Natives and Natural History," p. 55, 1891.)

"He (the native) named the copper penny 'deeblish' and the silver fourpenny and threepenny pieces, *pen*." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 104, 1899.)

Penguin, Jackass.—(Port. *pingue*, fat; Lat. *pinguis*.) *Spheniscus demersa*. These birds are to be found in large numbers on some of the islands round the coast; they nest in a burrow sometimes of considerable length, and are the only members of the family that take any trouble to secure their eggs from hurt. They have received this name because their cry is ludicrously like the bray of a donkey.

"This species is known to sea-faring men as the *Jackass penguin;* and its favourite resorts are the Ichaboe, Mercury, Hollanis-bird, and Possession Islands." (Andersson's "Birds of Damaraland," p. 348, 1872.)

Penknife.—The East London name of a variety of shell-fish (*Solenensis*) used as bait.

"Sea lice are unknown at East London, but they have a sort of shell-fish called *penknife* bait." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 154, 1906.)

Penny trumpeters.—The Pied barbet—*Tricholæma leucomelas* has a cry not at all unlike the noise made by a toy-trumpet—hence the name. The bird mentioned in the quotation is a tinker bird, a near relative, but it has a loud metallic call.

"We omitted in a previous month to notice the receipt from the Albany Museum of another of those elegant little barbets called *penny trumpeters* (*Megalaima barbatula*), among

other specimens." ("South African Magazine," III. p. 595, 1869.)

Pens en pootjes.—(D. *pens*, paunch; *poot*, a foot.) A dish composed of sheep's entrails and feet.

"Two or three sheep were killed every day, the entrails and feet were cooked with the fat of the tail, after a fashion which is very much in vogue throughout the Colony, under the name of *pens en pootjes*." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 355, 1814.)

Pens mist.—(D. *pens*, paunch; *mist* or *mest*, manure.) The contents of the first stomach in ruminants.

"Many farmers had stated that when eaten the *pens mist* (contents of the first stomach) caused the disease (Lamziekte)." ("S.A. Agric. Journ.," p. 45, July, 1912.)

Peper boschje.—(D. *peper*, pepper.) *Relhania genistæfolia*, and other species are so named in the Riversdale District.

Peper en zout.—(D. "pepper and salt".) A wild flower has been thus named because of its colour.

Peper wortel.—(D. *peper*, pepper; *wortel*, a root.) The name sometimes given to "horse-radish".

Perjeel or **Prijeel.**—(D. *prieël*, a bower, an arbour; F. *preau*, a little meadow; Lat. *pratellum*, dim. of *pratum*, a meadow.) In South Africa this word is applied to a vine trellis covering a pathway.

"Sale of a fine property. The attention of our readers is directed to the sale . . . of the property in the estate of . . . There are also a large yard, *perièels*, tanks, etc." ("Graaff Reinet Budget," 12 July, 1900.)

"The recent frosts, though they dealt havoc to the standard vines, had no effect whatever on the vines . . . on the *perièels* (overhead trellises)." (*Ibid.*, 6 October, 1900.)

Persgras.—(C.D. *persi*, dysentery.) The Western Province name of *Hydrocotyle Centella*, a decoction of the roots and stalks of which is used in cases of dysentery.

"Among the farmers the plant is known under the name of *Persgras*." (Pappe's "Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," p. 17, 1868.)

Peruvians or **Peruvian Jews.**—The Russian and Polish Jews are thus designated in the Transvaal. The designation seems to have been applied in the first instance to certain Jews from South America, who had failed, under Baron Hirsch's Colonization Scheme, to make a living there, and

who subsequently made their way to the goldfields of South Africa.

"Behold one of the most striking types of Johannesburg life—the *Peruvian.*" (Barry Roman in "Rand Daily Mail," 1900.)

"Peddling *Peruvian Jews* were mulcted in sums from £10 downwards . . . and compelled to contribute to the Pretorian war-chest." (Froes' "Expelled from the Randt," p. 14, 1899.)

Peterselie.—(Lat. *petroselinum,* Grk. *πετροσελινον,* rock-parsley, from *πετρος,* a rock, and *σελινον,* a kind of parsley, whence Eng. celery.) Parsley is generally known by this name among the Dutch of South Africa.

Peterselie tobacco.—A coarse native tobacco sometimes called Tambookie tobacco. The name refers to the parsley-like shape of the leaves.

Pheasant, Cape.—Both *Francolinus capensis* and *Pternistes nudicollis* are known under this name; but, as a fact, neither true pheasant nor true partridge is found in South Africa. See Red-necked pheasant.

"To the former (*Francolinus*) belong the 'Partridges' and to the latter (*Pternistes*) the *Pheasants,* numbering thirteen species all told." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 124, 1908.)

Physic nut.—The fruit of *Jatropha Curcas, L.* The oil of this nut produces violent purgative effects like those of croton oil.

Piano, Kaffir.—See Kaffir piano.

Piano, Mashona.—See Mashona piano.

Picaninny.—(Cuban, *piquinine,* little; Sp. *pequeño,* small; *nino,* a child.) Occasionally used in South Africa of native children.

"Allusions to the artist who painted on the rocks in colours once that glowed, 'creatures not more wild than he'; to mothers nursing their *picaninies* and maidens listening to lovers rude in the shifting gleams of fires whose embers have for ever gone cold; the men fashioning bows, and dipping arrows in poison from reptile, insect, and plant which simmered in a pot; and the eager feast upon a freshly killed buck after tiresome dieting upon locusts, ants' eggs, and bulbs." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 24 November, 1911.)

Pick-axe.—The slang name of a fiery mixture of Cape

smoke, pontac, and ginger-beer, in much request in the Diamond Fields in the early days.

"This done he follows the ambulating canteen . . . and cools his brow and whets his hopes in pontac and ginger-beer, *pick-axe*, or some such compound." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 125, 1873.)

Pierinki.—(Mal. *piring*, porcelain, a saucer.) The Cape Dutch name for a saucer.

Pietje canarie.—*Chrysomitris totta.* See Brown canary.

"The *Pietje* and the 'Berg' *canary* are not unlike London sparrows, but they sing with great vigour." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 222, 1870.)

Piet-myn-vrouw.—The onomatopoetic name for both *Cossypha solitarius* and *C. bicolor*. See Mocking bird. The former visits the Colony from November to Christmas. See Whip-poor-will.

"The laughing epimachus made the forest echo with its screech; interrupted occasionally by the *Piet-myn-vrouw*, a bird of which the Hottentots relate many amusing stories." (Steedman's "Wanderings," I. p. 189, 1835.)

"Its Dutch name *Piet-mijn-vrouw* is obviously bestowed upon it from its call, which sounds not unlike those words." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 266, 1889.)

"The well-known call of *Piet-mijn-vrouw* was heard in the park in the evening of 7 October." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 9 October, 1912.)

Piets.—(G. *Peitsche*, a leather whip, a scourge; Pol. *picz.*) A whip or tough switch.

Pietsnot.—A simpleton, an idiot.

Pig.—Under this name Queenstown boys eat the tuberous rootstock of *Hypoxis argentea, Harv.*

Pigeon, Cape.—See Cape pigeon.

Pig lily.—*Richardia africana.* The unpoetical name given in South Africa to this beautiful arum. It grows in the grandest profusion in the neighbourhood of Cape Town and elsewhere in the Colony, covering low-lying moist lands with its delicate cream-coloured flower. The pigs dig up and eat the roots—hence the name. See under Lily, Pig.

"By the sides of watercourses in the lower ground *Zantedeschia æthiopica*, grown in English greenhouses under the name of Arum and Lily of the Nile, was exhibiting its large white flowers abundantly. As swine are fond of its roots it

is called in this country *Pig-root.*" (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 73, 1844.)

"On the border of the stream grew thousands upon thousands of arums, *pig-lilies* as they call them in South Africa." (Haggard's "Jess," p. 48, 1887.)

Pig-weed.—*Amarantus paniculatus,* a common garden weed.

"This plant, so useful to the early Kimberleyites, was, of course, the *Pig-weed* (*Amarantus paniculatus*), ranging abundantly on the table land of South Africa and well known to almost every one who has a garden." ("Bloemfontein Post," p. 16, 31 August, 1912.)

Pijl staart.—(D. *pijl,* an arrow; Lat. *pilum,* a javelin; D. *staart,* a tail.) *Mylobatis aquila* and *Trygon pastinaca.* It will be seen that Stavorinus gives this name to a bird.

"There is one sort of it (Ray) which hath a small horny or bony sting at the end of the tail, which the Dutch in the Indies call *Pijl staart.* The Japanese believe that this sting taken from a live fish is an infallible remedy against the bite of snakes, rubbing the bitten part with it." (Kaempfer's "History of Japan," 1690-92, Reprint, I. p. 229.)

"Many birds now flew near the ship, among which were some *pijlstaarts,* or tropic birds with black wings." (Stavorinus' "Voyage," I. p. 99, 1798.)

"Mr. Duckett presented me with the tail of a *pijlstort* (arrow-tail), a fish caught in Simon's Bay. The tail itself is slender and about 14 inches in length. From the upper part of its insertion into the body, proceed two sharp bones, serrated on both sides . . . which the fish can turn in any direction, inflicting a most severe and dangerous wound on his enemy. Every tooth of this long saw acts as a barb, and if once inserted cannot be extracted without great laceration of the flesh. It attacks sharks with impunity." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 345, 1818.)

Pijpies.—The popular name of various species of *Watsonia* (*aleotrides, Ker.*). *Ixia viridifolia, Lamb,* is also known by this name. See Papies.

"*Watsonia.* One of the commonest plants we have. They are known locally as *pijpes.*" (Burton's "Cape Colony To-day," p. 250, 1906.)

Pijp-vol-tabak.—(D. "A pipe-full of tobacco".) An expression sometimes employed as the equivalent of "half an

hour". To the question, "How far is it to —?" one will sometimes get the answer, "*O een pijp voll tabak*" = "O, about half an hour".

Pik or **Pek.**—(D. *bepikken*, to pick at.) The darting of a snake in its efforts to bite.

Pikel.—(Mal. *pikul*, to carry on the back, a man's burthen.) As used in South Africa this word means to carry with difficulty.

Pilawit.—The Albany name of *Andropadus importunus*. See Busch-vogel.

"Near Grahamstown . . . it is known as the *Pilawit*." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 100, 1908.)

Pinang.—(Mal. *pinang*, the areca nut or areca tree.) In the Cape Colony this word is used of a fish curry.

"Another nice way of cooking fish is what we call *penang*, a species of fish curry, which takes about half an hour to do." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 66, 1902.)

Pinang bosje.—(D. *bos*, a bush.) Another name for the Kinabosje (q.v.).

Pinang frikadel.—Curried minced meat.

Pinang vleesch.—(D. *vleesch*, flesh, meat.) Curried meat.

Pinch out, To.—A phrase applied by miners to the gradual working out of gold-bearing reefs, etc.

"The gold reefs in the Mazoe valley *pinched out* and did other disagreeable things." (Bent's "Ruined Cities of Mashonaland," p. 294, 1893.)

"The reefs either *pinching out* to nothing at a depth of from 25 to 50 feet, or degenerating into quartz containing little gold." (Churchill's "Men, Mines, and Animals," p. 234, 1895.)

Pincushion cactus.—The not inappropriate name given in the neighbourhood of Queenstown to a plant which is not a cactus; in shape and appearance it is much like an overgrown pincushion: *Euphorbia pulvinata, Marloth.*

Pinoti bosje.—(Mal. *piniti*; Port. *alpinete*, a pin.) *Xanthium spinosum* (q.v.). The name has reference to its pin-like thorns. See Boete-bossi.

Pink pinkje.—*Drymoica testrix.* Onomatopoetic name derived from the metallic cry of the bird.

"The obtrusive *pink pinkje* was there." ("Scientific African," p. 76, 1896.)

Pintado.—(Sp. *pintado,* the guinea or speckled fowl.) A name occasionally given to the guinea-fowl. See Tarantall.

"The groves about this place were much frequented by the birds called Guinea-fowls or *pintadoes.*" (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 281, 1824.)

"The wild guinea-fowl, commonly called by the colonists the *Pintado* . . . was another of our game birds." (Andersson's "Notes of Travel," p. 36, 1875.)

Pipe fish.—*Syngnathus acus.* A long snake-like fish found in the rivers.

"The *pipe fish* . . . produces its young alive." ("East London Dispatch," 18 June, 1906.)

Pipe, The.—It is generally supposed by geologists that the Kimberley Diamond Mine is the funnel of an extinct volcano; this funnel is known as the "pipe," within which the diamond bearing "blue-ground" is found.

"The strata . . . where cut through by the vertical *pipe* have their edges turned sharply upwards." (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 194, 1886.)

"I . . . believe that like the Kimberley *pipe*—as the diggers call it—the diamondiferous earth had been shot upwards funnel-wise from below." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 201, 1889.)

Pipes, Flogging by.—An inhuman practice existing among the Dutch of the Cape Colony in the old slave days, sufficiently explained in the quotation. So barbarous a method of punishment could only have been practised occasionally, and then by those far resident from the officers of justice, and so beyond proper and effective supervision.

"In offences of too small moment to stir up the phlegm of a Dutch peasant, the coolness and tranquillity displayed at the punishment of his slave or Hottentot is highly ridiculous, and at the same time indicative of a savage disposition to cruelty lurking in his heart. He flogs them not by any given number of lashes, but by time, and as they have no clocks . . . he has invented an excuse for the indulgence of one of his most favourite sensualities, by flogging them till he has smoked so many pipes of tobacco as he may judge the magnitude of the crime deserves. The Government of Malacca . . . has adopted the same custom of *flogging by pipes,* and the fiscal or chief magistrate or some of his deputies are the

smokers on such occasions." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 145, 1801.)

Piquetberg.—(F. *piquet*, a stake, peg; the sense of "outpost," which the English word has, is secondary, and comes from the picketing of the horses, i.e. fastening them to pegs.) This mountain, situated in the north-west of the Colony, is said to have been thus named from the fact that in the early days of the Colony a picket was posted there to keep the authorities informed of trouble or unrest among the Hottentots. Wangemann's derivation must be taken for what it is worth.

"I dispatched my wagon on the 15th towards the *Piquet Berg*, and, together with my companions, passed the day in this place." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 75, 1789.)

"Der Name *Piketberg* . . . kommt daher, dass eine Gesellschaft Weisser dort einmal bei irgend einer Gelegenheit eine Partie Piquet gespielt hat." (Wangemann's "Eine Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 46, 1868.)

Pisang.—(Mal. *pisang*, the cultivated banana or plantain.) *Musa paradisaica* and *M. sapientum.* This word is not so common in South Africa as it seems to have been at one time, though it is still in use among the Dutch.

"They call in their language the cow Calambe, the plantane *Pison.*" ("Hakluyt" (MacLehose's Ed.), VI. p. 400, Lancaster's "Voyage," 1591.)

"The *pisang* was to be met with in his garden of a magnificent growth." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 78, 1785.)

"Two days without food in the Pungwe, subsisting on *Pisangs* (bananas)." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 184, 1897.)

Pisgoed.—*Euphorbia Genistoides, Linn.* So called because when eaten by castrated animals it produces severe urethritis, which unless treated in its early stages results in death.

Pistol bush.—*Adhatoda Duvernoia*, so called in the neighbourhood of King William's Town from the noise made by its bursting capsules.

Pitched out.—A variation of "Pinched out" (q.v.).

"They were surprised on arriving there to find the reef *pitched out*, i.e. run to its end." (De Waal's "With Rhodes in Mashonaland," p. 237, 1896.)

Pit.—(D. *pit*, a kernel, pip.) This word is in common use in South Africa as a name for the stones of fruit. It is

used with the same meaning in New York, and is a remnant there of the old Dutch occupation.

Piti.—See Ipiti.

Pitjes.—(D. dim. of *pit*, a kernel, pip.) Small kernels or pips.

Pitjies.—(M. *pitis ;* Java, *pichis*, small coin, money. "It was the ancient coin of Java, and also the only one of the Malays when first seen by the Portuguese," Crawford.) Used colloquially for money—*De pitjies zijn schaars*—money is scarce.

> Oom Jannie sal ons peetoom maak
> Want anders is de Ou geraak
> Syn *pitjies* in gevaar.
>
> (Reitz's "Afrikaanse Gedigte," p. 53, 1897.)

Pi-tjou-tjou.—The onomatopoetic name of a bird of the titmouse species.

Pitso.—(Sesuto, *pitso*, call, assembly, gathering ; Sechuana, *piicho*, an assembly, a council.) The public deliberative gatherings of the Chiefs or Councillors of the Basutos are thus named.

"The other chief said they should come to the *peetso* all well powdered." (Campbell's "Travels," I. p. 264, 1822.)

"The *piicho* or assembly remained sitting in easy conversation for nearly an hour longer." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 408, 1824.)

"All great questions, and all questions relating to peace or war, are decided on in public assemblies which are designated in their language by the name of *Peetshoe.*" (Philip's "Researches," II. p. 132, 1828.)

"The annual *Pitso* was held at Maseru on the 19th instant, about 10,000 being present." ("Queenstown Free Press," Sup., 28 October, 1879.)

Plamploet.—The name given to a variety of frog.

Plandockje.—A variety of frog.

Platanna or **Plattie.**—(Apparently a corruption of *plathander*, flat-handed.) The name given to a variety of frog—*Xenopus lævis*—having a flat back, free fingers, and webbed toes.

"It's a *platana*, one of them web-footed, flat-backed, smooth-skinned, yeller frogs, with a mouth that goes all round its neck." (Glanville's "Kloof Yarns," "The Empire," 24 September, 1898.)

"It is not certain that when driven by hunger the *plattie* does not revert to cannibalism." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 23 October, 1908.)

"The . . . *Plathander* (flat hand) or Clawed toad, *Xenopus lævis,* which occurs in most pools of water. . . . The *Plathander* seldom leaves the water, and may be most easily procured by a drag-net." (Gilchrist's "South African Zoology," p. 224, 1911.)

Platdoorn.—(D. *plat,* flat; *doorn,* a thorn.) *Arctopus echinatus, L.* This plant is also known among the Dutch as Ziekte troest (q.v.); a decoction is made from the root and used for all kinds of cutaneous eruptions.

"The *plat doorn* (*Arctopus echinatus, Lin.*) has long been known to some of the surgeons of the Colony." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 233, 1835.)

Plate-glass diamond.—This is the designation on the Diamond Fields of a real diamond of a very brittle character, which in colour and appearance is like a crystal of glass.

"Strange as it may appear a diamond is not in reality a homogeneous substance, but is laminated, or in layers. In some diamonds these layers can be easily separated, especially so in the so-called 'plate-glass' ones. . . . These *plate-glass diamonds* are very white and peculiarly clear ones, having in reality more the appearance of crystals of glass than of diamonds." (Lacy's "Pictures of Travel, etc.," p. 164, 1899.)

Plattekop.—(D. *plat,* flat; *kop,* a head.) *Clarias Gariepensis.* See Catfish.

"It has a smooth and scaleless slimy skin . . . and a huge, flat, bony head, from which the Boers give this fish the name of *Platte-kop,* or plate-head." (Bryden's "Animals of Africa," p. 197, 1900.)

Platte peters.—See Boerboontjes.

Plezierig.—(F. *plaisir,* pleasure, delight; L. *placere.*) An idiomatic expression in Cape Dutch equivalent to the English "good-bye".

Plover, Horse-shoe.—*Charadrius tricollaris.* The name refers to the marking on the bird's neck. The bird has an interesting method of securing its food; a variety of beetles and other insects harbour beneath the pats of cow-dung hardened by the sun, the bird jumps upon these pats and continues jumping till the disturbed insects try to escape, when it secures them.

Pluimvee.—(D. *pluim*, a plume, feather; *vee*, cattle.) Poultry.

"So behandeld, is dit gen wonder dat ons di uitroep hoor: '*Pluimvee* betaal ni'." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 178, 1898.)

Plumbago.—*Plumbago capensis.* There are two Cape varieties of the leadwort, the flower of the more common of which is a very delicate blue. The other, nearly white, is *P. zeylanica, Linn.*

Pocket, A.—The holes in the bed-rock, which have been filled by particles of gold, are known as "pockets".

"The South African diamond fields were henceforth established, but of such *pockets* as Dutoitspan and New Rush none yet had any inkling." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 86, 1873.)

"Fossicking with various success, at times earning only his 'tucker,' at others rising to comparative wealth on the discovery of a rich *pocket*." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 248, 1891.)

Poelepetaat or **Poelepetater.**—(F. *poule*, a hen; *pintade*; Sp. *pintado*, a guinea-fowl.) A name sometimes given by the Dutch to the guinea-fowl. See Tarantall.

"It is rather interesting to note that there are two names for the guinea-fowl living side by side, *Poulepetate* and 'Tarentaal,' apparently of Indian origin." ("Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Poeskop.—See Koeskop.

"Of all things mind cow elephants without tusks; they are not common, but if you do come across a *poeskop* like this, 'pas-op' (take care)." (Drayson's "Sporting Scenes," p. 151, 1858.)

"Poeskop, een groote zeevisch; ook een rund zonder horens. Gew. hoort men ook: *poens-*, koens-, en koes-*kop*." (Mansvelt's "Idioticon," *in loc.*, 1884.)

Poffertjes.—(F. *pouf*, *pouffer*, to blow up; Eng. *puff*, anything swollen and light, as puff-pastry, powder-puff.) Light spongy cakes, cooked in fat and coated with crushed or powdered sugar.

"*Poffertjes* is an old Dutch pudding recipe worth preserving." (Hilda's "Where is it? of Recipes," p. 196, 1904.)

Poison root.—See Gift-bol.

Poker plant.—The name sometimes given to the bulrush.

"Having a finger cut by the leaf of one (sedge) which we had started to dig up as a *poker plant*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Pokkies.—The Cape Dutch name for the small-pox.

"The Boers are of course withheld from coming from a fear of the *Pokkies*, the virulency of which is greatly exaggerated." ("The Queenstown Free Press," 19 October, 1859.)

"They cried out, 'But we are doctors come to vaccinate you and prevent you from getting the *pokkies*'." (Justice Cole's "Reminiscences," p. 26, 1896.)

Pompelmoosje.—*Stromatus microchirus*. One of the edible fishes of the Cape waters, so called from some fancied resemblance, probably, to the Pampelmoose (q.v.).

Pondok.—(Mal. *pondók*, a stage house, a leaf shelter, an encampment. The suggestion which Mansvelt makes, that the word is a corruption of the East Indian *pandoppo, een soort van open hut*, is scarcely necessary, it having been in all probability introduced directly by the Malays. Latrobe —see quotation—gives the word a distinctly Dutch appearance; he was obviously feeling for a meaning.) In the Dutch of South Africa this word is applied to a mean or shabby hut.

"The present dwelling put up in the place of the house burnt by those ferocious invaders (the Caffres), is a hovel, not much better than a Hottentot's *bondhoek*." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 218, 1818.)

"Their dwelling comprises two separate buildings—one a mere *pondok*, which served as a kitchen." (Noble's "The Cape and its People," p. 50, 1869.)

"While the majority of the Boers have grown rich in the corruption in Pretoria, the poor burghers are living in *pandokkies* on the outskirts of the town." ("Eastern Province Herald," 4 November, 1899.)

"In the morning we found that a dozen or more Hottentots had pitched their *pondhoeks* close to the wagon." ("The State," p. 612, December, 1911.)

Pont.—(D. *pont*, a ferry-boat.) The name given to a sort of moving bridge running upon ropes or chains, by which wagons, cattle, etc., are transported from one side of a river to the other.

"Means for crossing the river when too deep to be forded have been provided by building a *Pont* (ferry-boat) at a place

a little farther up the stream." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 140, 1822.)

Pontac.—(The name of the town in the South of France, whence the vines appear to have been originally brought.) A dark, dry wine of good medicinal qualities, and when properly matured, nearly equal to the best European port.

"Of the dark grapes the *Pontac* is the most valuable. With careful manipulation it will give a very fine dark wine which equals the Bordeaux." (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 276, 1886.)

"Here there was a commissariat store, and the officers in charge . . . gave me half a loaf and some *Pontac* wine." (Fenn's "How I Volunteered for the Cape," p. 100, 1879.)

Pontman.—The official who is responsible for the working of the "Pont" (q.v.).

"We stopped at the house of the ferry-man, or *pontman* as he is here termed." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 128, 1814.)

Poop.—(Zulu, *im Pupa*, meal, fine flour.) Mealie meal porridge is generally known by this name among the natives of Natal.

"In about an hour a man came . . . and shoved in another of those wooden bowls containing mealie *poop*." (Russell's "Under the Sjambok," p. 176, 1899.)

Poor.—This word is in common use in South Africa with the meaning "thin" or "in poor condition"; it seems to be a survival of the use of the word in various English dialects, as applied to live stock.

"When Oom Jacob went away he left six oxen that were too *poor* (thin) to go." (Haggard's "Jess," p. 85, 1887.)

Poor man's weather-glass.—*Anagallis arvensis.* One form has pink flowers, the other blue, the latter is much more frequently met with. The pimpernel.

"The *Poor man's weather-glass* (*Anagallis*) and *Hypoxis*, split round the centre of the ovary so that the upper half falls off." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 143, 1906.)

Poort.—(D. *poort*, gate, gateway; Lat. *porta*, a gate, entrance, outlet, passage. Cf. the official designation of the Turkish Government—the Sublime *Porte*, which Wedgewood says is a perverted French translation of Babi Ali, lit. "the

high gate," the chief office of the Ottoman Government.) A narrow pass between precipitous hills or mountains.

"The *poort* may be considered as the entrance into Camdeboo." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 109, 1801.)

"A pass, or as the Dutch call it, a *Poort*." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 142, 1897.)

Poor whites.—A class of Boer farmer, whose want of thrift and industry has reduced them to poverty and to a style of living by no means conducive to either health or morality.

"The *poor white* and the loafer, though perhaps both incurable, are, unlike the poet, made, not born; they are the direct result of the circumstances under which they exist." ("Report S.A.A.A. Science," p. 484, 1907.)

Pooties.—(Kaf. *i Puti*, the small bluebuck.) *Cephalopus monticola.*

"I was after *pooties* at the time, and got a rare fright and made tracks for my father's camp." ("East London Dispatch," p. 9, 4 October, 1912.)

Pootje slang.—(D. *poot*, a foot; *slang*, a snake.) A species of *Zonuridæ* (*Chamæsaura*) with a body 18 to 20 inches long, much like a snake, but having small undeveloped legs. They bask on the top of the long grass and are very quick in their movements. They are fairly common in Natal, but the one mentioned in the quotation from Anderson was exceptionally long.

"The natives mention a very singular little snake, about 7 or 8 inches long, possessing four distinct legs, each provided with toes and nails like a lizard." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 300, 1856.)

"At this outspan I killed a yellow snake, three feet in length, with four legs. I heard there were such in Natal, but this is the first I have seen." (Anderson's "Twenty-five Years in a Waggon," I. p. 38, 1887.)

Popple-viet.—An onomatopoetic name applied in the Transvaal to *Pycnonotus layardi*. See Tiptol.

"Known to the colonists as 'Tiptol,' and to the natives as 'Kwebula'. Both of these names, as well as the Transvaal name of *Popple-viet*, are attempts to produce the bird's song." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 9 August, 1912.)

Porcupine fish.—See Zee vark and Globe fish.

Porkwood.—*Kiggelaria africana, Linn.*, the wood of which is soft and spongy.

Portefisie deur.—(F. *porte*, door, gate; L. *porta*, a gate;

F. *briser*, to split, fold up.) The half-doors of old farm-houses : the folding doors used to divide room from room.

Note how the sense of F. *porte* having been lost, it has been supplied again by the D. *deur*, a door.

Port Natal.—The name by which the Port of Durban was known in the earlier days of the Colony, and by which it is still known to mariners.

" *Port Natal* is to Durban what Port Philip is to Melbourne, that is to say, there is no such place as either Port Philip or Port Natal, these being only names applied to the towns of Melbourne and Durban considered as ports." (Colenso's "Ten Weeks in Natal," p. 8 n., 1855.)

Portuguese man-o'-war.—Different species of *Velella, Physalia* and *Perpita* have received this designation. They are far from pleasant company when bathing.

" *Portuguese men-o'-war* with their fairy sails above, and treacherous feelers below." (Roche's " On Trek in the Transvaal," p. 8, 1878.)

Posteleintjes.—(D. *postelein*, porcelain, china.) Broken pieces of porcelain or earthenware, with which the children often amuse themselves.

Post-horns.—Curiously shaped shells found in certain localities in great numbers; they are similar in structure, though very much smaller, to the shell of the nautilus. The living animal, which is very much like the cuttle-fish, is rarely met with.

Potatoes, sweet.—See Batatas. *Batatas edulis, Choisy.*

" This is also super-eminently the region of the *sweet potato.*" (Mann's " Natal," p. 100, 1859.)

Potatoes, round.—*Solanum tuberosum*, the ordinary potato is often spoken of as the " round " potato, to distinguish it from the " sweet " potato.

" The Irish or *round potato* . . . became plentiful after the first year of our settlement." (Russell's " Old Durban," p. 95, 1899.)

Potbrood.—(D. *brood*, bread.) Bread baked in a pot.

Potclay.—A South African abbreviation of " potter's clay ". Many of the natives of various tribes are adepts at making earthenware pots. Cetywayo's Tywala pots would hold several gallons, and being made entirely by hand were really clever productions.

" Their (the Bachapins) manufacture of earthen pots is

not despicable; they answer their purpose completely, and are neither clumsy nor ill-shapen." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 594, 1824.)

"Een droge grond was te verkiezen boven zware *potklei*, en moerassige grond was ongeschikt." ("De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 210, 1882.)

Potlegs.—The pots used by the natives for cooking purposes are of cast iron, and stand upon three long thin legs. It was no uncommon thing in the earlier Kaffir wars for the natives to break these legs into pieces of a suitable size to use in their muzzle-loaders as bullets; the character of the wounds inflicted by these projectiles can be imagined; fortunately the native has never distinguished himself as a marksman.

"A fine old soldier of my regiment rushed at one spot with only three or four men and got amongst a lot of them before they could re-load, for they used powder-horns in those days and long junks of lead, or the *legs* of iron *pots*, and thus took a long time to load." (Moodie's "Battles in Southern Africa," II. p. 27, 1888.)

"One of these marksmen we have nicknamed old *Potlegs* from the nature of the missile (the iron legs of Kaffir cooking pots) with which he treats us." (Baden Powell's "Matabele-land Campaign, 1896," p. 156, 1897.)

Pot River.—A tributary of the Tsitsa River, Griqualand East, so called because of the pot-like holes, large and small, which have been formed in the rocks on its bed.

The deepest *pot* in a' the linn
They fand Erl Richard in.

(Scott's "Minstrelsy of the Scottish Border," II. p. 188, 1861.)

Potted.—A slang term meaning "shot".

"All the principal officers were *potted* by the first volley before they knew they were being fired at." (Hobson's "At Home in the Transvaal," p. 316, 1884.)

Pound master.—The official whose duty it is to attend to the affairs of the Pound or Schut (q.v.).

"Pound Sale. Whittlesea, April 20, 1859. 1 Schimmel horse; 1 Bay horse; 1 do. do.; no marks. J. Thompson, *Pound master.*" ("The Queenstown Free Press," 16 March, 1859.)

Pram.—A somewhat vulgar word for a woman's breast.

Prambergen.—Mountains shaped like a woman's breast.

"The mountains of the Karreebergen . . . among them

one in the form of a depressed cone surmounted with an additional summit, was distinguished by the name of *Pramberg*." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 300, 1822.)

Prambosch.—(D. *praam*, a woman's breast.) See Paardepram.

Prairie-pig.—In the north of Natal in the earlier days the Wart-hog (q.v.) was known by this name.

"The animal which is known in the Natal uplands as the *prairie-pig*, is properly the African wart-hog." (Brooks' "Natal," p. 115, 1876.)

Praying-insect.—The *Mantis* (q.v.) is so called from the peculiar position in which it holds its front legs.

"The lights in our tents at night attracted the strange looking '*Mantis religiosa*' or *praying insect*." (King's "Campaigning in Kaffirland," p. 308, 1855.)

"Looking at my feet one day, I saw a large specimen of the *Praying mantis*, vulgarly called the 'Kaffir god'." (Tangye's "In New South Africa," p. 269, 1896.)

Predikant.—(Lat. *prædicare*, to publish, proclaim.) The usual title given to a clergyman among the Dutch.

"The *predicant*, who had unfortunately lent himself to the oppressions of the Company, now plied them with religious advice." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," III. p. 37, 1833.)

Prehnite.—A mineral of a greenish grey colour; it was discovered in South Africa by a traveller named Prehn, by whom it was taken to Europe, and after whom it was named.

"In a large block of stone, I found a very fine *prehnite*, which perhaps had only come there by chance, since the people of the country seemed wholly unacquainted with this sort of stone." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 180, 1814.)

Pretty bird.—A name given by the sealers to *Thalassogeron chlororhynchus*.

Prickly heat.—*Lichen tropicus.* A cutaneous rash, the pricking itch of which is almost unendurable. It is prevalent in Natal and the Eastern Province during the intense heat of the summer.

Prickly pear.—*Opuntia tuna.* This cactus, from the fact that any detached part of it will take root, and also that its seeds are carried everywhere by the birds, is giving South African farmers a deal of trouble. It seems to be almost the only imported plant that is capable of making headway among the indigenous growths of the soil.

"The *Prickly Pear* bush or shrub, of about 4 or 5 feet high . . . the fruit at first is green like the leaf . . . it is very pleasant in taste, cooling and refreshing." (Dampier's "Voyages," I. p. 223, 1729.)

"The *prickly pear*, *Opuntia tuna*, has become one of the curses of large areas of grazing land." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 88, 1896.)

Pride of de Kaap.—*Bauhinia Galpini, N.E.Br.* A scrambling leguminous bush or climber, bearing a profusion of scarlet flowers, very common in the Kaap valley, Barberton, is known by this name.

Pride of India or **of China.**—A designation sometimes given to the Seringa (q.v.). See Indian pride also for another application of this name.

"*M. Azedarach, Linn.*, the 'Cape lilac,' or *Pride of China*, is cultivated throughout the Colony, and partly naturalized." (Harvey's "The Genera of South African Plants," p. 49, 1868.)

"We camped close by the river; we drew our wagon and pitched our tent beneath a lane of 'sering' trees (*Pride of India*) just then in full blossom." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 102, 1897.)

Pride of Table Mountain.—The local name of the exquisite *Disa uniflora* (usually called *grandiflora*). This is one of the most beautiful of the cool growing orchids, and is sometimes called "the flower of the gods".

"Singly or in masses, the *Pride of Table Mountain* fondly named so by Capeites, is a magnificent representative of Flora, and many are the pilgrimages made to her shrine on the top of the mountain during the flowering season." (Noble's "The Cape and its People," p. 261, 1869.)

"The colour of the side sepals is a brilliant carmine, the remaining parts blush-coloured, with delicate carmine veins on the inside of the back sepal, and bright orange tints on the upper parts of the petals. . . . This beautiful flower is the object of universal admiration, and the name which has been given to it, the *Pride of Table Mountain*, indicates the honour in which it is held. It is indeed the queen of terrestrial orchids in the Southern Hemisphere." (H. Bolus, D.Sc., F.L.S., "Orchids of the Cape Peninsula," p. 147, 1888.)

Priests.—*Haliætus vocifer.* The East London name for these birds.

"The sea eagles, locally known as *priests* because of their black and white plumage, are birds I like to see." ("East London Dispatch," 4 August, 1906.)

Proef preek.—(D. *proef*, trial, test; *preeken* to preach.) A trial sermon preached by a candidate for the ministry in the Dutch Reformed Church.

"The *Proef preek* is a great event. Every theological student is required by the law of the Dutch Reformed Church, to preach two trial sermons, one in English and one in Dutch, in the large Dutch Church, before the termination of his last year." (Mackinnon's "South African Traits," p. 49, 1887.)

Pronk bok.—(D. *pronken*, to make a parade, to show off.) Another name for the Spring-bok (q.v.). The reference is to the peculiar bounds which this antelope is in the habit of making, during which it displays the ridge of perfectly white, curiously scented hair which runs from the withers to the tail. When making these bounds, *pronken*, this white hair, which at other times is well-nigh hidden, is made to look like a large plume laid along the back.

"The animals became disturbed, and began those extraordinary saltatory accomplishments (*pronken* the Boers term them) from which they take their name." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 226, 1889.)

Prospect, To.—To search for deposits of precious stones or metals.

"The only method of *prospecting* is to dig holes and see what comes of it." (Boyle's "The Savage Life," p. 17, 1876.)

Prospector.—One engaged in the above search.

"Thus not long ago a *prospector* had been murdered by the Mashonas." (Balfour's "Twelve Hundred Miles in a Waggon," p. 182, 1895.)

Pruimbast.—(D. *pruim*, a prune, plum; *bast*, bark.) *Colpoon compressum*, the berries of which may be dried like currants. See Bergbast and Cape sumach.

"A tariff of 1/- per 100 lb. was put on *Pruimbast* and some other barks at Cedarberg some years ago." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 304, 1907.)

Pruimbesjes.—(D. *pruim*, a prune, plum; *bes*, a berry.) A palatable wild fruit growing on small trees or bushes along the lower slopes of the mountains in the Camdeboo and elsewhere in the Karoo.

"In search of *pruimbesjes* we made many delightful excur-

sions on horseback to the foot of the mountains." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 230, 1890.)

Pruimpje.—(D. *pruim,* a quid of tobacco; cf. the German sailor's *Prüntje,* a quid.) A small quantity of tobacco for either chewing or smoking.

"Even the Sunday school teachers. . . had complained that there were so many quids (*pruimpjes*) and so much tobacco spittle on the floor that they got quite a turn in their stomachs." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 329, 1889.)

Puff-adder.—*Bitis arietans.* A sluggish reptile "with flat head, puffy neck, and a short thick body, beautifully marked in black and yellow". The name refers to the blowing noise it makes when disturbed. It is justly feared on account of the generally fatal character of its bite.

"The *Puff-adder,* which has its name from blowing itself up to near a foot in circumference, is of a greyish colour, and about three feet and a half in length; it is considerably thicker than any I ever saw in that country; its head is large and flat; the poison-teeth about an inch long, and hooked. The *Puff-adder* is extremely dangerous to cattle." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 164, 1789.)

"He proved to be a *pof-adder* as we believed, one of the most poisonous species that are found in this country." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," I. p. 35, 1812.)

"To sit down upon a *puff-adder* is to sit down for the last time." (Drummond's "Tropical Africa," p. 166, 1888.)

"The most common South African member of this family (*Viperidæ*) is undoubtedly the *Puff-adder* (*Bitis arietans*), an ugly brute of yellowish and orange-brown, with regular chevron shaped dark markings on the back; it seldom reaches a length of more than four feet, but is of very stout girth." ("Science in South Africa," p. 148, 1905.)

Puku.—*Cobus vardoni.* First discovered by Livingstone on the upper Zambezi.

"Here I saw a small herd of *pookoo* antelopes, and after a long stalk got within shot of them, and broke the shoulder of the ram whose head I coveted." (Selous' "Travel and Adventure," p. 259, 1893.)

Punteneurig.—(A corruption of F. *Point d'honneur.*) Thin-skinned, touchy.

"Porte Brissee, the half-doors of old Dutch houses, *Punteneríg,* Fr. *Point d'honneur,* which some have thought

of Huguenot origin, are to be found in use in certain localities in Holland." ("Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Pyp-klip.—(D. *pijp*, a pipe, tube; *klip*, a rock.) A soft greenish grey rock found in Namaqualand, from which the Namaquas make pipe-bowls, etc.

"The Dutch colonists. . . form the bowls of their pipes of it, and have therefore given it the name of *pyp-klip* (pipe-stone)." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 526, 1824.)

Python or **Natal Rock Snake.**—*Python sebæ.* This member of the *Boidæ* is fairly common in Natal and Zululand and in the low country of the Transvaal and Rhodesia.

"The largest and most formidable was the *Python* or boa constrictor of Natal." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 399, 1856.)

"Snakes are very numerous and of many kinds. The largest is the handsome *python* or *Natal rock-snake* (*Hortulia Natalensis*), sometimes over 20 feet long, and common on the coast." (Russell's "Natal," p. 37, 1899.)

Qonce or **Iqonce.**—The native name for the Buffalo River, and also for King William's Town built on its banks.

Quagga.—*Equus quagga, Gm.* The name is onomatopoetic, imitating the peculiar cry of the animal. These animals, which, a few years ago, grazed in enormous numbers on the plains of the Karoo and in the Orange Free State, have now entirely disappeared therefrom.

"The *Quacha* is striped like the former (Zebra) on the head and body, but with fewer lines. The flanks spotted; the rump plain; the ground colour of the head, neck, body and rump, a bright bay; the belly, thighs and legs white, and free from all marks. This species has hitherto been supposed to have been the female of the zebra; but later observations prove that the male and female zebra are marked alike. This differs likewise in being thicker and stronger made, and in being more tractable; for instance, one had been so far broken as to draw in a cart." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 17, 1789.)

"The *Quagga* is so named onomatopoetically, the word being an imitation of the peculiar bark of the animal, sounding like *ouog-ga*, the last syllable being very much prolonged." ("Scientific African," p. 72, 1896.)

Quagga quick.—(D. *kweek*, dogs' grass; cf. Eng. *quick-grass.*) The name given to a species of grass that springs up in the Karoo veld after heavy rains.

Queen.—(D. *kween*, a barren cow.) The term applied by hunters to barren female elephants.

"Old cows and especially *queens* (barren females) will be found more difficult to deal with than the bulls." (Nicoll and Eglinton's "Sportsman in South Africa," p. 61, 1892.)

Queen moth.—*Argema mimosæ.* This beautiful Natal moth is of a light yellow-green colour and attains to a good size. Each of the four wings is "eyed"; the underwings are produced at the extremities into tails two or more inches in length and edged on both borders with a narrow orange-coloured band. The popular name is by no means inappropriate.

"The handsome *Queen moth* of Natal (*Argema mimosæ*) a beautiful sea-green insect whose wings measure when spread out more than 5 inches from tip to tip. . . . The silken cocoons which they spin are familiar to all visitors to Natal in the shape of the rattling anklets worn by the 'ricksha boys,' who gather the cocoons after the moths have emerged, place a few pebbles in them and close the holes by first moistening and then twisting up the loosened strands." ("Natal Official Railway Guide," p. 246, 1903.)

Quick grass.—Two different grasses are known by this name, viz. *Cynodon dactylon* (in Bechuanaland *C. incompletus*, also), which is commonly known as "Fine quick grass," and *Stenotaphrum caffrum*, which is known as "Coarse quick grass". The former is the first grass to show green after rains in the spring, hence the name.

"This idea" (that lamziekte is due to eating wilted grass) "seems to have originated among the Batlapings, some of whom associate the disease with the fine quick grass (*Cynodon incompletus*)." ("S.A. Agric. Journ.," p. 173, August, 1912.)

Quick stertje or **Quicky.**—(D. *kwikstaart*, a wagtail; the first syllable means "lively, full of motion," and is etymologically connected with both Eng. quick, alive; and quake, to tremble.) *Motacilla capensis.* These friendly little wagtails are regarded everywhere with special favour; the Dutch in the neighbourhood of Graaff Reinet sometimes speak of them as "God's kinder," and caution the children against harming them. See Wagtail.

"The little Cape wagtail or *Quickstertje* (*Motacilla capensis*) one of the tamest and most familiar birds in South Africa." ("Science in South Africa," p. 139, 1905.)

"On the bank are seen a pair of those confiding little birds the *quicky* of the Colonial, or the Cape wagtail." ("The African Monthly," IV. p. 270, 1909.)

Quinine berry.—The Transvaal name of the fruit of *Cephalanthus natalensis, Oliv.*

Quinine tree.—*Rauwolfia natalensis.* So called because it is supposed to have medicinal qualities similar to those of quinine.

"Fairly exhaustive tests were applied to needle-shaped crystals which were found to constitute one-fifth per cent of the bark of the 'Umjela' or *Quinine tree* (*Tabernæmontana ventricosa, Hochst.*). (?) The tree attains a height of 50 feet in the Transkeian forests, with a diameter of 4 feet." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journ.," p. 500, October, 1905.)

Raad, The.—(D. *raad,* a council, senate.) (1) A council. (2) The Parliaments of the Transvaal Republic and the Orange Free State were so called; the buildings in which they respectively met were known as the Raadzaal.

"Meantime, Mr. Orpen took umbrage at the Commissioners and at Kok, and his *Raad.*" (Dower's "Early Annals of Kokstad," p. 71, 1902.)

Raak.—(D. *raken,* to hit, touch.) This word, sometimes corrupted into "rock," is in common use in the Midland Districts, in such expressions as: "That's *rak,*" i.e. "That is a hit," when a missile, such as a bullet or stone, has hit the object aimed at.

Raap uyntjes.—(D. *raap,* a turnip; *ajuin,* onion.) An edible bulb, having the flavour and appearance of the turnip, is so named in Namaqualand.

Rabbedoe or **Robbedoe.**—A tomboy, careless person.

Rabbit fish.—*Callorhynchus antarcticus.* This fish is known by this name at East London, because of its rabbit-like mouth. See Elephant fish and Joseph.

"Another curious fish on exhibit . . . is the so-called *rabbit-fish,* so named on account of its rabbit-like mouth." ("East London Dispatch," 24 June, 1905.)

Ragwort.—Several species of *Senecio* (*S. latifolia,* etc.) are thus named in the Eastern Province; they are credited with giving horses the disease known as "Stomach staggers". See Molteno disease.

"The disease which is met with in this district is due to the animals consuming the plant known as *Ragwort*

(*Senecio Jacobea*)." ("The Territorial News," 24 December, 1910.)

Raid, The.—The armed invasion of the Transvaal Republic by the troops of the Chartered Company, under Dr. Jameson, on 29 December, 1895, is known throughout South Africa as "The Raid".

Rain-bird.—A bird of the *Centropodinæ* (*Cuculidæ, sub. fam.*) is so styled in the Eastern Province—*Centropus Burchelli.* See Vlei lory.

"But of all the notes to be heard during a day at the Nahoon, I fancy those of the *rain-bird* (one of our resident cuckoos) are the most strange." ("East London Dispatch," 4 August, 1906.)

Rain-bird.—In the Native Territories the Turkey buzzard—*Bucorax cafer*—is so named by the colonists, because in times of drought the natives try to drive these birds into the water to drown them, thinking thus to secure rain—the superstition being that while the body of the bird remains in the water the rain will continue. Incessant rain means that one or more of these drowned birds has been overlooked and must be sought for and withdrawn from the water.

Rain maker.—A Witch doctor (q.v.) among the Kaffirs who has added to his other accomplishments the special function of bringing the rain; he is known as Umnini wemvula—"master of the rain".

Ramasammy.—(A corruption of *Ramaswāmi,* "Lord Rama".) In Natal and the Cape this word is used as a generic name for Indian coolies.

Ramenas.—(D. *ramenas,* the black radish.) *Raphanus Raphanistrum*—Wild mustard is known by this name in the Western Province.

"Charlock, wild mustard, or *romines, Sinapis arvensis, L.*, is a widely prevalent weed of the corn-fields of Cape Colony." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 117, 1896.)

Ramki.—A primitive stringed instrument used by the Bushmen and Hottentots.

"The *ramkee* is constructed on the same principle as the guitar by stretching six strings along a flat piece of thin board, with the half of a gourd or 'calabash' at one end, over which a piece of dried string is strained, on which the bridge is placed." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. 226, 1835.)

Rand.—(D. *rand*, edge, brink.) (1) The bridge or high ground overlooking the valley of a river, as the Fish River Rand, etc. (2) When used absolutely the word refers to the well-known gold fields along the Witwatersrand in the Transvaal.

"A few minutes more and he stood at the top of the *randt* for a brief blow after his exertions." (Mitford's "Romance of the Cape Frontier," p. 23, 1891.)

"When will . . . publish the correspondence *re* the . . . dispute? Has it not already appeared in the *Rand* papers?" ("Cape Register," 13 November, 1897.)

Rapuis bosje or **Rapuis.**—See Harpuis bosje.

"Mr. Moffatt (Tarka) brought up the question of the noxious *rapuis* which had hitherto baffled their efforts." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 22 August, 1912.)

Ratel.—*Mellivora ratel.* See Cape badger.

"From its size, peculiar rattling cry, and general appearance, I at first thought it was a *ratel*, which is now well known to naturalists." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," II. p. 190, 1835.)

"Once on this farm a Hottentot caught the *ratels* . . . with the broken ends of porcupine quills still in their face and jaws." ("East London Dispatch," 16 August, 1907.)

Raw Englishman.—A recent arrival from the old country.

"Only a *raw Englishman* as the Boers define a recent importation." (Mitford's "Renshaw Fanning's Quest," p. 62, 1894.)

Raw native.—A native untouched by any civilizing or elevating influence.

"Yes, it is here that you will find him, in Natal, the *raw native*." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers and British," p. 135, 1881.)

Ray fungus disease.—*Actinomycosis.* A disease, affecting cattle, caused by specific organisms technically known as *Streptothrix bovis communis* and *S. actinomyces.* The name refers to the rosette-like appearance of the organism which radiates from a central mass, and is not unlike the head of a daisy in appearance. See Big jaw, Lumpy jaw, and Wooden tongue.

Rds., Sks., Sts.—Abbreviations for rix-dollars, skillings, and stuivers, the coinage of the old Dutch regime.

"Aye, there are men in whose hearts the shady woods

that clothe the foot of Table Mountain and Duivels Berg to the East, never excited a thought unconnected with the *rds., sks., and sts.* they might produce." ("C.G.H. Lit. Gazette," 15 March, 1834.)

Rechte geelhout.—(D. *recht,* straight, even, true; *geel,* yellow; *hout,* wood.) See Yellow-wood.

Recht op Jakob.—(D. *oprecht,* sincere, upright.) The popular name of a wildflower with a singularly straight stem —the *Zinnia.*

Recifs.—(F. *recif,* a reef, shelf of rocks; Port. *recifè;* Ar. *rasif.*) Bars or reefs running parallel with the shore.

"Passing northward, the coast runs almost in a straight line, free of caves, creeks, or indentations of any kind, until the 21° of E. lat. when there commences a series of bays, reefs, rocks and *recifs* or bars, which extend as far as 25 miles." (Andersson's "Okovango River," p. 301, 1861.)

Red-bill.—The name sometimes given to the Kabeljauw (q.v.).

Red bishop bird.—*Pyromelana oryx.* The plumage of the male bird during the breeding season is very fine, the upper parts are of a brilliant orange-scarlet, while the lower parts are of a velvety black. When the breeding season is over the male assumes the sober brown of his mate.

"One of the most beautiful of the many kinds of weaver birds in Africa is the splendid red Kaffir finch, the rooi fink of the Dutch colonists, sometimes also called the *Red bishop bird.*" (Bryden's "Animals of Africa," p. 160, 1900.)

Red clay or **Ochre.**—The fine clay used by the natives mixed with fat to smear their persons and rub into their blankets.

"Selecting two of his smartest detectives he directed them to assume the *red clay* and blanket of the raw Kafir." ("Queenstown Free Press," 19 February, 1884.)

Red cluster disa.—*Disa ferruginea, Swtz.*

Red coral.—*Gorgonia flammea* is sometimes so called by the colonists. See Zee-tak.

"In some localities the sea bottom seems to be clothed with extensive growths of the *red-coral* or 'zee-tak' (*Gorgonia flammea*) so frequently thrown up on the shore." ("The S. A. Journal of Science," VII. p. 216, 1911.)

Red currant.—*Rhus lævigata.* See Bosch taaibosch.

"Among hard-woods, black ironwood (*Olea laurifolia*) . . .

Red currant (*Rhus lævigata*) prevail." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 3, 1907.)

Red dagga.—See Dagga.

Red disa.—*Disa uniflora, Berg.* See Pride of Table Mountain.

Red ebony or **Red ivory.**—*Kiggelaria africana.* A beautifully coloured, close grained wood growing somewhat sparsely along the coast of Natal, where it is known by several names: Red ivory, Royal red-wood (q.v.), Natal mahogany. In the Transvaal *Rhamnus Zeyheri, Sond.*, is known as Red ivory.

"The beautiful giraffe tree, elephant's thorn, and the *red-ebony* tree. The wood of the latter is the hardest and finest of any tree in this country next to the giraffe tree. . . . In its specific weight, closeness and hardness, it far exceeds the black ebony." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 339, 1814.)

"*Royal red wood*, this beautiful wood is known in Natal as *red-ivory*." (Haggard's "Nada the Lily," p. 55.)

"This shows it to be possessed of higher properties than any other South African timber, and to be the heaviest, with the exception of *Red ivory*, of those weighed by him." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 203, 1907.)

Red fire-fish.—*Pterois volitans* is so named in East London.

"A very fine specimen of the *Red fire-fish* (*Pterois volitans*) was caught at East London . . . and is on view." ("Queenstown Representative," p. 4, 25 July, 1910.)

Redfox.—Another name given to *Canis mesomelas.* See Jackal.

"There are parts of the Orange Free State, Cape Colony and Transvaal, still very much infested with the so-called *Red fox* (*Rooi Jakals*)." ("Bloemfontein Post," p. 6, 22 June, 1912.)

Red gills.—*Diagramma Durbanense.* A Natal fish.

Red grenadier grosbeak.—*Pyromelana oryx* is known by this name. See Red bishop bird.

"Presently we saw and shot the red fink, sometimes called the *red-grenadier grosbeak, Ploceus oryx.*" (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 15, 1889.)

Red-headed wren.—*Dryadromas fulvicapella*, is so called in Natal.

"This little grass-bird is called the *red-headed wren.*" (Woodward's "Birds of Natal," p. 27, 1899.)

Red-hot poker.—*Kniphofia alooides.* The Eastern Province name of this handsome plant. The lower flowers of the raceme are yellow, the upper crimson like a red-hot poker.

"A genus of handsome African plants with a short rootstock, long, narrow radicle, leaves and scapes bearing dense racemes of yellow or scarlet flowers. *K. alooides, the Red hot poker* is the most familiar." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 186, 1906.)

Red Kaffir fink.—*Pyromelana oryx.* See Red bishop bird and Red grenadier grosbeak.

"The *Red Kaffir fink* though not an uncommon bird is certainly a very local one." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 185, 1867.)

Red Kaffir or **Reds.**—The Kaffir in his native state is so called because of the red-clay or ochre with which he smears his person and his clothing—*i Qaba,* one who smears.

"This *red-Kaffir* is in truth a savage." (Ballantyne's "Six Months at the Cape," p. 44, 1879.)

"Red ochre and oil are rubbed into the skin and frequently into the blanket. When this is done by a tribe the people are called *Red-Kaffirs,* or simply 'Reds'." (Kidd's "Essential Kaffir," p. 31, 1904.)

Red-lipped snake.—*Leptodira hotambœia.* See Herald snake. The upper lip of this snake is a bright red colour.

Red mangrove.—See Mangrove.

Red milkwood.—*Mimusops obovata* and *M. caffra* are so named. See Waterboom.

Red necked pheasant.—*Pternistes nudicollis,* not a common species; found in Pondoland and Natal.

"*Red-necked partridge* . . . in the up-country districts this large francolin . . . alights in the trees, and is called a *pheasant.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 163, 1899.)

Red pear.—The Transvaal name of *Scolopia Ecklonii, Warb., S. Mundtii,* is so named in the Western Province.

Red spider.—A minute, scarlet-coloured mite—*Tetrarhynchus*—which has given some trouble to the tea-planters of Natal, attaching itself to the leaf of the tea-plants at times in such numbers as to give the shrub a reddish tinge.

"The principal disease found in the tea-plant is what is commonly called *Red Spider.*" ("Science in South Africa," p. 442, 1905.)

Red stinkwood.—*Pygeum africanum.* A fine tree known

for many years by this name, but only recently botanically identified.

Red water.—A disease due to the presence of a parasite in the blood—*Piroplasma bigeminum.* "As it is understood in the Cape Colony, red water is not the non-contagious derangement known by the name in Great Britain, but is identical with the highly communicable disease called 'Texas fever' in the United States of America" (Wallace). This disease is transmitted by the common blue tick of South Africa—*Rhipicephalus decoloratus.* See Rooi water.

"The *Red Water.* This dreadful cattle disease is said to be steadily but surely approaching the Colonial Frontier." ("Queenstown Free Press," 15 July, 1873.)

"He left Pietermaritzburg on 27 May, 1873, and reached Lydenburg in twenty-nine days, with the loss of only one ox by *red water* and a couple knocked up." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 132, 1877.)

Red water (human).—A peculiar form of *Hœmaturia,* due to a parasite known as *Distoma hœmatobium.* It is supposed to be introduced into the system by bathing in or drinking impure water. It was prevalent in the neighbourhood of Durban, Natal, in the eighties.

"The principal diseases of importance being dysentery, low malarial fever (bilio-remittent), and a peculiar form of hoematuria, due to a parasite named *Distoma hœmatobium,* introduced into the system by the drinking of impure water." (Matthews' "Incwadi Yami," p. 15, 1887.)

"It appears that a very large proportion of the boys suffer from *red water* as the result of bathing in the Buffalo River. No girl bathes there, and no girl suffers from the disease." ("The C.G.H. Education Gazette," p. 220, 1 November, 1906.)

Redwing.—*Francolinus Levaillanti* is known by this name in the Cape Colony and in Natal. In the Transvaal and Bechuanaland the name is applied to *F. Gariepensis.*

"Perhaps the commonest of our partridges is the well-known *Redwing.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 161, 1899.)

"North of this dividing line (the Orange River) the Cape *Redwing* is replaced by the closely allied Orange River Francolin (*F. Gariepensis*) known to the Boers as the *Rooivlerk Patrijs.*" (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 126, 1908.)

Redwood.—*Ochna arborea.* See Cape plane.

Reed dance.—A dance in vogue among the Bechuanas, in which each man blows upon a reed flute, or whistle of very small compass, two notes at most. The men dance in a circle stamping the time, while the women move round the outside of the circle clapping their hands.

"When the dancers, who were all men, had tuned their reeds, they formed themselves into a ring. . . . The ring was drawn as closely together as their number would conveniently allow, but each person danced separate." (Burchell's "Travels," II. p. 411, 1824.)

"A native *reed-dance* was going on in the 'stadt' (as they call the native town)." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," 1896, p. 14, 1897.)

Reed sparrow.—(1) *Hyphantornis subaureus*—the Yellow finch is sometimes so called. (2) Burchell applies the name, apparently, to *Sylviella rufescens.*

"I here met with, for the first time, an interesting species of *Reed Sparrow* inhabiting the reeds by the river side." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 440, 1822.)

"Like the canaries, the yellow finch (*Hyphantornis olivaceous*) or *reed sparrow* as it is commonly called in this country, has the same habit." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I. Part 2, p. 30, 1879.)

Reef, The.—All ground in the mines that differs from the diamondiferous earth, has been called by the diggers, and is now generally spoken of as "the reef".

"The encasing rock of the mine, or the *reef* as the diggers call it." (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 188, 1886.)

Regen padda.—(D. *regen,* rain; *padda,* a toad, frog.) *Breviceps gibbosus.* The name refers to the habit of this animal of emerging from its hole and croaking before or during rain.

"The commonest representative of the curious digging family of *Engistomatidæ* is *Breviceps gibbosus,* commonly known as the *regen padda.*" ("Science in South Africa," p. 149, 1905.)

Regenworm.—(D. *regen,* rain; *worm,* a worm.) (1) According to Burchell this name was applied by the Hottentots to a variety of *Julus* which emerges from the ground only after heavy rains, his description points to *J. terrestris,* the Songalolo (q.v.) of the Kaffirs. (2) In the neighbourhood

of Uitenhage this name is given to a species of earth-worm which attains to an enormous length, and occasionally appears above ground after heavy and continuous rains.

"Large worms about six inches long and nearly three quarters of an inch thick were observed crawling along the ground, drawn out of their holes by the rain. . . . The Hottentots call it the *Regenwerm* (rain-worm), a name so perfectly appropriate that I have adopted it in the specific name *pluvialis.* It is nearly the largest species of *Julus.*" (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 449, 1822.)

"The Rev. G. R. Fisk then read a portion of a letter . . . from the Prosector of the Zoological Society of London regarding the alleged existence of earth-worms six feet in length. Prof. Guthrie stated that he had seen at Paarde Poort earth-worms four feet long." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," III. Part 2, p. lxv, 1885.)

Reijer.—(D. *reiger,* a heron.) A heron.

"Here come old *Oom Reijer.* He is a kind old bird though he holds his neck so crooked and looks like there was nothing to smile at in the whole wide world." ("The State," p. 640, December, 1911.)

Rekkertje.—(D. *rekken,* to stretch.) A boy's catapult. See Schietertje.

Request Farm.—In the early days in the Orange Free State and South African Republic, farms not exceeding 3000 morgen were granted to applicants who signed their names in the Field Cornet's Register and undertook to remain permanently in the country. The application or "rekwest" being registered the applicant could choose a vacant site, and at the next meeting of the Land Commission the grant would be confirmed. Farms granted thus were known as Request Farms.

"Prior to the fixing of the Vetberg boundary, and also subsequently, Cornelius Kok and his people sold lands to Orange Free State subjects within the country bounded by the Vaal River on the north and the Vetberg line on the South. On the purchase of these lands from the natives the O.F.S. Government issued titles to those who had acquired them in the form of *requests* or 'certificates'." ("The Diamond Fields Advertiser," p. 7, 2 September, 1912.)

Rescue grass.—*Bromus unioloides, H.B.K.,* an introduced grass that promises to be useful.

Reserve, The.—A tract of country set apart for occupation by the Fingos, was known as the "Reserve".

"They fell upon two Fingo kraals in the *Reserve* and completely destroyed them." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-1," I. p. 348, 1852.)

Reun.—(D. *ruin*, a gelding; *reu*, a male dog. In Cape Dutch these two words seem to have been combined in this form and used of either object.) A gelded horse, a male dog.

Rhebok.—(D. *ree*, a roe, hind; *reebok*, a roebuck.) *Cervicapra fulvorufula* is known as the Rooi rhebok and *Pelea capreola* as the Vaal rhebok.

"As I lay on the ground smoking I saw four *rheabok* of the grey species . . . making for the river." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 225, 1906.)

Rhebok haas.—(D. *haas*, a hare.) *Lepus saxatilis*, the habitat of this animal is the higher hills of South Africa. See Rock hare.

Rhenoster bosje.—(C.D. *rhenoster*, a rhinoceros; D. *bos*, a bush.) The common designation of *Elytropappus rhinocerotis, Less.*

"A neat, pale, bushy shrub, of the height of 3 or 4 feet called Rhinoster bosch (*Rhinoceros bush*) and said to have formerly been the food of the huge rhinoceros, till those animals fled before the colonists." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 101, 1822.)

Rhinoceros.—This animal is to be found now only in one or two out of the way places in South Africa.

"Vorstellung eines *rhinoceros* und elephanten." (Table XXXII, p. 319, Kolben's "Beschreibung," 1745.)

Rhinoceros, or **Tick bird.**—*Buphaga africana.* The strong sharp claws possessed by these birds enable them to cling securely to an animal, while they relieve it of the ticks and other parasites with which it may be infested. See Oxpecker.

"On nearing the bush, the rising of some *rhinoceros* (also known as *tick*) *birds*, with their shrill peculiar shriek, warned me that the beast was near." (Schulz and Hammar's "New Africa," p. 130, 1897.)

Rhodes grass.—*Chloris Gayana, Kunth.* A native grass which was brought to the notice of the late Hon. Cecil Rhodes while on a visit to the Queenstown District, as a valuable

fodder plant, and sent by him to his farm in the Matopos, is now generally known as Rhodes grass.

Ribbon fish.—The Natal name for a somewhat rare fish, a species of *Lophotes*.

"A very fine specimen of a *ribbon fish*. It was about 4½ feet long, like a flattish eel, with a very blue fringe-like fin the whole length of its body, a sharp nose, and a jaw fitted with sharp, long, curved teeth." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 526, 1906.)

Ride, To.—A common South African colloquialism uses this verb somewhat peculiarly, e.g. "He is riding wood, forage, etc.," meaning "He is carting wood, forage, etc.," from one place to another.

"I want you to *ride* a load of wood to the house." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 26, 1897.)

"We ought surely to have called upon them to replant the deforested areas in their own reserves, the wood of which they *have ridden* to Kimberley." (Macnab's "On Veldt and Farm," p. 152, 1897.)

Ride and Tie, To.—Two persons sharing one horse on a journey, one riding the horse a stage will fasten it up and then walk on, the other on reaching the horse will ride on till he overtakes the first, and so on to the journey's end.

"*Ride and tie* is the rule with all but myself." (Roche's "On Trek in the Transvaal," p. 222, 1878.)

Riem.—(D. *riem*, a tie, string.) Long strips of untanned hide, exceedingly tough and supple, very generally take the place in South Africa of rope, and are called "riems".

"Thongs made of the hides of animals were everywhere used by the farmers instead of cords, and ropes both for the tackling of wagons and other purposes." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 52, 1796.)

"Many of the straps or *riems* by which they had been dragged to the place of slaughter, were found still adhering to the bones of the arms and legs." (Holden's "Natal," p. 93, 1855.)

Riemhoogte.—(D. *riem*, a tie, thong; D. *hoogte*, a height.) The designation applied to a steep hill, the descent of which by wagons was accomplished in the early days by the use of riems, attached like the man-ropes of a field gun, and for a like purpose.

Riemland.—The name by which Kroonstad, a district of

the Orange Free State, used to be known. This district was frequented not so many years ago by large herds of blesbok, thousands of which were shot by the Boers and their skins cut into "riems" hence the name.

Riemlander.—A nickname jokingly applied to the people of the above district.

Riempje.—Dim. of *riem.* Thongs made from the soft skins of antelopes and used as string.

"Just slip off these bits of *riempje,* Tambusa, and give me an assegai or stick or something." (Mitford's "A Romance of the Cape Frontier," p. 419, 1891.)

Riemschoen or **Remschoen.**—(D. *rem,* a brake; *schoen,* a shoe.) A lock shoe for wagon wheels, largely used before the introduction of the patent screwbrake. Sparrman ("Voyage," I. p. 124, 1785) describes the contrivance. In the former part of the word there is a confusion between rem and riem.

"On regaining the track, we found the *riemschoen,* or iron slipper, which had fallen from the wagon, lying in the road." (Steedman's "Adventures," I. p. 121, 1835.)

"The perpendicular character of the bank, rendered a skid, or as it is termed by the colonists a *remscoon,* necessary upon each hind wheel in addition to the drag-chains." (Harris' "Wild Sports," p. 299, 1839.)

Riemschoen party.—The name applied a few years back to that party in Cape politics which appeared to be averse from progress; the word Riemschoen is applied in other directions with the same meaning, e.g. "Riemschoen Districts". ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 2 May, 1912.)

"I am pleased to find that my frequent allusion to the backward element in the Legislative Council as a *riemschoen party* has gone home." ("The Cape Argus," Weekly Ed., p. 36, 2 February, 1898.)

Rietbok.—(D. *riet,* a reed; *bok,* a goat.) *Cervicapra arundinum*—reedy marshes are the favourite haunt of this antelope. It is found all along the eastern coast districts.

"Here we also met with the *reitbok* (*antilope eleotragus*), the first I had seen. It is found generally in a marshy soil among reeds, from whence the colonists have given it the name of *reitbok.*" (Steedman's "Adventures," I. p. 308, 1835.)

Rietkwartel.—(D. *riet,* a reed; *kwartel,* a quail.) *Turnix Hottentotta.*

"This handsome little bird (*Riet qwartel* and Sand-quail of the colonists) is found sparingly throughout the Colony." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 607, 1875-84.)

Riet muis.—(D. *riet*, a reed; *muis*, a mouse.) See Cane rat.

Rijstbrensi.—(D. *rijst*, rice; Mal. *brangsang*, a stimulant, provocative.) Rice coloured with turmeric.

Rijstkluitjes.—(D. *rijst*, rice; C.D. *kluitje*, a dumpling.) Dumplings or rolls made of rice.

Rijst mieren.—(D. *rijst*, rice; *mier*, an ant; cf. Eng. *mire* in pis-*mire*, the old name of the ant.) The bodies of the *Termites*, which are so named, are not unlike a grain of rice, while their eggs resemble it more closely still. See Bushman rice.

"The officials . . . would require a little elementary knowledge of natural history, so as to be able to distinguish between the genuine article (locusts' eggs) and other things approaching it in likeness, such as rice-ants, or *rijst-mieren*, tampans, ticks, or Kaffir-corn." ("The Cape Argus," Weekly Ed. p. 46, 27 September, 1899.)

Ring horses, To.—This is accomplished by passing a rope or a riem through the snaffles of a number of horses and joining the ends, the propensity of any one of them to stray is thus counteracted.

"Blankets were unstrapped, the horses tied together by a rope running through their snaffles, in colonial parlance called *ringing;* no saddles were removed." (Montague's "Campaigning in South Africa," p. 323, 1880.)

"In the police force the horses were always *rung* at nights." (Ex. C.M.R.'s "With the Cape Mounted Rifles," p. 63, 1881.)

Ringhals.—(D. *ring*, ring, circle; *hals*, the neck.) *Sepedon hæmachætes.* A snake of the cobra species, with a distinctly marked ring round the neck. It is hooded and is capable of ejecting a very acrid saliva to some distance. Its bite is exceedingly dangerous. See Spuug slange.

"A 'cobra-di-capell' or hooded snake, called by the colonists the *Ringeaault.*" (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 400, 1856.)

"I think the species is called *ringhals* (or ringed throat) in the Colony." (Baines' "Explorations," p. 449, 1864.)

Ringhals kraai.—(D. *kraai*, a crow.) *Corvultur albicollis.* This bird, which is really a raven, is so called because of the white ring which runs round the lower part of its neck.

"This large raven, which goes by the name in the Colony of the *Ringhals* (ring-neck), is abundant throughout the Colony." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 417, 1875-84.)

"The *Ring-hals* is usually resident in Cape Colony and Natal, and roosts all the year round in or near its nests." (Stark's "Fauna of South Africa," I. p. 11, 1900.)

Ringed, To be.—Zulu men are distinguished from boys by a head-ring. The head is shaved all but a narrow strip quite round, the hair along this strip is worked up with gum, etc., into a black polished ring called isi Coco (q.v.). The ring indicates that the wearer has attained to the dignity of manhood. The sanction of the chief is required before a man can become a Kehla (q.v.) or "ringed" man.

"Both man and woman shave their heads close, the former leaving only sufficient to attach the isigoko or *ring*, and the latter a small tuft, called embeeti, on the crown . . . strange to say the will of the king is as necessary for the adoption of either of these badges, as in any other of his despotic acts, a whole regiment being sometimes ordered to adopt the ring." (Gardiner's "Journey," p. 100, 1836.)

"Let me have your old men; they are, as I see by those who are *ringed*, about a hundred." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 196, 1891.)

Rispers or Ruspers.—(D. *rups*, a caterpillar.) The caterpillars of several small moths, which in some seasons are so numerous as to destroy large areas of Karoo veld, are so called in Cape Dutch.

"The caterpillars, which are very like the destructive *rispers* familiar to residents in the Karoo, have already killed a large number of trees in this neighbourhood." ("East London Dispatch," 26 June, 1906.)

Rissies.—Cayenne pepper is so called by the Malays; among the Dutch of South Africa chillies are also thus designated.

"¼ tèlepel wit peper, klein knypi *rissiis*, 4 eetlepels room van melk." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 92, 1898.)

"Gooi peper, sout, 'n stukki rooi *rissi* en asyn by di uie,

maak goed deurmakaar." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 30, 1898.)

Rissingibosch.—In the July No. (1912) of the "South African Agricultural Journal," Mr. Burtt Davy gives this as a Bechuanaland name applied to *Grewia cana, Sond.* The fruits are eaten by the Bechuanas who also make a kind of beer from them.

River boils.—A cutaneous eruption from which the diggers suffered in the early days at the river diggings.

"The sleeves of his flannel shirt were rolled up to the shoulder, displaying arms seamed and livid with the skin disease we call *river* or *Hebron boils.*" (Boyle's "The Savage Life," p. 28, 1876.)

River bream.—*Chrysophrys estuarius*, a Natal fish.

River-horse.—The block of wood employed by the Namaquas to assist them in swimming across swollen rivers. See Paard.

"Alte und Junge, Greise und Kinder kamèn über den Strom geschwommen (mit Hülfe eines Holzblocks) nur um mir die Hand zum Gruss zu reichen." (Wangemann's "Ein Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 351, 1868.)

"Being now assembled amongst the tribes at the water-side, the men prepared their *river-horses* for mounting, i.e., each man taking the pole he carried, inserted a peg of wood in a hole bored for the purpose about three feet from the upper end, then striding across the pole . . . and grasping the peg with his left hand to prevent the pole rolling, he launched forth, swimming with his right hand and his feet." (Ridsdale's "Scenes and Adventures in Great Namaqualand," p. 44, 1883.)

River otter.—*Lutra inunguis.* See Otter.

"We obtained also in the way of trade, some good curios, handsome skins of the *river otter* (*Lutra inunguis*)." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 360, 1893.)

River steenbras.—*Cheilodactylus grandis.* An East London name for this fish, also known as the Bank steenbras and Tiger-fish (q.v.).

"I notice under the heading of 'Remarks,' upon the bank steenbras, tiger-fish, or *river steenbras* the following: 'Abundant all through the year. Black transverse stripes, thick lips, and grunts when caught'." ("East London Dispatch," 31 October, 1905.)

Road party.—A gang of labourers employed to repair the roads.

Roan antelope.—*Hippotragus equinus* does not occur south of the Orange River, but is not uncommon in the Eastern Transvaal and Rhodesia.

"I have twice met with the *roan antelope* to the south of Bamangwato. A few roan antelopes are still to be found in Griqualand West." (Selous' "Wanderings in South Africa," p. 213, 1895.)

Robbe.—(D. *rob*, a seal.) *Arctocephalus pusillus*, a fur seal and the only member of the marine carnivora haunting the shores of South Africa.

Robben Island.—(D. *rob*, a seal.) An island lying in the entrance to Table Bay, so named because at one time it was a favourite haunt of seals. Compare Robin's Reef at the mouth of the Kills off Staten Island, which really means Seal's Reef, and was so called in early days by the Dutch for the same reason. (Bryant and Gay's "History of the United States," I. p. 353.)

Robber flies.—The *Asilidæ*, a division of the *Diptera*. They are fierce insects, preying upon other insects, the juices of which they extract with their powerful sucker.

"Very abundant are the *Robber flies, Asilidæ,* and much varied are their forms; butterflies or wasps on the wings are mastered with incredible facility by these insect-devourers." ("Science in South Africa," p. 172, 1905.)

Rock.—This word is frequently used in the Midland districts where the word "stone" would be employed in England, e.g., "He threw me over the hedge with a rock" (stone). This expression contains another peculiar Cape usage, viz., the omission of the preposition before the indirect object of the verb.

Rock baager.—A fish caught in the Orange River.

It is universally known as the *Rock baager,* because, unlike its much larger, mud-loving congener, it chiefly haunts rocky spots." ("Trans. S. A. Phil. Soc.," p. xcviii, viii, Part I, 1893.)

Rock bait.—See Rooi aas.

"The blue fish . . . so far as I know, is only caught with ascidian (*rock bait*) upon our part of the coast." ("East London Dispatch," 7 August, 1905.)

Rock cod.—*Epinephelus gigas* is so called at Mossel

Bay and at Delagoa Bay. See Garoupe and Koning klip-visch.

"The *rock cod* are especially good." (Monteiro's "Delagoa Bay," p. 151, 1891.)

"A second *rock cod,* of proportions excelling the dreams or even the tales of local fishermen, was caught off Inyack on Thursday and exhibited in the market on Friday morning." ("Lorenzo Marques Guardian," 25 June, 1906.)

Rock eagle.—*Halietus vocifer.*

"Mr. Rickard notes it from East London, where it is called the *Rock eagle.*" (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 46, 1875-84.)

Rock fish.—The East London name for *Cantharus blochii.* See Hottentot.

Rock grunter.—See Chor-chor.

Rock hare.—See Rhebok haas.

Rock pigeon.—*Columba phæonota* is so called in the Midland Districts of the Cape Colony.

Rock rabbit.—Another name for the Dassie (q.v.).

> 'Tis a true mountain home, laid in nest of small hills,
> Where naught that has life, but the *rock-rabbit* dwells.

(Hudson's "Features in South African Frontier Life," p. 74, 1852.)

Rock salmon.—*Lutianus salmonides,* a fine fish, reddish-purple above and red beneath.

"I also noticed . . . two of the finest *rock-salmon* I have ever seen. This is one of the best table fishes we have." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 334, 1905.)

Rock snake.—The Natal python. See Python.

"The markings of the Natal python are very beautiful, the colours being dark olive brown, with purplish white under parts. . . . In South Africa this species is often called the *Rock-snake.*" (Bryden's "Animals of Africa," p. 182, 1900.)

Rock, To.—(D. *raken,* to hit, touch.) To hit with a missile; the word is also used by children for a hit when playing at marbles. See Rak, of which this is the English corruption.

Roer.—(D. *roer,* a tube; G. *Rohr,* a tube, a gun-barrel.) The old-time, heavily metalled, elephant guns, used by the Dutch voortrekkers.

"Two rifles, four double-barrelled guns, and a large Dutch

piece or *roer*." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 47, 1852.)

Roerdomp.—(D. *roer-domp*, the bittern.) *Botaurus capensis.* One of the designations given to this bird by the Dutch. See Brul-vogel.

"The hammerkop (*Scopus umbretta*), the bittern (*Botaurus stellaris*) called by the Boers *roerdomp*, are seen pretty frequently." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 93, 1889.)

Roer dragers. — (D. *drager*, a carrier, bearer.) Gun-bearers.

"Kreli was to have been with the Kaffir division, having a body guard of Kaffir (*roer-dragers*) musket bearers." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," I. p. 170, 1852.)

Roer-mij-niet or **Truitje roer-mij-niet.** — (D. *roeren*, to touch; lit. "Touch me not". *Truitje* is the shortened form of Gertrude.) This appellation is given (1) to two plants whose leaves when touched emit a very unpleasant odour—*Melianthus major* and *M. camosus, Vehl.;* and (2) to a very thorny plant the spines of which do more than suggest caution.

"A few nests of the *Nectarina famosa* were discovered among the *roer-mij-niet bushes*." ("Scientific Africa," p. 76, 1896.)

Rog.—(D. *rog*, a thornback.) *Raja maculata.* See Skate.

Rogge Veld.—(D. *rogge*, rye.) Rye-land—the name given to a part of the Fraserburg and Sutherland Districts.

"An opinion that many of the plants of the *Roggeveld* are sufficiently hardy to bear the winters of England, is not altogether speculative." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 255, 1822.)

"Many a treasure did the eagle eye of the botanist discern as we jogged along through the *Rogge-veld*." ("East London Dispatch," p. 10, 27 July, 1912.)

Rog, Wilde.—(D. *rogge*, rye; *wilde*, wild.) *Secale africanum.*

Rol plek.—(D. *rollen*, to roll; *plek*, place, spot.) The curious formations known as Kommetjes (q.v.) are sometimes so called—the idea being that they were formed by the wallowing of buffalos or elephants.

"Those saucer-like depressions so numerous in some parts of our veld are rather fancifully accounted for at times. We have heard them described as pits dug by Kaffirs in days of tribal warfare, from whence ambushes were made good or

that they were the *rol pleks* of big game." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 18 October, 1912.)

Roman.—(D. *rood,* red; *man,* man.) *Chrysophrys cristiceps, Cuv.* One of the prettiest and most delicious of the South African fishes. It has given its name to the Roman Rock in False Bay, in the neighbourhood of which the fish abounded. The name, which is a corruption of "roodman," "rooiman," has reference to the deep orange colour of the fish.

"The finest fish are caught here, and particularly the *rooman,* that gives its name to a rock in the neighbourhood of which it is found in great abundance." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 80, 1796.)

Roman Rock.—The rock in False Bay referred to above.

"A large, round rock in the harbour went by the name of the Ark, another was called the *Romance-rock.*" (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 269, 1795.)

Rondavel.—(D. *rondeel,* a tower.) As used now it means a poor sort of round hut, but appears to have been used originally of the loop-holed places built by the Boers to protect their kraals and stock.

"Ook thans nog is de *rondavel,* van 15 tot 20 voet in doorsnede, of het, soms 30 tot 40 voet lange 'hartebeesthuis,' het gewone verblijf van den Boer, die een nieuwe plaats aanlegt, en voor zich en zijn huisgezin geen ander onderkomen heeft." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 422, 1882.)

"At present the Landrost lies in a *Rondavel* of reeds and mud." (Wilmot's "Life of Sir Richard Southey," p. 69, 1905.)

"These *rondables* (round towers) as they were called, are still to be seen on the oldest farms in the Longkloof and in other parts of the country." (Sellick's "Uitenhage Past and Present," p. viii, 1905.)

Rondebosje.—(D. *rond,* round; *bos,* bush.) A variety of *Protea.*

Rond looper.—(D. *rond,* around, about; *loopen,* to run; *rondloopen,* to gad about.) A gad about, a tramp.

"The Kaffir when engaged had no pass whatever in his possession—he was what I may term a *rond-looper.*" ("Queenstown Free Press," 3 March, 1863.)

Roodebek.—(D. *rood,* red; *bek,* a beak, bill.) *Vidua principalis,* the Widow bird. See also Rooibekje.

Roode besje. — (D. *rood,* red; bezie, a berry.) *Olinea cymosa.*

Roode blad.—(D. *rood,* red; *blad,* a leaf.) *Combretum erythrophyllum.* This name refers to the autumn tints of the foliage. See Bush willow.

Roode els.—(D. *rood,* red; *els,* alder tree.) *Cunonia capensis.* The flowers have a strong, sweet scent.

Roode haas.—(D. *rood,* red; *haas,* a hare.) *Lepus crassicaudatus.* See Klip haas and Rooi stert.

"The hares known as the Vlackte haas (*Lepus capensis*), Rhebok haas (*L. saxatilis*) and *Roode haas* (*L. crassicaudatus*) . . . are spread all over the country." ("Science in South Africa," p. 134, 1905.)

Roodehout.—(D. *rood,* red; *hout,* wood.) See Cape plane.

Roode melkhout.—*Mimusops obovata.* See Red milkwood.

Roode peer.—(D. *rood,* red; *peer,* a pear.) *Scolopia mundii,* but in Pondoland the name is given to a euphorbiaceous tree.

Roodepoot elsje.—(D. *rood,* red; *poot,* a foot; *els,* an awl.) *Himantopus candidus, Bonn.* "This bird may be distinguished from all our waders by the disproportionate length and slenderness of its legs, which are of a bright red colour." (Layard.) "Els" refers to the shape of its bill.

"Breeds in September, and is called *Roodepoot elsje,* lit. 'red-legged cobbler's awl'. The likening of the bills of these two birds (see Bonte elsje) to an awl is not bad." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 675, 1875-84.)

Roode rabassam.—*Pelargonium anceps, Ait.* This plant is used by the Malays to promote parturition.

Roode trewa.—(D. *rood,* red.) *Satyrium cucullatum.* (Thunberg's "Flora Capensis," p. 17, 1823.) = *S. coriifolium, Sw.*

Roode zaad gras.—(D. *rood,* red; *zaad,* seed, spawn.) The Cape Province name of *Tristachya leucothrix, Trin.*

Roof of Africa, The.—The name sometimes given to the great Drakensberg range of mountains. See Drakensberg.

"The Drakensberg range has been aptly called the *Roof of Africa.*" ("Cape Times," p. 9, 28 September, 1912.)

Rooi aas.—(D. *rood,* red; *aas,* carrion.) The name given to the fleshy part of an *Ascidian,* which, when removed from its cartilaginous envelope, is largely used for bait all round the coast. See Rock-bait.

"Of the baits available . . . *rooi-aas* . . . is given the preference, because . . . far more are taken upon *rooi-aas,* and

the fish bite upon it more freely." ("East London Dispatch," 30 May, 1905.)

"One of the features of the rocky parts of the coast line from Cape Point eastwards is the clusters of *rooias* or 'red-bait' (a large *Ascidian* which covers the rocks)". ("Science in South Africa," p. 192, 1905.)

Rooi baatje.—(D. *rood*, red; Mal. *badjoe*, a jacket.) The Cape Dutch name for the English soldiers; this has been largely supplanted in recent years by the term "Khakies," both names having reference to the colour of the soldier's uniform.

"And how Umhala would laugh at the *Roed vatjes*." (Ward's "Five Years in Kaffirland," I. p. 164, 1848.)

"The border colonist would have held his ground against the native, without the aid of a single *Roode-baatje* (red-coat)." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 171, 1852.)

"The *Rode bashees* of the party, as the Kaffir's denominate our gallant red-jackets." (Drayson's "Sporting Scenes," p. 22, 1858.)

"After that tale I think I may ask the *Roe bargie* officer to tell us a story." (Drayson's "Tale of the Outspan," p. 79, 1862.)

"Sonny, them *rooibaaitjes* can fight, but they're foolish." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 206, 1897.)

Rooibaatje.—*Acridium purpuriferum.* A large red and green locust is so named; but the term is also applied to the red-striped Voetgangers (q.v.).

"The young locusts are partly red and partly black. The Dutch call them vootgangers, that is footmen, or goers on foot. Sometimes they are called *rooibatjes*, that is red-coats, in allusion to the soldiers." (Calderwood's "Caffers," p. 157, 1858.)

"The young of the migratory one: *Pachytilus migratorius* are so gaily coloured as to have earned for them the local name of *rooi batjes* or redcoats." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," IX. p. xlv, 1902.)

Rooibekje.—(D. *rood*, red; *bek*, a beak, bill.) (1) *Estrilda astrilda*, a well known Cape bird with red beak and pretty plumage. See King of six. (2) In Natal the name is also given to *Vidua principalis.*

"The *roodbeckjes* (*Loxia astrild*) made great havock in the gardens, where they devoured both blossoms and seeds." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 23, 1796.)

"Flocks of the charming wee *Rooibekje.*" ("Scientific African," p. 88, 1896.)

"This bird (*V. principalis*) derives its name from its pretty wax-like red bill, which resembles that of the estrilda, and in common with them it is called *roibek.*" (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 66, 1899.)

Rooi bles riet haan.—(D. *rood,* red; *bles,* a blase; *riet,* a reed; *haan,* a cock.) *Gallinula chloropus.* The Moorhen, sometimes called by the Dutch *Rooi bles hoender* (D. *hoen,* a hen) is a familiar English bird.

Rooibloem.—(D. *rood,* red; *bloem,* a flower.) The parasitic *Striga lutea, Lour.*, which attaches itself to the roots of wild grasses and also to cultivated crops of the grass family, especially mealies; by absorbing the juice of the plant it prevents its maturing. The plant is also called *Rooi bosje,* Mealie gift, Witch weed.

"The plant disease . . . is that known as witch-weed or *rooi-bloemtje.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 13 April, 1911.)

Rooi-bok.—(D. *rood,* red; *bok,* goat, antelope.) Another name for the Pallah (q.v.).

Rooi-bosje.—(D. *rood,* red; *bos,* a bush.) A species of *Borbonia.* See also Rooibloem.

Rooibos tea.—This is prepared from a species of *Borbonia.*

"Cape *rooibos* tea." ("The S.A. Journal of Science," VII. p. 374, 1911.)

Rooi gras.—*Anthistiria imberbis, Retz.* This, perhaps the most valuable of the indigenous grasses, derives its name from the brownish-red colour which it assumes in winter. It is common throughout the Cape Province. In Bechuanaland *Themeda Forskalii, var. Burchellii, Hack.*, is known by this name.

"The Stormberg region, where, within my own short experience, miles of *rooi-grass* have given place to the diminutive Quagga-couch grass, while what used to be vleys of reeds or rushes are now drained by recently formed dongas, and the rushes have given place to *rooi-grass.*" (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 37, 1907.)

Rooihond.—(D. *rood,* red; *hond,* a dog.) The Cape Dutch name for the scarlet-fever or scarlatina.

Rooi hout.—(D. *rood,* red; *hout,* wood.) *Ochna arborea,* one of the forest trees reserved by Government.

"A flock of long-tailed mouse-birds, called finks (!) would dash past to settle in a *rooihout* tree." (Clairmonte's "The Africander," p. 2, 1896.)

Rooi jakhals.—(D. *rood*, red.) *Canis mesomelas*—sometimes called the Silver jackal (q.v.).

"There are parts of the Orange Free State, Cape Colony and Transvaal, still very much infested with the so-called red fox (*Rooi jakals*)." ("Bloemfontein Post," p. 6, 22 June, 1912.)

Rooi kat.—*Felis caracal.* The Cape Dutch name for this animal. See Lynx.

"*Roode katt* is the name here given to a kind of red lynx, with long locks of hair at the extremities of its ears, and the top of its tail black." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 182, 1796.)

"Lynxes, or as the Dutch call them, *rooikats*." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 217, 1890.)

Rooiman.—A species of *Solpuga* found in the Karoo; it is a reddish colour and has claws not unlike those of a lobster. See Jaag-spinnekop.

"The large nocturnal yellow and black species of *Solpuga* . . . are variously known locally by the name of *Romans*, Jadg-spinnekoppen (hunting spiders) or Haar-scheerders (hair-cutters)." ("Science in South Africa," p. 178, 1905.)

Rooi meerkat.—*Cynictis penicillata*; the bushy-tailed meerkat.

Rooi mier.—(D. *mier*, an ant.) A species of red ant.

Rooinek.—Originally a jocose Dutch name for an Englishman, subsequently used somewhat contemptuously, and occasionally preceded by a vigorous adjective. The following amusing mistake with reference to this epithet is worthy of preservation: "A 'Pall-Mall' correspondent has discovered an amusing blunder in Mr. Bryce's book. Mr. Bryce takes the Boers to task for speaking of an Englishman as 'rotten eggs'." ("Impressions of South Africa," p. 509, 1898.) The truth is, as the correspondent correctly points out, that, in South Africa, Englishmen, owing to their more rosy complexion, as compared with other white men living there, are jocosely spoken of as "red necks" (rooi nek in Transvaal Dutch, rood nek in the Dutch of Holland). This expression Mr. Bryce has misinterpreted as "rotten eggs". ("The Empire," 29 January, 1898.)

"*Rooinek*, once a term of bantering endearment, has unfortunately lost its charm, since it has been converted into a term of dislike by the Boers for the foreigner." (Schulz and Hammar's "New Africa," p. 397, 1897.)

Rooi rhebok.—See Rhebok.

Rooi schimmel.—See Blauw schimmel.

"He rides a horse about fourteen hands high, which he calls a *red-schimmel* but which you would term a roan." (Cole's "The Cape and the Kaffirs," pp. 51-52, 1852.)

"There was plenty to do if one looked about, but there was nothing crying out to be taken in hand; and I saddled the *rooi-schimmel*." (Glanville's "Kloof Yarns," "The Empire," 30 July, 1898.)

Rooi staart.—(D. *rood*, red; *staart*, a tail.) See Klip haas and Roode haas.

Rooi steenbras.—(D. *rood*, red; *brasem*, a bream.) *Dentex rupestris*. A much esteemed Cape fish, often exceeding 3½ feet in length and 14 inches in depth.

"Die beeden letztern Arten von Brassen am Vorgebürge nennen die Colonisten Jacob-Evertsen; sonsten heissen sie *rothe Steinbrassen*, auf Französisch Breme rouge." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 368, 1745.)

Rooi stompneus.—(D. *rood*, red; *stomp*, blunt; *neus*, nose, snout.) *Chrysophrys gibbiceps*. See Jakob zwart.

Rooi taal.—(D. *rood*, red; *taal*, language, tongue, speech.) The English language is sometimes so designated by the Dutch.

"They are usually glib-tongued, speak the taal and the *rooi-taal* with equal readiness, and are well versed in that sophistry which misleads the man in the street." ("The Graaff Reinet Advertizer," 18 December, 1898.)

Rooitje.—The name sometimes given to the Silver fish (q.v.).

Rooi trewa.—*Satyrium coriifolium*. See Geele trewa and Ewa trewa. Another name for this orchid.

Rooi valk.—(D. *valk*, a hawk, falcon.) A small hawk *Tinnunculus rupicolus*.

"Einer der kleinsten der südafrikanischen Tagraubvogel." (Holub und Petzeln's "Ornithologie von Südafrika," p. 29, 1882.)

Rooi vink.—(D. *vink*, a finch.) The Red Kaffir finch.

Rooi vlerk.—(D. *vlerk*, a wing.) *Amydras morio*—it de-

stroys large numbers of caterpillars and insects, but is also partial to fruit.

" Am. rudipennis (Shaw). *Rooivlerk* Sprejki der Boers." (Holub und Petzeln's " Ornithologie von Südafrika," p. 112, 1882.)

Rooivlerk karper.—(D. *rood*, red; *vlerk*, a wing; *karper*, a carp.) *Barbus Burchellii, Smith.*

"The karper or carp (*Rooivlerk karper*, red-finned carp, of the Dutch colonists, *Barbus* (*Pseudobarbatus*) *Burchellii* of Dr. Andrew Smith, first identified as its name implies by the traveller Burchell, *circa* 1812) is a handsome little fish, not unlike a perch in shape." (Bryden's " Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 461, 1893.)

Rooi wangetjes.—(D. *rood*, red; *wang*, a cheek.) An appropriate name for a variety of pear which has a bright red spot on a yellow surface. The word " wang " for cheek occurs in the York Mystery Plays, ed. Smith. " Thy wordis makis me my *wangges* to wete—(Thy words make me wet my cheeks)," (p. 64, l. 275, Oxford, 1885).

Rooi water.—See Red water.

" Wij hebben dit jaar hier aan de Zoutpansberg vele beesten verloren aan die vreeselijke ziekte genaamd *rooiwater*." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 288, 1890.)

Rooi wortel.—(D. *rood*, red; *wortel*, a root, carrot.) *Bulbine latifolia.* The root of this plant, which is orange yellow in colour, is used at a certain stage for rheumatism; it is scraped and steeped in brandy, the taste being intensely bitter.

Rooster koekjes.—(D. *rooster*, a gridiron, grate; *koek*, a cake.) Cakes of unleavened bread cooked on a gridiron over the coals of a wood fire. Called also Veld bricks, Doughboys, and sometimes Dood-gooi.

"I had meal to fall back upon with which to make *rooster-kookies*, that is, cakes without leaven baked on the gridiron." (Edward's " Reminiscences," p. 53, 1883.)

" So one day Mr. Herbert taught me how to make *roster cakes* (a roster means a gridiron)." (Hobson's "At Home in the Transvaal," p. 79, 1884.)

Root gall worm.—See Eel-worm.

Rorke's Drift.—A commissariat and hospital post on the Buffalo River, Natal, gallantly defended during the Zulu War by a handful of British soldiers under Lieutenants Chard and Bromhead, against 4000 Zulus, on 22 January, 1879.

Setting *Rorke's Drift* till now unhonoured name,
By Plassey and Assaye, and fights of fame.

Rose apple.—*Jambosa vulgaris*, of little worth as a fruit.

"*Jambosa vulgaris*, the *rose apple*, of the East Indies, reaches the height of 30 feet in its native woods, and is pretty common in Cape gardens." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," I. p. 90, 1857.)

Rosinbosch.—This hybrid word is heard in some localities instead of Harpuisbosch (q.v.).

"Many of the Camdeboo mountain farms . . . have had a large portion of their veld ruined by the spread of the rhenosterbosch and the *rosinbosch* (or haarpisbosch)." ("The Queenstown Daily Representative," p. 7, 9 April, 1912.)

Rossignol.—(F. *rossignol*, a nightingale.) *Saxicola pileata, Gmel.*, has been thus designated. See Nachtegal and Schaapwachtertje.

"It has also the more local name of 'Nagtgaal,' and *Rossignol*, from a habit it is said to have of singing by night." (Andersson's "Birds of Damaraland," p. 108, 1872.)

Rottang.—(Mal. *rotan, Calamus rotang.*) The name given to several species of tough and strong East Indian climbing plants of the genus *Calamus* and its allies. The stem, cut into walking sticks, is known by the same name in South Africa.

Rotte kruid.—(D. *rot*, a rat; *kruid*, powder.) An earlier Dutch name for arsenic.

"As for poisons arsenic (then called *rotte kruid*, rat powder) was used, but not very successfully." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 691, 1904.)

Round potato.—See Potato, round.

Round tailed meerkat.—*Suricata tetradactyla.* See Meerkat.

Royal heath.—*Erica regia, Bartl.*

Royal red wood.—See Red ebony, and quotation 2.

Rozijntjes.—(D. *rozijn*, a raisin.) The small fruit of *Grewia cand., Sond.*

"An old woman kindly refreshed us with sour milk, and gave the people plenty of *rozijntjes*, little raisins." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 548, 1844.)

Rozijntjes bosch.—See above.

"The banks of the river produce lofty trees . . . such as

Mimosa, Salix, and species of *Rhus*, called by the Dutch *Rezyne houd.*" (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 113, 1789.)

Rub-rub berries.—The name given to the berries of *Rhus obovata* in Lower Albany.

Ruggens.—(D. *rug*, back; cf. Eng. *ridge.*) Hills or ridges, which, like the arched backs of closely packed animals, run side by side as in the Winterhoek, Caledon, and Bredasdorp Districts in the Cape Colony, are thus designated.

"In the Bredasdorp District . . . the real lamziekte veld is said to lie between the dunes and the *ruggens.* The disease is not known in the *ruggens,* where the veld is sweet." ("S.A. Agric. Jour.," p. 35, July, 1912.)

Ruggi.—Dim. of the above is employed of a series of smaller ridges.

Rush, A.—A taking possession, by force of numbers, of property which is supposed to be gold or diamond bearing. A "canteen-rush" is one that has had its origin in canteen talk and gossip, and is sometimes engineered and worked for purposes sufficiently obvious.

"Hitherto a *rush* had been held, and actually upheld by argument, as a superior right to any mere private claims. The Free State distinctly admitted this, and enjoined it by law." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 143, 1873.)

"I don't think many people believed in this last of our countless alarms. It was pooh-poohed on every side as a 'canteen-*rush*'. Some man who wanted to be rid of his bar stores had got up the excitement by nods and winks." (*Ibid.* p. 142.)

Rush, To.—(1) To take possession by force of numbers as above. (2) The word has acquired a wider meaning, and is now often used in the sense of suddenly inducing one to do a thing that in calmer moments he would perhaps decline to do—taking him unawares.

"About that time the farm was *rushed*, an expressive word though sinister to the ears of a landed proprietor nowadays. It signifies that diggers swarmed to the spot in such numbers as to render merely foolish any resistance a proprietor might meditate." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 90, 1873.)

Rustbank.—(D. *rusten*, to rest; *bank*, a bench.) A rough wooden couch, the seat of which is often made by weaving in and out hide thongs or riems.

"A *rust-bank*, a rude sofa of wood, covered with skins, stands against the wall facing the entrance." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 268, 1889.)

"The few very rough seats and the *rust banken* . . . were occupied by the men, the women sat on the floor." (Dower's "Early Annals of Kokstad," p. 25, 1902.)

Rustland.—(D. *rusten*, to rest.) Land that is allowed to rest, to lie fallow for a time.

Rye, Saldanha Bay.—*Secale africanum*, a variety of rye, which, on rich soil, grows to 5 feet and sometimes to 7 feet high, and has been known to yield as much as fifty-fold.

Saam.—(D. *samen*, together.) This word is often used by English-speaking colonists in a somewhat peculiar way, e.g. "Can I come saam?" "He went saam"; meaning "Can I come with you?" "He went with them." This is an imitation of the Dutch idiom, and is current in the Midland Districts of the Cape Colony. Cf. "Thenne comen clerkus to comfortye hure samen". (Langland's "Piers the Plowman," 4, 27. Skeat Ed.)

Sable antelope.—*Hippotragus niger*. The first specimen of this handsomest of the South African antelopes submitted to naturalists, was procured by Major Harris in the Magaliesberg. See Harris buck and Zwaart-wit-pens.

"It were vain to attempt a description of the sensations I experienced when . . . I at length found myself in actual possession of so brilliant an addition to the riches of natural history. The prize evidently belonged to the Aigocerine group, and was equal in stature to a large galloway." (Harris's "Wild Sports," p. 263, 1839.)

Sack milk.—(D. *zak*, a bag, pocket.) The earlier colonial name for what is now known as Sour milk or Amasi (q.v.). It was commonly prepared in a bag made of the skin of a goat or sheep—hence the name.

"A community of Hottentots . . . received us very friendly, and invited us to drink some of their *sack milk*." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 239, 1785.)

Sacred jackhanger.—The common name of *Tarsiger silens*. The male bird in its flight strongly resembles the male Butcher bird (q.v.).

"This bird is known as the *Sacred jackhanger* to the colonial schoolboy." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 103, 1908.)

Saddle, The.—This term is applied to a saddle-like formation somewhat frequent in South Africa, by which two mountains are joined together.

"The police turned out smartly, and off we went up the rocks to the *Saddle*. . . . Just at the saddle foot we came upon a wounded man, assegaied in ten places, and flung over the kranz by the enemy." (Barkley's "Among Boers and Basutos," p. 99, 1893.)

"By eleven o'clock the party had climbed to the summit of a *saddle* overlooking Umbunda's Pass, and was able to distinguish its future route lying in the gorge some hundreds of feet below." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 21 June, 1912.)

Saddle off, To.—See Off-saddle, Dutch *afzadelen*.

"He asked us if we would *saddle off* our horses and enter his habitation." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 65, 1835.)

Saddle up, To.—A colloquialism common throughout the whole of South Africa; it is the English rendering of the Dutch *opzadelen*, to saddle a horse.

"The tractable steeds were without difficulty caught and *saddled up*." (Napier's "Excursions," II. p. 17, 1849.)

"At five o'clock we commenced to *saddle up* again." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," I. p. 397, 1852.)

Saffraan hout.—(D. *saffraan*, saffron; *hout*, wood.) *Elæodendron croceum;* this tree has a whitish bark with a yellow sub-cuticle which shows through, hence the name.

"A tree 20 to 40 feet high, 2 to 4 feet in diameter. Wood hard, yellow, *Saffranhout*." ("Flora Capensis," Vol. I. p. 468, 1859-60.)

Sage wood.—*Buddleia salviæfolia.* See Salie hout and Salie tree. A strongly scented plant, a native of the Transvaal.

Sail, A.—(D. *zeil*, as in *dekzeil*, a tilt.) The canvas cover stretched over the strong frame of a buck-wagon.

"The wagon in which I was had seventy-two stabs in the *sail*." (Bird's "Annals of Natal," I. p. 240, 1888.)

Saint.—A term sometimes applied to an inhabitant of Grahamstown—the City of the Saints (q.v.).

"The older generation of Grahamstown's citizens regarded Mr. Sheffield's book ('The Story of the Settlement') as one which no loyal *Saint* should be without." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 14 August, 1912.)

Saint Barnaby's thistle.—*Centaurea solstitialis*—this plant retains in South Africa the trivial name which it has received in England.

"By proclamation in the Government Gazette saltwort (*Salsola kali*) and *S. Barnaby's thistle* (*Centaurea solstitialis*) are declared noxious weeds in the Division of Bedford." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 5 January, 1912.)

Saint Helena peach.—A variety of peach the flesh of which is yellow.

"One kind of peach, known as the *St. Helena peach* . . . is in such incredible abundance that in some places pigs are fed on the ripe fruit." (Brook's "Natal," p. 293, 1876.)

"Probably the yellow *St. Helena* is the best self stock to graft on." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 189, 1896.)

Saint Monday.—Monday is generally observed as a holiday by the Malays of the Cape Peninsula, hence this designation.

"It is quite a common sight, especially on *Saint Monday*, to see eight, ten, or twelve people, crammed into one" (a Cape cart). (Cole's "Reminiscences," p. 68, 1896.)

Saint Peter's fish.—An east coast name for *Dentex rupestris*. See Rooi steenbras.

"On each side is a fairly large vertical black mark . . . this marking is responsible for the fish being sometimes called *St. Peter's fish*, the idea being that the marks were caused by St. Peter seizing one of these fish to extract the coin from its mouth with which to pay tribute." ("East London Dispatch," 29 July, 1905.)

Sakabula.—(Zulu, *i Sakabulo*, the large Kaffir finch.) *Coliopasser procne.* This name is in general use all over Natal. It is one of the very few polygamous passerine birds.

"This bird is well known in the Colony by its Kaffir name '*isakubula*'." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 67, 1899.)

"They bartered the highly prized tail feathers of the *sakaboola* bird, which they were adepts at catching, for food and other commodities." ("East London Dispatch," p. 3, 20 July, 1912.)

Salamander.—(Grk. *σαλαμανρα*, an animal of the lizard kind that was supposed to be able to extinguish fire.) This name is applied by the Dutch to lizards generally.

"These stones and the cavities among them serve as a retreat for . . . serpents, *salamanders*, lizards, mice, and moles." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 45, 1818.)

Saldanha Bay.—A bay situate on the west coast of the Cape Colony, it is named after Antonio de Saldanha, the Portuguese Commander who visited the Cape in 1503. This name seems to have been used occasionally by early writers, of Table Bay.

"The ships which were lying in Table Bay should immediately take shelter in that of *Saldanha*." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 28, 1796.)

Saldanha Bay rye.—See Rye, Saldanha Bay.

Saldanier.—A Hottentot from the neighbourhood of Saldanha Bay was so called by the early Dutch colonists.

"The Ottentoo Herry . . . coming with two *Saldaniers* before the gate, and requested to be admitted." (Moodie's "Records," p. 16, 1841. Van Riebeeck's "Journal," 9 October, 1652.)

Salie.—(D. *salie*, sage.) The numerous species of *Salvia* found in South Africa are known by this name among the Dutch; but beside these *Chilianthus olaceus*, *Brachylena elliptica*, *Tarchonanthus camphoratus*, and *Buddleia salviæfolia*, all share this name with the true *Salviæ*.

Salie hout.—(D. *salie*, sage; *hout*, wood.) See Sage wood.

Salie tree.—(D. *salie*, sage.) See Sage wood and Salie hout.

"Wild willows and feathery-flowered *zalie trees* grew in delightful profusion." (Slater's "The Sunburnt South," p. 11, 1908.)

Salmon, Cape.—This name seems to be applied somewhat variously along the coast; at Durban it is given to the Kabeljauw (q.v.); at East London and Port Elizabeth it is given to a large kind of herring, *Elops saurus;* and at Cape Town to the Geelbek (q.v.); this is the cause of considerable confusion.

Salt, To.—(1) To salt a mine or reef is to adopt some device which will deceive a possible investor into believing that that which is worthless contains precious minerals in paying quantity. Gold, for example, has been fired from a gun on to the exposed quartz, *visible* gold being the result. (2) To give an animal immunity from any disease by inocu-

lation or some other means. The peculiar use of the word in the last quotation should be noted.

"They certainly are the genuine article, and if, as some people say, the fields are *salted*, there must be a precious fine mine of rock gold somewhere to supply the nuggets." ("Queenstown Free Press," 21 October, 1873.)

"In accordance with the use of the word *salt* in the South African language, we subsequently employ the term *salted beast* to denote those animals which have withstood rinderpest, and through this are not liable to contract the disease. Thus the expression *to salt a beast* means to render the animal immune to the disease, to immunize him." ("C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 6, 9 January, 1898.)

"All farmers agree that cattle which recover" (i.e. from lamziekte) "do not *salt* from the disease, in other words, there is no immunity." ("S.A. Agric. Jour.," p. 54, July 1912.)

Salted.—(1) At first the word appears to have been employed of animals which had been inured by exposure, either to climate or to some certain disease. (2) Now it means that the animal has actually had a usually fatal disease, either by inoculation or otherwise, and has recovered therefrom—with reference to that particular disease the animal is said to be "salted" and is regarded as being proof against a fresh attack.

"The only thing I had was my *salted* riding horse." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South-East Africa," p. 27, 1877.)

"This lot were thoroughly *salted*, that is they had worked all over South Africa, and so had become proof (comparatively speaking) against 'red-water'." (Haggard's "King Solomon's Mines," p. 42, 1887.)

"Inoculating *unsalted* horses with some of the blood serum of salted ones in order to protect them from horse-sickness poison." ("Scientific African," p. 42, 1896.)

Salt-lick.—An American name given by hunters to those localities the soil of which was largely impregnated with various saline minerals; and which, on this account, were much frequented by wild animals. After rains the saline crystals formed on the surface of the ground would be eagerly licked off by them.

"These pans or *salt licks* are met with in several parts of South Africa." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 135, 1850.)

"During my peregrinations, however, I have seen something of every kind of sport, whether at night by the side of the mirrored water, or the *salt lick*, or by day on foot or on horseback, and I must conscientiously declare that in my opinion a midnight ambush by a pool, well frequented by animals, is worth all the other modes of enjoying a gun put together." (Andersson's "Okovango River," p. 85, 1861.)

Salt pan.—An anglicized form of the Dutch "zout-pan". See Pan.

"It was one of those salt water lakes which abound in South Africa, where they are called *zout-pans* by the colonists." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 123, 1801.)

"The country where these lakes, or *salt pans* as they are styled, are situated." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 76, 1856.)

"I walked to see those wonderful *Salt pans*. . . . The salt and soda brine is perpetually oozing from the bottom, and is continually being scraped up with a sort of wooden scraper into heaps, where, after a time, by the action of the atmosphere, it becomes crystallized. . . . These *salt pans* are the property of the Transvaal Government." (Sir F. Young's "A Winter Tour in South Africa," pp. 67-68, 1890.)

Salt-wort.—*Salsola kali,* found on sandy sea-shores.

"By proclamation in the 'Government Gazette' *saltwort* (*Salsola kila*) and S. Barnaby's thistle (*Centaurea solstitialis*) are declared noxious weeds in the division of Bedford." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 5 January, 1912.)

Sambal.—(Mal. "*Sambal,* a spiced condiment in general use." Crawford.) Finely shredded onions, quinces, cucumbers, etc., prepared with vinegar and various spices, and used as a relish with meat. A favourite salad with the Dutch colonists.

"The most common seasoning employed to give a relish to their insipid food is the *lombock* (i.e. red pepper); triturated with salt it is called *sambel.*" (Raffles' "History of Java," I. p. 98, 1817.)

"There are recipes for quince jam and jelly . . . and for a quince *Sambal* (i.e. green chutney), a Malay recipe." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 84, 1902.)

Sambalbroek.—(D. *broek,* trousers.) A humorous name for the very wide trousers worn by the Malays.

Sambriel.—(Port. *sumbriero,* that which shades.) An umbrella.

"Close behind it followed the heir apparent, on foot, under a *sambreel*, or sunshade of state." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 87, 1798.)

Sambriel or **Samareel boom.**—(Port. *sumbriero*, that which shades; *boom*, a tree.) Another name for *Cussonia spicata*. See Cabbage tree.

"Harvey says: 'Tree 15 feet high, with the aspect of a palm, called by the colonists *Samareelboom*, *Nojesboom*'. *Samareelboom* means umbrella tree." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 230, 1907.)

Sambrieltje.—(Dim. of above.) A parasol, sun-shade.

Sambriero.—(Port. *sumbriero*, that which shades.) A broad-brimmed straw hat.

"I had just fallen down a sand-bank while running after a large butterfly, when I heard Lulu shout for me, but I did not take any notice until I had secured the specimen under my broad-brimmed *sombrero*." (Farini's "Through the Kalahari Desert," p. 334, 1886.)

Sammy.—See Ramasammy, of which this is an abbreviation.

Sampan.—*Ornithodorus savignyi, var. cæcus*. A particularly poisonous member of the Tick (*Ixodidæ*) Family. See Tampan tick.

"Omab, subst. *samban* (bunte, giftige Buschlaussorte)." (Krönlein's "Wortschatz der Khoi-Khoin," p. 271, 1889.)

"The ground beneath is full of the dreaded *sampans*, which bury themselves in his flesh and cause serious injury." (Scully's "Between Sun and Sand," p. 8, 1898.)

Sancord.—*Sebastes maculatus*. Known also as the bastard Jakob Evertsen.

Sandalwood.—*Excœcaria africana*. The natives make necklaces and charms of the scented wood of this tree.

Sand hoppers.—Small *Crustaceæ* (*Orchestiidæ*) found in the sand of the sea-shore, they move by springing.

"Their stomachs were filled with small *sand-hoppers* (*Crustacea*)." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 705, 1875-84.)

Sand mole.—See Duin mole and Cape mole.

"The *sand mole* inhabits the dunes, flats, and other sandy localities along the coast, throwing up the sand at intervals in hills a foot high." ("The State," p. 231, September, 1912.)

Sand quail.—*Turnix Hottentotta*. See Rietkwartel.

Sand quick.—A Bechuanaland name for *Schmidtia bulbosa, Stapf.* (Burtt-Davy, "S.A. Agric. Journ.," July, 1912.)

Sand river.—A river the water of which runs under the sand and can be obtained by digging to a slight depth.

"The Setlagoli is, however, a *sand river*, water flows beneath the sand; and even in time of drought pools of water are to be found here and there over its course." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 21, 1893.)

Sand shark.—See Viool visch and Zand-kruiper.

Sand smelt.—*Percis nebulosa, C. and V.*, is so named in Natal.

Sand worm.—A minute parasite, probably of fungoid character, which burrows along under the skin of the foot, causing almost intolerable itching and inflammation.

"The next visitation was caused by the absence of shoe leather and the practice of going bare-footed, especially by young people, it was popularly known as *Sand-worm*." (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 504, 1899.)

Sarani.—(Mal. *nasrani, sarani,* a corruption of Nazarene, a Christian.) In some parts of the Western Province this term is applied to professing Christians of coloured blood. The Patriot-Woordeboek derives this word from *Saracene* (!).

"Orang *Sirani* or Nazarenes, is the name given by the Malays to the Christian descendants of the Portuguese." (Wallace's "The Malay Archipelago," p. 311, 1872.)

Sardine.—A small species of herring—*Clupea ocellata*—very abundant on the coast at times, is so called. See Sussie.

Saroet or **Seroet.**—(Tamil, *shuruttu,* a roll of tobacco.) In the Cape Colony this word retains its older meaning of "cigar," but it is also used of Manilla and Natal cigars cut off at both ends. See Serootje.

Sassaby.—(Sech. *Tsessebe.*) *Damaliscus lunatus,* found in the low country of the Transvaal, Southern Rhodesia, etc.

"There were standing within shot of me at once about three hundred pallahs, about twelve *sassaybys,* and twenty zebras." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," II. p. 119, 1850.)

Sassatjes.—(Mal. *sisate,* minced meat, meat chopped.) Veal or mutton cutlets curried slightly and cooked on a wooden skewer over a clear wood fire. They are quite as toothsome as a "Wiener schnitzel".

"*Sasaitie,* or cabobs, is really no despicable eating." ("C.G.H. Lit. Gazette," p. 138, 2 September, 1833.)

"A Hittite . . . with a long spear and a very pronounced intention to spit you on it, like a *sassatje*." ("Cape Argus," 22 December, 1894.)

Sausage tree, or **Bologna-sausage tree.**—*Kigelia pinnata* is known by this name in Rhodesia, etc. The reference is to the appearance of the fruit.

"It (*Hyphantornis xanthops, Hartl.*) was procured by Mr. Jameson on the Umvuli River on 11 September, where, however, it was not very common, feeding among the blossoms of the *sausage tree*." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 438, 1875-84.)

Saw-fish.—At the Cape this name is given to *Prisiophorus cirrhatus*.

Scab.—See Black spot.

Scab.—A disease among stock called by the Dutch "Brand-ziekte" (q.v.); it is the result of an abnormal and unhealthy condition of skin, due to irritation caused by myriads of microscopic mites or acari, of which there appear to be several varieties.

"*Scab*, or brand-ziekte of the Angora goat, is not nearly so difficult to cure as that of the Boer goat." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 329, 1896.)

Scab Act.—An Act passed by the Cape Parliament having for its object the prevention of the spread of scab in the Colony, and its ultimate eradication.

"The Chief Scab Inspector is nominally in control of the working of the *Scab Act*." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 369, 1896.)

Scabbard fish.—*Lepidopus argyreus*. See Kalk visch.

Scab inspector.—An official appointed under the above Act to examine flocks for scab.

Scald, To.—To wring a horse's back.

"Horse blankets . . . very often had the effect of *scalding* a horse's back, making it soft and causing . . . sore backs." (Fenn's "How I volunteered for the Cape," p. 194, 1879.)

Scavenger.—*Lethrinus scoparius*. A Natal name for this fish.

"Among other sorts I noticed . . . *scavengers*, blue-fish." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 719, 1906.)

Scavenger beetle.—*Scarabæus*. The designation sometimes given to the Mistkruier or Tumble-bug (q.v.).

"The *Scavenger beetle* is often seen and sometimes may be

found in the act of rolling a spherical mass of dung into a satisfactory place, where it may sink it into the ground and lay its eggs in the warmth-producing mass." (Tangye's "In New South Africa," p. 270, 1896.)

Schaapboer.—(D. *schaap*, a sheep; *boer*, a farmer.) A sheep farmer.

"These plants were known to the veeboer or *schaapboer* as the cause of the troubles they produce, long before any scientific investigation of their properties had been made." ("S.A. Agric. Jour.," p. 61, July, 1912.)

Schaapbosjes.—(D. *schaap*, a sheep; *bos*, a bush.) *Pentzia virgata* is known by this name.

"Besides the many kinds of sweet grass, we also saw many kinds of small shrubs resembling our *schaapboschjes*." (Du Toit's "Rhodesia," p. 120, 1897.)

Schaapendrolletjes.—*Plectronia ventosa* and *P. ciliata*.

"Serissa? capensis. (Thunberg's 'Flora Capensis, Burm. Afr.,' p. 257, Table 94.) (Vulgó) *schaapdrolletjes*." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 31, 1822.)

Schaapsteker.—(D. *schaap*, a sheep; *steken*, to sting.) *Trimerorhinus rhombeatus*. A snake which does *not* kill sheep as its popular name would seem to imply; nor is it the excessively poisonous snake which it has the reputation of being.

"The *Scarpsticker* of the Dutch, or night adder, a small, dingy-brown adder, spotted with black, about eighteen inches long." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 406, 1856.)

"The farmer, or his herdsman, comes along, finds the dying sheep, and seeing *Schaapstekers* about, immediately concludes that they are the guilty parties, hence the name *Schaapsteker*, which means 'sheepsticker'." (Fitzsimon's "Snakes of South Africa," p. 130, 1912.)

Schaapwachter.—(D. *schaap*, a sheep; *wacht*, a guard.) A shepherd.

"A few slight instructions from a *schaapwagter* (shepherd) whom we met with were considered sufficient." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 236, 1822.)

Schaapwachtertje.—(Dim. of above.) *Saxicola pileata*. This favourite among the birds is so styled because, possessing great powers of mimicry, it not only imitates other birds, but whistles exactly as the shepherd does when driving his sheep. See Nachtegaal and Rossignol.

"The *Schaapwagtertje* (little shepherd) so called from its familiarity in approaching the Hottentots, while attending their sheep, is a bird common to all the open country of this part of South Africa." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 270, 1822.)

"The *Schaapwachter* (shepherd) of the Boers, a *Saxicola* . . . was often seen and heard." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 54, 1889.)

Schai.—(Mansvelt says, "warsch, een afgesleten vorm van *schaden*, benadeelen," but is it not an attempt to reproduce the Hottentot *ă (dental click) to steal, quietly to remove?) To steal, "to jump" (q.v.).

Schanz.—(D. *schans*, a redoubt; G. *Schanze*, a trench, bulwark.) A protection or defence made of stones, earth, thorn-bushes, etc. The Basutos are very clever at building these.

"Anfänglich baueten sie an dem Salz-Flusse (Zout Rivier) eine *Schanze* von Holz und Erde, und hielte eine Wache zur Sicherheit ihrer Heerden darinnen." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 200, 1745.)

"'Lucky I took the precaution of building a *schanz*, eh?' said Renshaw." (Mitford's "Renshaw Fanning's Quest," p. 177, 1894.)

Schanz, To.—To fortify a place by means of schanzen, as the Basutos did when besieged by the colonial forces on Thaba Bosigo, 1880.

"The top of this mountain was about a mile long, and about a half a mile broad, and was completely *schanzed* in every direction." (Moodie's "Battles," II. p. 185, 1888.)

Schanz wache.—(D. *schans*, a redoubt; *wacht*, a guard.) The men set to man and guard these fortifications.

"The line-guard, also called the *schanz wache*, or foot-guard." (Damberger's "Travels," p. 8 n., 1801.)

Schei.—(D. *schei*, a transom, cross-bar.) Sometimes they are called "yoke-scheis"—flat, wooden pegs passing through the yoke on each side of the neck of the ox, from the lower ends of which a thong passes just below the throat of the ox, securing the yoke in position.

"At each end of it (the yoke), the trek-chain being fastened to the middle, is a pair of notched slips of wood, called *skeis*, let into holes in the yokes at a sufficient distance apart for the neck of an ox to fit in between them." (Balfour's "Twelve Hundred Miles in a Waggon," p. 72, 1895.)

Schelm.—(D. *schelm,* a rascal, rogue. The word was used by English writers of the seventeenth century, as Pepys, Taylor the Water Poet, etc.; and Burns, in his immortal "Tam o' Shanter," makes Tam's wife address him thus:—

She tauld thee weel thou wast a *skellum,*
A bletherin', blusterin', drunken blellum.)

The word is used all over South Africa for (1) A thievish ne'er-do-well; (2) a bad-tempered animal.

"1654, 6 August. These *schelms* give us nothing but such affronts as they can or may." (Riebeeck's "Journal," Moodie's "Records," p. 53, 1841.)

"For the bold *skelm*-beast is preparing to fight." (Pringle's "Poems," p. 114, 1828.)

"It is my belief that a thorough Cape *schelm* would give at least two points in the rubber of roguery, and beat the best English swindler living." (Drayson's "Sporting Scenes," p. 314, 1858.)

Schep.—(D. *scheppen,* to scoop, to dip out.) To *schep* water is to dip it up with a small vessel into a larger one. *Opschep* is the order to dish up for the table, and a *schepje* is a small portion from one of the dishes on the table.

"The farmer gave the order to 'schenk een zoopje' (pour out a dram), and then to *skep op* (set the victuals on the table)." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 50, 1838.)

Schepsel.—(D. *schepsel,* a creature.) A creature, a cowardly rascal, applied to natives or coloured people.

"The coloured (people) who are generally styled heathen, or *schepsels,* creatures." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 620, 1844.)

"Die farbige Race, die er nicht als Menschen, sondern als *schepsels* (Geschöpfe) betrachtet." (Kranz's "Süd-Afrika," p. 53, 1880.)

Scherm.—(D. *scherm,* a screen, fence; G. *Schirm,* screen, shade.) A screen, or ambush, generally made of branches of trees.

"Two or three *scherms* for night shooting had been thrown up." (Baines' "Explorations," p. 131, 1864.)

"The bed-room is generally the lee side of a bush or *scherm* of cut branches." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign," 1896, p. 169, 1897.)

Schietertje.—(D. *schieten,* to shoot.) A boy's catapult. See Rekkertje.

Schildpad.—(D. *schild,* a shield; *pad,* a toad; *schildpad,* a tortoise, a turtle.) (1) A tortoise. (2) It is also a term of contempt applied to a lazy person.

"Tortoises of various species are also numerous, their colonial name is *skilpot,* which is a corruption of *Schildpat,* shield-toad." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 489, 1844.)

"The *skelpot,* he's got a head like a puff-adder." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 43, 1897.)

Schildpad besjes.—(D. *bes,* a berry.) The fruit of *Mundtia spinosa, D.C.,* which is slightly astringent.

"The fruit . . . is eaten by the children and Hottentots who call them *skildpatbesjes.*" (Pappe's "Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," p. 2, 1868.)

"Eatable berries occur, among others, on *Mundtia spinosa* (*schildpad besjes*)." (Marloth's "Annual Address, S.A. Phil. Soc.," p. 11, 29 August, 1894.)

Schildpad bos.—The name given in Namaqualand to a bush the seed-pods of which are not unlike a tortoise's head in shape.

Schildpaddop.—(D. *dop,* shell, pod.) The shell of the tortoise.

Schildpadje.—A species of *Coccinellida* with semi-transparent elytra.

Schildpad trick.—A game in which two boys fasten themselves together with a riem round the waist or neck, then turning their backs to each other and going upon all fours, the riem passing between their legs, each tries to pull the other, the one who succeeds in pulling his opponent after him, does the trick, or trek.

"Two of the drivers, Jan and Harry, performed the *schildpat* (tortoise) *trick.*" (Baines' "Explorations," p. 386, 1864.)

Schild slang.—(D. *schild,* a shield; *slang,* a snake.) *Aspidelaps scutatus*—found in Natal, Orange Free State, Transvaal, etc.

Schimmel.—(D. *schimmel,* a grey horse. Sanders, the great German lexicographer, says: The name (Schimmel) probably means the shimmering one (*das schimmernde Ross*).) A grey horse; these however are further distinguished by the predominant colour; e.g. "blauw-schimmel," a blue-grey horse; "rooischimmel," a red or iron-grey horse. These are the favourite colours for horses among colonists.

"I was brusquely informed that if I wanted to purchase the *schimmel* (roan), I must return in the evening." (Napier's "Excursions," I. p. 295, 1849.)

"This feat was performed . . . by one horse, a large grey or *schimmel*, the favourite colour in South Africa." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 109, 1852.)

"A '*blaauw schimmel* paard' is a dappled grey, and others are distinguished as red or brown according to their colour." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South-east Africa," p. 66, 1877.)

Schimmel day.—An expression meaning "early dawn." This appears to be a corruption of *Schemer dag* (D. *schemer*, twilight, dusk), when the light first shimmers. See Schimmel.

"I may as well explain that *schimmel* means mottled, or dappled. *Schimmel day* is when the light clouds begin to be dappled with the tints of early dawn, but the word is generally used to imply the time of dawn, even though there are no clouds." (Baines' "Gold Regions of South-east Africa," p. 66, 1877.)

Schlenter.—(1) A slang word meaning dubious, untrustworthy, make-believe; it was in use in this sense on the Diamond Fields. (2) The word then came to mean an imitation, a counterfeit; as a singular noun it was used to designate imitation gold, while as a plural noun it was applied to imitation diamonds, some of which, made of glass, were such close and clever imitations as to deceive even those who were regarded as experts.

"'Of course,' whispers the seller who had pushed his way to the side of the buyer, 'this sale was only *schlenter*'." (Comtesse de Bremont's "The Gentleman Digger," p. 99, 1891.)

"Numerous were the offers to subscribe handsomely to the stakes in event of the challenge being no *schlenter* one." (Couper's "Mixed Humanity," p. 384.)

"Rosseau took the detectives to a plantation at Belgravia, where he showed them a small sack containing bars of gold or *schlenter*." ("Cape Argus," Weekly Edition, p. 35, 16 March, 1898.)

"Good Lord, man, can't you see they're all *schlenters*." (Griffith's "Knaves of Diamonds," p. 35, 1899.)

Schoenlapper.—(D. *schoonlapper*, a cobbler; *lappen*, to patch, botch, mend.) In South Africa this word, which in

Holland seems to be applied to one species only, is used by the Dutch for butterflies generally.

Schoff.—See Skoff.

Schoffel.—(D. *schoffelen,* to hoe, to clear of weeds; cf. Eng. *shovel.*) A hoe; a weeding tool.

Schoffel, To.—To clear the ground of vegetable growth with a hoe or spade: sometimes corrupted to "scuffle".

"In old lands no kind of preparation keeps the annual weeds down, and annual *schoffeling* must be practised for several years." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journ.," p. 339, 1897.)

"The flowering of the wild chestnut . . . and the ripening of the fruit on the Kaffir plum, show that it is time to *scuffle.*" (A. Smith's "Short Papers on South African Subjects," p. 42, 1893.)

Schoffler.—One who clears the ground by "schoffeling".

"In the native lands, where the owner cannot rise to a 75, the *scoffler* is busy with the hoe." ("East London Dispatch," 16 September, 1904.)

Schoft.—(D. *schoft,* a quarter of a day.) (1) In the South African vernacular this term is applied to the wagon journey from one outspan to another, covering a period that varies from four to six hours. (2) It also means part of a working day; a job.

"Four such hours with a horse or with eight oxen are reckoned to make one *skoft.*" (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 137, 1785.)

"Each day's journey is called a *skoff* and the length of these is generally regulated by local circumstances, being from five to fifteen hours." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 55, 1801.)

"It was seventy days' journey with an ox wagon (*schoften*) from Kuruman to the Zambezi without delay." ("Queenstown Free Press," 6 February, 1861.)

Schoolmaster.—Schoolmastering in the early days of the Colony was the resort of those whose expedients for securing a livelihood were wellnigh exhausted. Deserted sailors, discharged soldiers and others, whose attainments were of a very elementary character, would journey from farm to farm teaching (?) a few weeks at each place, with what result can be imagined. The Educational Department has succeeded in producing, even on the farthest outlying farms, a vastly better condition of things, and a good education is now within reach of all.

"The Cape *Schoolmaster* is an institution of the land. . . . The pedagogue is a circulating creature who rides from farm to farm, taking his pupils in such order as he can." (Boyle's "Chronicles of No Man's Land," p. 88, 1880.)

"Among wealthy Boers . . . the *Schoolmaster* is an officer of the household as one may say. . . . The *Schoolmaster* is in fact half-secretary, half-steward, and all servant." (*Ibid.*, p. 89.)

Schoorsteen veger.—(D. *schoorsteen,* a chimney; *vegen,* to sweep; *veger,* a brush.) *Ibis Æthiopica, Lath.* The Sacred ibis, which ranges throughout the whole of Africa.

"A few specimens of the Sacred ibis or *Schoorstein veger* (lit. chimney-sweep) as it is called by the colonists, have come under our notice." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 736, 1875-84.)

Schotel.—(D. *schotel,* a dish; Lat. *scutella;* cf. Eng. *scuttle.*) A dish whether of earthenware or tin.

Schrik.—(D. *schrik,* fright, terror.) A start, a fright. The word is in common use, both as a noun and as a verb, all over South Africa.

"But, lor' bless yer, the *schreik* he gave me." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 173, 1897.)

"The oxen *skreeked* in a bunch." (Haggard's "Nada the Lily," p. 2.)

Schrikkeljaar.—(D. *schrikkelen,* to spring, jump.) Leap year is so termed, because at one time, instead of adding a twenty-ninth day to February (*Schrikkelmaand*) every fourth year, a day was interjected between the 23rd and 24th of the month—*men schrikkelt een dag over.* The same method was employed in Germany, hence the terms: *Schaltjahr, Schalttag,* from *schalten* to insert. *Hij komt alle Schrikkeljaar kerk toe,* lit. "He comes to church every leap-year," i.e. very seldom.

Schuins pad.—(D. *schuinsch,* sloping, aslant; *pad,* path, road.) A road on the side of a hill with a slope across it towards the fall of the hill.

"The road ran round a projecting swell of the ground, which descending almost abruptly, left no level space for the wheels, and made what the Dutch call a *scuinsch pad,* and a very *squint path* it was certainly." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 79, 1852.)

Schurvejantje.—(D. *schurft,* scurvy, scab; *Jantje,* Johnny.) The name given to a rough scaled variety of lizard.

Schurvepadda.—(D. *schurft*, scurvy, scab; *pad*, a toad.) A rough skinned frog or toad.

Schut.—(D. *schut*, a fence, screen.) The common name in South Africa for what is known in England as the "pound"; an enclosure for strayed animals. It is often spelled and generally pronounced "Skit" (q.v.).

Schut hocks.—(D. *schut*, a fence, screen; *hok*, a pen, enclosure.) Sheds or outbuildings for animals.

"The party off-saddled here . . . stowed away a part of the unbroken furniture in the *schut-hocks* around the dwelling . . . saddled up and went down to Mr. Temple Nourse's farm." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," p. 253, 1852.)

Schut kraal.—A kraal employed as a schut or pound. See Skit kraal.

"On calling for the horses I had engaged, found they had been put in the *schut-kraal*, or pound." (Thomson's "Travels," p. 26, 1827.)

"A cherished institution of the Boers, by whom it is known throughout South Africa as the *Schut kraal.*" (Russell's "Old Durban," p. 151, 1899.)

Schut meester.—(D. *meester*, master.) The official in charge of the pound. See Skit master.

Schut vee.—(D. *vee*, cattle.) Impounded cattle. See Skit cattle.

Schut verkoping.—(D. *verkooping*, sale, auction.) The public sale by auction of impounded stock. See Skit sale.

Scissor grinder.—*Platypleura capensis.* The name given to this *Cicada*, because its deafening, unmusical (the ancients notwithstanding) noise is supposed to resemble that made by a scissor grinder. See Singertje.

Scorpion spider.—*Phrynus reneformis.* This *Arachnid* is so named in Natal.

Scotch.—A common South African term denoting certain brands of whisky.

Scotch cart.—A strongly built, springless cart in use on nearly every farm in the country.

"Performing their pilgrimage by every means of locomotion from the bipedal shank's mare, or *scotch-cart* drawn by two oxen, to the spanking turnout of the wealthiest farmer." ("Cape Illustrated Magazine," p. 90, 1892.)

Scotchman.—This is the peculiar designation given by the natives to a florin; it is said to have originated thus: a

certain Scotchman employed a number of natives at half a crown a day, at the end of the engagement he palmed off upon the unsophisticated labourers a number of florins as half-crowns, it was not until they tried to pass them as half-crowns that they discovered how they had been "had". See also Ama-German.

"In dealing with Kaffirs I frequently heard the term *Scotchman* applied to a two-shilling piece." (Atcherley's "A Trip to Boerland," p. 55, 1879.)

"Jantjis touched his hat; spat on the *Scotchman* as the natives of that part of South Africa call a two-shilling piece." (Haggard's "Jess," p. 93, 1887.)

Scotchman.—*Dentex præorbitalis, Günther,* is known by this name in Natal.

Sea bamboo, or **Trumpets.**—*Eklonia buccinalis.* This large marine alga is thus designated in the Cape Peninsula.

"On 10 November we saw for the first time trumpets, or *sea-bamboo,* floating on the ocean." (Stavorinus' "Voyages," I. p. 25, 1798.)

"The Dutch call this plant *Zee-bambos* (sea-bamboo), and boys after cutting its stem to a convenient length when dry, sometimes amuse themselves in blowing as a horn or trumpet, but the sound thus produced is very hollow and dull." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 28, 1822.)

"The gigantic stems of the *Sea-trumpet* (*Ecklonia buccinalis, Horn*)." (Pappe's "Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," p. 45, 1868.)

Sea-cow.—*Hippopotamus amphibius, L.* It would seem that the Dutch name—Zee-koe—of which this is the anglicized form, is due to a striving after meaning on the part of the early Dutch colonists. The latter half of the name appears to be a corruption of the Hottentot name of the animal * *gao* (with an initial palatal click). In the first place, supporting this suggestion, the Dutch name is applied to both sexes alike. Then there is nothing in the outward appearance of the animal to suggest the name koe or cow; and there is on the other hand, in the colonial pronunciation of the above name, a distinct approximation to the sound of the Hottentot name as pronounced by the Hottentots themselves. The new sense having crept into the Hottentot word, the Dutch word zee (sea, lake) would have to be prefixed to distinguish the animal from the ordinary cow.

"In the great rivers there is a Monstrous Creature which they call a *Sea-cow*, the Flesh, or to say better, the Lard of it is good to eat, and hath a very pleasant taste." ("A Voyage to Siam," by six Jesuits, p. 74, 1688.)

"The huge animal has doubtless obtained its present name of hippopotamus, which signifies 'river-horse' merely in consequence of the neighing sound it makes, as otherwise in its form it bears not the least resemblance to a horse, but rather to a hog. Neither does it in the least resemble an ox; so it could only be the different stomachs of this animal which could occasion it to be called *sea-cow* at the Cape; and perhaps it is for the same reason that the Hottentots call it *t'gao*, which nearly approaches to *t'kau*, the name by which the buffalo is known among these people." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 290, 1785.)

"Nor can anything be more inapplicable than the colonial name of *Zeekoe* (*Sea-cow*), to which animal I never could perceive that it had in any respect the slightest similitude." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 412, 1822.)

"The hippopotamus is termed by the colonist *Zekoe* or Sea-cow, the least applicable designation perhaps, not excepting that of the river-horse, that could have been conferred." (Harris's "Wild Sports," p. 220 n., 1839.)

"In order that I may not appear paradoxical, I must explain that in alluding to a *sea-cow* as 'him,' I used the generic term *sea-cow* by which this animal is spoken of in South Africa." (Moodie's "Battles," II. p. 450, 1888.)

Sea-devil.—See Devil fish.

"This evening several *Sea-devils* or Rays passed by our ship, being flat fishes, two or three fathom long, of an ugly figure." (Kaempfer's "History of Japan," p. 90, Reprint, Vol. I. Orig. pub., 1727.)

"A few days ago one of the local shops had on exhibition a very bizarre form of fish in the angler, fishing frog, or *sea-devil* (*Lophius piscatorius*)." ("East London Dispatch," 24 June, 1905.)

Sealice.—One or more varieties of small crustaceans, found in the sand and used as bait, are so named in Natal.

"Natal boasts a very fine bait unknown to us at East London. It is known as *sea-lice*." ("East London Dispatch," 9 January, 1907.)

Sea snake.—*Hydrus platurus*—not uncommon on the

South African coast and very poisonous; the flat tail and body enable them to swim actively. See also Zee slang.

"The only species of *Sea snake* which inhabits the ocean about the coasts of South Africa is the black and yellow species." (Fitzsimon's "Snakes of South Africa," p. 159, 1898.)

Secretary bird.—*Serpentarius secretarius.* A well-known South African bird, somewhat unduly esteemed as a snake and vermin destroyer. It has a curious crest of feathers which it can raise or depress at will, not unlike in appearance pens stuck behind the ear, to which it is indebted for its popular name. See Slang vreeter.

"The *Secretaries bird* though it has already been brought alive to Europe . . . is too remarkable among the feathered kind to be left unnoticed." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 153, 1785.)

"The *Secretary bird* (*Serpentarius secretarius*), though very unlike one's idea of a hawk, is undoubtedly an aberrant member of the Accipitrine Order." ("Science in South Africa," p. 142, 1905.)

Semmels.—(D. *zemelen*, bran; F. *semoule;* It. *semola*, bran; Lat. *simila*, finest wheat flour.) (1) Bran. (2) The Dutch have applied this term to a substance not unlike bran in appearance, found in the neighbourhood of Jagersfontein.

"A quantity of *simmels* (coarse bran) also lay on the ground." (Kay's "Researches," p. 503, 1833.)

"At Jagersfontein there is a substance of a singular character, which from its appearance has been named by the Boers *semmels* (bran). This is a fine clayey debris, glistening with talc, and is undoubtedly the detritus from the talcose claystone or clayey schist." ("Cape Monthly Magazine," II. p. 359, 1871.)

Sens.—(G. *Sense*, a scythe.) The Cape Dutch name for a scythe.

Serang.—(Pers. *sarhang*, a commander or overseer.) According to Yule and Burnell, in Anglo-Indian usage, "a native boatswain, or chief of a lascar crew; the skipper of a small native vessel," is so called; in Cape Dutch it is applied to the overseer of a gang of labourers.

"From Malay or Indian sources we have pisang, penang (curry), blatjang (sauce), *serang* (leader of a gang)." ("Northern News," 27 August, 1912.)

Sergeant-major.—*Sargus cervinus* has been thus designated at East London, because of its "stripes".

"*Sargus cervinus*, our very common Zebra, or as it is sometimes called, the *sergeant major*, on account of its very distinct stripes." ("East London Dispatch," 26 June, 1906.)

Seringa.—(D. *sering*, lilac.) *Melia azedirach.*

"The watercourses . . . along which we had sown the seeds of the *seringa*-boom." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 103, 1852.)

"*Seringa* trees are planted along the sides of the streets." (Mann's "Natal," p. 109, 1859.)

Serootje.—See Saroet.

"As Mr. Baxter has finished his *cherootje*, we had better all go to bed." (Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 32, 1906.)

Settlers.—In 1820 a number of emigrants were brought out to South Africa under a scheme of State Aided Emigration, and were located principally in the district of Albany; these emigrants are spoken of throughout South Africa as *the* Settlers.

"A sober and dispassionate observer will fully acquit the *Settlers* of any share in provoking the late war." (Boyce's "Notes on South Africa," p. 27, 1838.)

"The charge respecting commandos does not in the least affect the British *Settlers* in Albany." (*Ibid.* VIII.)

"Abundant evidence will be adduced to show that the Kaffirs acted in the offensive, the *Settlers* on the defensive throughout." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-1851," I. p. 5, 1852.)

Settlers' Bible.—The designation sometimes given to the "Grahamstown Journal".

"Time was when the *Settlers' Bible*, the 'Graham's Town Journal,' was *the* paper of the Colony." ("Queenstown Free Press," 23 October, 1861.)

"The 'Journal' was known as 'the *Settlers' Bible*,' and the Settlers swore by it." (Murray's "South African Reminiscences," p. 126, 1894.)

Seur.—(F. *sieur*, *seigneur*, the lord of a manor, a nobleman; Lat. *senior*.) A form of address frequently employed by Dutch-speaking coloured servants when speaking to or of their master.

"I will go first, *sieur*. If there are Kaffirs this old Hot-

tentot will smell them." (Glanville's "The Kloof Bride," p. 174, 1898.)

Seventy-four.—*Dentex rupestris, Cuv.* A delicious table-fish; it has received its name, so tradition says, "from its having been caught from a ship of the line of that number of guns, on dropping anchor in Simon's Bay". ("Cape Monthly Magazine," IV. p. 354, 1873.) Dr. Gilchrist favours another derivation, see below. See Streep-visch.

"Day by day I . . . tasted all the edible treasures extracted from the depths of the seas, such as *seventy-fours.*" ("Cape Monthly Magazine," XI. p. 25, 1875.)

"This derivation" (that is the one referred to above) "may be correct, but another naturally suggests itself to those familiar with the appearance of this fish. The *Seventy-four* is charactised by several very distinct bright blue bands running along the body, not unlike the rows of guns of an ancient man-of-war, one carrying seventy-four guns being considered a well-equipped vessel in those days." (Gilchrist's "History of the Local Names of Cape Fishes," p. 221 (XI. Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.), 1902.)

Seven-weeks' fern.—See Thirty-day fern.

Seven-years' flowers.—The name given by the earlier colonists to the flowers of *Helichrysum vestitum.* See Everlastings and Zevenjaartjes.

"Several sorts of elichrysum . . . the colonists call all this species *seven-years' flowers,* because if gathered when in full bloom, they will last a long time with their beauty unimpaired; seven years according to the popular belief." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 121, 1815.)

Shad.—*Temnodon saltator.* So called in Natal, this fish is known in the Cape Colony as the Elft (q.v.), and at East London as the Chad (q.v.).

"The photo this week is that of the fish known locally as the *Shad.* It arrived here in large shoals in August." ("Natal Mercury Pictoral," p. 251, 1905.)

Shad or **Shaddock.**—*Citrus decumana, L.* The name is said to have been given to the fruit in the West Indies from that of the English captain who introduced it there from the East.

"The *Shaddock* (*Citrus decumanus*) is a large lemon of the size of a child's head, with a moderately acid and refreshing juice." (Thunberg's "Travels," II. p. 278, 1796.)

"We were informed that it was the *Shaddock*, also called vulgarly 'Eve's apple,' or 'forbidden fruit'. By what authority the latter names were given we cannot tell." ("Queenstown Free Press," 19 June, 1861.)

Shake-down, A.—In the language of South Africa this is a rough and ready arrangement for sleeping, when a proper bed is not available.

"Though it was not likely they would be able to sleep much, went through the form of preparing *shake-downs* for them in the dining-room." (Prichard's "Friends and Foes in the Transkei," p. 188, 1880.)

Shank-end, The.—A humorous name applied to the Cape Peninsula.

"In the 'Cape Monthly Magazine' I also contributed the '*Shank end* shindy,' commemorative of a meeting held in Cape Town to condemn the proceedings of the Parliament sitting for the first and last time in Grahamstown." (Justice Cole's "Reminiscences," p. 120, 1896.)

Shankender.—An inhabitant of the Cape Peninsula.

"On the 26th inst. Messrs. . . . will sell the Round House Hotel, which is a popular resort for *Shankenders*." ("East Province Herald," 20 August, 1901.)

Sheep, Cape.—See Cape sheep.

Sheep fish.—The name given to a fish at Knysna.

Sheep's ears.—*Helichrysum appendiculatum, Less.* The plant is so called because of the close resemblance which the woolly leaves bear, when lying flat upon the ground, to sheep's ears.

Sheep's tail.—An abbreviation of "sheep's tail fat."

"And then they did not take kindly to mealie bread and pumpkin fritters, even when fried in *sheep's tail*." (Moodie's "Battles," I. p. 215, 1888.)

Sheep-tail fat.—The heavy tails of the South African or Cape sheep are composed almost entirely of pure fat, which is in great request for culinary purposes in most households.

"The usual way-side meal of greasy mutton-chops floating about in a liquid sea of *sheep-tail fat*." (Ellis's "South African Sketches," p. 6, 1887.)

Sheep-tail fat honey.—A pure-white honey obtained in the Northern Transvaal.

"An absolutely white honey—white as driven snow with a flavour and fragrance peculiarly its own. When expressed

from the comb it almost immediately solidifies to the consistency of vaseline. In this state no one would imagine it to be anything but pure lard. It is known amongst the Boers as *Sheep tail fat honey.*" (" S.A. Agric. Jour.," p. 790, June, 1912.)

Shell.—(D. *geel,* yellow.) A corruption of the Dutch word *geel,* applied in the neighbourhood of King William's Town to the Sijsje (q.v.).

Shell-tick.—The name given in the neighbourhood of Port Elizabeth to what was thought to be a distinct species of tick, but which, it now appears, is the male of the great cattle tick—*Amblyomma Hebræum.*

Shepherd's delight.—The occasional designation of *Adenandra uniflora* and other species.

Shepherd's tree.—*Capparis albitrunca.* A white-barked tree growing in the Karoo, it affords good shade, and is much appreciated by the native herds. See Wit-gat boom.

"The root of the wit-gat or *shepherd's tree* are other favourite foods" (of the porcupine). ("East London Dispatch," 16 August, 1907.)

Shepstone's hen.—In former days Shepstone was a name to conjure with among the natives of Natal. Theophilus Shepstone in the early days of the Colony was the representative among them of the Government, the taxes of which were met by the produce of a few fowls, these were spoken of as "Shepstone's hens".

"In former years a particular fowl, dubbed *Shepstone's hen* would be set apart for the satisfaction, by the sale of its eggs or chicken, of the yearly tax-gatherer". (Robinson's "A Lifetime in South Africa," p. 317, 1900.)

Shimyaan.—The name given in Natal to a powerful intoxicant, made of treacle and water fermented in the sun.

"*Shimyan* and jwarlar were produced for our consumption, and we were invited to witness the usual dancing performances at the kraal after dark." (Lindley's "After Ophir," p. 306, n.d.)

"For many years much trouble was caused by the manufacture in the coast districts of *Shimyaan*. . . ." This beverage was maddening in its effects, and the parent of much crime. (Robinson's "A Lifetime in South Africa," p. 307, 1900.)

Shiners.—(1) Many farms in the Karoo have kraals or walls

built of "packed" stones, i.e. without mortar; a stone built into such a wall with its thickest side outward is known as a "shiner," and is objected to because of the ease with which such stones may be pressed out by the weight above. (2) A slang word for a diamond.

"The great thing to look out for is that the men do not put in *shiners*, that is stones showing their longest way to the front." (Douglass' "Ostrich Farming," p. 39, 1881.)

"When they dug it up they at once came to the conclusion it was a real *shiner*, and delighted with the discovery they took saddle and posted to Imvani." ("Queenstown Free Press," 15 January, 1884.)

Ship of the desert.—The designation sometimes given to the South African buck-wagon.

"Our lady passengers, two in number, we assisted into the 'cartel,' a sort of arbour, constructed for their benefit, at the stern of this *ship of the desert.*" ("Queenstown Free Press," 12 February, 1884.)

"Nowadays every one knows all about the *Ship of the desert*—that wonderful product of the despised Boer mind." (Lacy's "Pictures," p. 223, 1899.)

Shooting the corn off.—(D. *de koren afschieten.*) Part of the merry-making at a Western Province harvest-home; it consists in the firing of guns.

"Powder is given them to enable them to carry out what is known in the vernacular as *shooting the corn off.*" (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 229, 1886.)

Shope.—The Eastern Province name for the fruit of the Waterboom—*Eugenia cordata.*

Shovel-nosed skate.—A species of *Rhinobastus* is thus designated.

"A spotted sand shark, the large variety. Its proper name is *shovel-nosed skate*, and it is common along our coast." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 588, 1906.)

Shrimpi.—See under Swempi.

Shropes.—The edible orange-red fruits of *Mimusops caffra, Sond.* are known by this name. It is a common shrub on the sand hills along the sea beach at East London and Port Alfred.

Sick.—In most parts of South Africa—due, perhaps, to the influence of the Dutch ziek, sick, diseased—this word is not restricted to the idea of "nausea," but retains its older and

wider meaning, and is applicable to any kind of disease; as in Matthew VIII. 14, "Sick of a fever". The word "ill" is but a poor substitute for this old word.

Signal hill.—A part of the mountain to the right of Cape Town from the sea, so called because a signalling station is placed upon the top of it, from which approaching or passing vessels are signalled to the port authorities. It is also called the Lion's Rump, and at one time was known as King James' Mount.

"A long, unbroken hill of moderate height is King James's Mount (the Lion's Rump of the Dutch)." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 14, 1801.)

"On the Lion's Rump is a *signal station* and look-out post, where by hoisting certain numbers of black balls, immediate notice is given of all ships seen in the offing." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 74, 1822.)

Sijbok.—(D. *sijd*, silk; *bok*, a goat.) The angora goat is so called because of its long silky hair.

"Dis differente soorte van Brandsiekte—insektes wat skape, boerbokke en *sybokke* antas." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 170, 1898.)

Sijsje.—(D. *sijsje*, a linnet; G. *Zeisig*, a green finch.) *Fringilla Butyracea, Linn.* The name appears to be onomatopoetic in its origin, and to be connected with the Dutch *sissen*, to hiss. About King William's Town it is known as the Grinnet and Shell (q.v.).

Sikkel bosch.—(D. *sikkel*, a scythe, sickle.) *Dichrostachys nutans* bears this name in the Transvaal.

Silk bark.—See Zijdebast.

"In the gorge beneath the fall an indigenous thicket, yellow-wood, Hottentot cherry, *silk bark*, has been allowed to remain." ("Cape Times," p. 9, 12 October, 1912.)

Silver bark.—The name given in the Eastern Province to *Ochna atropurpurea.* See Cape plane.

"The favourite blossoms of the Ochna or *silver bark.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 3 July, 1909.)

Silver bream.—*Chrysophrys Natalensis, Cart.* A Natal fish.

Silver fish.—(1) *Dentex argyrozona.* The Western Province name of this fish, which shows, when fresh, a beautiful silver sheen, though the fish is a delicate pink. (2) *Dentex rupestris* is known by this name in the Eastern

Province. See Seventy-four. (3) It also appears to be applied to a freshwater fish up country. See the quotation from Bryden. (4) This name is also given to *Lepisma saccharina.* See Silver moth and Fish moth.

" A very common representative of the order (*Aptera*) is *Lepisma,* a small silvery grub-like animal which runs with great rapidity. It is commonly known as the *Silver fish.*" ("Gilchrist's South African Zoology," p. 108, 1911.)

" Speaking of the *silver-fish,* as they are called, there are numbers of them to be found, curiously enough, in a huge, rock-encircled tarn of very deep water about fifteen miles from Mafeking. This tarn lies just over the Transvaal border in Marico, and is well known in the neighbourhood by its Boer name of 'Wonder-gat' (wonder-hole)." (Bryden's " Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 462, 1893.)

Silver Jackal.—*Canis mesomelas.* The fur of this animal has quite a silvery appearance, arising from the white hairs which in summer are very numerous. See Fox and Vos, The name is also applied, and perhaps more appropriately, to *Vulpes chama* on account of its silvery grey, soft, thick fur.

" The *Silver jackal,* which is the largest and most common of the South African jackals, is distributed in more or less quantities all over South Africa, but, as may be imagined, it is far more numerous in the Interior." (Nicoll and Eglington's " The Sportsman in South Africa," p. 95, 1892.)

Silver moth.—(1) *Lepisma saccharina,* is sometimes so called because of the silvery scales with which it is covered. See Fish moth and Silver fish (4).

Silver moth.—(2) *Leto Venus,* a large, beautiful fawn-coloured moth, elegantly marked with silver; it is found in the neighbourhood of Knysna.

" Mr. R. Trimen exhibited specimens of the *Silver moth* (*Leto Venus*) from the Knysna district of the Cape Colony." (" Trans. S.A. Phil. Society," p. xlvi.; V Part II, 1893.)

Silver tree.—*Leucadendron argenteum, R. Br.* This beautiful tree with its silvery leaves grows abundantly on the mountain slopes of the Cape Peninsula, which seems to be its native habitat. The silver sheen of the leaves is due to a dense down of silky white, unbranched, unicellular plant hairs.

" *Silber-baum* . . . die Blatter scheinen als ob sie aus

Seide und Silber bereitet waren." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 410, 1745.)

"The *Protea argentea* or *Silver-tree*, as it is called, exhibited the whole year throughout its glossy white or silver grey leaves." (Sparrman's "Voyage," I. p. 32, 1785.)

"The celebrated *silver tree* . . . produced only in this small peninsula, and in no other part of the world." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," II. p. 116, 1815.)

Singer, or **Singertje.**—A popular designation of the *Cicada*. See Scissor-grinder.

"The day had been very hot and the *singers* in the trees had kept up their incessant drone." ("The Methodist Churchman," p. 5, 21 December, 1904.)

Sinkings.—Toothache and neuralgia are often spoken of by this name, as is also an acute form of rheumatism. See also Zinkins.

"The present seemed a case of *sinkings* only . . . a complaint so universally known and dreaded in this country." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," III. p. 116, 1833.)

"The changeableness of the temperature in the spring and autumn, renders a kind of rheumatism common, which is here called *sinkings*." (Backhouse's "Narrative," p. 84, 1844.)

Sirie hout.—See Camphor hout.

Sit, to.—A curious use of this word—arising, apparently, from a Cape use of the Dutch *zetten*, to set, in the sense of *liggen*, to lie, to rest—is often heard in the Midland districts, in which it is employed as if it were synonymous with "to hang," "to lie," etc.; e.g. an apple is said to *sit* on a branch, and a stone is said to *sit* on the ground.

Sit still, to.—The natives are said to "sit still" when there is no war movement or agitation among them.

"The Governor then . . . said that he had come up expecting to have to move his troops, but that now all must *sit still* and plough. He would only punish the bad." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," p. 25, 1852.)

Sitting up.—(D. *opzitten*, to sit up.) See Opsit.

Sit up, to make one.—A slang expression in common use meaning to make one bestir oneself, to set one thinking, to surprise or astonish one; the metaphor is obvious.

"The Reverend Jan had great faith in his own ideas upon the subject which he meant to expound on this Sabbath

morn, and expound he did. In brief he aroused the sleepy sons of the land and made them *sit up.*" ("The State," p. 510, November, 1911.)

Sjambok.—(Pers. *chabuk*—through the Malays—a whip.) A strip of dried giraffe or hippopotamus hide used as a whip, and in the hands of a powerful man a most formidable weapon. The word appears to be of oriental origin, "Chawbuck" being the name given to a similar article in India, while in Java it assumes the form "Chabuk". The Achteros sjambok (hinder-ox sjambok) is a short, thick instrument of the same material, with which the oxen nearest the wagon are quickened, the ordinary whip being too long to be effective at such close quarters.

"Poor and little thieves are flogged with a great whip (called *Siamback*) several days in succession." ("Van Twist," p. 29, 1645.)

"*Chanbocks* are a sort of whips or switches, made of the skin of the rhinoceros or hippopotamus." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," II. p. 226 n., 1796.)

"These sort of whips which they call *Shambos* are most horrid instruments." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 145, 1801.)

"The skin (of the rhinoceros) is the only thing valuable to the colonists to cut into strips for making the driving whips, known here by the Malay name *Shamboks.*" (Lichtenstein's "Travels," I. p. 98, 1812.)

"We saw a snake evidently too large to be hurt by a *zamboze.*" (Baines' "Explorations," p. 30, 1864.)

"The *agter-os-sjambok* (a tremendous whip of rhinoceros hide)." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 77, 1840.)

Sjambok stroop.—(D. *stroop*, treacle, syrup.) A humourous name for a beating.

"The donkeys have fallen into a brown study, for which the only remedy is repeated applications of *sjambok stroop.*" (Du Plessis' "In the Heart of Africa," p. 99, 1905.)

Sjambok, to.—To thrash with the above terribly cruel instrument.

"As for the husbands he *sjambokked* them nearly to death for letting their wives go." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 379, 1889.)

Skate—*Raja maculata,* a near relative of the English skate.

Skilpad.—The ordinary colonial form of the D. *schildpad.*

Skey.—The ordinary colonial form of the D. *schei.*

Skip jack.—(1) *Elops saurus* is sometimes so called at East London and Port Alfred. See Cape Salmon. (2) The name appears to be given also at some places on the coast to the fish known in Natal as the Garfish (q.v.)

"The 'Cape salmon,' *Skip jack*, 'Victoria trout,' and other aliases." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 3 March, 1909.)

"The fish was chiefly remarkable for its elongated body, and its long, narrow and slightly turned up beak, was a Saury pike, known here as a 'Greenback' and in some places as the *Skipper* or *Skipjack*, from its habit of jumping out of the water. It is fairly common hereabout and has often been known to leap into a "grainer's" boat, attracted by the light." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 26 September, 1912.)

Skipper.—See Skip-jack and quotation.

Skit.—The ordinary colonial form of the D. *schut.*

Skit-cattle.—Impounded cattle. See Schut-vee.

Skit-kraal.—See Schut-kraal.

"The oxen he was seeking were safely lodged in the *skit-kraal* or pound." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 21, 1850.)

Skit-master.—See Schut-meester.

Skit-sale.—Sale of impounded stock. See Schut verkoping.

Skoff.—(D. *schofttijd*, breakfast, or meal-time.) In Natal this word is used of the food itself, but with exclusive reference to the food of the natives. The recent war seems to have widened its application.

"He promises them plenty of cattle and cows, meal, milk, and *scoff* (food) if only they remain faithful to him." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 269, 1856.)

"Food with the colonials was always *skoff;* a malingerer was never anything but a skrimshanker." ("A Subaltern's Letters to his Wife," p. 108, 1901.)

Skoff, to.—A slang word meaning to eat voraciously or greedily.

"In some parts the lions are simply awful, and *scoff* fifty per cent of the men who have gone down and ninety per cent of the donkeys." ("A Nobody in Mashonaland," p. 184.)

Skorrie-morrie.—(German-Jewish, *soerrer-e-morrie,* a rogue, knave, good-for-nothing; Heb. סֹרֵר וּמוֹרֶה, the wil-

ful and refractory (son), Deut. xxi. 18; from סָרַר, to be refractory, and מָרָה, to be contumacious.) In Holland the expression is used collectively, but in South Africa it is also employed of one person with the meaning rogue, rascal, knave.

Skrim-shanker.—A malingerer, one who feigns sickness to escape work.

"Food with the colonials was always 'skoff'; a malingerer was never anything but a *skrimshanker.*" ("A Subaltern's Letters to his Wife," p. 108, 1901.)

Slaai bosch.—(D. *sla*, salad; *bos*, a bush.) Several varieties of *Mesembryanthemum* are so called. See Ice plant.

"One kind of *slaai bosch* with a very large fleshy leaf, seems even during the greatest heat of the day, to be literally covered with sparkling dew-drops, but on feeling for the moisture you are soon undeceived, and what appeared dew on the surface is firmly secured under a thin transparent film, which is raised throughout the surface of the leaf, in small and brilliant globular blisters that are pleasing to behold." (Chapman's "Travels," i. p. 375, 1868.)

Slaap gerust.—(D. *slapen*, to sleep; *gerust*, peacefully.) The usual "good night" wish among the Dutch.

"Well, good night, *slaap gerust.*" (Slater's "The Sunburnt South," p. 25, 1908.)

Slaappapawer.—(D. *slapen*, to sleep; Lat. *papaver*, a poppy.) The Cape Dutch name for the poppy; in Holland it is known as the "slaapbol".

Slaap willem.—(D. *slapen*, to sleep; *Willem*, William.)

"A *slaap willem* with large, red beak, lazily moving from bush to bush." ("East London Dispatch," Christmas Number, p. 38, 1907.)

Slachters Nek.—(D. *slachten*, to slaughter; C.D. *nek*, a narrow ridge connecting two hills or mountains.) As the result of a feeble attempt in the year 1815, on the part of a few dissatisfied Boer farmers, to defy the authorities, six of them were tried and condemned to death, and on the very spot where they had exacted an oath from their followers to exterminate the English, they were hanged, and from that day the place has borne the name of Slachters Nek. To this unfortunate occurrence, the first instance of colonists of European stock suffering death for treason in South Africa, is to be traced very much of the bad blood which

has existed between the Dutch and the English in South Africa since.

Slag ijzer.—(D. *slag*, stroke, blow; *ijzer*, iron.) A gin, springtrap.

"Resorting to the use of strychnine, or otherwise the springtrap (*slagt ijzer*); the former effective to a certain extent, the latter hardly ever so." ("The Bloemfontein Post," p. 6, 22 June, 1912.)

Slamaier.—(This word seems to have originated in a confusion of the two words *Islam* and *Maleier*.) A term applied to a Malay, a follower of Mahomet.

Slang bosch.—(D. *slang*, a snake; *bos*, a bush.) The name given to *Elytropappus glandulosus, Less.*

Slangen wortel.—(D. *wortel*, a root.) *Polygala serpentaria, E. and Z.* The root of this plant is used by the natives as a remedy in cases of snake bite.

"Another specific has been lately found called the *slangenwortel* (*Catula capensis and anthemoides*)." (Moodie's "Ten Years in South Africa," I. p. 234, 1835.)

Slangetje.—*Clinus anguillaris, C and V.* The name has reference to the snake-like shape of the fish.

"Another species, *C. biporosus*, is not often met with, it is an eel-like fish closely resembling the *Slangetje*." ("The S.A. Jour. of Science," VII. p. 223, 1911.)

Slangkop, Cape.—(D. *Kop*, a head.) *Ornithoglossum glaucum, Sal.* The local name of a poisonous bulb.

"*Slangkop.* (*Ornithoglossum glaucum, Sallis.*) This is another bulbous plant, which is found over a large area of South Africa. When eaten by stock it produces effects similar to those produced by 'Tulp'." ("Science in South Africa," p. 355, 1905.)

"About two years ago some specimens of the plant *slangkop* were forwarded through the Government authorities to the Imperial Institute, London, for experiments as to their toxic properties. The results went to show that the plant is highly poisonous, and further investigation has been directed towards testing the physiological effects." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 21 June, 1912.)

Slangkop, Transvaal.—*Urginea Burkei, Baker.* The flower-stalk and the leaves of this plant are particularly dangerous to the small stock of the farmer. The name refers to the resemblance which the early flower-spike bears to a snake's head.

"With some poisonous plants trouble is experienced mainly at certain seasons of the year; this is particularly the case with the tulps (species of *Homeria* and *Moraea*) and *slangkop* (*Urginea Burkei*), and usually also Chailletia or Gift-blaar (*Dichapetalum cymosum*)." ("Agric. Jour. of the Union of South Africa," p. 88, January, 1912.)

Slangkos.—(D. *kost*, food, victuals.) Toadstools are so named.

Slang muishond.—(D. *slang*, a snake.) *Poecilogale albinucha.*

Slang verklikker.—(D. *verklikken*, to disclose, discover.) The Dutch name for *Erythropygia coriphaeus.* See Katlachter.

Slang vreeter.—(D. *vreten*, to eat ravenously, to swallow; cf. Eng. fret—"like a moth fretting a garment"; Ps. XXXIX. 12, Prayer Book Version.) The Dutch name for the Secretary bird (q.v.).

Slangwyte.—*Parus afer*, the Grey tit.

"Mr. Ortlapp sends it from Colesberg, where he says it is called *Slangwyte* by the Dutch colonists." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 330, 1875-84.)

Slaughter cattle.—Cattle intended for the butcher, as distinguished from trek or draught cattle.

"If the Kaffirs had only advanced . . . they would have taken guns, *slaughter-cattle*." (Ex C.M.R.'s "With the Cape Mounted Rifles," p. 71, 1881.)

Slijm uyntje.—(D. *slijm*, slime; *ajuin*, an onion; F. *oignon.*) A bulbous plant, bearing a primrose-coloured flower, is so named in Namaqualand; the bulb contains a large quantity of a viscid fluid.

Slim.—(D. *slim*, sly, cunning, bad.) As used in South Africa this word means smart, cunning.

"A man who in his dealings can cheat his neighbour is considered as a *slim mensch*, a clever fellow." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 103, 1804.)

"I am too *slim* for them, believe me." (Couper's "Mixed Humanity," p. 77.)

Slimes.—The fine grey matter which under the old gold-winning process used to run away from the battery as waste, but which now under the new processes yields a good percentage of gold.

"A coloured man was to-day sentenced . . . for being in

the unlawful possession of a quantity of *slimes.*" ("East London Dispatch," p. 10, 25 June, 1912.)

Slimness.—(D. *slim,* sly, cunning, bad.) Smartness, craftiness, slyness.

"It is said that South Africa does not bear a high reputation for honesty amongst the nations of the world. *Slimness* has become characteristic, in a minor degree, of the whole community." ("The State," p. 518, November, 1911.)

Slimy.—*Equula edentula, Bl.* The Natal name of this fish.

Sling.—In various parts of South Africa a catapult is so named.

"Catapults or *slings* as they used to call them." ("A South African Boy," p. 42, 1897.)

Slinger.—*Chrysophrys puniceus* is so called in East London and Natal.

"Catching ten fish, all *slingers,* totalling 25 lb. weight, in under two hours." ("East London Dispatch," 21 November, 1905.)

Slinger-om-di-smoel.—(D. *slingeren,* to sling, toss; *smoel,* G. *Maul,* muzzle, chops.) A jocular name for Boer-meal porridge.

"Dan had ik misschien gewaagd van zekere meelspijs, die *slinger-om-den-smoel* genoemd wordt, en van andere aardigheidjes." (Changuion's "De Nederduitsche Taal in Zuid-Afrika hersteld". "Proeve van Kaapsch Taaleigen," p. v, 1844.)

Slop.—*Spatula capensis.* The Cape shoveller, a rather rare bird.

Sluit.—(D. *sloot,* a ditch.) A narrow channel, natural or artificial, through which water flows. The spelling of this word seems to have been assimilated by false analogy to that of Spruit (q.v.).

"It has water in abundance brought by a *slote,* or canal from a considerable distance, and lying so high that all the grounds may be irrigated with ease; and a mill supplied by it." (Latrobe's "Journal," p. 187, 1818.)

"Going one dark night to a friend's house, and keeping in the middle of the road to avoid the *sloots,* I stumbled over . . . an ox." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 33, 1852.)

"The surface has become considerably drier since it was stocked with sheep, owing to the formation of *sluits* and even rivers by the washing of escaping rain water." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 38, 1896.)

Slump.—A word imported from the United States of America, used to express a downward run of prices in the share market, or a depressed condition of things generally.

Smalblad.—(D. *smal*, small; *blad*, a leaf.) *Maba natalensis.* The leaves of this tree are little more than half an inch in length, and the branches are very densely covered with them.

Small stock.—Sheep and goats are so designated.

Smasher.—A soft felt hat with a broad brim, made familiar to the people in England first by the Rhodesian troops at the Jubilee festivities, 1887.

"A wide-awake, called in South Africa a *smasher.*" (Couper's "Mixed Humanity," p. 4.)

"The Dutchmen stared at him from under the brims of their felt '*smashers*,' and puffed at their pipes." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 156, 1891.)

Smear, to.—A process that does not appear to be peculiar to South Africa. The earthen floors of many farmhouses are smeared over, at regular intervals, with a mixture of cow-dung and water; when dry this makes a good surface, and is by no means so unpleasant as some would imagine. See Uitsmeer.

"The space was *smeared* with mud and cow-dung, resembling that used in all parts of India for the same purpose." (Harris's "Wild Sports," p. 143, 1839.)

"We were unsuited physically for such work as daghering huts or *smearing* floors." ("Adventures in Mashonaland by Two Nurses," p. 32, 1893.)

Smee eendtje.—(D. *smient*, halve eendvogel, a widgeon; cf. provincial English (Norfolk) *smee*, a widgeon; *smee*, small; *eend*, a duck.) *Poecilonetta erythrorhynca*, the Redbilled Teal.

"A small brown duck which, according to Spielman, is called by the colonists *Smi-eendje* (widgeon)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 283, 1822.)

"The *Smee-eendtje* is common and very generally distributed." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 351, 1875-1884.)

Smeergoed.—(D. *smeer*, fat, tallow; *goed*, stuff.) An ointment or liniment.

"'n Kruie, genoem Koverbos (bekend an Montague) . . . Di selfde bos met bokvet angemaak, is goed ver *smeergoed*." (Dijkman's "Kook, Koek en Resepten Boek," p. 130, 1898.)

Smeer lap.—(D. *smeren*, to smear; *lap*, a patch, rag.) (1) The clout or lapje used in the process of smearing described above. (2) A dish clout. (3) A term of abuse indicating something very degraded.

"'Oh, thanks,' I said; 'look here, you've been kicking up all this trouble because you wanted me to wait fourteen years for burgher rights, and now that you want my assistance, you're willing to make me a burgher on the pop. No, my friend, give your burgher rights to Hollanders and other *schmeerlaps*, but not for me, thanks.'" ("Cape Times," Weekly Edition, p. 22, 25 October, 1899.)

"Now, Mr. Editor, the name he called the Dutch is just what he is—'Een eerste klas *smeerlap*'." ("East London Dispatch," p. 7, 4 September, 1912.)

Smeer winke—(D. *smeer*, fat, tallow; *winkel*, a shop.) A grocer's shop.

Smellers.—Several varieties of elegant metallic-green and copper-coloured coleoptera, with a peculiarly penetrating though not unpleasant odour. Musk beetles have received this name in the neighbourhood of Port Elizabeth and Uitenhage; and sometimes, but not with so much reason, they are called "Spanish flies".

"I found a large number of longhorns commonly termed 'Spanish flies'. These are readily discovered as they diffuse a strong and not unpleasant odour of lasting power. An Africander youngster who accosted me one day, gave them the name of *Smellers*, and he was not far wrong." (Bairstow's "Nat. Hist. Notes from South Africa," p. 6. Reprint from "The Naturalist," 1883.)

Smelling out.—The operations of the Kaffir witch-doctor in order to the detection of evil doers—i.e. often enough those who have incurred the displeasure, or whose increasing cattle have excited the cupidity of the chief—are known to the colonists as "smelling out". The expression is a literal translation of the Kaffir *uku Nuka*, to smell out, to find out by sagacity.

"I could not help smiling at them and at their solicitude to know the result of her *smelling*." (Shooter's "Kaffirs of Natal," p. 175, 1857.)

"Their mode of proceeding in *smelling out* witches and wizards, for females as well as males are concerned." (Holden's "Kaffir Races," p. 301, 1866.)

"The family of the native who has escaped to our camp had been *smelt out*, and if his brother were not rescued, he would be condemned to some horrible death." ("Adventures in Mashonaland by Two Nurses," p. 258, 1893.)

Smelt.—(1) *Silago Sihama* is known by this name in Natal. (2) At Struis Bay the name is applied to *Atherina breviceps*.

Smilax.—A name often given to the thornless varieties of asparagus.

Smoel.—(D. *smoel*, muzzle, chaps.) *Hou' jou smoel*, "Hold your jaw," was the phrase applied by the Boers to an Act passed immediately after the annexation of the Transvaal by Sir T. Shepstone in 1877, which made it high treason for anyone to discuss the annexation; it was called the *hou' jou smoel law*.

Smoke bird.—*Dicrurus afer* is known by this name in Natal; the reference is to the way in which the bird seeks its prey in the thick smoke of the grass fires. See Bijvanger.

"In districts where the grass is periodically burnt these birds flock from all quarters at the first sign of a fire, and display the greatest intrepidity in dashing through the smoke and flames in pursuit of the insects that are driven out." (Stark's "Birds of South Africa," II. p. 266, 1901.)

Smoor.—(D. *smoren*, to smother, stifle.) As used in South Africa this word means "to stew". *Smoorvlees(ch)*, stewed meat.

Smoorfish.—(D. *smoren*, to smother, stifle.) A Malay preparation making a very appetizing dish.

"I am often asked for the recipe for *smoorfish*, so I will write down once for all the way we ourselves do it." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 65, 1902.)

Smoorkos.—(C.D. *smoor*, to stew; *kost*, food, victuals.) Anything that is stewed.

Smouse or **Smouser.**—(This word appears to be a corruption of the name of Moses, brought over from Holland in the Dutch E.I. Company's days. The corruption arose from the manner in which the Dutch Jews themselves pronounced the name (?). Is this the origin also of the Dutch *smousen*, to cheat? Cf. the English slang, "to Jew a man". So far, however, as I have been able to trace the word in South African use, it is generally applied to those not of African birth, but not to Jewish pedlars exclusively, for when used of them it is usually in the form, "A Jew smouse".) One

who visits farms, outlying villages, and Kaffir kraals, on foot or otherwise, for the purpose of retailing various wares.

"There is at the Cape a species of old-clothes men . . . who from their enormous profits and the extortion they practise have obtained the name Capse-*Smouse*, or Cape Jews." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 55, 1796.)

"From the Bechuanas we learned that the proprietors of the wagons were *smouses* (traders), and that they had been several weeks among the Bergenaars, carrying on a contraband trade with that people." (Philip's "Researches," II. p. 96, 1828.)

"I dare say . . . you have heard that I have turned a regular *smoutch*." (Napier's "Excursions," II. p. 391, 1849.)

"I was not a *smouser*, the term applied to those who went about the country in wagons to sell and buy." (Anderson's "Twenty-five Years in a Waggon," I. p. 40, 1887.)

"The life of a *smouser* is as healthy and interesting as it is adventurous." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 23 August, 1897.)

Smouse, To.—To engage in the method of trading above described.

"That kind of thing soon knocked the *smousing* man over." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 23 August, 1897.)

Snaaks.—(D. *snakerij*, drollery.) Droll, strange, peculiar: e.g. *snaaks weer*, peculiar weather.

Snake.—The name given by the Kimberley miners to a dyke of igneous rock, because of its serpentine course across the mine.

"It therefore impresses upon one's mind that the *snake* is a younger eruption formation coming from the same volcanic source as the blue-ground." ("Science in South Africa," p. 320, 1905.)

Snake-berry.—See Bitter-apple.

"The stink-blaar and the *snake-berry* are among the first large plants to take possession of waste ground, and are often found as weeds in cultivated lands." ("East London Dispatch," 31 August, 1911.)

Snake bird.—(1) *Pycnonotus Layardi.* So called in Natal from the habit of these birds, when alarmed by tree snakes (or even by hawks), of attacking them in a mob. (2) In the Cape Colony this name is given to the African darter—*Anhinga rufa*—because of its long snake-like neck.

"*Pycnonotus Layardi.*—It is a bold bird, and if it sees a snake or anything to disturb it, sets up a loud chattering." (Woodward's "Birds of Natal," p. 21, 1899.)

"The Darter snake-bird or Fresh-water duiker, named by Temminck Plotus Levaillanti, belongs to one of the lowest forms of Aves, termed by ornithologists the Pelecanidæ, viz. Pelecans, Cormorants, etc." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," II. Part 2, p. 85, 1881.)

Snake flower.—The orange-coloured *Ornithogalum flavissimum* is so named in Namaqualand. The outside of each alternate petal is marked by a black spot, and, when the flower is closed, it is not unlike a snake's head in shape, the black spots representing the eyes and mouth—hence the name.

Snake root.—*Garuleum bipinnatum, Less.*

"Among the medical indigenous plants of the Cape, the present deserves particular notice. It is well known to almost every resident as the Snake-root, having acquired its vernacular name from its effects as an antidote against the bites of venomous snakes with which the country abounds. The root of this plant which is a native of the Eastern Districts, where it grows in the deserts of the Karoo, has a great similarity to the Radix Senegæ of the pharmacopœia. It is bitter and acrid and contains a good deal of a resinous substance, almost homogeneous to that which we observe in the root of Polygala Senega. In the form of decoction or tincture, this root is a great favourite with the colonial farmer, in various diseases of the chest, asthma, and such affections where a free secretion of the mucous membrane of the lungs and bronchiæ is desirable. It also promotes perspiration, and acts as a diuretic in gout and dropsy. This valuable root ought to have a place in the 'Materia Medica'." (Pappe's "Floræ Capensis Medicæ Prodromus," p. 21, 1868.)

Snake stone.—A piece of bone rubbed down into an oval shape and burnt at the edges, used to be sold to the country people as a remedy for snake-bite. It was supposed by the purchaser to be a stone taken out of the head of a certain species of snake, and also to be a specific for snake-bite.

"The Hottentots are acquainted with several vegetable antidotes against the poison of serpents; but the most approved remedy amongst the Dutch is the *slange-steen* or *snake-stone*, which they hold to be infallible." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 140, 1801.)

Snap haan.—(D. *snaphaan*, firelock, gun.) An earlier name for the old-fashioned muzzle-loading musket, subsequently known as a Babiaan bout (q.v.).

"Every morning, after prayers and coffee, the first thing that occupied attention was the *snap-haan*, or as it later grew to be called, baviaan bout." (Sellick's "Uitenhage, Past and Present," p. v, 1905.)

Snapper.—*Chrysophrys gibbiceps* is so called in the neighbourhood of East London. It is also called the Red stump-nose.

"We caught a great many red *snappers*, but had much difficulty in saving the bait and the game from the hungry jaws of the sharks; as soon as a snapper was hooked dozens of these voracious monsters commenced disputing the prize with each other and with the captor." (Owen's "Narrative," II. p. 177, 1833.)

Sneeze Hottentots.—(D. *Sina*, China.) The epithet Sinese was applied to a tribe of Bushmen living to the north of the Great Fish River, whose light yellow complexions resembled those of the Chinamen seen at the Cape. The country occupied by them was known as the Sneeze Vlakten, or Chinese Plains.

"The *Sneeze Vlakten*, *Cineeze*, *Cineese* or *Chinese*, from the appearance of the Bushmen living upon them." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 128 n., 1905.)

Sneezevrachje.—(D. *Sina*, China; *vracht*, freight, cargo, burden.) A load of mixed merchandise; the term is probably derived from the mixed character of the old time cargoes from China and the East.

Sneeze wood.—*Pteroxylon utile.* This wood is of great value, being one of the most durable grown in any part of the world. The presence in the wood of pungent, essential oil which irritates the nostrils and induces violent sneezing when the wood is being worked, helps largely to preserve the timber. The English name is simply a translation of the Dutch Niez-hout. Note neese is an old English form of the word sneeze.

"This vale is called *Niez-hout* Kloof, from a kind of tree which is said to excite sneezing if it be rubbed and then smelled." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 75, 1785.)

"The wood known in the Colony as *Sneeze-wood* is also the produce of an evergreen which grows to a large size." (Mann's "Natal," p. 155, 1859.)

Snelders.—(G. *Schneller*, spring, trigger.) See quotation.

"They much annoyed and harassed the infantry, by dismounting, laying their *snelders* (long guns with hair-triggers) across the saddle on their horses, firing, reloading, and remounting to gallop out of range of our Brown Bessies." (Moodie's "Battles," I. p. 597, 1888.)

Snijsel or **Snippertje.**—(D. *snijden*, to cut; *snipperen*, to cut into small pieces.) A preparation of flour somewhat like macaroni, cut into short lengths and used to thicken soup, etc.

Snoek.—(D. *snoek*, a pike.) *Thyrsetes Atun, Cuv.* A scaleless voracious fish, caught at times in enormous numbers round the Cape peninsula; it is salted and dried as an article of trade. In Australia and New Zealand the same fish is known as the Barracouta.

"Two kinds of fish, the Hottentot and the *snook*, are split open, salted, and dried in the sun in large quantities, principally for the use of the slaves." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 300, 1804.)

Snoek-galjeon.—The Hoetje's Bay name of the fish elsewhere known as the Papegaai visch.

Snoek pekelaar.—(C.D. *pekelaar* or *pekelaring* seems to be a corruption of D. *pekelharing*, pickled herring; it was apparently applied to pickled fish generally, until its original meaning had disappeared.) Snoek sliced, salted and dried.

"Snoek *pekelaar* is the name we give to fillets of snoek, slightly salted and sun-dried." (Hilda's "Diary of a Cape Housekeeper," p. 142, 1902.)

Snoep.—(D. *snoepen*, to pilfer dainties.) To eat dainties in secret, to enjoy forbidden things in secret. Among the descendants of the Dutch in New York, the word is also used with the same meaning; *to snoop* meaning to eat stealthily.

Snot sickness or **Snotziekte.**—The term is applied by farmers to any disease of animals which is accompanied by a large mucous discharge from the nostrils.

"A horrible and very fatal illness, called by the Boers *snot sickness*, which cattle are very liable to from pasturing on ground frequented by black wildebeests." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," II. p. 373, 1850.)

"The term *snotziekte* does not describe any particular or specific disease; it is a term applied when excessive mucous

discharge is observed to run from the nose, such discharge being seen in different diseases, in different species of animals, and is due to many different causes." ("Agric. Jour. S.A. Union," p. 139, January, 1912.)

Snowball.—The name given in South Africa to the *Viburnum.*

Snowball shrike.—*Dryoscopus cubla* has received this name in Natal; it refers to the puff of soft, white feathers with which the back of this bird is garnished, which the bird can erect and depress at will; the Lesser puff-backed shrike.

"In Natal it is sometimes called the *Snowball shrike.*" (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 97, 1908.)

Snowdrop.—(1) In the neighbourhood of King William's Town *Ornithogalum thyrsoides* is known by this name. See also Chinkering ching and Viooltjes. (2) It is also pretty generally applied to the flower commonly known as the Snowflake (q.v.).

"Chinkerinch e (or as it is locally known, *Snowdrop*)." ("East London Dispatch," p. 4, 30 March, 1909.)

Snowflake.—A flower somewhat like the English snowdrop, sometimes called the African snowdrop—*Leucojum vernum.*

"The snowdrop (*Galanthus nivalis*) and the *snowflake* (*Leucojum vernum*) are admired for the gracefulness of their flowers, and the latter for its scent also." (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 131, 1907.)

Snow in summer.—The South African trivial name of the imported *Ozothamnus rosmarinifolius.*

"The flowers, which are white and daisy-like in appearance, are produced in such wonderful profusion, that the plant has become popularly known as *Snow in summer.*" ("South African Gardening," p. 333, August, 1912.)

Snyde diamonds.—This is another name given to the imitation diamonds that were occasionally employed for illicit purposes in the early days of the Diamond Fields. See Schlenter. The word is also applied to counterfeit gold coins.

"It is certainly a curious phase in this glass, or in thieves' Latin *snyde diamond,* question . . . that . . . neither the manufacturer nor the possessor of these spurious articles can be brought to justice." (Mathew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 198, 1887.)

"A brief examination satisfied the disgusted inspector

that the astute Yankee had once more turned the laugh against him. The things were 'schlenters' or *snyde diamonds*."

"A 'mint' which has its headquarters in Germany, for the purpose of making and conveying *snide gold* coins to Africa." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 29 July, 1909.)

Soap bush.—See Gona and Kannabosch. This name is also applied to *Noltea africana;* after macerating the saponaceous leaves of this bush the natives use them for washing.

"I found his three fresh and strapping daughters boiling soap, prepared with fat and the branches of the *soap-bush*." (Alexander's "Expedition," I. p. 83, 1838.)

Sobosobo.—(Kaf. *um Sobosobo.*) The fruit of *Solanum nigrum, Linn.* The small black berries make a jam not unlike that of the real blackberry in flavour. This plant is known in England as the "Garden night-shade".

"Mention may be made of the well-known weed common in old lands, *Umsobosobo* (*S. nigrum*). In the old country it is undoubtedly poisonous, but here in South Africa its little black berries are eaten with impunity and are even made into jam." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 10 November, 1911.)

Soetjes.—(D. *zoetjes*, softly, gently.) Gently, slowly.

"'*Suitjes*, baas, *suitjes*. If we miss the spoor we lose time and all. Here is a stone turned, and there a toe dug in, and here,' he was following the trail like a pointer, 'is a bit of dry skin of biltong.'" (Glanville's "The Kloof Bride," p. 275, 1898.)

Soggens.—(D. *'s ochtends*, of the morning; this appears to be the origin of this word.) In the morning.

Solder.—(D. *zolder*, a garret, loft; Lat. *solarium*, a flat house-top exposed to the sun.) Up-stairs, an upper story. See Brandzolder and Zolder.

Soldier.—(1) *Dentex miles* is so named in Natal. (2) In the Cape Colony this name is given to a bright red member of the bug family—*Scantius*.

Sole.—See Tong-visch. These fish are generally known as soles at Port Elizabeth and East London.

So long.—This expression is in constant use all over South Africa, with several slightly varying significations; sometimes it means "for the present," at other times "meanwhile". At parting it is used as a form of farewell, and then it seems to suggest a wish for a future meeting, like the German *auf*

Wiedersehen. The origin of the phrase has still to be ascertained.

"Men came tumbling out of the swing-doors in twos and threes, wiping their lips, and then separating with a '*So long*, old man, see you at tiffin'." ("I.D.B.," by W. T. E., p. 221, 1887.)

"'Going? Well, *so long!*' '*So long*, Abe.'" (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 222, 1897.)

Somar or **Somarso.**—(D. *zoo-maar-zoo*, so so.) Tolerably, neither good nor bad, after a fashion, in a way.

"The Dutch word *somar* . . . is also a word to which I think I could challenge the most learned schoolmaster in the Colony to attach any definite meaning. It is used by both Boers and Hottentots in almost every sentence; it is an answer to every question; and its meanings are endless." (Gordon Cumming's "Adventures," I. p. 27, 1850.)

Somerhuis.—(D. *zomer*, summer; *huis*, a house.) (1) A small house in town, occupied by a farmer of the district with his family at Nachtmaal time, or during a brief visit. (2) It is also used, as is its English equivalent, of an arbour in a garden, a summer-house.

Somtseu.—A Sechuana word meaning a "Nimrod," a mighty hunter. This name was given by the natives to Mr. Gordon Cumming. It was afterwards applied by the natives of Natal to Mr. (afterwards Sir) Theophilus Shepstone on the occasion of his first visit with Major Charters to occupy Port Natal. There is either a bold "striving after meaning" in Barter's use of the word "Samson" (see quotation), or an entire misunderstanding.

"Such was the appearance of the great *T'Somtseu*" (Mr. Gordon Cumming). (Napier's "Excursions," II. p. 391, 1849.)

"Mr. T. Shepstone, the diplomatic agent, whose influence over the natives is universally acknowledged, and who is looked up to by them as the great *Samson* or 'Sagem' of their tribe." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 134, 1852.)

"When the mission first arrived at Pretoria, a message came from Cetewayo to the effect that he had heard that the Boers had fired at *Sompseu* (Sir T. Shepstone) and announcing his intention of attacking the Transvaal if 'his father' was touched." (Haggard's "The Last Boer War," p. 60, 1900.)

Songalolo.—(Kaf. *i Songololo*, a species of *Myriapoda* common in South Africa; *uku Songa*, to roll up.) *Julus terrestris* bears this name in the Eastern Province; it refers to its habit of curling up into a coil when disturbed. See Regen wurm.

Soopje.—(D. *zoopje*, a dram; *zuipen*, to tipple; cf. Scotch, *sowp*, a spoonful, a small quantity; Eng. *sup*.) The quantity of spirit which goes to make a soopje is variable, one man's soopje would be another man's overthrow. The term seems to have been applied also to brandy in quantity. See last quotation.

"Those who enter a house are always presented with a *sopi*, that is to say, a glass of rack or gin, or rather of French brandy. . . . Before they sit down to talk, etiquette requires also that they should be offered a *sopi*." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 76, 1796.)

"In the morning after breakfast he takes his *sopie*, or glass of brandy." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 83, 1801.)

"The poorest peasant . . . never fails to lay in . . . a cask of *sopie*." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 375, 1801.)

Sooty albatross.—*Phœbetria fuginilosa*. See Blue bird.

Sore-back.—Applied to horses when their backs have been scalded through wearing the saddle-cloth too long, or wrung by an insufficiently padded saddle.

"Not one of our stud had an abrasion of the skin, let alone a *sore back*." (Gilmore's "Days and Nights in the Desert," p. 195, 1888.)

Sore-eye flower.—*Cyrtanthus obliquus* is so named at East London. See Zeer-oog bloemetje. The name is commonly applied to the various species of *Brunsvigia* also.

"A large *Cyrtanthus* or *sore-eye flower* (though why so called we have yet to learn)." ("East London Dispatch," p. 5, 27 May, 1910.)

Sorrel.—*Hybiscus subdariffa, L.* The fleshy, acid-flavoured calyx of this plant, which is grown in Natal, is there known by this name. A decoction makes a very refreshing summer drink. Among Anglo-Indians it is known as Roselle.

Sort, To.—To cull over diamondiferous material in the search for gems.

"Then lonely little camps occurred. . . . These are mostly occupied by Boers, who carry their stuff home for wives and

children *to sort.*" (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 111, 1873.)

Sorter.—One who performs the above process.

"When nothing is left but the dry little lumps like fine gravel, and the diamonds, he unhooks the sieve and carries its contents to a neighbouring table on which it is poured before the panting *sorter.*" (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 127, 1873.)

Sortings.—The refuse material after it has undergone the above process. Occasionally a small diamond would be overlooked by the "sorter"; the "sortings" were eagerly "re-sorted" by others in the hope of finding some such overlooked stone.

"The mounds of *sortings* are now close by thronged with busy men, black and white." (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 111, 1873.)

Sorting table.—The table on which the diamondiferous material is sorted.

"Here and there is a 'canteen' of dirty canvas, or a plank-built 'store' with roof of corrugated iron. But such habitations are rare. Rarer still is the *sorting table.*" (Boyle's "To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 79, 1873.)

Sour grass.—The terms "sour" and "sweet" as thus employed refer to the nature and quality of the plant growth of a given area; on poor soil it is very woody, and defective in some essential plant-ash constituent, and is known as "Sour grass" or "Sour veld".

"But this fine territory is not considered so valuable for grazing as much of that within the Colony, for the grass is in general what is called *sour*, that is rank and unwholesome for 'cattle'." (Bunbury's "Journal," p. 159, 1848.)

Sour veld.—See Sour grass.

"The whole veldt on either side of the road is what is called *sour veldt* (that is, coarse, hard, dry grass), distasteful to the animals, especially to oxen, perfectly unnourishing." (Churchill's "Men, Mines, and Animals in South Africa," p. 197, 1895.)

"The veld is familiarly classified into sweet (zoet) or good veld, *sour* (zuur) or poor *veld,* and half-and-half (gebroken) veld." (Burton's "Cape Colony for the Settler," p. 8, 1903.)

South African peat.—Another name for Mist (q.v.).

South African siskin.—*Chrysomitris totta.*

South-easter.—See The Doctor and Black south-easter.

" Algoa Bay is not much of a shelter, and it is always a chance whether a sudden *South-easter* may not come tearing down upon the shipping." (Barker's " A Year's Housekeeping in South Africa," p. 23, 1877.)

" *South-easters* . . . are of three kinds—(1) 'Table-cloth' south-easters, (2) 'Blind' south-easters, (3) 'Black' south-easters." (" Addresses, etc., British and SouthAfrican Assoc.," I. p. 287, 1905.)

Sovereignty, The.—This was the former designation of the territory that has again come under the British flag in the Orange River Colony and the Transvaal.

" *The Sovereignty*, as it is now constituted, comprehends a large tract of territory situated to the north of the Great Orange and Vaal Rivers, and stretching out to the east as far as the north-west of Natal." (Fleming's " Kaffraria," p. 120, 1853.)

Spaanspek.—(D. *spaansche*, Spanish; *spek*, bacon, fat.) *Melo Hispanicus*, the sweet or musk melon, apparently known to the Dutch through the Spaniards. It is called " spek " from the bacon-like colour of the fruit when cut.

" Just then Mr. Bartlett came and asked if I would like to buy any musk melons (*sponspeck*), figs, pomegranates, or mealies." (Farini's " Through the Kalahari Desert," p. 61, 1886.)

Span of oxen.—(D. *span*, a team.) A team of oxen yoked in pairs for cart, wagon, or plough; the number varies from two to twenty-two, but generally, for wagon work, runs to fourteen or sixteen.

" Such a carriage is commonly drawn by a team or *span*, as it is termed in the Colony, of ten or twelve oxen." (Barrow's " Travels," I. p. 55, 1801.)

Span, To.—(D. *spannen*, to put horses to a wagon or carriage.) To yoke or harness animals to a vehicle. " To inspan " is now more commonly used.

" Meanwhile we prepared the apparatus for *spanning* oxen before the wagon." (Moodie's " Records," p. 33, 1841.)

Spandau kop.—(G. *Spandau*, the great military stronghold and prison a few miles from Berlin.) A curiously formed mountain of the Sneeuwberg range, near Graaff Reinet. Its crown is a curious formation resembling the steep sides and rounded top of a hay-stack. Locally the name is pronounced

Span-touw, and according to the folk etymology of the neighbourhood is derived from the span-touw, the riem with which the legs of a cow are fastened which has the habit of kicking when being milked. But if Lichtenstein's account of the origin of the name is correct, and there seems to be no reason to doubt it, then the popular etymology affords another instance of "striving after meaning". Lichtenstein's Work (I. p. 367) contains a very good plate of this curiously shaped mountain.

"At break of day we saw the *Spandau* mountain, in Graaff Reinet, before us. This mountain, like many others in the country, till within a few years had no name. An old Prussian soldier, by name Werner, who lived at Graaff Reinet gave it that which it now bears, as a remembrance of his native country." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," I. p. 367, 1812.)

To our left were Zwart Ruggeus, our right Zwager's Hoek,
While in front we on *Spontouw* and Tandje's Berg look.

(Hudson's "A Feature in South African Frontier Life," p. 70, 1852.)

Spanish flies.—See Smellers.

"A large number of long-horns commonly termed *Spanish flies.* (A weak provincialism.)" (Bairstow's "Nat. Hist. Notes from South Africa," p. 6, 1883.)

Sparrow rooibek.—(D. *rood*, red; *bek*, a beak, bill.) A Natal name for *Spermestes nigriceps.*

"It is a neat little bird, and its plumage and manner remind one of the English cock-sparrow, from which we call it the *Sparrow roibek.*" (Woodward's "Birds of Natal," p. 71, 1899.)

Spek.—(D. *spek*, bacon, fat.) Hippopotamus fat was in the early days spoken of as "spek".

"The flesh of the hippopotamus is highly esteemed . . . and the fat (*speck*, as it is called by the colonists) is very excellent." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 517, 1856.)

Spek-boom.—(D. *spek*, bacon, fat; *boom*, a tree.) *Portulacaria afra, Jacq.* The plant is also known as "Elephant's food" (q.v.); it grows large and succulent, with small, fleshy, sourish leaves, and panicles of small flowers of several shades of pink.

"Thick Hedges of a kind of Laurel, which they call *Speck*, always green, and pretty like the Filaria." ("A Voyage to Siam by Six Jesuits," p. 51, 1688.)

"A small succulent shrub called *speck-boom* . . . affords excellent food for sheep and goats." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 125, 1856.)

Spekboschje.—(D. *spek*, fat; *bosch*, bush, shrub.) *Zygophyllum flexuosum, E. and Z.* and other species are so called in the Riversdale District.

Spekhout.—*Kiggelaria africana, Linn.* See Porkwood.

Spekvet.—(D. *spek*, bacon, fat; *vet*, fat.) A term applied to both men and animals when very fat.

Spek vreter.—(D. *spek*, bacon, fat; *vreten*, to eat.) *Saxicola familiaris.* This bird is accused of picking the grease out from the boxes of cart-wheels—hence the name.

"The familiar Chat (*S. familiaris*), the *Spek vreter* (bacon-eater) of the Boers . . . is well distributed throughout South Africa." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 19, 1908.)

Spelonken.—(D. *spelonk*; Lat. *spelunca*; Gk. σπηλύγξ, a cave, cavern, den.) An exceedingly mountainous district in the north of the Transvaal, in the caves of which the natives were wont to hide in times of war.

Men bi hem-selue
In spekes and *spelonkes*. . . .

(Langland's "Piers the Plowman," 6, 15, 270, Skeat's Ed.)

"Fand ich in dem dortigen Distrikt, den die Boeren wegen seiner vielen Berge die *Spelonken* nennen, nur wenige weisse Familien vor, aber viele verfallene Wohnstätten und Ansiedelungen." (Schiel's "23 Jahre in Süd-Afrika," p. 349, 1902.)

Spens.—See Dispens.

Spervel.—(D. *sperwer*, a sparrow-hawk.) *Falco minor*, the South African Peregrine, is known by this name among the Dutch; it is not a common bird.

"Eggs of the *Spervel* (*Falco minor*) also appear in the collection. These are new to us, and, as may be imagined, are those of the larger *F. Peregrinus* in miniature." ("South African Magazine," III. p. 127, 1912.)

Spider, American.—A light, strong, four-wheeled carriage, for one horse or a pair. The name indicates the attenuated appearance of the vehicle.

"He had actually ventured to drive in a *spider*, apparently a kind of buggy, from the Tugela to Gingihlovo." ("Spectator," 24 May, 1879.)

"One afternoon, therefore, I drove over in the *spider* and

found him busily engaged waxing a stout fishing line." (Glanville's "Tales from the Veld," p. 25, 1897.)

Spider, German.—A heavy, home-made wagon with solid discs of wood for wheels, common in earlier days among the Germans on the Frontier, and still seen occasionally. The name is a humorous reference to the clumsy appearance of these lumbering vehicles.

"Like the wheels of a so-called *German spider*, made out of one block." (Kropf's "Kaffir English Dictionary," under i Gidiva, 1899.)

Spider Orchid.—*Bartholina pectinata, R. Brown.* A fairly common orchid of the Cape Peninsula. The name refers to the somewhat fanciful resemblance of the lip-segments to a spider's legs.

Spiering.—(D. *spiering*, smelt—*Salmo eperlanus.*) *Atherina breviceps*, a fish not unlike the English smelt.

Spill.—(1) A word in general use throughout South Africa for a fall from horseback, the upsetting of a cart or wagon, and indeed any like accident. (2) It is also employed of the financial failure of a man or firm.

"You think the *spill* has come at last." ("The Great Gold Lands of South Africa," p. 49, 1891.)

Spinnekop.—(D. *spinnekop*, a spider. The word is a pleonastic compound, *spin*, a spider, and *kop*, etymologically one with the English *cob* in *cob*web, and *cop* in atter*cop*.) (1) A spider of any kind. (2) The name was at one time applied by the Dutch to the British flag, the rays of the double cross being suggestive of a spider's legs.

"The *Spinnekop* or spider legs, as they called the British ensign." (Barrow's "Travels," II. p. 138, 1804.)

Spitzkopje.—(D. *spits*, pointed, sharp.) A sharp-pointed hill. See Compass berg.

"The headquarters of 'Kausopp were at the two *spitzkopjes* to the left of 'Gumaap and opposite Koedoesberg." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 396, 1905.)

Splint.—The term applied on the Diamond Fields to a fractured diamond.

"In those halcyon days . . . the natives, who are often unjustly accused of naturally possessing thievish propensities, established the falsehood of the charge by . . . faithfully carrying out their master's behests, and never robbing him of a single *splint*." (Mathew's "Incwadi Yami," p. 415, 1887.)

Splinter new.—(D. *splinternieuw*, brand-new.) Quite new.

"Those are his 'bles' (white-faced) horses; but where has he come by a *splinter new* spider like that?" (Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 55, 1906.)

Spogh, To.—(D. *pochen*, to boast, to vaunt one's self.) To show off, to make a display.

"There were many handsome, high-fed horses on the commando, taken from the Grahamstown stables; and many a youth *spogh'd* dashingly enough upon them at starting." (Dugmore's "Reminiscences of an Albany Settler," p. 33, 1871.)

Sponsziekte.—(D. *spons*, a sponge; *ziekte*, sickness, disease.) A disease affecting cattle known in England as black quarter or quarter evil. The South African name refers to the swellings which are characteristic of the disease; when examined after death they are found to be spongy (and dark red in colour). (See "C.G.H. Agric. Jour.," p. 152, August, 1909.)

"Mr. . . . has cured *sponse-ziekte* among calves and lung sickness among cattle." ("Queenstown Free Press," 3 February, 1863.)

Spook.—(D. *spook*, a ghost, haunting spirit.) A ghost or apparition.

"At another time I met the *spook* (ghost) in the form of a very tall black man." (Andersson's "Lake Ngami," p. 344, 1856.)

Spook vogel.—(D. *spook*, a ghost; *vogel*, a bird.) (1) *Laniarius Starki* is known by this name among the Dutch. The weirdness of its mournful note while the bird remains hidden has given rise to this name. (2) *Gallinago nigripennis* is also so called.

"Dr. Exton says that the 'drumming' noise made by this bird in its morning and evening flights have earned for it the name of *Spook vogel* (ghost-bird) among the Boers of the far interior." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 676, 1875-84.)

Spoor.—(D. *spoor*, trace, track, footprint.) Footprints, wheelmarks, or any other trace of man, animal, or vehicle. The natives are often exceedingly expert at detecting these traces, and can often see them where the inexperienced eye can see nothing.

"Native policemen . . . were to assist the colonists and follow the *spoor* or traces of cattle." (Boyce's "Notes on South Africa," p. 76, 1838.).

"New comers take time to learn the value of *spoor*. Show them fresh spoor and they will scarcely believe that it is that of the enemy." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 351, 1897.)

Spoor, To.—(D. *sporen*, to trace, to track.) To follow up by means of footmarks or other traces.

"After about an hour's search and *spooring* we at length came upon its object." (Fleming's "Southern Africa," p. 368, 1856.)

Spoorweg.—(D. *spoorweg*, railroad, railway.) The railway.

"Truly the *spoorweg* is a great institution." (Statham's "Blacks, Boers and British," p. 68, 1881.)

Spot.—(D. *spotten*, to mock, to jeer.) To poke fun at, to make game of.

"'Foei, Mr. Baxter,' expostulated the Boer, 'it isn't right to *spot* at (make fun of) Bible things.'" (Watkin's "From Farm to Forum," p. 36, 1906.)

Spreuw.—(D. *spruw*, a thrush.) *Spreo bicolor, Gm.* One of the most widely distributed and most numerously represented of the Cape birds.

"Thrushes are known in the Colony under the general name of *sprew*." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 224, 1801.)

Spring-bok.—*Antidorcas euchore.* Sometimes they are called "Springers," but "Spring-buck" is now almost universal. The manner of leaping of this beautiful animal is peculiar; it is not a bound forward, but straight upward from 6 to 9 feet. These saltatory performances are called by the Dutch "pronken," showing off; at each bound the animal displays a broad plume of pure white hair along the ridge of the back which at other times is scarcely seen.

"This evening a herd of about 2000 *spring-boks* coming to drink out of the well, made a halt." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 82, 1785.)

"Being covered with grass, it . . . harboured a considerable number of *Springers*." (*Ibid.*, II. p. 139.)

Springers.—(1) *Mugil multilineatus, A. Smith.* A species of mullet that leaps with considerable vigour; a light at night in a low boat on the water will sometimes bring them leaping

on board. (2) In Natal this name is given to *Elops saurus.* See Cape salmon.

"Tobiwo is what the Dutch call a *Springer* (flying-fish) because it leaps out of the water." (Kaempfer's "History of Japan," 1690-92, Reprint, I. p. 233.)

"The *springer* is esteemed for the thick fat coating that lines the cavity of the abdomen." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 30, 1801.)

"Our *springer* they call 'Cape salmon'." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 154, 5 December, 1906.)

Springhaan.—(D. *sprinkhaan,* grasshopper, locust.) A common name in South Africa for all varieties of *Locustidæ.*

"They had not arrived at a sufficient state of maturity to fly, but sprang with great agility, deriving from this circumstance the Dutch name of *spring-haan.*" (Steedman's "Adventures," I. p. 125, 1835.)

Springhaan vogel.—See Locust bird.

"Prodigious swarms of locusts . . . followed by such dense flights of birds as almost to darken the air. The *Springhaan-vogel* as the latter is called by the colonists is about the size of the swallow." (Harris's "Wild Sports," p. 81, 1839.)

Spring hare.—*Pedetes caffer,* a curious animal, of nocturnal habits, with long and strong hind-legs, the fore-legs being diminutive; its mode of progression when pressed is a series of great bounds like a kangaroo.

"By the colonists it is called Berg-haas or *Springhaas* (the mountain or bounding hare)." (Sparrman's "Voyage," II. p. 195, 1785.)

"The *spring-hare,* as the Dutch call it, is a creature about 2 feet long, shaped like a kangaroo in body and in tail, but with a different head; it burrows and lives in holes all day, but at night it frisks about and grazes." (Galton's "Tropical South Africa," p. 281, 1853.)

Spruit.—(D. *spruit,* a sprout, offshoot.) Throughout South Africa this word is used of those somewhat deep, naturally worn channels by which the rain-water finds its way to the rivers. Cf. the analogous use of the English word "branch" for a tributary of a river.

"We had to get through one or two ugly *spruits.*" (Colenso's "Ten Weeks in Natal," p. 83, 1855.)

"About half a mile from the site of the outspan ran a

spruit or water course." (Mitford's "Luck of Gerard Ridgeley," p. 100.)

Spuug kapell.—(D. *spuwen* or *spugen*, to spit; Port. *capello*, hood.) The hooded, spitting snake—*Naia flava.* See Cape cobra.

Spuug slange.—(D. *spuwen* or *spugen*, to spit; *slang*, a serpent, snake.) *Sepedon hæmachætes.* This snake, which is able to eject a venomous fluid to a distance of three or four paces, is allied to the cobras or hooded snakes. See Ringhals.

"The *Spoog slang*, or Spitting snake, has been mentioned to me by the inhabitants of the country, who say it will throw its poison to the distance of several yards; and that people have been blinded by them; but this never came under my own inspection." (Paterson's "Narrative," p. 163, 1789.)

"The other was a very rare sort of serpent called here the *spuug-slang* (the spurting snake)." (Lichtenstein's "Travels," I. p. 95, 1812.)

Square, To.—A process intimately connected with "palm oil"; to induce one by financial or other considerations, to forego hesitancy or opposition to some particular scheme.

"As a sop to the officers of the force, they had altered their titles into captains and lieutenants and thus *squared* them." (Ex C.M.R., "With the Cape Mounted Rifles," p. 156, 1881.)

"They provided the motive power by which the press might be suborned, opponents *squared.*" (Robinson's "Life Time in South Africa," p. 370, 1900.)

Square-face.—A slang name for gin; it refers to the square bottles in which it was retailed in all parts of South Africa.

"*Square-face* is the invariable stuff, and you take as much as you like for a glass, though it is thought bad taste to fill up above the 'pretty'." (Montague's "Campaigning in South Africa," p. 98, 1880.)

"A little hollands (out here called *square-face*)." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 60, 1889.)

Squatter.—One who settles on unoccupied land without title.

Squat, To.—To settle on unoccupied land.

"The main body of the farmers went on into Natal, but some *squatted* along the Vaal, the Vet, and the Modder Rivers." (Russell's "Natal," p. 67, 1891.)

Squeaker.—(1) The name given to a fish common in the Crocodile and Marico Rivers. (2) It is also given by Natal boys to the cicada.

"The youthful genius who brought two *squeakers*—tree cicadas—before school hours and released one in each room." ("A South African Boy," p. 76, 1897.)

Squint-path.—See Schuins pad.

"The difficult spot which the Dutch call a *squint-path*, was passed, and the wagon gained the top of the height." (Kingston's "Hendricks the Hunter," p. 67, 1894.)

Squirrel, Ground.—*Xerus capensis*, which lives in burrows in the open ground of the Karoo.

"There were numbers of little squirrel-like creatures there too. Our fellows used to call them *ground squirrels* and 'tree-rats,' they were little fellows like meerkats, with bushy tails ringed in brown, black, and white." (Fitzpatrick's "Jock of the Bushveld," p. 338, 1907.)

Staanplek.—(D. *staan*, to stand; *plaats*, place; *plek*, a spot.) A place by the roadside where riding or draught animals are allowed a short rest for breathing, generally on the top of a steep rise, or after a heavy piece of road.

"De ezels waren echter gebleven bij onze *staanplek* zoo gingen Andries, P. Dempers en ik hen opzoeken." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 47, 1896.)

Staartriem.—(D. *staart*, tail, rear; C.D. *riem*, a thong of untanned hide.) (1) A crupper. (2) The name given by the Dutch to an article of Hottentot attire which consists of a triangular piece of hide about a foot long, 2 inches wide at the top where it joins the girdle, and widening to 4 inches. It is not of the least use, and may be compared in that respect to the tails of a modern dress coat, being worn in exactly the same place.

"When speaking in Dutch they call this a *Staart-riem*, which in English may be rendered by the word tail-piece." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 397, 1822.)

"Here we find in the Ovaherero, a tribe of men wearing the *staart-riem*." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 266, 1905.)

Staat.—The English word "State" means the body politic; the word "Staat" in South Africa seems to refer, as "State" does in America, to the territory—as Orange Free State—Oranje Vrij Staat.

Staatmaker.—(D. *staatmaken*, to rely upon.) A mainstay, used of either a person or animal that can be depended upon in an emergency.

Stad.—(D. *stad*, a city, town.) (1) A town, as *Kaap Stad.* (2) The term is also employed of a native town in Bechuanaland and elsewhere.

"A native 'reed-dance' was going on in the '*stadt*,' as they call the native town." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 14, 1897.)

"As the light grew and we began to smoke, we could see our scouts . . . riding toward a large Kaffir *stadt* between us and the fires." (Stuart's "Pictures of War," p. 314, 1901.)

Stampblock.—The wooden mortar in which grain stamping is done.

"A section of a tree-trunk about a yard high has a hollow made in the top, like a deep basin, into which the corn is poured." (Lownde's "Every-day Life in South Africa," p. 87, 1900.)

Stamped mealies.—Mealies that have been subjected to the process of being stamped.

Stamper.—The wooden pestle employed in stamping.

"The *stampers* are pieces of round wood about half a yard in length, bluntly pointed at the ends and thinner in the middle." (Lownde's "Every-day Life in South Africa," p. 87, 1900.)

Stamper wood.—*Ehretia Hottentotica.*

Stampkar or **Skamelkar.**—(D. *stampen*, to jolt, toss; *schommel*, a swing; C.D. *schommelen*, to shake about; *kar*, a cart.) A cart without springs is so called by the Dutch.

Stamps or **Stampers.**—The crushing machines employed in the gold mining industry.

"Ten heads of *stampers*, driven by a 12-inch cylinder engine, would put through 150 tons per week." (Mather's "Golden South Africa," p. 340, 1888.)

"The Golden Quarry proved the pick of the bunch, and at the commencement of operations there was sufficient quartz in sight to keep 100 *stamps* going for twenty years, yielding 4½ ounces to the ton." (Wilson's "Behind the Scenes in the Transvaal," p. 53, 1901.)

Stamp, To.—(D. *stampen*, to ram, pound; G. *stampfen*, to crush, pound. Minsheu, "Guide to the Tongues," 1617, has "Stampe. To bray or beat small.") The process by which the

outer skin is removed from mealies. The term is also applied to the ore-crushing process employed in the gold-mining industry. Cf. Chaucer's use of the word in the same sense of "to bray in a mortar".

"Thise cokes, how they *stampe*, and streyne, and grinde."

("The Pardoner's Tale.")

"The *stamping* of it in small is performed in the following manner. A block of wood is hollowed out, and this cavity is filled with rice, which they pound with a wooden pestle, till it separates from the husk. In the great this *stamping* is performed, not only by means of a machine, consisting of a number of pestles, which are set in motion by a water-wheel, but likewise by a similar machine which a man treads with his foot, and during the *stamping* stirs with a stick in the hopper, so that the grain can run down." (Thunberg's "Travels," IV. p. 85, 1796.)

Stam-vruchte.—(D. *stam*, trunk; *vrucht*, fruit.) The fruit of *Chrysophyllum magalis-montanum*, *Sond.*; an edible berry common on the kopjes around Johannesburg, Pretoria, Barberton, etc., so called because its flowers and fruits are borne on very short stalks on the thick stem of the shrub, and not at the ends of the twigs. It has a pleasantly acid flavour.

Stands.—Building plots in new towns, like Johannesburg and Buluwayo, are advertised and sold as "stands"; "business stands" being positions specially suitable for shops or stores.

"Real estate has already reached a considerable value, as may be gauged from the fact that in July, 1893, 348 *stands* or town-lots were sold for £17,786." (Wills and Collingwood's "Downfall of Lobengula," p. 312, 1894.)

"Town lots, or *stands* as they are called in South Africa, had gone up to prices which nothing but a career of swift and brilliant prosperity could justify." (Bryce's "Impressions," p. 274, 1898.)

Star apple.—*Royena lycioides*, a creeper bearing deep yellow, scented flowers, and a fruit dividing into five sections. The fruit is not edible.

Star of Bethlehem.—In the Eastern Province this name is given to the flower of *Ornithogalum thyrsoides*. See Chinkering ching. In Tusser's "Fiue Hundred Pointes of Good Husbandrie," *O. umbellatum* is spoken of by this name. (43, 34.)

Steekgras.—(D. *steek*, point, sting.) *Aristida barbicollis, Trin. and Rupr.* The seeds of this grass have sharp barbed awns attached to them by which they cling to the wool of sheep, work their way through the skin, and set up considerable irritation. *Andropogon contortus*, mentioned by Wallace, is also a steekgras, but it is not the common one.

" *Andropogon contortus, Willd.*, the sharp seeds of which, with their twisted awns, easily pierce the skin." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 99, 1896.)

Steenbok.—(D. *steenbok*, the Alpine ibex.) *Raphicerus campestris.* The word is frequently corrupted to Stembok.

"There are several other small antelopes, as, for example, the *steenbok*, rhebok, and bush-buck, which are holding their own and rather tending to increase since a close time has been instituted." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of Cape Colony," p. 246, 1896.)

Steenbrasem.—(D. *steen*, a stone; *brasem*, a bream.) *Pagellus lithnognathus.* See Varkbek and Mussel-cracker. The name is often corrupted to Stembras.

"Fish are very abundant at the Cape, among those most esteemed are . . . the *steenbrassen*." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 18, 1796.)

"The red and white *steenbrassems* or stone breams, two species, or perhaps varieties only, of perches." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 30, 1801.)

Steenje.—(D. *steen*, stone.) *Cantharus emarginatus.*

Steenklaver.—(D. *steen*, a stone; *klaver*, clover.) *Melilotus parviflorus.* The leaves are applied to sores as poultices.

Steen klip visch.—(D. *steen*, stone; *klip*, a rock; *visch*, fish.) *Chilodactylus brachydactylus.*

Steen visch.—*Chilodactylus fasciatus.* This fish is sometimes called by the preceding peculiarly redundant name.

Stekelthee.—(D. *stekel*, prickle; *thee*, tea.) *Borbonia parviflora, Lamk.* Used, apparently with good effect, in asthma.

Stel.—(D. *stellen*, to place.) (1) A place, a stand. (2) The meaning which the word has in the quotations is derived from the plan, so frequently adopted in South Africa, of placing traps, or setting spring-guns, for the destruction of beasts of prey; the meaning has been transferred from the place to the trap itself.

"As soon as he (the wolf) has seized the bait and begins to pull it up from the bottom of the hole, he tightens the

string, releases the trigger, and, if the *stel* is properly set, receives the bullet in his head." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 116, 1852.)

"De 'tijger' (luipaard) wordt er meestal met een *stel* gevangen en dan gedood, daar hij zich zelden of nooit op de vlakte waagt." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 845 n., 1882.)

"The lions had killed two zebras close to where we outspanned, and we made a strong kraal, expecting a visit from them, and I set a *stell* (spring-gun) for them, by the remains of one of the zebras." (Baldwin's "African Hunting," p. 358, 1894.)

Stellasi.—(D. *stellage*, a scaffolding, platform.) Low platforms, generally made of open reed-work, upon which fruit is dried; a somewhat similar arrangement for the protection of young tobacco plants is also known by the same name.

Stellenboshed, To be.—To be relegated, as the result of incompetence, to a position in which little harm can be done. Julian Ralph gives the origin of the expression.

"It had long been noticed that whenever an officer was prominently connected with a losing battle or exhibited marked incompetence in any field of military work, he got a billet at Stellenbosch. . . . The name therefore obtained a deep significance and common usage in the Colony, and to say that a man had been *Stellenboshed* was but the ordinary polite mode of mentioning what might otherwise have had to be said in many harsher sounding words." (Ralph's "War's Brighter Side," p. 106, 1901.)

"In fact they are more probably *stellenboshed* to the depot, owing to an absence of any special quality." ("The Army from Within," p. 59, 1901.)

Stell-roer.—(D. *roer*, a tube, pipe. In South Africa applied to a gun.) A spring- or trap-gun. See Stell.

"The animal had been shot through the body by a *stell-roer*, or trap-gun, set by a Hottentot." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 360, 1801.)

Stick away, To.—A common South African expression meaning to hide an object or to get into hiding oneself.

"According to the children 'when Alfred was "bang" and *sticking away*, he had to watch the roostekoeks'." (Hicks' "The Cape as I Found It," p. 170, 1900.)

Stick insect.—Various members of the *Phasmidæ* family

are popularly known by this appropriate name. In appearance they resemble sticks or twigs, sometimes reaching 10 or 12 inches in length; so close is the resemblance that they are only to be distinguished in their native haunts by a trained eye, and not always by that.

"Besides the insects which imitate grass, another large class imitate twigs, sticks, and the smaller branches of shrubs. The commonest of these is a walking twig, 3 or 4 inches long, covered with bark apparently and spotted all over with mould like the genuine branch. The imitation of bark here is one of the most perfect delusions in nature." (Drummond's "Tropical Africa," p. 173, 1888.)

Stick of peace.—The name given to a baton, or staff, which Sir Harry Smith carried when formally meeting the Kaffir chiefs. The purpose of this staff is set forth in the quotation.

"His Excellency (Sir Harry Smith) holds in his hands a cane, surmounted by a brass knob, which is called the *Stick of peace.* The kissing of this stick is a declaration of allegiance." (Godlonton's "Kaffir War, 1850-51," p. 23, 1852.)

Sticks.—(The C.D. word is *steeks,* which seems to be derived from *steken,* as used in the phrase *blijven steken,* G. *stecken bleiben,* to stick fast; but in ordinary usage it has come to mean obstinate, perverse; cf. G. *stöckisch,* stubborn, obstinate.) (1) Horses that will not pull or start. (2) The word is also applied to persons who are obstinate or obstructive, and is in common use in the Western Province and Midland Districts.

"There we stand at the bottom of a steep hill, struggling with our horses, who have taken it into their heads not to move an inch further—they have become *steeks,* as the Boers say." (Mackinnon's "South African Traits," p. 163, 1887.)

"The horses of this country are mostly *sticks,* i.e. they get sulky at times and will not move when they are put into a cart." (Warren's "On the Veldt in the Seventies," p. 92, 1902.)

Stick, To.—(1) To jib or refuse to start; to be obstinate, sulky. (2) The word is used also of a wagon or cart that has got into a mudhole or that has met with some other obstruction.

"Sticks was his horse. That estimable quadruped had at one time been addicted to *sticking,* an inconvenient vice of which his present owner had thoroughly cured him." (Mitford's "Romance of the Cape Frontier," p. 23, 1891.)

"For the first week the roads were muddy, and our buck-wagon got *stuck* several times—once for about eight hours." (Balfour's "1200 Miles in a Waggon," p. 84, 1895.)

Stijfziekte.—(D. *stiff*, stiff; *ziekte*, sickness.) (1) Dr. A. Theiler, C.M.G., Acting Director of Veterinary Research, says that there are three diseases which go under this name, which he specifies as follows: (i) The Stijfziekte caused by the Stijfziekte boschje (*Crotolaria burkeana*); (ii) Stijfziekte not caused by *Crotolaria*, frequently complicated with joint lesions; (iii) The Lamziekte form of Stijfziekte. (2) The name has also been given to the cattle disease known as "Three days' sickness". The word, Dr. Theiler says, "describes an affection of the locomotory organs embracing almost anything interfering with the normal movement of the limbs up to complete paralysis". ("S.A. Agric. Journ.," June, July, 1912.)

"Apoplexy in sheep. . . . This sickness is known to be very fatal among sheep and is what the Dutch usually call *Styff ziekte*, for after a few fits the animal always dies." ("Queenstown Free Press," 3 February, 1863.)

"In this Colony the genera *Crotalaria*, *Lessertia*, *Indigofera*, and *Tephrocia* are under suspicion of producing the leguminous poisoning of cattle known locally as *stijfziekte*." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 202, 1907.)

"The above facts appear to me to indicate that the diseased condition termed *stijfziekte* is due to defective nutrition of the bones of the affected animal, and that this arises from the absence of a sufficiency of phosphates in the vegetation upon which the animal feeds." ("Agric. Journ. S.A. Union," p. 13, February, 1911.)

Stijfziekte bosje.—(D. *stijf*, stiff; *ziekte*, sickness; *bos*, a bush.) *Crotolaria burkeana*, the eating of which is known to induce one form of the above disease. See Klappers.

"The *cause* of this stiff-sickness has been experimentally established by feeding of the so-called *stijfziekte boschje* (*Crotolaria burkeana*)." ("S.A. Agric. Journ.," p. 780, June, 1912.)

Sting ray.—*Trygon pastinaca, L.*, but the name appears to be applied also to one of the Eagle rays or Sea devils—*Myliobatis aquila, L.*

Stink ants.—I have not been able to identify these insects.

"I don't think I have ever mentioned the *stink-ants* to you . . . it is said that if you annoy them in any way, as, for

instance, by treading on them, or unwittingly burning them in the camp fire, they emit a most horrible odour." (Balfour's "1200 Miles in a Waggon," p. 225, 1895.)

Stink blaar.—(D. *blad,* a leaf.) *Datura stramonium, Linn.* This plant has an exceedingly disagreeable smell.

"The soil, which is not deep, is light and red in colour, growing . . . a plant called *stink-blaar, Stramonium,* which poisons ostrich chicks." (Wallace's "Farming Industries of the Cape Colony," p. 37, 1896.)

Stink bosch.—The name given to *Azima tetracantha, Lam.* A plant of the Order *Salvadoraceæ,* having a very disagreeable odour.

Stink-bull giraffe.—An old bull giraffe has a strong musk scent.

"The giraffe Witboy had shot . . . was an old bull, known, from its peculiarities amongst hunters, as a *stink-bull.*" (Schulz and Hammar's "New Africa," p. 331, 1897.)

Stink cat.—*Zorilla striata.* This by no means pretty name is sometimes given to the Muishond (q.v.).

"I have shammed dead like a *stink-cat* when dogs are about." (Haggard's "Swallow," p. 50, 1899.)

Stinker.—Another of the rather numerous names given by sealers and whalers to *Majaqueus aequinoctialis.* See Black haglet.

Stink fish.—*Box salpa.* The marine vegetation upon which this fish lives, gives to it at times a peculiar and not agreeable smell—hence this name. See Bamboo fish.

"Many of the Cape fish are endowed with the quaintest Dutch names. Here are a few of them: Kabeljouw, . . . *Stinkvisch,* . . . and others." (Bryden's "Gun and Camera in South Africa," p. 449, 1893.)

Stinkhout.—(D. *hout,* wood.) *Ocotea bullata, E. Mey.* This tree, which has been called the South African teak, is one of the most valuable of our forest trees; when freshly worked the wood emits a somewhat disagreeable odour, which, however, soon passes off. The wood is grained very much like French walnut.

"*Stink-hout* (stink-wood) which resembles the walnut tree, is a tall tree, and is used for making writing-desks and chairs." (Thunberg's "Travels," I. p. 169, 1795.)

Stink muishond.—See Muishond and Stink cat.

"I rushed up and saw the dog had hold of a *stink-mais-*

hand, and had already to all appearances killed it." (Browning's "Fighting and Farming in South Africa," p. 37, 1880.)

Stinkpot.—(1) This name is given by sailors to the Sooty albatross (q.v.). (2) It is also applied to the bird known as the Cape hen (q.v.). Those who know what a stinkpot is will appreciate the forcefulness of the name. Stinkpots were used in days past to throw on an enemy's deck at close quarters, and, being filled with offensive and suffocating combustibles, were fairly effective within their sphere of action. They are still used by eastern pirates.

Stink vliegen.—(D. *vlieg*, a fly.) Among the Dutch the malodorous members of the bug family are known by this name. These insects—*Scutelleridæ*—are sometimes very attractive in appearance, being adorned with the most brilliant colours, but the odour which they exhale is repellent.

"*Stink-vliegen* appears to be the term among our farmers for those insects to which entomologists assign the English term bug." ("C.G.H. Agric. Journ.," p. 224, September, 1897.)

Stippel slang.—(D. *stippel*, speckle, spot, dot; *slang*, a snake.) *Rhamphiophis multimaculatus*. *Amplorhinus multimaculatus* is known as the Kaapsche stippel slang. The reference is to the spots with which they are marked.

Stock.—The cattle on a farm. See Small stock.

Stock-farm.—A farm specially suited for rearing and fattening stock, as distinct from an agricultural farm.

Stock-fish.—*Merlucius vulgaris*, known at Port Elizabeth as the Hake.

Stock rose.—*Sparmannia africana;* the fibre of this plant is of commercial value.

"The supply till then had come from an area of about 25 morgen, naturally covered with *Stock rose*." (Sim's "Forest Flora of Cape Colony," p. 149, 1907.)

Stoep.—(D. *stoep*, the steps before a house.) In South Africa the word is applied to a stone or brick-built platform, running along the front, and sometimes round the sides of the house. These "stoeps" are the favourite resort in the cool of a summer's evening.

"In front of each house . . . is a paved platform, usually 8 or 10 feet wide, and raised, commonly, from 2 to 4 feet above the level of the street. . . . This platform is called the *Stoep* (step)." (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 71, 1822.)

Stoep rooms.—Rooms built as wings to a house, but with entrance and exit opening on to the "stoep" only; sometimes they are merely the "stoep" ends walled off.

"Two very miniature *stoeprooms* as they are called at the Cape. (Small rooms stolen out of each end of the verandah.)" (Prichard's "Friends and Foes in the Transkei," p. 122, 1880.)

Stomach staggers.—A disease from which horses suffer, the cause of which appears to be the eating of the plant known as "Ragwort"—*Senecio Burchellii* and *S. latifolius.* "The animal becomes sleepy, staggers in its walk, bores its head against the wall or similar obstruction. This is followed by delirium." (Hutcheons.) See also Molteno disease.

"*Stomach staggers,* as it is called, may however arise from an engorged stomach, quite independent of hepatic cirrhosis." ("Science in South Africa," p. 360, 1905.)

Stompneus.—(D. *stomp,* blunt; *neus,* nose, snout.) See Stumpnose.

Stomp staart.—(D. *stomp,* stump; *staart,* a tail.) As the result of inoculation colonial cattle sometimes lose their tails; it is to this disfigurement that the name refers.

"But never mind, Jafta, you can keep your old *stomp-staart* this time." (Mitford's "Romance of the Cape Frontier," p. 57, 1891.)

Stomp stertje.—(D. *stertje,* dim. of *staart.*) *Sylviella rufescens,* a pretty little bird is thus designated.

"The Crombec (*Sylviella rufescens*) known to the Boers as *Stomp-stertje* (stump-tail) is ash-grey above and tawny-buff below." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 80, 1908.)

Stone fish or **Stone bream.**—*Scorpis lithophilus,* a Natal fish.

"I found two or three coolies fishing . . . they were hauling out large numbers of *stone-fish* averaging 1½ lb." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 588, 1906.)

Stones.—A slang term sometimes employed when speaking of diamonds. See Klip.

> Well, last night from my tent, there was taken
> A small parcel of *stones*—just a few.

(Ellis's "South African Sketches," p. 133, 1887.)

"The cooling mud has closed round the *stones* taking the impress of every angle and facet." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 292, 1891.)

Stootwagen.—(D. *stooten,* to push.) A hand-cart, perambulator.

Store.—This word is in general use throughout South Africa, and is applied to the small shop of the general dealer as well as to the more pretentious buildings of the large wholesale firms.

"There are many *stores*—not shops; and many *storekeepers*—not shopkeepers. People stand on their dignity here." (Lindley's "After Ophir," p. 14, n.d.)

"The term *store* which I have just used requires some explanation . . . a sort of primitive 'general shop' which some trader has established to supply the wants of those who live within fifty miles, or who pass along the road." (Bryce's "Impressions," p. 290, 1898.)

Store clothes.—Clothes bought ready-made, as distinct from those made to measure.

"Altogether a very or'nary performance, especially as all were dressed in European *store-clothes.*" (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 14, 1897.)

Store-keeper.—The proprietor or person in charge of a store. Store and store-clothes seem to be importations from America; but store-keeper appears to be of South African birth.

"Hither the *store-keeper* brings the least saleable though not the worst part of his stock." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 40, 1852.)

"I found a solitary Jewish *store-keeper* faithfully holding the Passover." (Trotter's "Old Cape Colony," p. 221, 1903.)

Stormjagers.—Dumplings cooked in fat; they can be quickly prepared, and are often made by men living in the veld. The name and the thing were both well known before De Wet's men prepared them.

"The burghers utilized the flour supplied to them in making cakes; these they cooked in boiling fat and called them *storm jagers* or maagbommen." (De Wet's "Three Years' War," p. 11, 1903.)

Strand.—(D. *strand,* a shore, as in English.) A sandy beach; e.g. Somerset Strand.

Strandjut.—(D. *strandjut* or *strandjutter,* a beach thief, a wrecker.) Another name for *Hyæna brunnea.* See Strand

wolf. At one time it was mistakenly supposed that this animal was to be found only on the sea-coast.

"From Mr. Flashman, Queenstown, the skin of a *Strand-jut* (*Hyæna fusca*)." ("South African Magazine," III. p. 596, 1869.)

Strandloopers.—(D. *loopen*, to run.) (1) Hottentots who had their abodes, and picked up such living as they could, along the sea-shore. (2) The name is also given to *Ægialitis tricollaris*, the treble-collared sand-plover.

"For a little tobacco the *Strandloopers* will always fetch fire-wood for the cooks." (Sutherland's "South African Tribes," II. p. 29, 1846.)

"This pretty little plover, the *Strandlooper* of the colonists, is common throughout the Colony." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 662, 1875-84.)

Strandveld.—(D. *strand*, shore.) Coast lands, south of Bredasdorp and Riversdale.

"While on a visit to Mr. John Van der Byl's farm, Nacht-wacht, in the *Strandveldt* we found a young bird just shot (*Halietus vocifer*)." (Layard's "Birds of South Africa," p. 47, 1875-84.)

"In the Bredasdorp district it ('lamziekte') occurs on the flats of the *strand veld* and is prevalent along the mountain ranges in the *strand veld*." ("S.A. Agric. Journ.," p. 35, July, 1912.)

Strandveld locust.—A variety of locust generally found along the coast.

"The variety is usually termed the *Strandveldt locust* (sea-coast), but whether it is entirely confined to the sea-board regions I have not for a certainty ascertained." ("Trans. S.A. Phil. Soc.," I. Part 3, p. 196, 1880.)

Strand wolf.—*Hyæna brunnea.* Its popular name refers to "its habit of preying upon the refuse thrown up along the shore". See Strandjut.

"From its peculiar habit of frequenting the sea-coast, the Dutch colonists have given this animal the name of *Strand wolf*, to distinguish it from the tiger wolf, or spotted hyaena, and the Aard-wolf or Proteles of zoologists." (Steedman's "Adventures," II. p. 112, 1835.)

Strawberry, Everlasting.—*Helipterum eximium, D.C.* An appropriate name because of the resemblance which the scarlet capitula bears to this fruit. (Riversdale District.)

Strawberry grape.—Sometimes called the Catawba grape, but whether it is identical with the American Catawba grape or not seems to be uncertain. It has a peculiar strawberry-like flavour and is not in great demand.

"I am told that another sort, the *strawberry grape*, grows and bears in Uitenhage." ("The South African Exhibition," p. 175, 1885.)

Strawberry tree.—*Arbutus unedo.* This plant, which has been imported from the Mediterranean, bears edible, but not very palatable fruits, not unlike strawberries in appearance.

"There are several species of *Arbutus*, but the only one in general cultivation is the *strawberry tree*." ("S.A. Gardening and Agriculture," p. 143, 1 February, 1912.)

Streak away, To.—A slang expression meaning to slink off, to sneak away quickly.

"Very soon their firing ceased and we saw them *streaking away* over the next hill." (Baden Powell's "Matabeleland Campaign, 1896," p. 243, 1897.)

Streak down, To.—A slang phrase meaning to slip or slide down rapidly.

"The amusing part of the performance was the way those monkeys *streaked down* the trees and vanished." (Bryden's "Kloof and Karoo," p. 24, 1889.)

Streepkoppie.—(D. *streep*, a streak, stripe; *kop*, a head.) (1) *Fringillaria capensis.* The name refers to two black stripes which this bird has upon each side of the head, one passing through the eye, the other beneath it. (2) The name is also given in the Eastern Province to *Emberiza flaviventris.*

"Occasionally the *streep-koppie* knew what it was to fall into the hands of the Aliwal boys." ("Scientific African," p. 88, 1896.)

Streepkop sijsje.—(D. *sijsje*, a linnet.) *Poliospiza gularis.*

Streep-visch.—(D. *streep*, a streak, stripe.) See Seventy-four.

Street-keeper.—A municipal official appointed in most South African towns whose duty it is to report the condition of the streets to the Town Council, to impound straying cattle, etc.

"A friend of ours says he intends writing . . . to ask the town clerk to send the *street-keeper* to ask . . . when we are to have a new gaol." ("The Queenstown Free Press," Sup., 23 February, 1859.)

Strelitzia.—A genus of the banana family, natives of South Africa. The name is derived from the late Queen Catherine, who was a princess of the house of Mecklenburg-Strelitz. See Wild banana.

> *Strelitza* here in buff and blue appeared in stateliest pride,
> Whilst pendant flowers of different hues hung from the round bush side.

("C.G.H. Lit. Gazette," I. p. 97, 1831.)

"We slept well under the shade of some *strelitza* trees (very similar to wild bananas)." (Gardner's "Journey," p. 17, 1836.)

Striped grunter.—*Chilodactylus grandis.* This is the Natal name for the fish known at East London as the River Steenbras or Tiger-fish (q.v.).

"The *striped grunter*, which is occasionally found in the bay . . . is the 'River steenbras' of the Cape Colony." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 668, 1906.)

Striped karanteen.—*Box salpa, L.* The Natal name for the fish known at the Cape as the "Bamboo fish" (q.v.).

Strop Bill, The.—(D. *strop,* halter, rope.) The popular designation of a bill introduced into the Cape Parliament, which had it passed would have allowed a farmer to punish his servants for misconduct by flogging.

Struis.—A not infrequent contraction in the Transvaal of *stroohuis*, a straw-house.

"Ik ga ook liever in huis bij eenen blanke, dan in een Kaffer *struis* (stroohut) met velerlei ongedierte." (Hofmeyr's "Twintig Jaren in Zoutpansberg," p. 134, 1890.)

Stuiver.—(D. *stuiver*, a penny.) A coin of the old Dutch currency. See Rds., sks., sts.

Stuk.—(D. *stuk*, a piece.) This word is sometimes used as an equivalent for "breakfast". Cf. Eng. "bite," light refreshment.

Stumpnose.—*Chrysophrys globiceps, Cuv.* A favourite fish caught in great abundance round the Cape during summer.

"Fish are very abundant out at the Cape, among those most esteemed . . . are . . . the *stomp-neus*, and other fish." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 18, 1796.)

"The harbour abounds in fish, amongst which *stump nose* and others strangely named, but well-flavoured fish are prominent." (Lucas's "Camp Life and Sport in South Africa," p. 30, 1878.)

Sucker fish.—*Chorisochismus dentex.* See Klip-zuiger.

"A curious genus of these fish has the ventral fins modified into an adhesive disk, by which it attaches itself firmly to rocks, etc., and is therefore known as the *sucker-fish.*" ("East London Dispatch," 11 September, 1905.)

Sugar birds.—This name is shared by the *Promeropidæ* and the *Nectariniidæ*, Sun-birds (q.v.).

"You ever and anon startle from its resting-place the rich plumed *sugar-bird.*" ("C.G.H. Lit. Gazette," p. 138, 2 September, 1833.)

"The long-tailed *Sugar birds* (*Promerops*), two species of which are generally recognized, form a distinct family, the range of which is confined to South Africa." ("Science in South Africa," p. 139, 1905.)

Sugar bush.—*Protea mellifera* and other species of Protea. They grow in great abundance on the slopes of Table Mountain; a syrup is obtained from the flowers. See Bosjestroop.

"Here and there we come upon knolls covered with the evergreen *Suiker-bos,* a graceful shrub." (Barter's "The Dorp and the Veld," p. 74, 1852.)

"The Protea (*Sugar bush*) and the wild citron grow here." (Wood's "Through Matabeleland," p. 41, 1893.)

Sugar flowers.—The flowers of the above shrub.

Sugar tree.—The same as the sugar bush.

"Of these, one called here *Sugar-tree,* from the great quantity of saccharine juice in the bottom of its vase-shaped flowers." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 62, 1801.)

Suiker bos.—See under Sugar bush.

Suiker vogel.—(D. *suiker,* sugar; *vogel,* a bird.) See Sugar birds.

Sun birds.—Various birds of the *Nectariniidæ* are thus named. See Honey eaters and Sugar birds.

"Honey suckers or *sun-birds* that flit like living gems from flower to flower." (Russell's "Natal," p. 36, 1891.)

Sunday River.—This river has its source in the Sneeuwbergen and runs into the sea at Algoa Bay.

"Our journey occupied six successive days. On the second, we forded the Sunday River. . . . The name was given to it by the old Dutch colonists, because beyond its eastern bank the sabbath was unknown." (Smith's "South Africa Delineated," p. 7, 1850.)

Sundew.—Various species of *Drosera* are thus named.

"The *Sun dew* (*Drosera*) obtains its nitrogen from insects which the plant catches and digests by means of the sticky tentacles which are borne on their leaves and stems." (Stoneman's "Plants and their Ways in South Africa," p. 73, 1906.)

"*Droseraceæ.*—An order of which we have in Natal one genus only, the well-known *Sundew*. In the Cape Colony another genus is found (*Roridula*), a much larger plant than the *Sundew*, which the Dutch are said to hang in their houses to catch flies." (Wood's "Handbook to the Flora of Natal," p. 46, 1907.)

Sun-fish.—*Orthagoriscus mola, Bl.* See Maan-fish.

Sun under.—The moment of sun-set. See Zon-onder.

"I could creep on after him from sun-up to *sun-under*." (Glanville's "The Fossicker," p. 94, 1891.)

Sun-up.—(1) The moment of sun-rise. (2) This phrase is also used with the meaning of "eastward," e.g. rivers or streams flowing eastward, or into the Indian Ocean, are said to flow *sun-up*. See Zon op.

"Will you consent to marry me to-morrow morning at *sun-up*, or am I to be forced to carry the sentence on your old uncle into effect?" (Haggard's "Jess," p. 304, 1887.)

"Then suddenly the huge burning disc itself is thrust upon the sky-line, and it is in South African parlance *sun-up*." (Bryden's "Tales of South Africa," p. 107, 1896.)

Surf boat.—The heavy decked boats used at the various South African ports for landing cargo through the surf.

"Party after party were conveyed safely and rapidly through the breakers by the *surf boats* managed by seamen from the sloop of war." (Pringle's "Narrative," p. 9, 1835.)

Surgeon.—In Natal the fish *Acanthurus maloides, C. and V.* has received this name.

Sussie.—The Hout Bay name for *Clupea ocellata.* See Sardine.

Swaai.—(D. *zwaaien*, to sway, to swing.) A swing; to swing.

Swaap.—(G. *Schwabe* or *Schwab*, an inhabitant of the old Duchy of Swabia; these are sometimes spoken of by other Germans as being not specially quick-witted; e.g. *Mit den Schwaben klug werden*, to become wise late in life; and a piece of folly perpetrated by a grown-up man is termed a *Schwabenstreich*, a Swabian's trick; personal intercourse

with the Swabians proves the assumption underlying these expressions to be false now, even if there were any truth in it in the past.) A simple person, one not quick-witted, an idiot.

Swan orchid.—*Cynorchis compacta.* The popular name of this pretty little terrestrial orchid, which is peculiar to Natal and somewhat rare.

"Though our epiphytal orchids are not very showy, many of the terrestrial ones are exceedingly so. They commence flowering when the spring has set in, and the different species flower in succession until about the end of March, an exception being the pretty little *Swan orchid* (*Cynorchis compacta*) which flowers in July and August." ("Natal Official Railway Guide," p. 233, 1903.)

Swazies.—This designation has superseded that by which this people was known to the early missionaries, viz. the Baraputse (q.v.).

"The independence of the *Swazies* within the boundary line of Swaziland, as indicated in the first article of this convention will be fully recognized." ("The Times' History of the War in South Africa," I. p. 388, 1900.)

Swee.—(Kaf. *um Swi.*) *Estrilda dufresnii.* It owes its popular name to its cry of "swee-swee".

"The *Swee* waxbill (*E. dufresnii*) is the best-known species in the south-eastern province of Cape Colony from Uitenhage to Port Alfred." (Haagner and Ivy's "Sketches of South African Bird Life," p. 68, 1908.)

Sweet grass.—The food plants growing on rich alluvial soil or on land of good quality are succulent and nourishing, this is termed "Sweet veld" or "Sweet grass" to distinguish it from "Sour grass" (q.v.).

"The two phrases '*sweet*' and 'sour,' as applied to our natural pasture land, have no connexion with the usual English acceptation of the words. *Sweet* implies rich land producing nutritious food, whether natural or cultivated." ("Science in South Africa," p. 383, 1905.)

Sweethearts.—The hooked seeds of *Bidens pilosa*, a weed to be found well-nigh everywhere. See Black jacks.

Sweet melon.—Known also as the Rock, Musk, and Sugar melon. See Spaanspek.

"The water melons must not be nipped or cut, as required by *Sweet melons.*" (Roth's "South African Gardening," p. 78, 1883.)

Sweet potato.—See Batata.

"*Sweet potatoes* are raised here in almost unconsumable quantities, but principally near the coast, the sandy soil of which suits them." (Christopher's "Natal," p. 31, 1850.)

Sweet-veld.—See Sweet-grass.

"Absence of lime is characteristic of 'sour' veld, probably not only on account of the neutralization of acid where lime is present, but rather because lime soils are usually well drained and well supplied with other plant food. Lime is an essential plant food, very generally lacking in Cape soils; wherever it does occur marked fertility and *sweet-veld* results. Excess of humus does not explain 'sour' veld, for, while in some sour-veld districts, like the Knysna, organic matter is abundant, yet on the whole 'sour' soils are lamentably deficient in this respect. The application of the terms 'sweet' and 'sour' is, then, somewhat unfortunate, but once comprehended should give no further difficulty." ("Science in South Africa," pp. 383-4, 1905.)

Swempi.—(Zulu, *in Swempe*, a quail; *i Swempe, Francolinus coqui;* these names are onomatopoetic.) *Francolinus subtorquatus, Smith,* is known by this name in Natal and in the Transvaal. It is a bush and scrub-haunting bird. See Bush partridge.

"Coquifrancolin, generally known as the *Swempi* from the Zulu name, but corrupted into *Shrimpi* by some." ("South African Field," p. 141, 30 July, 1909.)

"I was riding with the front line of the advance guard near Zeerust, when a covey of *shwimpi* were flushed three or four times." ("Queenstown Representative," p. 7, 10 July, 1912.)

Swernoot.—(Mansvelt derives this from *Schwernöther*, a jolly fellow, rascal, dare-devil; and this from *schwere noth*, the falling sickness. When one remembers how large a proportion of the men serving in the early days of South Africa, under the Dutch East India Company, were Germans, one can see how such terms as Swaap, Hes, Swernoot, and others would obtain a footing and secure currency at the Cape. But I am not convinced that Mansvelt's suggested connexion between *Schwernöther* and *schwere noth* is correct. Cf. Scotch *sweir*, *swere*, *swear*, *sweer*, lazy, indolent; *noot*, English *nolt*, *nowt*, a stupid, coarse, or clumsy person; metaphorically from Scotch *nowt*, English *neat*, cattle.) A low term of abuse, meaning a thoroughly bad character.

Swets.—(D. *zwetsen*, to boast, to brag.) In Cape Dutch the word means to curse, to swear.

Switzerland of South Africa.—A designation sometimes given to Basutoland on account of its magnificent mountain scenery.

"Basutoland . . . contains such glorious scenery as to have earned for it the flattering nickname of *The Switzerland of South Africa*." (Ralph's "Towards Pretoria," p. x, 1900.)

Taaibosch.—(D. *taai*, flexible, tough; *bos*, a bush.) *Rhus obovata.* The name seems to be applied to several members of the same family, *Rhus villosa*, etc.

"The extract may be procured . . . if the tree is treated as recommended for the colonial *Taybosch*." ("C.G.H. Literary Gazette," p. 41, March, 1834.)

"They (fish-baskets) were composed of reeds and twigs of the *taaibosch*, a wood noted for its toughness." (Stow's "Native Races of South Africa," p. 93, 1905.)

Taaibosch bezie.—(D. *bezie* or *bes*, a berry.) The edible berries of several species of *Rhus.*

Taaipit.—(D. *taai*, tough; *pit*, a kernel, fruit-stone.) A term applied to a variety of red peach, the flesh of which adheres closely and tenaciously to the stone. They are sometimes called "Clingstone" peaches. See also Pawe perski.

Taal, The.—(D. *taal*, language, speech.) The name by which the Dutch language as used in South Africa is known among English-speaking Africanders; this Cape Dutch or Afrikaans, as it is called, has suffered considerably from the introduction of various Hottentot and other idioms and words, and from the phonetic and grammatical abrasion consequent upon the condition and environment of the early Dutch settlers; in recent years, however, considerable efforts have been made to eliminate the objectionable elements from the vocabulary, and to restore somewhat of its purity, but centuries of usage are not to be swept away in a hurry.

"They are usually glib-tongued, speak *the taal* and the rooi-taal with equal readiness, and are well versed in that sophistry which misleads the man in the street." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 18 October, 1898.)

Taalbond, The.—An organization which aims at maintaining and extending the use in South Africa of Nederlandsch.

"Imperial jingoism on the one side and the crass ignorance of the *Taal bond* on the other, may postpone the final settlement of the country." ("Cape Illustrated Magazine," p. 370, 1892-3.)

Tabaksrolletje.—(D. *tabak*, tobacco; *rol*, a roll.) A small snake which rolls itself up in a manner somewhat similar to that in which the Boers roll their tobacco for market, has been thus designated.

Tabbertje or **Tawerd.**—(D. *tabbaard*, a gown, robe; cf. Eng. *tabard*.) A woman's gown.

"De vrouwen dragen *tabberds* (japonnen) van katoen of merino." (Cachet's "De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 425, 1882.)

Table Bay.—The bay derives its name from Table Mountain which overlooks it.

"Der Fluss (Salz-) ergiesset sich in die *Tafel-Bay*." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 211, 1745.)

"A gallant action performed by an inhabitant of the Cape named Woltemaade, who, during a dreadful storm, had been able with the assistance of his horse, to save fourteen seamen belonging to a vessel shipwrecked in *Table Bay*; but that he himself, the victim of his generous efforts, had perished in his last attempt." (Le Vaillant's "Travels," I. p. 4, 1796.)

Table cloth.—The formation of the cloud on Table Mountain, or the "spreading of the table cloth," as it is called, is a world-famed phenomenon, described in almost all books of South African travel. The usual explanation of the phenomenon is that the warm, moisture-laden wind is forced up the mountain slope, on reaching the cool top some of its moisture is condensed and appears in the form of a cloud, which sometimes pours over the brow of the mountain like a mighty cataract, and is redissolved as it enters the lower and warmer air again. The effects produced by this rolling mass of vapour are sometimes indescribably grand.

"The summer season when that well-known appearance of the fleecy cloud, not inaptly called the *Table cloth*, envelops the mountain." (Barrow's "Travels," I. p. 38, 1801.)

"A real *Table cloth*. The weather has been very boisterous . . . snow fell heavily on Table Mountain. The ridges on the face of the mountain are covered with hail and present a pretty sight." ("Eastern Province Herald," 2 August, 1898.)

Table Mountain.—A literal rendering of the Dutch Tafel

Berg. The name refers to the flat, table-like appearance which the top of the mountain presents to those approaching it from the sea; this square, flat-topped formation is a somewhat frequent one among the mountains and kopjes of South Africa.

"Nah sind drey Berge auf dem Cap, so das Tafels-Thal formiren. . . . Diese drey Berge sind den *Tafel-* Lowen- und Wind- oder Teufels-*Berg*. Der erste ist der Höchste. Die Portugiesen nennen ihn Tovoa de Cabo." (Kolben's "Beschreibung," p. 206, 1745.)

Tackies.—In the border towns of the Eastern Province this is the name given to rubber-soled sand-shoes.

Tafel kop.—(D. *tafel*, a table; *kop*, a head.) A flat-topped hill or mountain. See Table Mountain.

"Our second gun which had been placed on a *Tafel-kop* did excellent work." (De Wet's "Three Years War," p. 30, 1903.)

Tagatied.—(Kaf. *uku Takata*, to practise evil towards another secretly.) An anglicized form of the Kaffir word meaning to bewitch, to ill-wish.

"A report was soon circulated in the clan, that he had *takatied* or 'ill-wished' the people, as his cattle and gardens were so fat and productive and theirs so very poor." (Holden's "Kaffir Races," p. 291, 1866.)

Tailings.—A term applied to the residuum after the "ground" or ore has undergone the process of crushing and washing. In the earlier days of the gold industry these "tailings" were deemed of little worth, but when subjected to more recent methods of recovery, they have yielded good returns.

"The mud or *tailings* which flows to waste over the inner rim is led by a shoot to a pit." (Noble's "C.G.H. Official Handbook," p. 190, 1886.)

"The ore bereft of its free gold, goes under the name of *tailings*." ("Scientific African," p. 25, December, 1895.)

Tailor bird.—The Grahamstown name of *Camaroptera olivacea*. The name refers to the neat way in which this bird stitches the neighbouring leaves with fibres and cobwebs to its neatly made nest.

"When we discovered the nest of this little Warbler we christened it the *Tailor bird*. It well earns this title from its skill in the art of sewing. Its nest is placed in the branches of a tall weed, to the leaves of which it is cleverly sewn with

blades of thin grass on all sides so as to be completely coated." (Woodward's "Natal Birds," p. 29, 1899.)

Tak.—(D. *tak*, a bough, branch.) (1) A bough, branch. (2) The term is also applied to a barricade of branches placed across a road to show that it is closed to traffic. *Takje*, the diminutive, is also in common use.

"A *tackey* . . . is simply a long and stout branch of mimosa with the thorns all left on at the end." (Martin's "Home Life on an Ostrich Farm," p. 111, 1890.)

"Upon the top of this pebble-bed it is customary to put a layer of brush-wood or *takkies* well-battened down." ("Manual of Practical Orchard Work at the Cape," Agric. Dept., p. 16, 1896.)

Takhaar.—(D. *tak*, a branch; *haar*, hair.) A Cape Dutch word really meaning "unkempt," uncouth, untrained; applied originally to the Transvaalers, but in recent years its application has been extended to back-veld Boers generally, on account of their untidy appearance.

"There are several other poems, one of which urges the *Takhaar* Boers to 'Fight, fight, fight! while the aasvogel screams o'er the lea'." ("Graaff Reinet Advertiser," 20 November, 1899.)

"With the passing of the old *Taak haare* the little bit of picturesqueness will be gone." (Colquhoun's "The Africander Land," p. 217, 1906.)

Tam.—(D. *tam*, tame, domestic.) As used in Cape Dutch this word has the meaning of exhausted, done up.

Tamaai.—(Mal. *tambah, tambahi*, to increase, to make more or greater.) This word is used in the Western Province in the sense of great, large; e.g. *tamaai dag*, full day; *tamaai kerel*, a huge fellow.

Tambookie grass.—(*Tambookie*, the name given by the colonists to a Kaffir of the *Abatembu* tribe.) (1) The common *Tambookie grass* of the Transkei is *Cymbopogon validus, Stapf.*, and grows to a height of 6 or 8 feet, and in Swazieland, on the Horo Flats, to a much greater height (12 feet), quite hiding a man on horseback. (2) In the Cape Colony this name is given to the closely allied *Eulalia capensis*.

"The *Tambuki grass*, a handsome grass growing to a height of 6 or 8 feet, is always held to be an indication of good soil, and is itself considered to yield the best material for thatching." (Chapman's "Travels," II. p. 456, 1868.)

" Het *Tamboekie gras* groeit soms tot een hoogte van acht of tien voet, met een fraaien pluim of veer aan het einde van den stengel." (Cachet's " De Worstelstrijd der Transvalers," p. 340 n., 1882.)

Tambookie thorn, on wortel.—*Erythrina acanthocarpa* is known by this name in the neighbourhood of Queenstown. It is also called the Wacht-en-beetje (q.v.).

" Another species to mention is the . . . *Tambookie thorn.* This one is peculiar in the possession of an underground growth thick as a man's thigh composed of the lightest pith." (" African Monthly," p. 542, October, 1907.)

Tambourine dove. — *Tympanistria tympanistria.* The name refers to its oft-repeated and peculiar rattling call.

Tambrijn, Jan Bruin, John Brown.—(? Have these names their origin in the Mal. *tambra, tambarah; tombra,* Java, names given to an edible fish in the Malay Archipelago.) *Gymnocrotaphus curvidens* is known by these various designations along the South African coast.

Tammelijtjes.—(F. *tablette,* a small table, a plate.) A sugar confection something like soft toffee, made in flat, square paper moulds.

" *Tamelijtjes* (a favourite Cape sweet)." (Hilda's " Where is It ? of Recipes," p. 237, 1904.)

Tampan tick.—(1) *Onithodorus savignyi, var. cæcus.* A species of large tick the bite of which is particularly painful and irritating ; they infest certain localities in large numbers, and are to be carefully avoided. See Sampan. (2) *Argas persicus* is sometimes so called.

"I dreaded the *tampan* so common in all old huts." (Livingstone's " South Africa," p. 120, 1861.)

" I had thought myself acquainted with pests that walk by night, but this journey introduced me to the very king and tyrant of the obscene realm. He is called the *tampan.* . . . I have wrestled with garrapalas in Mexico, I have slain jiggers in the West Indies, I have fought with ticks in Borneo, fleas in Egypt, l—e in Sardinia. These are nought. The *tampan* will give them half his armoury of daggers and beat them badly." (Boyle's " To the Cape for Diamonds," p. 256, 1873.)

Tandpijnwortel.—(D. *tand,* tooth ; *pijn,* pain, smart ; *wortel,* a root.) *Sium Thunbergii, D.C.* The root is chewed to relieve toothache.

Tante.—(D. *tante*, a father's sister, an aunt; F. *tante;* O.F. *ante;* Lat. *amita*, a paternal aunt.) It is customary among the Cape Dutch to speak of or to an elderly woman, by way of respect, as "Tante". See Om.

Tarantaal, Tramtaal or **Trantaal.**—*Numida coronata*, the crowned guinea-fowl, is known by this name.

"The missionaries have a few domestic fowls, ducks, geese and guinea hens or pintadoes, which are called by the quaint name of *Jan tadentaal.*" (Burchell's "Travels," I. p. 364, 1822.)

"The guinea-fowl . . . called by the Hottentots *tarantalls.*" ("Scenes and Occurrences in Albany," p. 99, 1827.)

"Johannes bekundete an zwei heute früh von ihm geschossenen *tarantals* (Perlhühnern), dass er ein schmackhaftes Gericht zu bereiten verstand." (Wangemann's "Ein Reise-Jahr in Süd-Afrika," p. 406, 1868.)

Tarantula.—(It. *tarantola*, from the dance *tarantella*, from the Italian city *Taranto.*) A large hairy spider with formidable fangs is known by this name all through South Africa. It belongs to the genus *Harpactira.* See Baviaan spinnekop.

"The Cape is also infested by . . . the spider called the *tarantula* which is extremely dreaded." (Cole's "The Cape and the Kaffirs," p. 243, 1852.)

"'That's my living fly-catcher.' 'Why, it's a *tarantula.*'" (Glanville's "Kloof Yarns," "The Empire," p. 7, 24 September, 1898.)

Tar brush, A dash or touch of.—An expression applied to persons who are slightly tinged with coloured blood.

"She was a dark handsome woman . . . the dusky tones of brown in the throat . . . confirmed the rumour that the handsome Mrs. Croesus had a *dash of the tar brush*, to use a South African phrase, in her blood." (Comtesse de Bremont's "The Gentleman Digger," p. 87, 1891.)

"His complexion denoted a decided *touch of the tar brush.*" (Turnbull's "Tales from Natal," p. 154, 1901.)

Tarrasibosch.—A Bechuanaland name given to *Acacia stolonifera, Burch.* (Burtt-Davy, "S.A. Agric. Journ.," July, 1912.) "A common and characteristic bush of the Bechuanaland region."

Tassal.—Meat cured and dried in the open air by an old-fashioned method adopted by hunters and travellers up country.

"*Tassal.* The Boers and travellers find it most nourish-

ing in travelling, when fresh meat cannot be procured." (Hilda's "Where is It? of Recipes," p. 246, 1904.)

Tchou.—A large succulent root, full of moisture even in times of drought, when it is dug up and eaten by the natives to allay thirst.

"They (the porcupines) are also very partial to the *tchou*."

Teal Eendtje.—(D. *eend*, a duck.) *Nettion capense.* The Cape widgeon.

"The *Teal-eendtje* is usually confounded with the Smee-eendtje, in company with which we have shot it." (Layard and Sharpe's "Birds of South Africa," p. 758, 1875-84.)

Tea water.—The common name among the Dutch for the infusion which the English always speak of as "tea".

"He . . . asked me to come into his tent and drink a cup of *tea-water* with his vrouw, while he sent out for horses; and scarcely had I time to drink of the dismal 'tea-water' when I was informed that the horses were already saddled." (Thomson's "Travels," p. 148, 1827.)

"Making sure the sheep-tail fat and *tea-water* had not been forgotten, lit his pipe, mounted, and set off with a light heart upon a journey of hundreds of miles." ("East London Dispatch," p. 6, 26 July, 1912.)

Ten pounder.—The fish known in the Cape Colony as the Cape salmon—*Elops saurus*, is known in Natal as the Springer (q.v.) and also as the "Ten pounder".

"The springer, too, or *ten-pounder* as they are called are much esteemed for their sporting qualities." ("Natal Mercury Pictorial," p. 141, 1905.)

Tent wagon.—A wagon part or whole of which is covered with a frame upon which canvas is stretched. The hood of a cape-cart, buggy, etc., is also known as a "tent".

Texas poppy.—*Argemone mexicana.* See Mexican poppy or thistle.

Thaba Bosigo.—(Ses. *thaba*, a mountain; *bosigo, botso*, blackness, darkness.) A natural stronghold in Basutoland, of which the Basutos have availed themselves on more than one occasion, to the disappointment and discomfiture of their enemies.

"Near Morija rises *the* mountain of Basutoland, *Thaba Bosigo!* Surely no other spot in the country contains so much history as this small mountain." (Martin's "Basutoland, its Legends and its Customs," p. 71, 1903.)